



**FREEDOM THROUGH DELIVERANCE PERTAINING TO BLOODLINES,
OPRESSION, THE GUTTER OF LIES, SIN, SHAME, GUILT AND UNBELIEF
LEADING THE BODY OF CHRIST INTO APOSTOLIC COUNSELLING**

By

DR RONELL VAN DER WALT

BACHELOR OF THEOLOGY IN MINISTRY

MASTER OF THEOLOGY

DLitt

Submitted in accordance with the requirements of the degree of

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR IN COUNSELLING

At

ST. CLEMENTS PRIVATE SWISS UNIVERSITY

PROMOTOR

PROF DR CONNIE M J BRAND (DLitt, PhD, MTh)

OCTOBER 2016

DECLARATION OF AUTHENTICITY

I, the undersigned, Ronell van der Walt declare that this thesis is my original work, gathered and utilised especially to fulfil the purposes and objectives of this study and has not been previously submitted to any other University for a higher degree. I certify that all information contained herein and in my application materials submitted by me are true, correct and accurate to the best of my knowledge and believe.

Signature

Date

DEDICATION

I would like to thank and dedicate this thesis to our Lord Jesus Christ for giving every part of this plan to me.

However, I consider my life worth nothing to me; my only aim is to finish the race and complete the task the Lord Jesus has given me – the task of testifying to the good news of God's grace.

Acts 20:24 (NIV)

To all the broken-hearted and the captives, including Christians who do not know the peace and unconditional love Jesus Christ has for them, that they will learn the Truth and the Truth will set them free.

-----oOo-----

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

To my Loving Lord Jesus' ministering Spirit, who guided me and gave me the awareness to write this thesis and for His ever abiding grace and protection. Thank you Lord for bringing me to this point in my life.

To Professor Doctor Connie MJ Brand, my most sincere gratitude for all your guidance, encouragement and inspiration. Thank you for challenging my thoughts, ideas and providing me with the insight needed to finalise this thesis. Thank you for the time you've spent helping me and your dedication to Râdâh Academy. Thank you for your prayer throughout my research.

Thank you for my parents who showed an interest and for all the love and acceptance.

A word of gratitude to Doctor Leandri Black and Doctor Pieter Malan for providing assistance, valuable ideas and inspiration and the time given up to help me finalise my thesis.

Acknowledging and thanking my friend, Marlize Beeslaar for assisting in this thesis with research, technical assistance and support in many areas.

To my friends, for their support and prayer throughout my research.

For the magnificent graphical work included in my thesis I would like to show my earnest appreciation to Dr Susan Langeveldt from SL Studios.

-----oOo-----

SUMMARY

FREEDOM THROUGH DELIVERANCE PERTAINING TO BLOODLINES, OPPRESSION, THE GUTTER OF LIES, SIN, SHAME, GUILT AND UNBELIEF LEADING THE BODY OF CHRIST INTO APOSTOLIC COUNSELLING

By

Dr Ronell van der Walt

SUPERVISOR:	Prof Dr Connie M J Brand (DLitt, PhD, MTh)
DEGREE:	Philosophiae Doctor In Counselling
INSTITUTION:	ST. CLEMENTS PRIVATE SWISS UNIVERSITY

God didn't send His Son, Jesus to bring people to Jesus, God sent Jesus to bring His people back to Him, their Father – God the Father was the great prize. Jesus Christ died on the cross, so that humankind could be rescued, saved totally and completely. Jesus also said that no one could come to Him unless God the Father – His Father – had drawn them to Him. His Son had to suffer death on a cross to make way for all people to come into a real Father/son, Father/daughter relationship with Him. Jesus Christ is the King of this Kingdom and the Bible is clear that eternal life is only to be found in Him. Jesus came to restore that which was lost – God is

calling mankind to understand the deeper meaning of His Kingdom, to enter into spiritual levels as never before.

Here on earth Christians are the representatives of God's Kingdom, where they find themselves involved in an all-out war with a highly organized opposing kingdom ruled by Satan. This is a kingdom of evil spirits beings, whose headquarters are in the heavenly realms. The battleground on which this war is being fought is in the minds of humanity where Satan has built up strongholds through lies, sin, shame, guilt and unbelief to keep them from receiving the truth of the Gospel. The believers are tasked to release men and women from the deception of Satan and breaking down these strongholds, keeping them captive and as slaves. Through breaking down these strongholds, people are brought into submission and obedience to the will of God.

Two factors determine the believer's ability to complete this God-given mission. The first factor is that as per Scripture Satan was defeated by Jesus on the cross. Jesus died on the behalf of every believer. As believers, it is now our duty to demonstrate and administer Jesus' victory over Satan. The next factor is for believers to use the appropriate spiritual weapons as provided by God. There are two categories of spiritual weapons, weapons of attack and the weapons of defence.

Christ conquered Satan, the demons and their power at the cross and made a public display of them. By conquering Satan, we celebrate a victory that has already been won at the cross and not only defeating Satan.

Jesus' victory becomes our victory, therefore our assignment as believers is to administer the victory, demonstrating defeating Satan, and exercise the authority that Jesus has won on our behalf. Authority that is not exercised remains ineffective.

For a person to become a child of God an active faith in Jesus Christ is required. Jesus is the only way to salvation - which is received from the faith in the work of Christ on the cross! Only by the powerful Blood of the Lamb can a man be saved and cleansed of all his sins, transgressions and iniquities.

Christians need to demonstrate Christ's victory for the world to see it. To demonstrate the victory over Satan and his kingdom that Jesus has already won; believers need to move from the defensive to the offensive.

Believers need to conform to agents of reconciliation, ambassadors, and mediators; in other words, they must be "priests" in society. As they recover their identities as full-time followers of Christ, regardless of where they work, they will be willing to prophetically confront the problems in the Church and in the world. With this ministry-oriented mindset toward all areas of life, God's followers can come boldly into his presence, praying for fruitfulness in their own professions, being prophetic about things they see that are unjust, and acting as agents of reconciliation in their offices, schools, and community.

-----oOo-----

TABLE OF CONTENT (Abbreviated)

TITLEPAGE.....	i
DECLARATION OF AUTHENTICITY.....	iii
DEDICATION.....	v
ACKNOWLEDGEMENT.....	vii
SUMMARY.....	ix
TABLE OF CONTENTS (Abbreviated).....	xiii
TABLE OF CONTENTS.....	xv
PROLEGOMENA	1
CHAPTER 1: THE LIFE AND WORK OF JESUS CHRIST.....	51
CHAPTER 2: THE CHRISTIAN LIFE AS SPIRITUAL WARFARE.....	179
CHAPTER 3: THE REALITY OF SATAN, THE DEVIL – SUPERNATURAL SOLICITATION TO SIN.....	337
CHAPTER 4: RESTORING THE IMAGE OF CHRIST IN MANKIND THROUGH APOSTOLIC EQUIPPING OF EVERY BELIEVER.....	565
CONCLUSION	731
BIBLIOGRAPHY.....	739
ADDENDUM TO BIBLIOGRAPHY.....	787
TERMS, DEFINITIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS.....	791
LIST OF TABLES AND FIGURES	805
ADDENDUM.....	809
A CERTIFICATE OF EDITING.....	881

-----oOo-----



TABLE OF CONTENTS

<i>Prolegomena</i>		1
<i>Chapter 1:</i>	<i>The Life and Work of Jesus Christ</i>	51
1.	INTRODUCTION/BACKGROUND.....	52
2.	THE GOOD NEWS AS IN THE FOUR GOSPELS: MATTHEW, MARK, LUKE AND JOHN.....	57
2.1	Why There Are Four Gospels.....	58
2.1.1	Matthew.....	59
2.1.2	Mark.....	60
2.1.3	Luke.....	62
2.1.4	John.....	62
2.2	A Possible Order Of Events From The Four Gospels.....	65
3.	OLD TESTAMENT PROPHECIES OF CHIRST.....	67
3.1	Prophecies Concerning Christ's Lineage.....	68
3.2	Prophecies Concerning Christ's Birth.....	71
3.3	Prophecies Concerning Christ's Life.....	71
3.4	Prophecies Concerning Christ's Death.....	73

3.5	Prophecies Concerning Christ's Victory.....	73
3.6	Prophecies Concerning The Deity Of Christ.....	75
3.7	Prophecies Concerning The Humanity Of Christ.....	75
4.	INCARNATION OF CHRIST.....	78
4.1	Meaning And Explanation Of The Incarnation.....	78
5.	PREPARATIONS FOR JESUS' COMING.....	80
5.1	John The Baptist.....	80
5.2	The Beginning Of The Story.....	81
6.	JESUS' EARTHLY LIFE.....	82
6.1	Jesus' Birth.....	82
6.2	Jesus As A Boy.....	86
6.3	Humanity Of Christ.....	86
6.3.1	He Had A True Body Of Flesh And Blood.....	87
6.3.2	He Had A Normal Development.....	87
6.3.3	He Had A Human Soul And Spirit.....	88
6.3.4	He Had The Characteristics Of A Human Being.....	89
6.3.5	He Had Human Names.....	89
6.3.6	He Had A Human Birth.....	90
6.3.7	He Had Sinless Infirmities of Humans Nature.....	90
6.3.8	He Suffered Human Death.....	91
6.3.9	He Experienced Human Resurrection.....	92
6.4	Jesus Baptized.....	92
6.5	The Testing of Jesus.....	94
6.5.1	The Temptations.....	95
6.5.2	The Temptation In The Wilderness.....	96
6.5.2.1	The First Temptation.....	96
6.5.2.2	The Second Temptation.....	98

6.5.2.3	The Third Temptation.....	102
6.6	The Reasons Jesus Suffered Temptation.....	104
6.7	Jesus' Disciples.....	108
7.	JESUS: THE FIVE FOLD MINISTRY.....	109
7.1	Jesus As Apostle: Govern.....	108
7.2	Jesus As Prophet: Guides.....	110
7.3	Jesus As Evangelist: Gather.....	111
7.4	Jesus As Pastor: Guard.....	112
7.5	Jesus As Teacher: Grounding.....	112
7.5.1	Teaching by Parable.....	116
7.5.1.1	Parables Of Jesus.....	117
7.5.2	The Kingdom of God.....	118
7.5.3	Stories About God's Kingdom.....	120
8.	JESUS THE HEALER.....	122
9.	JESUS' MIRACLES.....	124
9.1	Casting Out Legions.....	125
9.2	Delivering A Demonized Child.....	131
9.3	The Miracles Of Jesus.....	139
9.3.1	Jesus Feeds Five Thousand.....	140
9.3.2	Ten Lepers Healed.....	140
10.	THE OFFICES OF CHRIST.....	141
10.1	Prophet.....	141
10.2	Priest.....	144
10.3	King.....	146
10.4	Judge.....	148
11	JESUS THE MESSIAH.....	150
11.1	Son Of God.....	151

11.2	Son Of Man.....	152
11.3	The Servant.....	153
12	THE TRANSFIGURATION.....	154
13	JESUS' DEATH.....	155
13.1	Crucifixion.....	155
13.2	Judas The Betrayer.....	155
13.3	The Passover And The Last Supper.....	158
13.4	Getsemane.....	159
13.5	The Arrest.....	159
13.6	Jesus' Trial.....	159
13.7	Why Jesus Died.....	160
13.8	Jesus' Death And Burial.....	165
14.	THE RESURRECTION OF JESUS CHRIST.....	167
14.1	The Importance Of The Resurrection Of Christ.....	168
14.2	Proof Of The Resurrection Of Christ.....	169
14.3	The Ascension.....	170
14.3.1	Significance Of The Ascention.....	171
15	THE ANOINTING UPON JESUS.....	172
16	CONCLUSION.....	175

Chapter 2:	<i>The Christian Life As Spiritual Warfare</i>	179
1.	INTRODUCTION/BACKGROUND.....	180
2.	WHAT IT MEANS TO BE A CHRISTIAN	182
2.1	Definition Of A Christian	182
2.2	A Person Made In The Image Of God	184

2.3	A Person Of Value And Dignity.....	190
2.4	As Persons We Inherit A Sinful Condition From The Fall Of Man	191
2.5	Redeemed Persons Are Lifted Above Fallen Condemnation And Are Of Great Value.....	192
2.6	Mankind's Outward And Inward Beings.....	192
2.7	Doctrine That Changes Us.....	194
2.8	The Disaster Of The Fall.....	196
2.8.1	Spiritual Death.....	197
2.8.2	Loss Of Knowledge.....	198
2.8.3	Negative Emotions.....	199
2.8.4	The Choice To Choose.....	201
2.8.5	Attributes Became Needs.....	201
2.8.6	Death Became A Reality.....	202
2.8.7	Humans Lost Sight Of The Purpose For Which They Were Created.....	202
2.8.8	The Fall Produced In Humans A State Of Depravity.....	204
2.8.9	Additional Curses.....	204
2.8.9.1	Satan's Curse Was Three-Fold.....	205
2.8.9.2	Eve's Curse Is Two-Fold.....	205
2.8.9.3	Adam Is Cursed With Labour Pains of a Different Order.....	206
2.9	Man After The Fall.....	207
2.9.1	Consequences On The External Part (The Body).....	208
2.9.2	Consequences On The Internal Parts.....	208
2.10	The New Life Requires New Birth.....	209
2.11	Man After Redemption.....	213
2.12	Man's Redemption: A New Birth.....	214
3.	REDEEMED MAN FACING HIS ENEMY.....	216
3.1	Two Spiritual Enemies: The World And The Devil.....	216

3.2	The World As Enemy.....	218
3.2.1	The Nature of the Enemy.....	218
3.3	Satan's Kingdom As Enemy.....	220
3.3.1	Satan's Kingdom: Both External And Internal.....	220
3.3.1.1	External Significance Of The Kingdom.....	220
3.3.1.2	Internal Significance Of The Kingdom.....	221
3.3.2	An Evil, Supernatural Kingdom Under The Reign Of Satan.....	222
3.3.3	How Satan's Kingdom Tempts Believers To Do Evil.....	222
4.	THE SPIRITUAL BARRIER.....	225
4.1	Sin As A Barrier.....	227
4.2	The War Within – Flesh vs Spirit.....	234
4.3	Barriers Created By Evil Spirits.....	235
5.	GOD'S COVERING.....	239
5.1	Covenants God Made With People.....	243
6.	THE DOCTRINE OF THE HOLY SPIRIT.....	249
6.1	The Personality Of The Holy Spirit.....	252
6.2	The Work Of The Holy Spirit Versus The Work Of Satan.....	254
6.3	The Facets Of The Holy Spirit.....	254
6.3.1	Convicting Or Pleading.....	255
6.3.2	Cleansing.....	255
6.3.3	Communion.....	256
6.3.4	Compassionate.....	256
6.3.5.	Teaches.....	256
6.3.6	Commanding.....	257
6.3.7	The Spirit Testifies.....	257
6.3.8	The Spirit Intercedes.....	258
6.3.9	Conquering.....	258

6.3.10	Concert.....	258
6.3.11	The Spirit Brings About Regeneration.....	259
6.4	The Holy Spirit Is Spoken Of As Having Personal Feelings That Could Not Be Attributed To An Impersonal Power	259
6.5	How To Open Up To The Holy Spirit.....	260
6.5.1	Repent.....	260
6.5.2	Ask God.....	261
6.5.3	Be Thirsty.....	262
6.5.4	Come to Jesus.....	262
6.5.5	Drink.....	262
6.5.6	Yield	263
6.6	Baptism In The Holy Spirit.....	264
6.7	Warnings Against Baptism In The Holy Spirit.....	268
6.8	The Purpose Of The Baptism In The Holy Spirit.....	269
6.9	Methods Of Revelation.....	275
6.9.1	Spoken Word.....	275
6.9.2	Dreams.....	275
6.9.3	Visions.....	276
6.9.4	Theophanies.....	276
7.	UNDERSTANDING THE FEAR OF THE LORD.....	276
7.1	Facts About The Fear Of The Lord.....	279
7.2	Does The Believer Need The Fear Of The Lord After He Has Been Saved?.....	281
7.3	How To Get The Fear Of The Lord.....	281
8	SPIRITUAL AUTHORITY.....	283
8.1	The Believers Anointing.....	284
8.2	The Anointing Within Be Increased?.....	285
8.2.1	Growth In Faith Produces An Increase In The Believer's Anointing.....	286

8.2.2	Growth In Grace Produces An Increase In The Believer's Anointing.....	288
8.2.3	Growth In Glory Produces An Increase In The Believer's Anointing.....	289
8.2.4	The Importance Of The Believers Anointing.....	291
9.	THE GIFTS OF THE FATHER, THE SON AND THE HOLY SPIRIT.....	293
9.1	The Difference Between The Gifts Of The Father, Jesus Christ And The Holy Spirit.....	293
9.2	The Path To A Purpose Filled Life.....	296
9.3	The Correlation Between The Gifts Of God And The Armour Of God.....	302
10.	WEAPONS OF DEFENCE.....	306
10.1	The Whole Armour Of God.....	310
10.1.1	Standing Firm.....	310
10.1.2	The Girdle Or Belt Of Truth.....	311
10.1.3	The Breastplate Of Righteousness.....	312
10.1.4	The Shoes Of The Gospel Of Peace.....	313
10.1.5	The Shield Of Faith	314
10.1.6	The Helmet Of Salvation.....	315
10.1.7	The Sword Of The Spirit.....	316
11	THE SPIRITUAL REALM AS AXIOM.....	318
12	THE ANGELS OF GOD	320
12.1	The Origin Of Angels.....	321
12.2	The Personality Of Angels.....	322
12.3	The Position Of Angels.....	324
12.4	The Names And Classifications Of Angels.....	325
12.5	The Order Of Angels.....	327
12.5.1	Cherubim	327
12.5.2	Seraphim.....	327
12.5.3	Living Beings.....	328

12.5.4	Angels That Was Named.....	329
12.5.4.1	Michael.....	329
12.5.4.2	Gabriel.....	329
12.5.4.3	Lucifer.....	330
12.5.5	Special Groups Of Angels.....	330
12.5.6	The Angel Of The Lord.....	331
13	LIVING AS VICTORS IN CHRIST.....	332
14	CONCLUSION.....	334

<i>Chapter 3:</i>	<i>The Reality of Satan, the Devil – Supernatural Solicitation to Sin</i>	337
1.	INTRODUCTION/BACKGROUND.....	338
2.	THE KINGDOM OF DARKNESS.....	343
2.1	The Reality Of The Kingdom Of Darkness.....	343
2.1.1	Hierarchy Of The Kingdom Of The Light.....	346
2.1.2	Hierarchy Of The Kingdom Of The Darkness.....	347
2.2	The Domain Of The Kingdom Of Darkness.....	349
3.	SATAN – THE KING.....	353
3.1	The Origin Of Satan.....	353
3.2	What Caused Satan's Fall.....	357
3.3	The Nature And Character Of Satan.....	360
3.4	Satan's Activities.....	364
3.5	Satan's Counterfeit.....	368
3.6	Satan's Judgement.....	370
4.	SATAN'S HIERARCHY.....	372

4.1	Rulers Of Darkness.....	373
4.2	Principalities.....	376
4.2.1	Belial – The Devil – False Lion.....	380
4.2.2	Satan: The Hellhound/The Animal.....	381
4.2.3	Abaddon.....	386
4.2.4	Apollyon.....	390
4.2.5	Leviathan.....	394
4.2.5.1	Jezebel – Witchcraft Spirit.....	395
4.2.5.2	Witchcraft – Athalia - Lilith.....	397
4.2.6	Satan's Seven High Ranking Principalities Of Hell As Taught To Witches.....	398
4.3	Powers.....	400
4.4	Fallen Angels.....	403
4.5	Demon Spirits.....	406
4.5.1	Beëlzebub – Lord Of The Flies.....	412
4.6	Demon Possession.....	414
4.6.1	The Nature of Demons	418
4.6.2	Characteristic Activities	419
4.7	How Do Demons Come In?.....	425
4.7.1	Through Our Own Sin	425
4.7.2	A Family Background In The Occult Or False Religions.....	426
4.7.3	Other Negative Prenatal Influences	428
4.7.4	Pressures In Early Childhood.....	429
4.7.5	Emotional Shock Or Sustained Emotional Pressure.....	429
4.7.6	Through Touching Dead Bodies.....	430
4.7.7	Laying On Of Hands	431
4.7.8	Marriage Breakdowns.....	431
4.7.9	Grief.....	431

4.7.10	Ungodly Soul Ties.....	431
4.7.11	Idle Words.....	431
4.7.12	Transference.....	432
4.8	Curses Can Be A Prime Entry Point.....	435
4.8.1	Symptoms Of Probable Curses	436
4.8.2	Entry Points Of Curses	437
4.8.3	Their Judgement	438
5.	THE OCCULT.....	439
5.1	What Is The Occult?.....	439
5.2	Practices Of The Occult.....	442
5.3	Occult Activities.....	443
5.4	Warnings Against The Occult.....	445
5.5	List Of Modern Day Occult Practices.....	447
5.6	Keys To Understanding Occult Spirituality.....	454
5.7	Marketing Occult Folk Religions.....	457
5.7.1	Black Magic.....	459
5.7.2	Westernized Folk Religions.....	460
5.7.2.1	Voodoo.....	460
5.7.2.2	Santeria.....	462
5.7.2.3	Macumba.....	463
6.	MANIFESTATIONS OF INVOLVEMENT IN DEMONIC ACTIVITY.....	464
6.1	Demons Of Greed.....	464
6.2	Sexual Demons.....	466
6.2.1	Incubus And Succuba Demons.....	467
6.2.2	Unclean Spirits, Sexual Abuse, Molestation And Incest.....	470
6.3	Addictions By Mouth.....	473
6.3.1	Alcoholism.....	474

6.3.1.1	Symptoms Of Alcoholism.....	475
6.3.2	Drug Addiction.....	477
6.3.2.2	Different Kinds Of Drugs.....	477
6.3.3	Food Addiction.....	479
6.3.3.1	Factors That Might Lead To Eating Disorders	482
6.3.4	Nicotine.....	483
6.3.5	Caffeine.....	484
7.	FREEDOM FROM THE GRIP OF THE ENEMY IN FIVE STEPS.....	485
7.1	Repent The Involvement With False Occult Religion.....	485
7.2	Identify The Lie That Led The Person Into Satan's Trap.....	486
7.3	Burn All Bridges – All Of The Entry Points To The Occult Must Be Left Behind....	487
7.4	As Far As Possible Have Relationships With Others “Above Reproach”.....	487
7.5	Submit To Human Authority Within The Body Of Christ, That Is, The Church.....	488
8.	CULTS.....	490
8.1	Definition Of The Word Cult.....	490
8.2	Types Of Cults.....	491
8.2.1	Religious.....	491
8.2.2	Commercial.....	492
8.2.3	Self Help And Counselling.....	492
8.2.4	Political.....	493
8.2.5	Religious Cults.....	494
8.3	Characteristics Of A Cult.....	495
8.4	Misconceptions About Cults.....	496
8.4.1	Are Cults Easy To Spot, Do They Wear Strange Clothes And Live In Communes?	496
8.4.2	Are Cults Full Of The Weak, Weird And Emotionally Unstable?.....	496
8.4.3	Are Cults Just A Bunch Of Religious Nut Cases?.....	496
8.5	How Does Cults Work?.....	497

8.6	Deception	498
8.7	Exclusivism	499
8.8	Fear And Intimidation.....	500
8.9	Love Bombing And Relationship Control.....	501
8.10	Information Control.....	502
8.11	Report Structure.....	503
8.12	Time Control.....	504
8.13	Mind Control Techniques.....	504
8.14	Pressure Selling.....	504
8.15	Cult Recruiting Techniques.....	505
8.16	Warning Signs	507
9	WITCHCRAFT	508
9.1	Definition Of Witchcraft.....	508
9.2	The Way Witchcraft Works.....	509
9.2.1	Satan: Master Manipulator.....	512
9.2.2	Heaven's Fence.....	513
9.2.3	Satan And Job.....	514
9.2.3.1	The Challenge Of Satan.....	514
9.2.3.2	Job Becomes The Centre of Conflict.....	515
9.2.3.3	God Wins A Battle Through Job's Faithfulness.....	518
9.3	How Do People Get Involved In Witchcraft.....	520
9.3.1	Witchcraft.....	521
9.3.2	Divination.....	521
9.3.2.1	Rebellion.....	521
9.3.2.2	Disobeying.....	523
9.3.3	Sorcery.....	524
9.4	Forms And Levels Of Witchcraft.....	525

9.4.1	Red Witchcraft	525
9.4.2	White Witchcraft	525
9.4.3	General Witchcraft	526
9.4.4	Black Witchcraft.....	526
9.4.5	Kali Witchcraft.....	526
9.4.6	Abra Melin Witchcraft.....	526
9.4.6.1	Possible Symptoms Of Blind Witchcraft	528
9.4.7	How Does A Christian Become Influenced Towards Witchcraft?.....	528
9.5	The Weapons Of Witchcraft.....	529
9.6	Witchcraft Through Divination.....	531
9.7	Witchcraft In The Church.....	532
9.8	Road To Deception.....	532
9.9	The Weapon Of Domination.....	533
9.10	Breaking The Influence Of Witchcraft.....	536
9.11	Practical Points In Breaking The Influence Of Witchcraft.....	537
10	THE FOUR SOUL-KILLING EMOTIONS.....	538
10.1	Shame	539
10.2	Guilt	542
10.3	Anger	547
10.4.	Fear.....	549
11	GOD's EMOTIONS	552
12	CHRIST'S VICTORY	555
13	IN JESUS' PERFECT LIFE.....	556
14	IN JESUS' SUBSTITUTIONARY DEATH.....	558
15	IN JESUS' RESURRECTION AND ASCENSION.....	559
16	CONCLUSION.....	561

<i>Chapter 4:</i>		<i>Restoring the Image of Christ in Mankind through Apostolic Equipping of Every Believer</i>	565
1	INTRODUCTION/BACKGROUND.....		566
2	APOSTOLIC REFORMATION AND RESTORATION.....		567
3	PRIESTHOOD FOR ALL BELIEVERS.....		573
4	MINISTRY ASSIGNMENTS.....		576
4.1	Grace For Ministry		579
4.2	Apostolic Paradigm		580
4.3	Grace Is The Power To Advance Beyond Ones Own Abilities		581
5	APOSTOLIC BELIEVERS – BELIEVERS AUTHORITY.....		582
5.1	Radical.....		583
5.2	Extremist.....		584
5.3	Extreme Believers Ask God For Extreme Things.....		585
5.4	Nonconformist.....		586
6	THE CHRISTIANS AUTHORITY.....		587
6.1	Authority Is The Power Or Right To Give A Command!.....		589
7	APOSTOLIC MINISTRY.....		590
7.1	Ministry Of Reconciliation.....		591
7.2	Intercession.....		593
7.3	Laying On Of Hands.....		595
7.4	Pray For The Sick.....		598
7.5	Casting Out Demons.....		599
7.6	Filled With The Holy Spirit.....		601
8	FERVENT PRAYER.....		604
9	APOSTOLIC METHODS AND STRATEGIES.....		608

9.1	God Of Strategies.....	611
9.2	Migration Evangelism.....	612
9.3	The Harvest Strategy.....	613
9.4	The Structure.....	614
9.5	Apostolic Teams.....	615
9.6	Metron Leaders.....	616
9.7	Metron Groups.....	616
9.8	The Invasion Council.....	617
10	EQUIPPING AND TRAINING LEADERS FOR GOD'S KINGDOM.....	617
10.1	Apostolic Leaders Are	619
11	APOSTOLIC WORSHIP.....	621
11.1	Fervent Lifestyle Of Worship.....	622
11.2	Music's' Influence.....	622
11.3	New Songs.....	623
11.4	Apostolic Music Prepares The Spiritual Climate.....	623
11.5	Cultural Influences.....	623
11.6	Humanism In Worship.....	624
11.7	Worship Leaders.....	624
11.8	Unpredictable.....	624
11.9	Healing And Deliverance.....	625
11.10	What Apostolic Worship Does.....	625
11.10.1	Moves The Glory.....	626
11.10.2	Warring In Worship.....	626
11.10.3	Separates, Equips And Sends.....	627
12	REACING THE NATIONS.....	628
12.1	The Nations Are The Apostolic.....	628
13	HOLY SPIRIT.....	630

13.1	The Divine Helper.....	633
13.2	The Permanent Dweller.....	634
13.3	The Truth Teacher.....	635
14	HEALING OF THE SPIRIT, SOUL AND BODY.....	637
14.1	Healed By The Word.....	637
14.2	Trinity Of God And Man.....	638
14.3	Healing In God's Plan.....	640
15	DELIVERANCE THROUGH THE BLOOD OF JESUS CHRIST.....	642
15.1	Definition Of Deliverance:	642
15.2	Why Jesus' Blood Is Plead.....	645
15.3	Deliverance Through Jesus Christ.....	647
15.4	Deeper Meaning And Knowledge Of Salvation.....	650
15.5	Demonic Access Points To Address In Deliverance.....	653
15.6	Why People Are Not Delivered.....	655
15.7	The Basic Steps In Deliverance.....	656
15.8	Prayer Points.....	657
16	STEPS TO SELF DELIVERANCE.....	659
17	BAPTISM BEING IMMersed IN JESUS CHRIST.....	666
17.1	Definition Of Baptism.....	666
18	COMMUNION.....	670
18.1	Definition Of Communion.....	670
18.2	Names Associated With Christian Communion:.....	671
18.3	Why Do Christians Observe Communion?.....	671
18.4	The Three Main Christian Views of Communion.....	676
18.5	The Symbols Of Communion.....	676
18.6	Scriptures Associated With Communion:.....	677
19	SANCTIFICATION.....	681

19.1	Sanctification As Part Of The Equipping Of The Saints.....	681
19.2	Holiness Is Seeing Christ Formed In Mankind.....	683
19.3	Sanctification Means Change.....	686
20	Spiritual Warfare.....	690
20.1	Prayer As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare.....	695
20.2	Preaching As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare.....	699
20.3	The Mind Of Christ As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare.....	701
20.4	Binding And loosing As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare.....	702
20.5	Praise As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare.....	703
20.6	The Name Of Jesus As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare.....	704
20.7	The Blood Of Jesus As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare.....	705
20.8	Agreement As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare.....	706
20.9	Fasting As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare.....	707
20.10	The Weapon Of Signs And Wonders As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare.....	708
20.11	Acts Of Faith Based On The Rhema Word As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare....	709
20.12	A Testimony As Method Of Spiritual Warfare.....	710
20.13	Verbally Resisting The Darkness As A method Of Spritual Warfare.....	710
20.14	Endurance As A method Of Spiritual Warfare.....	711
20.15	Serving As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare.....	713
20.16	Resisting As A Method Of Sprital Warfare.....	714
20.17	The Command To "Resisit!".....	714
20.18	Setting The Captives Free.....	716
21	PRAYERS.....	721
21.1	Confessing And Renouncing.....	721
21.2	Prayer Of Renunciation.....	722
21.3	Final Prayer Of Confession And Renunciation.....	722
21.4	Prayers.....	7723

21.4.1	Prayer Against Enemies.....	723
21.4.2	Prayer From Enemies.....	724
21.4.3	Prayer From Temptation.....	725
21.4.4	Prayer From Overcoming Powers Of Darkness.....	726
22	CONCLUSION.....	728

--oOo--



PROLEGOMENA

1. INTRODUCTION/BACKGROUND

People are living in the greatest of all times because man is at the dawn of the most miraculous end in all of Church history. However, it is critical for God's people to understand the current prophetic and Apostolic moves of God. In Revelation 2 and 3 the Apostle John gave a description of the seven churches that existed in the 1st century. Whereas the Book of Acts covers the first 30 years of the church, the Book of Revelation describes the journey and development of the Christian Church age.

The church has achieved a lot throughout the ages, even though it has been guilty of many failures and imperfections. Studying church history has proven that the Church has not yet transformed into its intended image of perfection. In conclusion of Scripture through Revelations 3, the seventh church, the Laodicean church, will not be the last church before Christ returns.

Another neglected truth about the prophetic Church is brought forward. There will be another church age following the Laodicean church (Rev. 3:14-22) which can be described as the last, the eighth or Glorious church. The characteristics of this church is clearly described in the Word of God, for they will be united in faith; it will be perfect; it will reflect Christ's image; it will be sanctified; cleansed;

glorious; without spot, wrinkle or blemish; it will reflect the mature stature of Christ; and it will work together in one accord. This church will be a reflection of the glory of Christ, and will be a worthy Counterpart, or Bride for Christ.

The one distinctive feature of this glorious Church, which separates it from all the other churches, lies in the total restoration of every aspect of holy human life. It is basically a Biblical pattern, boiling down to a lifestyle where Jesus Christ is her First Love. This restoration movement will be ushered into the **End-time** Apostolic Anointing. It is through the obedience of the apostolic leadership and apostolic counselling that the last church emerges from her cocoon and be transformed into a beautiful Bride, ready for the return of her Bridegroom.

The present time man lives in now are utterly blessed because of the manifestation of this beautiful and glorious church. It is to the extent that even the greatest saints of all the other church ages, such as Paul, would count it the greatest privilege to be alive during this Church period.

In the Word of God a beautiful picture of a Bride is sketched, in contrast to modern society where the growing amount of divorces in Christian homes are seen. This breakdown family life does not only affect couples and children, but the whole Body of Christ and the larger community as well. In this day of the **End time** Bride the role of Christian counselling, and Apostolic counselling in particular, becomes relevant and necessary, not only for guiding broken families back to restoration, but also in providing tools and how to apply Biblical truths to a hurting and broken community.

All who are called for counselling in the last days will not only be challenged to rise as leaders in the church but also in the Christian home and in the work place and in the global society. Counsellors need to accept the challenge and take up the responsibility to be equipped to the purpose of restoring the family and the society at large.

Apostolic counsellors need to proclaim the message that true and lasting change; restoration and transformation will only come through the implementation of Biblical truths in human lives. The main goal of Apostolic counselling is to help and guide people, to restore, renew and rebuild people's mind sets and paradigms which limit their thinking, and which require adjustments and healing.

The prophetic aspect in apostolic counselling is to equip people in their development of an **End-time** perspective. This will include all past experiences, relationships, traumatic incidents which influence their current mind patterns, emotions and behaviour. The perspective which people need to have is the spiritual truth of an epic battle between good and evil since the fall in the Garden of Eden.

This will culminate in the final battle of the ages between the Kingdom of Light versus the kingdom of darkness during the Battle of Armageddon and the Public Return of the Lord Jesus Christ on earth.

The **End Time** counsellors have a leading role to play as planter to restore and rebuild relationships in the Kingdom of God. However, God is about to pour out a new and unique release of the Apostolic Anointing on the church to fulfil a much larger leadership role, namely to bring healing, restoration and

transformation to the entire **End-time** Army of God. The purpose of the new unique Apostolic Anointing is to prepare God's **End-time** Army, to be perfected and matured in spirit, soul and body.

And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.

1 Thessalonians 5:23 (KJVR)

Unfortunately, the local church is no longer a safe haven for broken families. The Apostolic counsellors will need to function as bridge builders, ministers of reconciliation and peacemakers between individuals, families, communities, churches and nations.

And all things are of God, who hath reconciled us to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation; To wit, that God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and hath committed unto us the word of reconciliation. Now then we are ambassadors for Christ, as though God did beseech you by us; we pray you in Christ's stead, be ye reconciled to God.

2 Corinthians 5:18-20 (KJVR)

To experience the power of restoration God's people, need to move forward from brokenness and division. A vital role for the Apostolic counsellors is to prepare the Bride of Christ to be ready, perfect, matured and prepared for Her Husband. Another function of the Apostolic counsellor is to lay the foundation upon which pastoral counselling and general Christian counselling can operate. Apostolic counsellors are directly related to Christian Counsellors in the **End time**, with the call to prepare and sanctify the Bride of Christ. This Bride will be presented blameless, spotless and mature in spirit, soul and body at the return of Jesus Christ.

Kiss the Son, lest he be angry, and ye perish from the way, when his wrath is kindled but a little. Blessed are all they that put their trust in him.

Psalms 2:12 (KJVR)

Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is. And every man that hath this hope in him purifieth himself, even as he is pure.

1 John 3:2-3 KJV

1.1 CHAPTER ONE - The Life And Work Of Jesus Christ

God calls Himself “Father”, from the beginning of Creation, it has been His heart. In his book, *Loved like never before* Ken writes, “*scripture is simply awash with confirming terms, such as new born babies, children, sons and daughters, firstborn, family in heaven and earth. God truly wants to father us with great love, imagine that, great love.*”¹

Behold, what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God: therefore the world knoweth us not, because it knew him not.

1 John 3:1 (KJVR)

God didn’t send His Son, Jesus to bring people to Jesus, God sent Jesus to bring His people back to Him, their Father – God the Father was the great prize.

Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

John 14:6 (KJVR)

¹ Symington, Ken (2011) *Loved like never before* Discovering the Father heart of God. Lancaster, England Sovereign World p41

Jesus Christ died on the cross, so that humankind could be rescued, saved totally and completely. Jesus also said that no one could come to Him unless God the Father – His Father – had drawn them to Him.

No man can come to me, except the Father which hath sent me draw him: and I will raise him up at the last day.

John 6:44 (KJVR)

And he said, Therefore said I unto you, that no man can come unto me, except it were given unto him of my Father.

John 6:65 (KJVR)

According to these verses in Scriptures, God the Father wanted every human being, and His Son, Jesus outworked His will perfectly here on earth. God wanted all individuals in His family. His Son had to suffer death on a cross to make way for all people to come into a real Father/son, Father/daughter relationship with Him.

Nevertheless I tell you the truth; It is expedient for you that I go away: for if I go not away, the Comforter will not come unto you; but if I depart, I will send him unto you.

John 16:7 (KJVR)

John 16 verse 7, Jesus was preparing His Disciples before He left. Jesus told them that He was leaving, but He will send them the Holy Spirit who is going to be their Comforter. As people are serving God, there are issues that they are going through and it is only the Holy Spirit that can comfort them. So humankind was not left as orphans.

And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you forever; Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you. I will not leave you comfortless: I will come to you.

John 14:16-18 (KJVR)

Christ died a substitutionary death on behalf of sinners. His death is also called vicarious, meaning, “one in place of another.” Matthew 20:28 states, “the Son of man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give His life a ransom for many” (Mark 10:45).

At the death of Christ, God disarmed the princes and powers of Satan, stripping Satan of the keys of death and hell, and turned what seemed to be the greatest defeat into the greatest victory.

According to Scripture, Christ has overthrown this kingdom with its diabolical ruler, and therefore, believers are no longer slaves. They are not only no longer under Satan’s authority, but in Christ are far above it. For God has “raised us up [Christ] and seated us with him in the heavenly places in Christ Jesus” (Ephesians 2:4-6).

The greatness of God’s power is displayed in Ephesians 1:22- 2:8. in raising Jesus from the dead (Ephesians 1:19-20). This act seated Christ at God’s “right hand” and enthroned him “in the heavenly places, far above all rule and authority and power and dominion” (Ephesians 1:21).

1.2 CHAPTER TWO - The Christian Life As Spiritual Warfare

According to Prof Brand: *“Sin in short is the vast moral disease which affects the whole human race, of every rank, and class and name and nation and people and tongue; a disease from which there never was but born of woman that was free.”*

In the book of One John three verse four, sin is the transgression of the law.

Whosoever committeth sin transgresseth also the law: for sin is the transgression of the law.

1 John 3:4 (KJVR)

As J.C Ryle justly stated, *“but I do think it necessary in these times to remind my readers that a man may commit sin and yet be ignorant of it, and fancy himself innocent when he is guilty.”*²

Unless we do not discern sin and are conscious of it, sin will not be sin to us.

Prof Brand writes that: *“sin is a disease which pervades and runs through every part of our moral constitution and every faculty of our minds.”*³

Search me, O God, and know my heart: try me, and know my thoughts: And see if there be any wicked way in me, and lead me in the way everlasting.

Psalms 139:23-24 (KJVR)

David was a man after God’s own heart. He was a shepherd boy destined to rule God’s Kingdom on earth. He went through an arduous preparation which

² Ryle, JC forward by Lloyd-Jones, Martyn D (1952) Holiness, Its nature, Hindrances, Difficulties and Roots. Great Britain; Burleigh Press, p2

³ Prof Brand CMJ, (2000) Spiritual Warfare Three, The Sin War. Pretoria; p43

would have tested the faith of many. Servant-hearted David came through and was finally installed as king of Israel. However, David can not always be seen as a model for he is far from perfect. He fell into the sin of adultery with Bathsheba and then murder (2 Sameul 11). This story is horrifying because it reminds one that all mankind have the potential to sin badly. David broke three of the ten commandments.

First of all, David was in the wrong place at the wrong time. He should have been leading his men in the war, but instead he sends off others to do his bidding. He went from being the 'hands on' king of the people, who was a servant of the Lord, to an aloof king.

What can be learnt about sin from David's downfall and subsequent restoration?

Sin always deceives – Satan is the deceiver and father of lies. Sin leads to death and destruction.

Secondly sin always destroys – one sin leads to lying as a cover up, leading to more lies and in David's case leading to murder. For all of mankind, choosing to sin puts a barrier between God and man, which lowers man's sensitivity to sin. Humankind eventually lose all self respect, reaching out to sources that will never bring the desired results.

Thirdly – sin is always discovered – Satan tempts humans to believe that no one will ever know and that sin can be hidden. Satan's so effective in this that many of mankind are even lying to themselves, thinking that their sins are only known to them. They start to think like David, that they've succeeded in

covering their tracks. God sees everything, it is laid before His eyes and He won't be mocked. There is a window of opportunity to repent, but after that sin is always discovered.

Confessed sin is always forgiven by the blood of Jesus – God never turns His ear away, He always listens. Christians need to ask God to show them the sins of their hearts. By confessing these sins they will be able to know the joy of living a life which is blameless before God.

For this reason Jesus gave believers a Comforter – The Holy Spirit is the third person of the Trinity. Within the Trinity the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit work in harmony and a person will find that the Holy Spirit is the divine power of God. Humans have many other powers which are not divine but His is divine.

But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

Acts 1:8 (KJVR)

Christians are already in the body of Christ and the baptism in the Holy Spirit is a supernatural seal that is given to each individual member by which Jesus Christ acknowledges the member as a part of His body. Only Jesus Christ can confer this supernatural seal. Jesus Christ is the only one that has the privilege to acknowledge the membership of His body and sets the Apostolic seal upon the believers who receive it. In John 1:33 John the Baptist states:

And I knew him not: but he that sent me to baptize with water, the same said unto me, Upon whom thou shalt see the Spirit descending, and remaining on him, the same is he which baptizeth with the Holy Ghost.

John 1:33 (KJVR)

The ultimate purpose of the Holy Spirit baptism is the unity of Christ's body and it accomplishes this by making individual members of the body effective agents in bringing about unity, not division, in the body.

For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit.

1 Corinthians 12:13 (KJVR)

In the book of Acts of the Apostle Chapter 1 verse 8, as Jesus was ascending to heaven He told his Disciples to wait upon the Holy Spirit, to wait so that they can be endured with power, ***dunamis***, so that they can be witnesses in Jerusalem, in all Judea and in the outermost parts of the world.

Believers need the Spirit of God for them to rise up against the things that the enemy is doing because it is the Spirit of God that is going to teach them, it is Him that is going to guide them and it is Him that is going to show them what they need to do in this generation.

People will go through challenges, terrible times and there will be tribulations but in all those things God and His Spirit will comfort them. They have the Holy Spirit who will comfort them in all their situations and they will find that He is omnipresent. Holy Spirit wants to walk with God's people, be with them every day in all they do.

Holy Spirit knows the truth and He speaks the truth. To walk in victory God's people, need to be filled by His Spirit every day.

Holy Spirit is also the teacher who is willing to teach God's people everything but most of the time the church has locked Him in certain areas and they will find that they do things in their own knowledge. People do things in their own ideas, they do things in their ideologies and they will find that the church becomes lifeless because without the Holy Spirit there is no life. He is the one that gives life. He is the one who enables the church to move. Holy Spirit will also help God's people in prayer for He is also the helper.

Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities: for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered. And he that searcheth the hearts knoweth what is the mind of the Spirit, because he maketh intercession for the saints according to the will of God.

Romans 8:26-27 (KJVR)

In Matthew chapter 24 verse 24, the Bible tells us that in the **last days** many Christs shall come and many false prophets shall come and if it is possible they are going to deceive even the elect of God and how are Christians going to differentiate between the true prophets, the true servants of God and the false ones? It is only through the power of the Holy Spirit. Many things are happening, the false prophets are doing many miracles, signs and wonders are happening. They are opening blind eyes, they are doing what Jesus did but they are not worshipping the Lord in Spirit and truth but when a person has the spirit of God he will be able to discern them.

For there shall arise false Christs, and false prophets, and shall show great signs and wonders; insomuch that, if it were possible, they shall deceive the very elect.

Matthew 24:24 (KJVR)

If Christians want to walk in victory and be victorious the rest of their lives, they need to be filled by the Holy Spirit. It is a daily thing, it is not a once off thing, it is a daily thing, every day when they wake up they need to tell God to fill them and He will lead them and direct their paths. Everything they want to do, they will hear a voice behind them, telling them this is the way, walk in it.

1.3 CHAPTER THREE - The Reality Of Satan, The Devil – Supernatural Solicitation To Sin

And they worshiped the dragon which gave power unto the beast: and they worshiped the beast, saying, Who is like unto the beast? who is able to make war with him? And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.

Revelation 13:4,8 (KJVR)

The aforementioned verse from the Christian Bible enlightens the concept of two persons, namely the Jesus Christ, the Son of God, referred to as the Lamb, and Satan referred to as the dragon. This is relevant to warfare, worship and all dwellers upon the earth, which represent the whole of humankind. The dragon (Satan) empowers the beast, with a strategy and purpose to steal and pervert from the One and Only God and His Kingdom.

Due to the sin of rebellion against God, Satan lost his ruling over the planets he resided and lost his place in heaven as a high ranking cherub –

Thine heart was lifted up because of thy beauty, thou hast corrupted thy wisdom by reason of thy brightness: I will cast thee to the ground, I will lay thee before kings, that they may behold thee.

Ezekiel 28:17 (KJVR)

Not a novice, lest being lifted up with pride he fall into the condemnation of the devil. Moreover he must have a good report of them which are without; lest he fall into reproach and the snare of the devil.

1 Timothy 3:6-7 (KJVR)

And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels, and prevailed not; neither was their place found any more in heaven. And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.

Revelation 12:7-9 (KJVR)

My army is ready for battle, My master of Wisdom and Myself at the head. That battle will be fought for the continuance of man on this earth. Rest assured that my army shall triumph!

Lord Maitreya, the New Age "Christ"

The primary goal of Satan is to enslave the world, and he won't be satisfied until all of humanity comes to worship him and him alone.

To accomplish his dark objectives, he has re-established his church, *MYSTERY BABYLON*⁴, popularly called, the NEW AGE MOVEMENT. The NEW AGE MOVEMENT has within its fold, thousands of individual cults, churches, groups and organizations and is spanning the globe and encompassing hundreds of millions of teachers and disciples. It is a perverse and diabolical institution

⁴ See Revelations

founded on a web of lies and deceit, which influence can regrettably be seen in some mainline Christian churches.

By the exhortation of the Apostle Peter, the church needs to be alert to the devil and his tactics, by standing “firm in the faith” –

Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour: Whom resist steadfast in the faith, knowing that the same afflictions are accomplished in your brethren that are in the world.

1 Peter 5:8-9 (KJVR)

Ryrie writes: “*The denial of SATAN’S reality usually takes the form of considering the idea of SATAN as the personification of evil but not actually a being whom has his own separate existence.*”⁵

According to Prof Brand: “*Ignorance of SATAN’s nature and schemes, impels people become open to Satanic attacks. Rather than accepting responsibility for personal actions, like Eve who blamed the serpent for her choice, such theology seeks to put all the blame on the devil.*”⁶

Some people may talk about the devil but refuse to believe in his existence, ridiculing the whole idea. For others, Satan is just an evil influence, thinking that the idea of the devil is merely a synonym for evil. Biblically Satan is described as a personal being at work, but most of humankind denies this fact.

⁵ Ryrie, Charles C. (1999) Basic Theology. Chicago; Moody Press.

⁶ Brand Prof C. (2007) Spiritual Warfare Six, Satan in Context. Pretoria p138

Satan has many faces, schemes and approaches which are not necessarily obvious or ugly. Some of them may appear very lovely, handsome, sophisticated, educated, polite and apparently good.

In trying to defeat Satan, humankind need to know how Satan operates, how he thinks, his characteristics, his strengths, his hierarchy, his power, the power of his army, his ultimate goal, plan and purpose, his weaknesses and his methods or schemes, for he is in all a dangerous sham, designed to deceive and defeat.

Through the knowledge of Satan's deceit, a person can be prepared to effectively counter his attacks. The doctrine of SATANOLOGY is a very important study. A study which is often filled with opposition for SATAN, THE DECEIVER, never likes to be exposed for who and what he is and how he operates.

It is a command from God to stay informed. The Apostle Paul wrote:

.... for we are not ignorant of his devices.

2 Corinthians 2:11b (KJVR)

But I fear, lest by any means, as the serpent beguiled Eve through his subtlety, so your minds should be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ.

2 Corinthians 11:3 (KJVR)

Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.

James 4:7 (KJVR)

The character of Satan's sin was rebellious ambition, this ambition being totally contrary to a creature who owned everything that he was and had to the Creator.

As Prince noted: *"It was God who gave Lucifer his power, his authority, his beauty, his wisdom – all those were gifts from God. Yet Lucifer's wrong attitude turned them into instruments for his own destruction."*⁷

Two different wills result in conflict. The most simplistic definition of sin is born from the self is "I will..." Irrespective of who utters it.

God's will be a line of truth and goodness and is immutable. Any variation from the will of God is sin, be it only in the slightest fraction of a degree. It results in separation and deviation from God. When Satan chose his own will above God's, there was rebellion.

According to Prof Brand *"Pride produces a warped paradigm that places 'me' at the centre of the reasoning process. With 'self' at the centre the consequence would be to become confused about the true issues. Reasoning becomes anything, but God centred. Against all odds, apart from all the arguments and views of the NEW AGE MOVEMENT, SATAN is in fact a maniac."*⁸ She also states that Satan is deceived and blinded by his pride, with a complete transference of his spiritual legacy onto his followers.

There can be little doubt that the Biblical writers believed in the existence of Satan and evil spirits and was confirmed by their own experiences in their lives. The question facing modern readers of the Bible today is do they also believe that there is a Satan and evil spirits. Does the belief of Satan and evil spirits have any value for Christians living at the end of the twentieth century? Since

⁷ Prince, D. (2003) War in Heaven. New Zealand: Derek Prince Ministries, p52-53,58

⁸ Brand Prof C. (2007) Spiritual Warfare Six, Satan in Context. Pretoria p208

the Western thinking has been dominated by a worldview that is unsympathetic or supernaturalism in many forms.

According to Sydney HT Page, *“Belief in spiritual entities, whether good or evil, is often regarded as a vestige of primitive superstition that has no place in the modern world.”*⁹ It is undeniable that the intellectual tradition of the world is unsympathetic to belief in spirits, but it would be a serious mistake to think that modern scientific discoveries have shown such a belief to be inaccurate. The existence of incorporeal beings cannot be proved or disproved by scientific methods as the query is philosophical and theological in nature.

The worldview to which a person subscribes will indicate if the person believes in angels and demons. It should be noted that belief in a spiritual realm is remarkably widespread, being found in virtually every part of the world and every period of human history. Sydney HT Page writes: *“That so many different cultures exhibit some sort of belief in evil spirits demonstrates that the human experience of evil is such as to suggest the involvement of supra- mundane realities. Indeed, many in the Western world would agree that the appalling evil that we see around and within us cannot satisfactorily be explained by human perversity alone.”*¹⁰ Belief in the existence of the devil and demons is not inherently more difficult than believing in God who is good and may in fact, be implicit in such a belief. The most serious philosophical objection to faith in God who is good and all-powerful stems from the problem of evil. Can one believe in a God of moral perfection when the world contains so much evil? One of the responses of Christians to this problem is to argue that the evil in the world is due to freewill choices and decisions humankind make. Natural evil do exist, by Satan and his

⁹ Page, Syndey HT (1995) Powers of evil Grand Rapids, Michagan; Baker Books p267

¹⁰ Page, Syndey HT (1995) Powers of evil. Grand Rapids, Michagan; Baker Books p268

angels roaming the earth, therefore believing in evil spirits may thus play a significant role in preserving belief in the goodness of God.

There is pervasive biblical evidence of belief in the world of spirits today. Satan and his angels may not be at the centre of biblical revelation, but they represent an important aspect of the portrayal of the fallenness of creation and its need for redemption. The reality of the devil and his underlings is supported by the authority of Scripture (New Testament) and of Christ Himself and cannot simply be disregarded as they both teach with regards to evil spirits. It is helpful to believe in evil spirits and there are dangers associated with such beliefs but a sober and sensible conviction concerning the existence of the powers of darkness can be very beneficial as will be seen throughout this thesis.

The belief that the devil stands behind all evil provides an incentive for humans to come against all evil without fear that one is opposing God.

Believers need to accept the Biblical view of the defeat of the demonic – as will be seen in the teachings of the Lord Jesus Christ. Furthermore, the believer needs to take the demonological teaching of the Bible serious so that they can confront temptation and evil with confidence, knowing who they are in Christ. Believers need to revitalize their belief in the supernatural world and on the Biblical themes of conflict and victory.

Discretion is necessary to avoid the dangers of the demonic. The first danger is breeding fear and paranoia of the power of the devil and his evil spirits. Studies have shown that the demonic is consistent but they have to submit under the powers of God and the victory of Christ. Spiritual warfare is absent from

modern studies which convey a sense of assurance and confidence but rather lay and emphasis on the power and influence of the demonic forces.

The second danger is to appeal to Satan and the demons to excuse one's failings. People do not want to take responsibility for their fallen human nature and shift the blame for such to someone or something else. According to Sydney HT Page: *"One cannot help but suspect that this principle is compromised by those who claim that many of the people they counsel are victims of demonization, especially when the "demons" from which they are delivered bear the names of human vice."*¹¹

A third danger is the accepting of beliefs and practices that are Superstitious and sub-Christian. The Bible is thoroughly supernatural and cannot be understood properly unless that supernatural worldview is embraced. People need to evaluate supernatural with a critical eye before accepting it. Some popular writers seem to be very naïve in the way they accept and promote views that are more at home in the world of magic than in the world of Scripture.

The fourth danger is unrestrained speculation. The Bible is remarkably free of conjecture regarding the unseen realm and as a consequence, many questions simply does not get answered. People find it difficult to accept that the Bible is silent about matters concerning the world today for there is no biblical teaching. As there is no biblical foundation there is speculation about the names and ranks of evil spirits and the realms over which they rule (which is biblically untrue).

¹¹ Page, Sydney HT (1995) Powers of evil. Grand Rapids Michigan, Baker Books p270

The final danger is the danger of imbalance. There is a great deal of interest in spiritual warfare today. Popular literature leaves the impression that the primary battlefields are in the lives of those - who are the victims of Satanism or who are demon-possessed. This thesis will research the matter.

Believers need to “*put on the full armour of God so that they can take their stand against, the devil's schemes*”, for it is applicable to each one of us in the Body of Christ.

Put on the whole armor of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil.

Ephesians 6:11 (KJVR)

1.4 CHAPTER FOUR - Restoring The Image Of Christ In Mankind Through Apostolic Equipping Of Every Believer

Prayer and confession of the Word of God brings breakthroughs against any demonic opposition, therefore, prayer and confession of the Word are the two most powerful weapons believers have. When these two are combined a great release of God's power can be seen. Praying the Word of God overcome spiritual resistance to the plan of God for a persons life.

Brokenness is a precondition for healing. The power to heal is an incomprehensible mystery. The way of divine love can be experienced although not understood. By asking God to be “healed” to be “reconciled” humankind expose their brokenness. In the mutual dependence of the healing encounter, believers learn that they are healed by Him as believer's consent to heal others. Believers are reconciled as they reconcile. One's brokenness is a

precondition for healing because exploring from the very depths of one's brokenness come the power to heal.

As believers assent to heal one another, to care for one another, God assents to heal man, to care for man – that is the medium through which He chooses to encounter mankind as Healer.

Surely he hath borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows: yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted. But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed. All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

Isaiah 53:4-6 (KJVR)

This thesis deems that Jesus Christ is the Deep Mystery to all healing.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater works than these shall he do; because I go unto my Father.

John 14:12 (KJVR)

It is against this background that **End Time** counsellors have a leading and critical role to play. The role of the Christian counsellor in the capacity of planter, restorer and rebuilders of relationships in the Kingdom of God has been highly neglected until now. However, God is about to pour out a new and unique release of the Apostolic Anointing on the church to fulfil a much larger leadership role - not only on a personal level but in a larger societal context, namely to bring healing, restoration and transformation to the entire **End-time** Army of God. This task is in line with the apostolic-prophetic calling to prepare God's **End-time** Army, to be perfected and matured in spirit, soul and body (1

Thess. 5:23). The final **End-time** harvest will need Apostolic leadership, guidance and mentorship like never before.

Although the local church should be the safe haven where broken families and networks could get help, it is, sadly but true, not the case anymore. This also emphasizes the role of Apostolic counsellors to function as bridge builders, ministers of reconciliation (2 Cor. 5:18-20) and peacemakers between individuals, families, communities, churches and nations. It is critical for God's people to move forward from brokenness and division to experience the power of restoration. Apostolic counsellors will also play a vital role to prepare the Bride of Christ to be ready, perfect, matured and prepared for Her Husband. The function of the Apostolic counsellor is not only to help, advise, comfort and give godly counsel to the Body of Christ, but will lay the foundation upon which pastoral counselling and general Christian counselling can operate.

2. PROBLEM STATEMENT

It is undeniable that the intellectual tradition of the West is unsympathetic to belief in spirits, but it would be a serious mistake to think that modern scientific discoveries have shown such a belief to be erroneous. The simple fact of the matter is that the question of the existence of incorporeal beings cannot be proved or disproved by scientific methods.

This thesis requires a desire to think about the power of God, the reality of evil and the influence of Satan and some rather untraditional ways. Traditionally minded believers find this reality very disturbing. The warfare worldview in this

modern age believers live in depends upon the ability to realise the full horror of evil, which means acknowledging it on a concrete level. The reality of evil therefore requires the existence of God.

Many Christian counsellors are guilty of ignoring the divine Counsellor. It's time to rediscover God's in **true** Christian Apostolic counselling – that which trusts the Bible and the power of the Holy Spirit to conform a person to Christ.

The unregenerate have no facility for spiritual perception, nor do some believers. They cannot comprehend spiritual truth because they are spiritually dead (Ephesians 2:1), unable to respond to anything except their own sinful passions. The proposed proposal will look into the fact that true believers, on the other hand, are actually taught spiritual truth by God Himself (John 6:45). In fact, much of the Holy Spirit's ministry to you as a believer involves teaching you (John 14:26; 1 Corinthians 2:13; 1 John 2:20, 27); guiding you into the truth of Christ (John 16:13-14); and illuminating the truth for you (1 Corinthians 2:12).

3. PURPOSE AND SIGNIFICANCE (AIM) OF RESEARCH

The aim of this proposed thesis is not to give all answers to the fields of study and is therefore not an end in itself, but is an endeavour to understand a considerable piece of research as another step in developing a research career.

- The primary aim is to expound a critical review of what is currently known about 'inner healing and deliverance', as to how the work fits into the broader scheme of things, seen from a prophetic Christian perspective derived from a Spiritual Warfare Worldview.

- The proposed thesis is not an attack on individual Religious or Philosophical beliefs, except where the necessary to turn people from the false authority of the One-world-power to the one and only God.
- It is the mandate of the Apostolic counsellor to proclaim the message that true and lasting change; restoration and transformation will only come through the implementation of Biblical truths in human lives in all spheres of society. The goal of Apostolic counselling is to help and guide people beyond the things that hold them back; it is to restore, renew and rebuild people's mind sets and paradigms which limit their thinking, and which require adjustments and healing. The prophetic dimension in Apostolic counselling is to equip people in the development of an **End-time** perspective on all past experiences, relationships, traumatic incidents which influence their current mind patterns, emotions and behaviour. The required **End-time** perspective which people need to have is the spiritual truth of an epic battle between good and evil since the fall in the Garden of Eden; and which will culminate in the final battle of the ages between the Kingdom of Light versus the Kingdom of Darkness during the Battle of Armageddon and the Public Return of the Lord Jesus Christ on earth.
- Apostolic counselling in particular, becomes relevant and necessary - not only for guiding broken families back to restoration, but also in providing tools and how to apply Biblical truths to a hurting and broken community. The challenge is paramount for all who are being called to the ministry of counselling in the last days: to rise as leaders not only in the church but in also in the Christian home and family' the work place and in the global society at large. To accept and be equipped to respond to this purpose is the leading theme of the thesis.

- The purpose of this research is to evaluate and establish a Biblical view towards inner healing and demonization on a theoretical as well as a practical level.
- To demonstrate that Spirit filled Christians can become oppressed and even demonized.
- To demonstrate that Christians are not automatically set free after conversion.
- To demonstrate methods of deliverance.
- To demonstrate how confrontation works.
- To explain the hypothesis of spiritual warfare and demonic warfare.
- Discerning and researching spiritual warfare and demonic warfare.

4. OBJECTIVES

The objectives of the research are to answer the following questions

- Do we get Christian believers that are not Spirit filled?
- Does anyone know the origin of the devil?
- Why did Lucifer not have the knowledge to know that he did not have the power to overthrow the throne of God?
- Is God pleased with discussions about the devil?
- Isn't the devil just an impersonal influence?
- Why can't certain people express their emotions?
- What legal grounds does Satan have?
- Reasons why humankind are mostly captive?
- How can you have a bloodline curse if you have accepted the Lord and are a reborn Christian?
- What is the origin of demons?

- Are there various kinds or categories of demons?
- Where do demons live?
- What did Jesus personally say about the devil and demons?
- Why do demons wish to possess humans?
- When casting out devils, what is the evidence that a person has been delivered?
- What is the spirit of infirmity? How does it affect a person? How can you tell whether a person has a spirit of infirmity of a physical defect? Is it demon possession?
- What specific names does the Bible give to demon spirits?

5. THESIS/HYPOTHESIS/RESEARCH STATEMENT

Hypothesis 1. Once a person accepts Christ as the redeemer and lets the old self die off, and takes up Christ, it does not necessarily mean that the person is not still demonized. A righteous person is not automatically set free after conversion, but is in need of deliverance, especially in the areas of generational sin, child abuse, sexual sin, curses and occult involvement.

Hypothesis 2. When anxiety, fear, hatred, rage, shame, abandonment or doubt arises, one can confidently follow these feelings back to their source, expose the lies producing such emotion, and receive God's freeing truth. When truth is received and Christ's light drives out the lies which are causing a person's pain, one claims real faith.

6. DEMARCATION INCLUDING SCOPE AND LIMITATION

The following areas of the field study will be excluded

- A complete study of Gnosticism, New Age Religions, Freemasonry and other related fields will not be studied in-depth, but only the aspects that is used to lure people into this deception by opening of the spiritual third eye.
- The fields of Psychology and psychiatry per se will not be covered.

7. LITERATURE REVIEW

Some aspects of the following fields will be studied:

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| • Five Fold Ministry | • Apostolic Ministry |
| • Inner healing | • Deliverance |
| • Spiritual warfare | • Demonic warfare |
| • Demonic today | • Anointing of the Holy Spirit |
| • The Warfare Ministry of Jesus Christ | |

8. REFERENCING

The Harvard referencing method will be used in the footnotes throughout the document as well as in the Bibliography.

9. RESEARCH METHODOLOGY

A literature review together with an in-depth investigation on healing and deliverance will be used as a basis for the research of the different disciplines. The literature review will be reliant on the collection of data that will be necessary to demonstrate the different aspects of healing and deliverance.

In constructing this research project, executing the research and analyzing the data, a broad and deep body of literature was considered. An extensive literature study and Internet literature representation of the following sub-fields will be undertaken:

Spiritual warfare, reality of Satan, the concept of the demonic reality, the healing process, the warfare of Jesus, Esotericism and Exotericism, Theology and Biblical Research (Exogetical). The means, by which people set out to understand the nature of any phenomena present to their senses, includes (1) experience and authority, (2) reasoning and (3) research.

A. THE SPIRITUAL REALM AS AXIOM

Praise be to the God and father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who has blessed us in the heavenly realms with every spiritual blessing in Christ. For he chose us in him before the creation of the world to be holy and blameless in his sight

Ephesians 1:3-4 (NIV)

The spiritual realm is as real as the natural realm. In fact the spiritual realm determines what takes place in the natural realm.

God has blessed us in the heavenly realms with every spiritual blessing in Christ. When Jesus died and rose again He appeared to his disciples and then ascended up into heaven (Acts 1:9-11).

Although the location of heaven is up high above the earth, its operation is all over the earth and in our hearts. Once a person received the Lord Jesus Christ as his Lord and Saviour, Jesus came to live in his heart. Thus Heaven is in one's heart. The reborn Christian has access to the heavenly realm through Christ Jesus (Colossians 1:27, Colossians 3:3-4, Colossians 1:12-14)

The heavenly realm is where God has His provision. To receive from the heavenly realm, we need to reach out in faith and take it.

Reaching out in Faith is not believing for something that does not exist, but rather receiving something that God has already made available in the Spiritual realm and bringing it into our natural realm. Our salvation is a beautiful example. We received the salvation of Jesus by faith and became Children of God (John 1:12-13). Our faith reached out to take something that already existed in the spiritual realm. Jesus has already died for us. That is a truth. But except a person reaches out by faith and receives Jesus into his or her heart the salvation of Jesus (which although invisible to the natural eye) already available will not benefit that person.

“The spiritual realm is a real world, invisible to the natural eye but visible to the eye of faith”¹²

Several examples of people reaching out or seeing things in the spiritual realm exist in the Bible

¹² <http://www.wordlibrary.co.uk/article.php?id=177>

1. **Elijah and the widow** - (1 Kings 17:7-15)

Read the whole story. Notice that God had commanded (or made provision for) the widow to take care of Elijah. The widow was not even aware of this. Elijah had to tell her. The widow obeyed Elijah and the jar of flour was not used up nor did the oil run out. Elijah's faith was reaching out to receive God's provision in the heavenly or spiritual realm and bringing it into the natural realm.

2. **Elisha and his servant** - (2 Kings 6:8-17)

Read the whole story. Here again Christians see Elisha's servant's eyes of faith opened in answer to Elisha's prayer. Elisha saw God's provision in the spiritual realm.

3. **Jesus feeds 5,000** - (Matthew 14:15-21 Luke 9:12-17)

Jesus feeds over 5,000 people with five loaves of bread and two fish. Any guesses about how these few items of food were enough to feed all the people.

4. **Ten lepers healed** - (Luke 17:11-19)

Jesus sent ten lepers to go and show themselves to the high priest. An act of faith. Can you imagine what would have happened if the ten lepers had turned up in the high priest's office without being healed?

Jesus, as always, was aware that the leper's healing was already a done and concluded thing. As they went by faith to the high priest, they received their healing, which had already been made provision for in the spiritual realm, into their natural bodies.

The last example shows how our faith will work more effectively when we have a clear understanding of the spiritual realm.

Now faith is being sure of what we hope for and certain of what we do not see, This is what the ancients were commended for

Hebrews 11:1-2 (NIV)¹³

B. THE COMPARATIVE APPROACH

This proposed thesis deems to use a Comparative Approach.

A Definition of COMPARATIVE METHOD according to Merriam Webster is: a method of investigation (as of ethnologic phenomena and relations) based on comparison¹⁴

C. THEMATIC APPROACH

A Definition of *THEMATIC APPROACH* is:

(Education) teaching organized by theme rather than by school subject – the whole thematic approach to learning.¹⁵

Typically, interpreters are required to present complex and potentially dry subject matter to non-technical voluntary audiences (often consisting of tourists) in an interesting and engaging way.

The thematic approach used in this proposed thesis will involve any method that increases the relevance of an interpreter's theme to an audience, for example,

¹³ The heavenly or spiritual realm (<http://www.wordlibrary.co.uk/article.php?id=177>)

¹⁴ Definition: Comparative Method (<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/comparative%20method>)

¹⁵ Definition of thematic approach (<http://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/thematic-approach>)

comparisons, analogies and stories that link unfamiliar things to the things an audience already cares about.¹⁶

D. PARALLELISM

Parallelism is by definition two or more words, phrases, or clauses that are similar in length and grammatical form. By convention, items in a series appear in parallel grammatical form: a noun is listed with other nouns, an -ing form with other -ing forms, and so on.¹⁷

E. RESEARCH DESIGN

The research design refers to the overall strategy chosen to integrate the different components of the study in a coherent and logical way, thereby, ensuring you will effectively address the research problem; it constitutes the blueprint for the collection, measurement, and analysis of data.

The function of a research design is to ensure that the evidence obtained enables the researcher to effectively address the research problem as unambiguously as possible. In social sciences research, obtaining evidence relevant to the research problem generally entails specifying the type of evidence needed to test a theory, to evaluate a program, or to accurately describe a phenomenon. However, researchers can often begin their investigations far too early, before they have thought critically about what information is required to answer the study's research questions.

¹⁶ http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thematic_interpretation

¹⁷ <http://grammar.about.com/od/pq/g/parallelstructureterm.htm>

Without attending to these design issues beforehand, the conclusions drawn risk being weak and unconvincing and, consequently, will fail to adequately address the overall research problem.

Given this, the length and complexity of research designs can vary considerably, but any sound design will do the following things:

- Identify the research problem clearly and justify its selection,
- Review previously published literature associated with the problem area,

Clearly and explicitly specify hypotheses [i.e., research questions] central to the problem selected, effectively describe the data which will be necessary for an adequate test of the hypotheses and explain how such data will be obtained, and describe the methods of analysis which will be applied to the data in determining whether or not the hypotheses are true or false.¹⁸

F. AN INTEGRATED DESIGN TYPE

There are many ways to classify research designs, but sometimes the distinction is artificial and other times different designs are combined. Nonetheless, the list below offers a number of useful distinctions between possible research designs.

- Descriptive (e.g.: case-study, naturalistic observation, survey)

¹⁸ <http://libguides.usc.edu/content.php?pid=83009&sid=818072>

- Correlational (e.g.: case-control study, observational study)
- Semi-experimental (e.g.: field experiment, quasi-experiment)
- Experimental (Experiment with random assignment)
- Review (Literature review, Systematic review)
- Meta-analytic (Meta-analysis)

Sometimes a distinction is made between “fixed” and “flexible” or, synonymously, “quantitative” and “qualitative” research designs.¹⁹ However, fixed designs need not be quantitative, and flexible design need not be qualitative. In fixed designs, the design of the study is fixed before the main stage of data collection takes place. Fixed designs are normally theory driven; otherwise it’s impossible to know in advance which variables need to be controlled and measured. Often, these variables are measured quantitatively. Flexible designs allow for more freedom during the data collection process. One reason for using a flexible research design can be that the variable of interest is not quantitatively measurable, such as culture. In other cases, theory might not be available before one starts the research.²⁰

G. RESEARCH INSTRUMENTS

The Choice of methodology / of the Research Instrument is where the Researcher chooses the data collection tool, such as a survey, experiment, etc. to achieve the Research Objectives.

¹⁹ Robson, C. (1993). *Real-world research: A resource for social scientists and practitioner – researchers*. Malden: Blackwell Publishing.

²⁰ http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Research_design#Design_types_and_sub-types

Choosing the Research Instrument is done after Conceptualization and the choice of Units of Analysis and must be done before Operationalizing Concepts via construction of the Instrument. The following research instruments will be used in this proposed thesis:

1. Select a Topic
2. Formulate a Thesis Statement...
3. Choose the Types of Analyses
4. Research and Write a Literature Review and Refine the Thesis
5. Formulate the Research Objectives and Questions
6. Conceptualize a topic
7. Choose Research Method / the Research Instrument
8. Operationalize concepts / construct the instrument
9. Formulate the Data Collection Strategy
10. Obtain HIC Approval
11. Perform a Pilot Study
12. Collect Data
13. Prepare the Data for processing and analysis
14. Process and Analyse Data
15. Interpret and make Inferences about Data
16. Write the Research Paper
17. Write Final HIC Report

With the topic, thesis, types of analysis, lit review, objectives & conceptualization understood, the researcher should have a general idea of which data collection method is best suited for the topic.

The Relationship between Types of Analysis & Research Instruments is that of Questions & How the researcher will determine the Answer.²¹

H. RESEARCH PROCEDURES

Esotericism and Exotericism, Theology and Biblical Research (Exegetical)

10. PROPOSED TIME FRAME

	DUE DATE
Research	April 2014 – May 2014
Proposal	June 2014
Prolegomena	March 2014
Chapter 1	June 2016
Chapter 2	July 2016
Chapter 3	August 2016
Chapter 4	September 2016
Conclusion	October 2016
Thesis due	October 2016

²¹

<http://people.uvawise.edu/pww8y/Resources/MERes/ResInstruments/00ResInstruments.html>

11. PROPOSED TABLE OF CONTENT

	Chapter Title
Prolegomena	
Chapter 1	The Life And Work Of Jesus Christ
Chapter 2	The Christian Life As Spiritual Warfare
Chapter 3	The reality of Satan, the Devil – Supernatural solicitation to sin
Chapter 4	Restoring the Image of Christ in Mankind through Apostolic Equipping of Every Believer
Conclusion	

12. DECLARATION

This proposed Thesis does not contain work previously published by the author, nor work under consideration for publication. The proposed Thesis is completely the result of my own work under the supervision of my Promotor.

A. ETHICAL DECLARATION

This proposed Thesis proposes to comply with Ethical rules governing the conduct of every individual that participates in the research process.

According to Lues & Lategan on Ethical Guidelines, this Research Protocol proposes to pursue the following Ethical Guidelines:

1. Every respondent (counselee) will be provided with sufficient information about the research project to make an informed decision whether they want to take part of the research or not. Respondents are free to withdraw from the research at any point.
2. The identities of the respondents will remain anonymous and their personal information will remain private.
3. The respondent's privacy, schedule and comfort will be considered with every interview. All interviews will be arranged with prior planning and notification. Location and distances to be travelled for the interview will be taken into account.
4. If any promises are made to the respondents, the promise will be kept.

B. ROLE OF THE RESEARCHER

In quantitative studies, the researcher's role is, theoretically non-existent. That is in the perfect quantitative study, participants act independently of the researcher as if he or she were not there. In experimental studies, a double-blind placebo controlled study is the gold standard and is used to try and remove biases and subjectivity from the study. Quantitative studies ideally should be repeatable by others and, under the same conditions, should yield similar results. In correlational studies, the data are collected without regard to the participants or the person collecting the data.

In qualitative studies, the role of the researcher is quite different. The research is considered an instrument of data collection (Denzin & Lincoln, 2003). This

means that data are mediated through this human instrument, rather than through inventories, questionnaires, or machines. To fulfil this role, consumers of the research need to know about the human instrument. The qualitative researcher needs to describe relevant aspects of self, including any biases and assumptions, any expectations, and experiences to qualify his or her ability to conduct the research (Greenbank, 2003). In addition, it is a useful for the qualitative researcher to keep a research journal explicating personal reactions and reflections, insights into self and past, in a separate journal, and how bracketing takes place.

The qualitative researcher should also explain if their role is emic -- an insider, who is a full participant in activity, program, or phenomenon, or the role is more etic – from an outside view, more of an objective viewer. There could be a great deal of variations in between – sometimes a researcher starts as an outsider and then becomes a member of the group. Or the reverse can occur – the researcher starts as a member of a group then becomes a more objective observant (Punch, 1998).

A good qualitative researcher asks probing questions, then listens, then thinks, then asks more probing question to get to deeper levels of the conversation.

An effective qualitative researcher seeks to build a picture using ideas and theories from a wide variety of sources.²²

²²Dr. Marilyn Simon <http://dissertation recipes.com/wp-content/uploads/2011/04/Role-of-the-Researcher.pdf>

13 BIBLIOGRAPHY

Anderson. Neil T (2000) Victory over the darkness. Realizing the power of your Identity in Christ. Vereeniging RSA, Christian Art Publishers

Basham, Don W (1972) Deliver us from evil, Grand Rapids, MI Chosen.

Basham, Don W (1991) Can a Christian have a demon? Kirkwood; Impact Books

Baxter. Mary K & Lowery Dr TL (2006) A Divine Revelation of Spiritual Warfare New Kensington, PA Whitaker House.

Berkhof, H (1962) Christ and the Powers, trans JH Yoder. Scottdale Penn; Herald

Bevere, John (1997) The fear of the Lord. Orlando, FL; Creation House

Bloomer, George G (2003) The Battle Plan, Strategies for Engaging in Spiritual Warfare. Denver CO; Legacy Publishers International.

Bounds EM Guide to Spiritual Warfare. Whitaker House.

Brand Prof C. (2007) Spiritual Warfare Six, Satan in Context. Pretoria

Brand, Connie MJ (2005) An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy Considered from Philosophic-Theological Perspective.

Brooks, Thomas (1984) Precious Remedies Against Satan's Devices. The Banner of

Truth Trust.

Bufford, Rodger K (1988) Counselling on the Demonic. Dallas Texas; Word

Christenson, Evelyn (1991) Battling the princes of Darkness. England; Scripture
Press

Eckhardt John (2008) Prayers that Rout Demons Prayers for Defeating Demons
and

Overthrowing the Power of Darkness. Lake Mary, Florida, Charisma
House

Evslin Bernard (2006) Gods, Demigods and Demons. London, IB Tauris & Co
Ltd

Ferrel L Emerson (2009) Immersed in Him. Ponte Vedra, Florida; Voice of Light
Ministries

Garrison, Mary (1980) How to Conduct Spiritual Warfare. Hudson, Florida.

Geisler, Norman L (1978) The Roots of Evil. Grand Rapids; Zondervan.

Gibson Neol & Phyl (1993) Evicting Demonic Intruders Guidelines for pastors
and counsellors on ministering freedom to oppressed Christians. Chichester
West

Sussex United Kingdom; New Wine Press

Gildenhuys, Tiaan (2003) In My Naam sal hulle duiwels. Kameeldrift Oos,
Pretoria

SA; Groep 7 Drukkers

Green, Micheal (1981) Exposing the Prince of Darkness. Ann Arbor, MI;
Servant

Publications

Grein, Janny (2003) Called, Appointed and Anointed, Prepare Your Life to Be a
Vessel for the Anointing and Glory of God. Tulsa Oklahoma; Harrison
House.

Hammond, Frank D (1991) Demons and Deliverance in the Ministry of Jesus;
Impact

Christian Books.

Harrison Steve (2007) Consuming Love: Commitment, Friendship, and Passion
What it means to be connected to God's Heart. Shippensburg, PA; Destiny
Image

Publishers Inc.

Horrobin Peter (2008) Healing through Deliverance. Lancaster, England,
Sovereign

World

Hunt, Dave (1988) The New Spirituality. Eugene; Oregon; Harvest House
Publishers.

Hunt, Dave (1996) In Defence of the Faith. Eugene; Oregon; Harvest House
Publishers.

Ing, Richard (1996) Spiritual Warfare. New Kensington. PA; Whitaker House.

Joyner, Rick (2002) *Breaking the Power of Evil*. Shippensburg, PA; Destiny Image

Publishers.

Leivestad, R (1954) *Christ the Conqueror: Ideas of Conflict and Victory in the New*

Testament. New York; Macmillan

Liardon, Roberts (1994) *School of the Spirit: Operating Powerfully in the Spirit Realm*. Orlando, Florida; Creation House.

Lloyd-Jones, D Martyn (1986) *The Christian Warfare, An Exposition of Ephesians*

6:10-13 Grand Rapids, MI; Baker Books.

Moltmann, Jurgen (1993) *The Trinity and the Kingdom of God: the doctrine of God*.

London; SCM

Morris. Leon (1994) *The Cross of Jesus*. Grand Rapids, MI; Eerdmans Publishing

Nori, D (2005) *Breaking Generational Curses Releasing God's power in us, our childrend and our destiny*. Shippensburg, PA, Destiny Image Publishers Inc

Olukoya Dr DK (1996) *Spiritual warfare and the Home*. Lagos Nigeria, The Battle Cry

Christian Ministries

Olukoya Dr DK (1998) Deliverance for the Head. Lagos Nigeria, MFM Ministries

Olukoya Dr DK (1998) Great Deliverance. Lagos Nigeria, MFM Ministries

Olukoya Dr DK (1998) Power against Spiritual Terrorists. Lagos Nigeria, MFM
Ministries

Olukoya Dr DK (2001) Deliverance from Spirit Husband and Spirit Wife Release
from

Evil Spiritual Marriage Lagos Nigeria, The Battle Cry Christian Ministries

Olukoya Dr DK (2004) Dealing with the Evil Powers of your Father's House.
Lagos

Nigeria, MFM Press

Page, Syndey HT (1995) Powers of evil: A Biblical Study of Satan and Demons.
Grand Rapids, Michagan, Baker Books

Piper, John (2006) When the Darkness will not Lift. Wheaton Illinois, Crossway
Books a publishing ministry of Good News publishers.

Prince, D (1995) Baptism in the Holy Spirit Christchurch, New Zealand, Derek
Prince

Ministries-International

Prince, D.(2003) War in Heaven. New Zealand: Derek Prince Ministries

Prof Brand CMJ, (2000) Spiritual Warfare Three, The Sin War. Pretoria

Ryle, JC forward by Lloyd-Jones, Martyn D (1952) Holiness, Its nature, Hindrances,

Difficulties and Roots. Great Britain; Burleigh Press

Ryrie, Charles C. (1999) Basic Theology. Chicago, Moody Press.

Sandford, John & Paula (2003) Prophets, Healers & the emerging church.

Shippensburg, PA, Destiny Image Publishers Inc

Sherman Dean, (1995) Spiritual Warfare for every Christian, How to live in victory

and retake the land. Seattle WA; Ywam Publishing.

Subritzky Bill (1985) Demons Defeated. Tonbridge England, Sovereign World Ltd

Sumrall Dr Lester (1983) 101 Questions & Answers on Demon Powers. Tulsa

Oklahoma, Harrison House Inc

Sumrall Dr Lester (2003) Demons The Answer Book. New Kensington, PA Whitaker

House.

Symington Ken (2011) Loved like never before Discovering the Father heart of God.

Lancaster England, Sovereign World

Uzorma lyke Nathan (2007) Exposing the Rulers of Darkness in Recognition of the

Highest Power. Effurun, Warri, Nigeria, Harbinger Christian Publications
Uzorma Iyke Nathan (2007) Occult Grandmaster now in Christ. Effurun, Warri,
Nigeria, Harbinger Christian Publications
Uzorma Iyke Nathan (2007) Withces Wizards and all the Powers of Darkness.
Effurun, Warri, Nigeria, Harbinger Christian Publications
Wright Dr H Norman, Renetzky Larry (2007) Healing Grace for Hurting People.
Vereeniging RSA, Christian Art Publishers

14 PERIODICALS

Benoit, Pierre (1983) Pauline Angelology and Demonology: Reflexions on the
Designations of the Heavenly Powers and on the Origin of
Angelic Evil, Religions Studies Bulletin 3: 1-18.
Erlandson, Doug (1991) A New Perspective on the Problem of Evil.
Antithesis, Vol. 2, No. 2. Covenant Community Church of Orange
County.
Graham, H (1993) Twelftree, Jesus the Exorcist: A Contribution to the
Study of the Historical Jesus, WUNT 2.54. Tübingen: Mohr;
Siebeck, pp.217-24.
Griffin, David (1993) Why Demonic Power Exists: Understanding the
Church's Enemy, LTQ 28: 224.

Hiers, Richard H (1974) Satan, Demons, and the Kingdom of God,

Scottish Journal of Theology 27: 4Q-41.

Mettinger, T N D (1985) Fighting the Powers of Chaos and Hell -

Towards the Biblical Portrait of God, ST 39.

Recker (1971) Satan: In the Power of Dethroned? CTJ 6: 133-55.

15 INTERNET RESOURCES

Dr. Marilyn Simon

(<http://dissertationrecipes.com/wp-content/uploads/2011/04/Role-of-the-Researcher.pdf>)

Erlandson, Doug (1991) A new Perspective on the Problem of Evil.

(<http://cspar181.uah.edu?RbS/JOB/de.html>).

Gondwe, Eric. Spiritual Warfare Book 1: A Major Spiritual Warfare and Deliverance Alert.

(<http://spiritualwarfare.jesuswork.org/html\christian-spiritual-warfare-1.html>)

Merino, Reed K (1998) The Origin and Spread of Evil.

(http://home1.gte.net/rmerino/03_Fall.htm)

Stedman, Ray C. Spiritual Warfare and Deliverance Book 4: - Spiritual Warfare: Winning the Daily Battle with Satan.

([http://spiritualwarfare.jesuswork.org/html\christian-spiritual warfare-1.html](http://spiritualwarfare.jesuswork.org/html\christian-spiritual-warfare-1.html))

16 DISCLAIMER

This thesis as outlined is a brief overview of the topic only, based on information at the disposal of the author. The table of contents as presented is based on such information, researched by the author up until the time submitting this thesis. However, research at this time was not performed in-depth. The author therefore reserves the right to add or remove content from the work, based on the outcome of the research. If it is found by the author that an important omission was made, such a topic will be added with guidance from the promoter only, without prior consultation with the university or request for permission.

Conversely, if a topic is researched and it is found to not enhance the objectives of the work, it will be removed at the guidance of the promoter, but without permission from or consulting with the university.

-----oOo-----



Chapter One - The Life And Work Of Jesus Christ

“Scripture reveals that the Lord Jesus Christ is the eternal Son of God, who always existed with the Father and the Holy Spirit, and who by His incarnation took upon Himself the form of man and became the God-Man. In the one person of Christ, there are two natures, human and divine, each in its completeness and integrity. They are distinguishable but indivisible, so that He is fully man and fully God. It is this sinless union of the divine and human natures which qualifies Him to be the only sacrificial mediator between God and man.”¹

¹ Conner, Kevin J (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p153

1 INTRODUCTION/BACKGROUND

God calls Himself “Father”, from the beginning of creation, it has been His heart. In his book, *Loved like never before*, Ken writes, “*scripture is simply awash with confirming terms, such as new born babies, children, sons and daughters, firstborn, family in heaven and earth. God truly wants to father us with great love, imagine that, great love.*”²

Behold, what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God: therefore the world knoweth us not, because it knew him not.

1 John 3:1 (KJVR)

God didn't send His Son, Jesus to bring people to Jesus, God sent Jesus to bring His people back to Him, their Father – God the Father was the great prize.

Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

John 14:6 (KJVR)

Jesus Christ died on the cross, so that humankind could be rescued, saved totally and completely. Jesus also said that no one could come to Him unless God the Father – His Father – had drawn them to Him.

No man can come to me, except the Father which hath sent me draw him: and I will raise him up at the last day.

John 6:44 (KJVR)

² Symington, Ken (2011) *Loved Like Never Before: Discovering the Father Heart of God*. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Ltd. p41

And he said, Therefore said I unto you, that no man can come unto me, except it were given unto him of my Father.

John 6:65 (KJVR)

According to these Scriptures, God the Father wanted mankind to follow His perfect will just as Jesus did when He was here on earth. God wanted all individuals in His family. His Son had to suffer death on a cross to make way for all people to come into a real Father/son, Father/daughter relationship with Him.

Nevertheless I tell you the truth; It is expedient for you that I go away: for if I go not away, the Comforter will not come unto you; but if I depart, I will send him unto you.

John 16:7 (KJVR)

John 16 verse 7, Jesus was preparing His Disciples before He left. Jesus told them that He was leaving, but He will send them the Holy Spirit who is going to be their Comforter. As people are serving God, there are issues that they are going through and it is only the Holy Spirit that can comfort them. So humankind was not left as orphans.

And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you forever; Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you. I will not leave you comfortless: I will come to you.

John 14:16-18 (KJVR)

Who is the Holy Spirit? The Holy Spirit is the third person of the Trinity. There is the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit and all of them work in harmony and a person will find that Holy Spirit is the divine power of God. Humans have many other powers which are not divine, but - His is divine.

But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

Acts 1:8 (KJVR)

Christians are already in the body of Christ and the baptism in the Holy Spirit is a supernatural seal that is given to each individual member, by which Jesus Christ acknowledges the member as a part of His body. Only Jesus Christ can confer this supernatural seal. Jesus Christ is the only one that has the privilege to acknowledge the membership of His body and sets the Apostolic seal upon the believers who receives it. In John 1:33 John the Baptist states:

And I knew him not: but he that sent me to baptize with water, the same said unto me, Upon whom thou shalt see the Spirit descending, and remaining on him, the same is he which baptizeth with the Holy Ghost.

John 1:33 (KJVR)

The ultimate purpose of baptism with the Holy Spirit is the unity of Christ's body and it accomplishes this by making individual members of the body effective agents in bringing about unity, not division, in the body.

For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit.

1 Corinthians 12:13 (KJVR)

In the Book of Acts Chapter 1 verse 8, as Jesus was ascending to heaven He told his Disciples to wait upon the Holy Spirit, to wait so that they can be

endured with power, ***dunamis***³, so that they can be witnesses in Jerusalem, in all Judea and in the outermost parts of the world.

Believers need the Spirit of God in order for them to rise up against the things that the enemy is doing because it is the Spirit of God that is going to teach them, guide them and show them what they need to do in this generation.

People will go through challenges and terrible times, there will be tribulations but in all those things God and His Spirit will comfort them. They have the Holy Spirit who will comfort them in all their situations and they will find that He is omnipresent. Holy Spirit wants to walk with God's people, be with them every day in all they do.

The Holy Spirit knows the truth and He speaks the truth. To walk in victory God's people, need to be filled with His Spirit on a daily basis.

Holy Spirit is also the teacher who is willing to teach God's people everything but most of the time the church has locked Him in certain areas and they will find that they do things in their own knowledge. People do things in their own ideas, they do things in their ideologies and they will find that the church becomes lifeless because without the Holy Spirit there is no life. He is the one that gives life. He is the one who enables the church to move. Holy Spirit will also help God's people in prayer for He is also the helper.

³ See Terms, Definitions and Abbreviations

Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities: for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered. And he that searcheth the hearts knoweth what is the mind of the Spirit, because he maketh intercession for the saints according to the will of God.

Romans 8:26-27 (KJVR)

In Matthew Chapter 24 verse 24, the Bible tells us that in the **last days** many false Christ's and false prophets shall come and if it is possible they are going to deceive even the elect of God. The question can be asked how Christians will be able to differentiate between the true prophets, the true servants of God and the false one and this is only revealed to Believers through the power of the Holy Spirit. These false prophets are capable of doing many miracles, signs and wonders. They are opening blind eyes, they are doing what Jesus did but they are not worshiping the Lord in Spirit and truth but when a person has the Spirit of God he will be able to discern them.

For there shall arise false Christs, and false prophets, and shall show great signs and wonders; insomuch that, if it were possible, they shall deceive the very elect.

Matthew 24:24 (KJVR)

If Christians want to walk in victory and be victorious the rest of their lives, they need to be filled by the Holy Spirit. It is a daily thing, it is not a once off thing, every day when they wake up they need to ask God to fill them and He will lead them and direct their paths. God will guide them with everything they want to do, they will hear His voice behind them, telling them this is the way, walk in it.

During the last few years there has been an up rise in the prophetic movement, the Holy Spirit is revealing Jesus in a marvellous way. New torrents of anointing, knowledge and revelation of Jesus have been descending upon the Church and therefore it is important for the Body of Christ to gain this knowledge and grow in their relationship with Jesus Christ by studying His life and works.⁴

2 THE GOOD NEWS AS IN THE FOUR GOSPELS: MATTHEW, MARK, LUKE AND JOHN

The importance of the Gospel accounts of Jesus' life can never be overestimated. Henry H Halley says:

"The four Gospels are, by all odds, the most important part of the Bible: more important than all the rest of the Bible put together. More important than all the rest of the books in the world put together: for we could better afford to be without the knowledge of everything else than to be without the knowledge of Christ. Bible books that precede are anticipatory, and those that follow are explanatory, of the Hero of the four Gospels."

Studying the life and teachings of Jesus there is not one but four accounts to follow. The story about Jesus – the 'gospel' or 'good news' as described by the writers– is told in four different books: the gospel according to Matthew, Mark, Luke and John.

⁴ Ferrel, Dr. Anna Mendez (2010) Seated in Heavenly Places. United States of America: Voice of the Light Ministries. p197

Scholars believe that Mark was the first of these Gospels to be written and was a source for Matthew and Luke. Each Gospel writer has his own purpose and readership and the four do not contain exactly the same material.⁵

2.1 Why There Are Four Gospels

Although the Gospels share some material, each Gospel reveals a unique introduction to the Person of Jesus. Each was written for a particular readership and brought out some special aspect of Jesus and his work.

2.1.1 Matthew

Matthew wrote for Jewish readers, his writing style was very well organized, with passages about the life of Jesus followed by sections of teaching. Matthew is the most comprehensive of the four Gospels, beginning the account before Jesus' birth, giving a complete genealogy of Jesus Christ⁶ and ending with Jesus' words to the disciples before returning to God his Father as seen in Matthew 28.

Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Matthew 28:19-20 (KJVR)

⁵ Batchelor, Mary (1993) Opening up the Bible. Hatfield, Pretoria: JL van Schaik Publishers. p107

⁶ Book of Matthew Explained (<http://www.bible-studys.org/Bible%20Books/Matthew/Book%20of%20Matthew.html>)

The author of the gospel Matthew was Matthew also called Levi, he was also one of twelve Apostles. The Gospel was probably written between A.D.⁷ 60-65. The purpose for the Gospel of Matthew is to prove that Jesus is the Messiah and to explain the Kingdom of God. Quoting the Old Testament Matthew recognized an event as a 'fulfilment' of some passages there, which could have been a prediction.

An example was when Gabriel announces the forthcoming birth of Jesus to the virgin Mary, Matthew quoted from the Septuagint (Greek) version of Isaiah 7:

Therefore the Lord himself shall give you a sign; Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.

Isaiah 7:14 (KJV)

"*Immanuel*" means, "God with us".⁷ This link-up would especially interest Jewish readers. Matthew shows how the new revelation of God in Jesus is complete and perfect, compared with the revelation of God in the Old Testament. He is interested too in what is going to happen in the future and records several parables concerned with the last judgment.⁸

Matthew (Levi) was a despised tax collector. His life was changed by this man from Galilee, the Lord Jesus Christ. He arranged what Jesus taught in five main sections, what Jesus taught on the mountain (5:1 - 7:29), King Jesus sends his friends out with his message (10:5-42), stories about where God rules (13:1-52), relationships in the Christian society (18:1-35) and when Jesus

⁷ See Terms, Definitions and Abbreviations

⁸ Batchelor, Mary (1993) *Opening up the Bible*. Hatfield, Pretoria: JL van Schaik Publishers. p107

returns to the earth (24:1-25:46) but between these sections, the account emphasises is on what Jesus did.⁹

As this Gospel is read, one should listen to Matthew's message, namely that Jesus is the Christ, the King of kings, and Lord of lords. One should celebrate His victory over evil and death, and make Jesus the Lord of one's life.

2.1.2 Mark

The Gospel of Mark was written by John Mark. He was not one of the 12 disciples but he did accompany Paul on his first missionary journey. The purpose for the Gospel is to present the person, work and teachings of Jesus. The Gospel of Mark was written between A.D. 55 and 65. Mark was written for the Gentile, or non-Jewish readers. Papias, writing about AD 130, refers to Mark as 'Peter's interpreter' who accurately wrote down all that he remembered of what Christ had said or done'. This is an exciting suggestion, for it means that Mark had his information straight from the lips of one of Jesus' closest disciples.

Mark is the shortest of the four Gospels, opens with Jesus' baptism and temptation, he quickly prepares the reader for Christ's ministry. The Gospel of Mark is concise, straightforward and chronological.

Mark translated the apostle Peter's Aramaic into Greek when he wrote the account down, some of the words that Jesus spoke was left in Aramaic. In the

⁹ Matthew's Good News (<http://www.easyenglish.info/bible-commentary/matthew-lbw.htm>)

story of the raising of Jairus' daughter, Mark preserves the actual words of Jesus: '*Talitha kum*', meaning '*Little girl, get up!*'

Mark gives an account of the humanity of Jesus, he shows him tired out, falling asleep in the boat, or angry when the disciples turned away the children who came to him. Mark may also have written his Gospel to prepare Christians for the persecution that was soon coming to them, he portrays to the Believers a suffering Jesus.

In Mark's Gospel there is no record of Jesus' birth, the disciples gradually begin to discover who he is, and halfway through the book Peter declares that he is God's Messiah. The second half of the Gospel, Jesus tries to prepare them for his brutal death. He is not going to be a military Messiah – but one who will suffer and die and is raised to life for evermore.

John Mark, the person named by tradition as the author – may have put himself into the Gospel story. He describes a young man who was there when Jesus was arrested. He took to his heels, leaving his sole garment behind when the soldiers tried to catch him too. Mark's mother's home was an early headquarters for Jesus' followers. Perhaps the Last Supper was held there.¹⁰

And when he had considered the thing, he came to the house of Mary the mother of John, whose surname was Mark; where many were gathered together praying.

Acts 12:12 (KJV)

¹⁰ Batchelor, Mary (1993) *Opening up the Bible*. Hatfield, Pretoria: JL van Schaik Publishers. p107

2.1.3 Luke

The author of the Gospel was a doctor, a Greek, and Gentile Christian, called Luke. Luke is probably the only non-Jewish writer in the New Testament and was a close friend and companion of Paul. The purpose of the Gospel is to present an accurate account of the life of Christ as the perfect human and Saviour. The Gospel of Luke is part one of a two-volume account of the Christian faith, the book of Acts being part two, and the two books go together.¹¹

A lot is learned about Luke from what he includes in his Gospel. He has a special care and concern for the poor and for women (underprivileged too). He emphasizes prayer, especially in the life of Jesus. He also includes three parables about prayer which none of the other writers has. He alone gives us Mary's song of thanksgiving to God when she was pregnant, the stories of the baby Jesus cradled in the manger and of the visit of the shepherds. Perhaps Luke heard them from Mary herself. Some put the date of this Gospel at AD 57-60 but others place it after AD70.

2.1.4 John

The author of the gospel of John was John the apostle, the son of Zebedee, brother of James. The purpose of the gospel of John is to prove conclusively that Jesus is the Son of God and that all who believe in him will have eternal life. Instead of mentioning John by name, the Gospel writer refers to 'the disciple whom Jesus loved'. Some scholars think that it was not John himself but a disciple of his, probably called John too, who wrote the Gospel. For a

¹¹ Life Application Study Bible. (2004) Wheaton, Illinois: Tyndale House Publishers Inc. p2112

long time, John was thought to be the last Gospel written – about AD90-95 – but there are those who now believe it to be much earlier, say 40-65.

John's Gospel is very different from the other three, both in the material included and the way it is treated. Jesus is recognized as Messiah from the beginning. There are no story parables but instead some sayings of Jesus about himself: '*I am the good shepherd*' '*I am the bread of life*' and others along with the discussions that followed these claims.

The 'I AM' claims of Jesus as seen in John's Gospel:

- ❖ I am the Bread of life (6:35)
- ❖ I am the Light of the world (8:12)
- ❖ I am the good Shepherd (10:11)
- ❖ I am the Door of the sheep (10:7)
- ❖ I am the Resurrection and the Life (11:25)
- ❖ I am the Way, the Truth and the Life (14:6)
- ❖ I am the true Vine (15:1)

Only a limited number of miracles are recorded by John and these are always spoken of as signs. Often they are followed by Jesus' claim to be able to meet the spiritual need of which the physical miracle has been the sign. For example, Jesus fed 5,000 with bread and fish before claiming to be the bread of life – the one who could meet a person's innermost need. He raised Lazarus from death, and claimed to be the resurrection and the life – the one who could give eternal, never-failing life to those who trust him.

John the eyewitness chose eight of Christ's miracles to reveal Christ's divine/human nature and his life giving mission:

- * Water turned into wine (2:1-11)
- * The official's son at Capernaum healed (4:46-54)
- * The sick man healed at the pool of Bethesda (5:1-9)
- * The man born blind given his sight (9)
- * Jesus walking on the water (6:19-21)
- * 5,000 people fed (6:5-13)
- * Lazarus raised from death (11:1-44)
- * A miraculous catch of fish (21:1-11)

John is a Gospel marked by contrasts. The most striking is that of darkness and light. Jesus and His truth are the light which darkness can never put out. The wonderful first fourteen verses, known as the Prologue, contain many of the themes that recur throughout the Gospel:

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. The same was in the beginning with God.
John 1:1-2 (KJV)

In this Scripture John presented Jesus as the Creator of all things, and as an addition he presents Him as Judge, equal with God, the Resurrector and the Rewarder, the Redeemer and the Revealer¹². John mentions several different occasions on which Jesus was in Jerusalem. But for him, one would not know of these journeys, to the capital. John seems to be writing for Jews and Gentiles. His Prologue speaks of Jesus as the Word who was with God and

¹² La Haye, Tim (1997) *Jesus who is He?* Great Britain: Marshall Library. p29

was God from the beginning, echoing the language of Genesis 1. This idea is one that can be understood in terms of Greek as well as Jewish thinking.

2.2 A Possible Order Of Events From The Four Gospels

	Matthews	Mark	Luke	John
Events				
Announcement of the birth of John the Baptist			1:5-23	
Announcement of the birth of Jesus	1:18-24		1:26-38	
Jesus' mother, Mary, visits Elizabeth			1:39:56	
Birth of John the Baptist			1:57-79	
Birth of Jesus	1:25		2:1-39	
Visit of the Wise Man	2:1-12			
Flight into Egypt and return to Nazareth	2:13-23			
Jesus' boyhood visit to the Temple			2:41-50	
John the Baptist's preaching	3:1-12	1:1-8	3:1-18	1:19-28
Year 1				
Jesus' baptism	3:13-17	1:9-11	3:21-22	1:29-34
The temptation of Jesus	4:1-11	1:12-13	4:1-13	
The first Passover				2:13-25
Meeting with Nicodemus			3:1-21	
Meeting with Samaritan woman				4:1-42
John the Baptist imprisoned	14:3-5	6:17-20	3:10-20	
Jesus rejected in Nazareth			4:16-30	
Call of the disciples Andrew, Simon, James & John	4:18-22	1:16-20	5:1-11	
Call of Matthew (Levi)	9:9-13	2:13-17	5:27-32	

Year 2				
The second Passover			5:1-47	
Twelve apostles chosen	10:2-4	3:13-19	6:12-16	
Sermon on the Mount (Plain)	5:1-7:28		6:20-49	
The Twelve sent out	10:1-11:1	6:6-13	9:1-6	
Death of John the Baptist	14:1-12	6:14-29	9:7-9	
Year 3				
The third Passover			6:1-71	
Peter acknowledges Jesus as the Christ	16:13-20	8:27-30	9:18-21	
Jesus foretells his death and resurrection	16:21-28	8:31-9:1	9:22-27	
The Transfiguration	17:1-13	9:2-13	9:28-36	
The seventy disciples sent			10:1-20	
Jesus at Jerusalem at the Festival of Tabernacles				7:5-52
Jesus with Martha and Mary			10:38-42	
Jesus in Jerusalem at the Festival of Dedication				10:22-38
Last visit to Jerusalem	20:20-28	10:32-34		
In Jericho			19:1-10	
Bartimaeus	20:29-34	10:46-52		
The last week				
Triumphal entry into Jerusalem (Palm Sunday)	21:1-11	11:1-11	19:28-44	12:12-16
Judas' betrayal and rulers' plots	26:1-5, 14-16	14:1-2, 10-11	20:19, 22:1-6	11:45 - 57
Passover / Last Supper	26:17-29	14:12-25	22:7-20	13:1-30
Gethsemane	26:36-46	14:32-42	22:39-46	

Jesus arrested	26:47-56	14:43-52	22:47-53	18:2-12
Jesus' trial by Annas and the Sanhedrin	26:57-27-1	14:53-15:1	22:54-71	18:13-24
Peter's denial of Jesus	26:69-75	14:66-72	22:54-62	18:15, 25-27
Jesus before Pilate	27:2-30	15:1-19	23:1-25	18:28-19-15
Jesus crucified and buried	27:31-66	15:20-47	23:26-56	19:16-42
Resurrection and resurrection appearances (a 40-day period)	28:1-15	16:1-8, 9-14	24:1-49	20:1-21:23
The Ascension		16:19-20	24:50-53	

TABLE 1: A POSSIBLE ORDER OF EVENTS FROM THE FOUR GOSPELS

3 OLD TESTAMENT PROPHECIES OF CHRIST

Two streams of thought concerning the prophecies of the Messiah's coming as per the Old Testament was that of the deity of Christ and that of His Humanity. Jewish interpreters of the Old Testament could not reconcile these streams, as they could not comprehend how the Messiah could be divine, and yet also human. They erred in understanding and missed the very Messiah that their Scriptures prophesied would come.¹³ These prophecies were foretold in the Old Testament and manifested and were fulfilled in the New Testament with Christs' coming.

¹³ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p158

3.1 Prophecies Concerning Christ's Lineage

Right in the beginning the virgin birth was prophesied as seen in Genesis 3:15, which is known as the protevangelium¹⁴ because it is the first prophecy about Christ, this verse introduces two elements previously unknown in the Garden of Eden, elements that are the basis of Christianity, the curse on mankind because of Adam's sin and God's provision for a Saviour from sin who would take the curse upon Himself.¹⁵

And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Genesis 3:15 (KJV)

It is stated in this verse that there will be enmity between Satan and Messiah, identified by the expression, "her seed." The expression "her seed" refers to Mary and the virgin birth; Messiah is born of Mary alone. Matthew 1:16 also emphasizes this in the phrase "*By whom*" (Gk. *hes*), a feminine relative pronoun, emphasizing Jesus was born without human, (Joseph) participation.¹⁶

Jesus' lineage was also prophesied, Genesis 9:26 mentions the specific name, "Lord, The God of Shem", suggesting the preservation of the true religion among the descendants of Shem. Shem's line will ultimately brought blessing to the lineage of the other two sons of Noah. The description – God or Lord (*Yahweh*) of Shem also refers to revelation and God's institutions for mankind's

¹⁴ Protoevangelium—the first gospel.

¹⁵ What is Protoevangelium (<http://www.gotquestions.org/protoevangelium.html>)

¹⁶ Who is Jesus' Biological Father (<http://www.biblicalarchaeology.org/daily/biblical-topics/bible-interpretation/who-was-jesus-biological-father/>) Accessed on: 23 July 2016

redemption, it suggests the future generations of Shem, a relation entirely peculiar, favouring them with revelations of His will.¹⁷

Abraham was promised that his name will be made great and that his lineage will be a great nation as seen in Genesis 12:2 - which suggests that the Messiah would come from the posterity of Abraham, this promise (Genesis 13:15) was interpreted as being fulfilled in Christ.¹⁸

The book of the generation of Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham.

Matthew 1:1 (KJV)

Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

Galatians 3:16 (KJV)

Through the descendants of **Isaac** God established His covenant and instituted His blessings.

And God said, Sarah thy wife shall bear thee a son indeed; and thou shalt call his name Isaac: and I will establish my covenant with him for an everlasting covenant, and with his seed after him.

Genesis 17:19 (KJV)

The line of Messianic blessing was further narrowed down to come through **Jacob** and not through Ishmael, (Genesis 25:23; 28:13). Numbers 24:17 states

¹⁷ Enns, Paul P. (1997) Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology. USA, Chicago: Moody Press. p47

¹⁸ God's promise to Abraham (www.lifehopeandtruth.com/prophecy/12-tribes-of-israel/god-s-promise-to-abraham/)

that a ruler (scepter) will come through the lineage of Jacob and He will crush the enemy and “have dominion”.

And not only this; but when Rebecca also had conceived by one, even by our father Isaac; (For the children being not yet born, neither having done any good or evil, that the purpose of God according to election might stand, not of works, but of him that calleth;) It was said unto her, The elder shall serve the younger. As it is written, Jacob have I loved, but Esau have I hated.

Romans 9:10-13 (KJV)

The Messiah was also affirmed in Genesis 49:10 to come through the tribe of Judah.

The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him shall the gathering of the people be.

Genesis 49:10 (KJVR)

The meaning of Shiloh is variously interpreted: as a title of Messiah meaning “Man of rest” of Messiah as “pacifier, peacemaker”, “Until Shiloh comes”, could be translated “until He comes to whom it belongs.” “And to Him shall be the obedience of the peoples” stresses Messiah’s rule over the nations of the world in the millennial kingdom.

As indicated in 2 Samuel 7:12-16, Messiah was to be a descendant of David, the Lord indicated that his descendants will have an everlasting dynasty. Psalm 89 also expands on this promise.¹⁹

¹⁹ Enns, Paul P. (1997) Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology. USA, Chicago: Moody Press. p47

3.2 Prophecies Concerning Christ's Birth

- The manner was prophesied in Isaiah 7:14, a sign was promised to the unbelieving King Ahaz, that a virgin will become pregnant with a son and He will be called Immanuel, which means – “*God with us*”. Throughout the Old Testament the term virgin (Hebrew “*almah*”)²⁰, “*Never refers to a maiden who has lost her virginity*”.
- The birthplace was prophesied in Micah 5:1-2 as a small town - Bethlehem

3.3 Prophecies Concerning Christ's Life

- His forerunner is identified in Isaiah 40:3 – John the Baptist who called people to repentance and spiritual preparation for the coming of Christ (Malachi 3:1).
- His mission, Isaiah 61:1 promises that Jesus Christ would be anointed by the Holy Spirit in ministry, which would empower Him to preach the Gospel to the poor, break free those who are in spiritual bondage, give sight to the spiritual blind (Luke 4:18-19). Isaiah 9:1-2 predicted that Christ would be identified with and despised of the society and with the Gentiles which was fulfilled when Christ settled in Nazareth and later in Capernaum (Matthew 4:15-16).
- His ministry is described in Isaiah 53:4, as bearing the sickness of people, being fulfilled when Jesus heals those who are ill (Matthew 8:17). Isaiah 42:2–4 describes Christ as being unlike the Pharisees, He is not

²⁰ Strong's Concordance 5959. “*almah*” (<http://biblehub.com/hebrew/5959.htm>)

quarrelsome or contentious; He is kind and compassionate – He comforts the weak and feeble and for this reason many Gentiles would believe in Him (Matthew 12:19-21).

- His teaching in parables was predicted in Psalm 78:2, revealing previously hidden truths (Matthew 13:35).
- His presentation, Zechariah 9:9 predicted the triumphant entry of Christ, riding as king into Jerusalem on a previously unbroken animal (Matthew 21:5). Psalm 118:26 depicts Christ coming to the nation as the Deliverer with the people crying to Him for help and deliverance (Matthew 21:9). Psalm 110:1 describes Christ as greater than David; He is one whom David recognised as Lord and who would eventually subdue His enemies (Matthew 22:44).
- His rejection, Psalm 118:22 declares that Christ will be rejected. Christ, being likened to the all-important cornerstone that ties a building together, will be rejected by the Jewish people (Matthew 21:42). Isaiah 29:13 says that the people will give Christ lip service but not genuine obedience (Matthew 15:8–9). Zechariah 13:7 declares that Christ will be forsaken by all His friends at the crucial moment (Matthew 26:31). In combining Jeremiah 18:1–2; 19:1–15; 32:6–9 and Zechariah 11:12, 13, the Old Testament prophets predicted Christ's being sold for thirty pieces of silver (Matthew 27:9–10).²¹
- Numerous Old Testament passages refer to Christ's future millennial reign on earth.

²¹ Enns, Paul P. (1997) *Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology*. USA, Chicago: Moody Press. p48

- Daniel 7:13–14 emphasizes Christ's rule will be over all people and nations. Zechariah 14:9–21 prophesies the destruction of Israel's enemies and Christ's rule over the nations of the world.

3.4 Prophecies Concerning Christ's Death

- A painful death, Psalm 22 depicted the sufferings of Christ, His cry on the cross as He took the sin of the world upon Himself (Matthew 27:46, Mark 15:34) the people who pass by mocking Him (Matthew 27:39), the insults He endured (Matthew 27:43), the piercing of His hands and feet (John 20:25), verse 17 indicates that none of Christ's bones would be broken (John 19:33–36). Verse 18 prophesies the soldiers gambling for Christ's clothes (John 19:24), and verse 24 prophesies Christ's prayer to the Father concerning His impending death (Matthew 26:39; Hebrews 5:7).
- A violent death is also portrayed, Isaiah 52 and 53 states Christ's future sufferings, the disfigurement as a result of the torment and His violent death (John 19:1, 18). Christ is also portrayed as a lamb, silent and obedient on the way to death (John 1:29).²²

3.5 Prophecies Concerning Christ's Victory

- Jesus' resurrection: In addition to the death of the Jewish Messiah, His resurrection from the dead was also foretold. The clearest and best

²² Where do the Hebrew Scriptures prophesy the death and resurrection of the Messiah (<http://www.gotquestions.org/death-resurrection-Messiah.html>)

known of the resurrection prophecies is seen in Psalm 16:10, written by Israel's King David, also written a millennium before the birth of Jesus.²³

For thou wilt not leave my soul in hell; neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

Psalm 16:10 (KJV)

In Acts 2:27-28 Peter applied this same verse which indicates that these verses prophesied that Christ would be resurrected.

Whom God hath raised up, having loosed the pains of death: because it was not possible that he should be holden of it.

Act 2:24 (KJVR)

This was not fulfilled by David because David died and he was buried (Acts 2:29), but this verse spoke of the resurrection of Christ, the Holy one (Acts 2:31; Acts 13:35). Psalm 22:22 is applied to Christ typologically in Hebrews 2:12 where, following the resurrection, Christ expresses praise for His resurrection.

- Jesus' ascension: Psalm 68:18 forestalls the God-ordained end of the Lord's earthly life (Ephesians 4:8), the apostles themselves witnessed Christ's ascension as seen in the New Testament (Acts 1:9-11, Luke 1:3, 24:51; Mark 16:19).²⁴

²³ Where do the Hebrew Scriptures prophesy the death and resurrection of the Messiah (<http://www.gotquestions.org/death-resurrection-Messiah.html>)

²⁴ Jackson, Wayne. The Ascension of Christ – A Most significant event (<https://www.christiancourier.com/articles/877-ascension-of-christ-a-most-significant-event-the>)

3.6 Prophecies Concerning the Deity of Christ

Below are a few Scriptures which set forth the deity of Christ, showing that the Redeemer of the world would be God incarnate.

- “A virgin shall conceive and bear a Son ... and His name shall be called ... Immanuel” (Isaiah 7:14).
- “For unto us a child is born unto us a Son is given ... and His name shall be called Wonderful, Counselor, the Mighty God, the Everlasting Father, and the Prince of Peace” (Isaiah 9:6-9).
- “...the Lord our Righteousness” (Jeremiah 23:5-6).
- From Bethlehem there was to come forth the “... Ruler, whose goings forth have been from of old (from the days of eternity)” (Micah 5:2).
- “...What is His name, and what is His Son’s name, if thou canst tell? (Proverbs 30:4).
- “Thou art My Son, this day have I begotten Thee ...” (Psalm 2:7, 12).
- “...but unto the Son He saith, Thy throne, O God is forever ... (Psalm 45:6 with Hebrews 1:8).

3.7 Prophecies Concerning The Humanity Of Christ

The following Scriptures indicated that the Redeemer would be a man, fully human, born of a woman. They set forth the humanity of the Messiah, even as the previous list of Scriptures set forth His deity.

- The Redeemer was to be the “seed of the woman” who would bruise the serpent’s head (Genesis 3:15) this is a prophecy of the Virgin Birth in enigmatic form.
- The Messiah would also come from the Tents of Shem (Genesis

9:26).

- The Redeemer would be the "seed of Abraham" (Genesis 22:18).
- The Redeemer would be of "the seed of Isaac" (Genesis 26:2-4).
- This promise was also confirmed to "the seed of Jacob" (Genesis 28:13-14).
- The Messiah would come from the nation of Israel (Numbers 24:17-19).
- The Lord also foretold that a prophet "like unto Moses" would be raised up out from the midst of his brethren (Deuteronomy 18:15-18).
- Messiah was to come from the Tribe of Judah (Genesis 49:10-12).
- Messiah would come of the family of Jesse (Isaiah 11:1-2).
- Messiah would come out of the House of David (2 Samuel 7:12-14).
- The promise of Scripture was that "a virgin shall conceive and bear a Son...His name shall be called Immanuel" (Isaiah 7:14).
- This Messiah would be "a man", whose name is The Branch" (Zechariah 3:8; 6:10-12; Isaiah 11:1-4).

Conner²⁵ states, that all of these references show how God singled out a man, then a nation from the man, a tribe from the nation, a house from the tribe, a virgin from the house, and thus preserved the genealogy of the Messiah as to His humanity.

The two streams of thought concerning Christs' Deity and humanity, is only solved or reconciled in the New Testament account of the historical fulfilment in the Gospels and then the doctrinal revelation in the Epistles. It is here that

²⁵ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p158.

mankind can see how God reconciled these two prophetic streams. The miracle of the incarnation is God's answer to the question. All men have been begotten of a human father and born of a human mother, since the creation of Adam and Eve, the first parents. But as seen in the above prophecies – this was not the case with the Messiah as He was born of a woman – and God would be His Father.

This child would be "the seed of the woman" (Genesis 3:15), yet the "Son of God" by a virgin (Isaiah 7:14). This found its glorious fulfilment in the virgin birth of Jesus Christ by the power and overshadowing of the Holy Spirit (Matthew 1:18-23 with Luke 1:35).

Modernists today may deny the virgin birth, as scientific knowledge may not be able to account for it - spiritual ignorance may state it is of no real consequence, but the Biblical importance of it cannot be over-estimated. It is upon the fact of the virgin birth that Biblical doctrine hangs. If Jesus Christ is not virgin born, He is not sinless, and if He is not sinless, then He Himself is in need of a Savior. If He Himself needs salvation, then He cannot be our Savior, Lord or King, and the entire redemptive plan falls powerless to the ground. Hence the importance to understand and believe the foundational significance of the incarnation of the Lord Jesus Christ.

4 INCARNATION OF CHRIST

4.1 Meaning And Explanation Of The Incarnation

The term incarnation is of Latin origin, meaning “*becoming in flesh*.” While the word incarnation is not contained within Scripture, the doctrine of the Incarnation undoubtedly convey Scriptural truth. The Christian doctrine of the Incarnation teaches that the Eternal Word, the second Person of the Trinity, without diminishing His Deity took upon Himself a fully human nature. Specifically, this doctrine implies that a full and undiminished divine nature as well as a full and perfect human nature were united in the historical person of Jesus Christ of Nazareth. According to the Bible, Jesus Christ is God the Son, in human flesh.²⁶

The result of the incarnation is that Christ remains forever an unblemished Deity, which He has had from eternity past; but He also possesses true, sinless humanity in one Person forever²⁷

And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

John 1:14 (KJV)

²⁶ The Incarnation of Jesus Christ (<http://www.equip.org/perspectives/the-incarnation-of-jesus-christ/>)

²⁷ Enns, Paul P. (1997) Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology. USA, Chicago: Moody Press. p50

But made himself of no reputation, and took upon him the form of a servant, and was made in the likeness of men: And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross.

Philippians 2:7-8 (KJV)

Not a novice, lest being lifted up with pride he fall into the condemnation of the devil.

1 Timothy 3:6 (KJV)

Jesus is the center of Christian doctrine and truth, His identity is of surpassing importance and it follows the doctrine of the Incarnation which discloses His identity is the foundation on which all of Christian doctrine is built. This can clearly be seen when central doctrines of the historic Christian faith are analyzed, examples, could be seen in God's existence: without the Incarnation, talking about or knowing God personally is mere speculation. The Trinity: the other two members of the Trinity (Father and Holy Spirit) are only really understood and appreciated in light of the person and nature of Christ. Atonement: only Jesus Christ, who is the God-man, is able to reconcile a holy God with sinful humanity. Resurrection: a bodily resurrection which conquers death is only possible for the God-man. Justification: our state before God rests totally in our faith (personal trust) in the person and work of Jesus Christ.

The doctrine of the Incarnation affects every single area of Christian theology, therefore Believers need to get an understanding of the full and glorious meaning of the miracle of the incarnation of their Lord and Savior as it is the very essence of the Christian faith.

5 PREPARATIONS OF JESUS' COMING

The Old Testament ended, in the book of Malachi, with the hope of a coming day in which the Lord God would suddenly appear in His temple – a day of judgment, *'Then suddenly the Lord you are seeking will come to his temple ... But who can endure the day of his coming? ... See, I will send you the prophet Elijah before that great and dreadful day of the Lord comes.'* (Malachi 3:1, 2; 4:5)

About 400 years passed with no sign of that coming, but when the Gospel records begins something stirred: the promises God made long ago were about to be fulfilled.

Mark begins his Gospel with the appearance of the striking and charismatic figure of John the Baptist. He was the son of a faithful and god-fearing couple – Zechariah the priest and his wife Elizabeth – who had long been childless.

5.1 John The Baptist

Before his birth an angel had declared that John would be the messenger who would prepare the way for the coming Saviour and King. John grew up to become a prophet. He reminded his listeners of the fiery outspoken prophet Elijah, the one Malachi had said would return. Even John's rough homespun clothes were like the prophet's.

Crowds flocked to the Judean desert to hear John preach about the need to repent and turn back to God. He gave the hypocritical religious leaders a

lashing with his tongue and he told people of all walks of life how they ought to behave. He described himself simply as a '*voice crying in the wilderness*' as he announced the coming of someone greater, who would baptize them with the Holy Spirit instead of the water John used. He attracted a close group of followers who listened intently to what he had to say about the coming deliverer.

Then one day John pointed excitedly towards a man who was approaching them.

'Look!' he exclaimed: 'There is the Lamb of God!' His hearers were so intrigued by these mysterious words that they followed the man, spending the day with him. In this way they introduced themselves to Jesus.

John called everyone to repentance – not even Herod, the king of Judea, was spared. John had rebuked Herod for marrying his brother's wife, and Herod put John in prison. It was then that Jesus himself began to preach:

And saying, The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is at hand: repent ye, and believe the gospel.

Mark 1:15 (KJV)

5.2 The Beginning Of The Story

Matthew and Luke reveals the beginning of the journey of Jesus, revealing His birth. Matthew begins even earlier, with a family tree (genealogy), which firmly connects Jesus to Old Testament history. Mary, Jesus' mother, was betrothed

to a man called Joseph. But before they were married God sent his messenger-angel, Gabriel, to tell her that she was to have a son:

He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David:

Luke 1:32 (KJV)

Mary was perplexed as she was still a virgin. But Gabriel told her that this birth would come about through '*the power of the Most High*': the Holy Spirit would '*over show*' her.

Mary hurried south from Nazareth to Jerusalem to take the news to her relative Elizabeth, who was expecting a child – John the Baptist.

An angel reassured an anxious Joseph of the reason for Mary's pregnancy, and he gladly married her.

6 JESUS' EARTHLY LIFE

6.1 Jesus' Birth

"The angel Gabriel appeared to a Jewish virgin named Mary who found favour in the sight of God and said to her:

And the angel came in unto her, and said, Hail, thou that art highly favoured, the Lord is with thee: blessed art thou among women.

Luke 1:28 (KJV)

And the angel answered and said unto her, The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.

Luke 1:35 (KJV)

Why is the virgin birth significant? Because there was no way the fetus in Mary's womb could have had a drop of human blood if she had not known a man. At the time of conception, the male sperm unites with the female egg in the fallopian tube. The egg is fertilized and life begins.

The following experiment can be done to prove this fact. An unfertilized chicken egg has no blood in it, not a drop. But if a fertile chicken egg is taken and incubated, in just a few hours after, when hold up in front of a strong light, the little veins of blood that have started is visible. That's how it is with the human fetus; it develops its own blood, but blood does not develop unless there is fertilization from a male.

The bloodline comes through the male, the mother does not give her blood to the baby. Without a male involved, there is no blood for the fetus. In reality, Mary, had no blood to give Jesus. Without the male sperm there would be no blood for that body. Mary only carried the egg,

When a baby begins to grow in the womb, it is separated from the mother by the placenta. The mother's blood comes to the placenta, but stops there. It bathes the outside of the placenta; then through the wonderful process of osmosis the necessary nutrients and oxygen go into the baby's

bloodstream. But the blood itself does not go past the placenta. It circulates back into the mother's body.²⁸

The baby doesn't share one drop of blood with its mother, the blood is entirely its own. Nutrition and the oxygen is the only things the baby receives from the mother's blood, but no blood is received.

What does that means? It means that if Jesus truly were born of a virgin there is only one place His blood could have come from—and it wasn't of this earth!

A body hast thou prepared for me, Jesus said. Jesus didn't say anything about the blood, for He knew God prepared the body for Him and the life of that body came down from heaven. The life is in the blood, and Jesus' blood had to come from heaven. Jesus' body was exactly like yours and mine, but He never knew sin. If Adam's blood, Noah's blood or David's blood had been coursing through Jesus' veins, He would have known sin."

It was necessary for Jesus to be sinless. If He had been born of Joseph He would have possessed the sin nature. The verb in the phrase "by whom was born Jesus" in Matthew one verse sixteen, is passive and emphasizes that in contrast to all the preceding men who sired their sons, Joseph did not beget Jesus.²⁹

²⁸ Huggins, Larry (2003) *The Blood Speaks*. Tulsa, Oklahoma: Harrison House Inc.

²⁹ Enns, Paul P. (1997) *Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology*. USA, Chicago: Moody Press. P48

Abraham begat Isaac; and Isaac begat Jacob; and Jacob begat Judas and his brethren;

Matthew 1:2 (KJV)

And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

Matthew 1:16 (KJV)

Jesus lived a life without sin. He walked this earth, like mankind in every way, except that He didn't know sin. There is no verse in Scripture stating that Jesus was ever sick, where He ever had a cold, or stomach ulcers, or migraine headaches, or running sores. **Jesus was never sick!**³⁰

Mary and Joseph lived in a town called Nazareth when a census was ordered by the Roman emperor, Caesar Augustus. They had to travel to the city of Bethlehem to register and the trip was about 65 miles (105 km) which probably took them several days.

When Joseph and Mary got to Bethlehem, there was no place for them. They ended up spending the night in a stable, a place where animals were kept to stay because the inn was already full. Jesus was born that night, and were laid down in manger, a feeding trough for animals.³¹

Shepherds were in the fields near Bethlehem, keeping watch over their flocks of sheep when an angel appeared to them and gave them the good news that a Savior, the Messiah was born. The shepherds hurried to the manger where they found Jesus and spread the news.

³⁰ Huggins, Larry (2003) *The Blood Speaks*. Tulsa, Oklahoma: Harrison House Inc.

³¹ The Birth of Jesus (http://www.christianbiblereference.org/story_BirthOfJesus.htm)

Wise men saw a star in the sky that signalled the birth of a new king. They came to Judea the region around Jerusalem to worship the new born king.³²

6.2 Jesus As A Boy

There is only one story about Jesus' boyhood recorded in the Gospels. Luke tells us that when Jesus was twelve, on the verge of becoming a man by Jewish law, he went to Jerusalem with his parents to celebrate Passover. On the journey home he went missing. Mary and Joseph went back to the city to search for him, and found him in the temple. 'Why were you searching for me?' he asked. 'Didn't you know I had to be in my Father's house?' Already he recognized who his real Father was.³³ According to Barbara Thiering,³⁴ "Jesus took a step of full initiation at the age of twenty-three where He was admitted to communion, receiving the full sacred meal of bread and wine. Jesus then began His four years of education and after graduation at age twenty-seven He was admitted to ministry of the sanctuary, coming to the highest level at the age of thirty."

6.3 Humanity Of Christ

Christ was perfect with a sinless humanity and was a supreme example to all believers.

³² The Birth of Jesus (http://www.christianbiblereference.org/story_BirthOfJesus.htm)

³³ Batchelor, Mary (1993) *Opening up the Bible*. Hatfield, Pretoria: JL van Schaik Publishers. p111

³⁴ Thiering, Barbara (1992) *Jesus the Man*. Great Britain: Corgi Books. p87

6.3.1 He Had A True Body Of Flesh And Blood

In thus being born of a woman Jesus Christ submitted to the conditions of a human life and a human body and He became humanity's son by a human birth. Of the "seed of the woman," of the "seed of Abraham," and of line and lineage of David, Jesus Christ is undeniably human.³⁵ "The body of Jesus "was like the bodies of other men except for those qualities which have resulted from human sin and failure." Jesus was not a phantom as the Docetists taught. He was recognizable as a Jew (John 4:9) and was a carpenter who had brothers and sisters (Matthew 13:55). Ultimately, He suffered greatly in His human body and He experienced the pain of the scourging (John 19:1), and the horror of crucifixion (John 19:18). He thirsted as a man on the cross (John 19:28). All these elements emphasize His true humanity."³⁶

6.3.2 He Had A Normal Development

Luke 2:52 describes Jesus' development in four areas: mental, physical, spiritual, and social. He grew as a child and He continued to develop in His knowledge of things. He worked hard as a man following Joseph's trade as a carpenter. He grew in His physical body and developed in His spiritual awareness (there was no interaction with sin, of course, since He was sinless from birth until death). He suffered human limitations and experienced human temptations. Through continual prayer He learned to live in dependence upon

³⁵The Doctrine of Jesus Christ. (http://biblehub.com/library/evans/the_great_doctrines_of_the_bible/the_doctrine_of_jesus_christ.htm)

³⁶ Enns, Paul P. (1997) Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology. USA, Chicago: Moody Press. p51

the Father. He could do and say nothing of Himself but only what He was given and learned to depend on the Father and the power of the Holy Spirit. Jesus desired human sympathy in the Garden. He was limited in His human knowledge. He was a man approved of God.³⁷

6.3.3 He Had A Human Soul And Spirit

Jesus was a complete human being, having a body, soul, and spirit. Jesus was troubled in His soul at the anticipation of the cross.

Now is my soul troubled; and what shall I say? Father, save me from this hour: but for this cause came I unto this hour.

John 12:27 (KJV)

Jesus was overwhelmed at the prospect to bear the sins of the world. In John 11:33 the emotion that Jesus felt in His human spirit at the death of His friend Lazarus was recorded. At the prospect of His impending crucifixion Jesus was troubled in His human spirit, *When Jesus had thus said, he was troubled in spirit, and testified, and said, Verily, verily, I say unto you, that one of you shall betray me.* (John 13:21 KJV), and gave up His spirit when he died.³⁸

When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

John 19:30 (KJV)

³⁷ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p173

³⁸ Enns, Paul P. (1997) Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology. USA, Chicago: Moody Press. p51

6.3.4 He Had The Characteristics Of A Human Being

Jesus had a human body, of flesh and blood. Jesus had all the essentials of human nature. When Jesus fasted in the wilderness He became hungry (Matthew 4:2). Being a real man He became tired on His journey through Samaria and stopped at the well to rest (John 4:6). As human being he became hungry and thirsted like all men. (John 4:7). Jesus also experienced human emotions: He wept over the death of His friend Lazarus (John 11:34–35); He felt compassion for the people because they were without capable leaders (Matthew 9:36); He gave a human expression to God's emotions visibly revealing the very heart and deep compassions of God for the plight of fallen humanity.³⁹

6.3.5 He Had Human Names

He was called the "son of David," indicating He was a descendant of King David (Matthew 1:1). He was named Jesus by the angel Gabriel. He was also called the Son of Abraham. The name Jesus is the equivalent of the Old Testament name Joshua (meaning, "Yahweh saves"). He was referred to as a "Man" over 80 times in the New Testament and is still a man in heaven, though now glorified. He is called the last Adam and will come as the Son of Man the second time to judge the world, indicated by Paul. (Acts 17:31). As a man Jesus is also Mediator between God and men (1 Timothy 2:5).⁴⁰

³⁹ A Series of Answers to Common Questions by Sam Shamoun (http://www.answering-islam.org/Shamoun/q_eat_sleep_weep.htm)

⁴⁰ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p172

6.3.6 He Had A Human Birth

He is spoken of as being the seed of David according to the flesh and was born of a woman, the virgin Mary. Mary was the chosen one to be the mother of Christ's humanity. His Genealogy could be traced through His mother Mary, back to David the King of Israel. He was recognised as the Son of David and came of the nation of Israel as pertaining to the flesh. Christ's human ancestry can be traced back to David and Adam in Luke's Gospel through His mother Mary, and back to David and Abraham in Matthew's Gospel through His assumed father Joseph. (Luke 3:23-38, Matthew 1:1-17). Jesus did acknowledge Mary as His mother and claim that God was His Father but never acknowledged Joseph as his father. As far as the Jews in Christ's time were concerned, he was a real man, of flesh and blood as other men were – He was not a phantom or apparition, but truly a man.⁴¹

6.3.7 He Had Sinless Infirmities Of Human Nature

As a man Christ suffered the limitations and infirmities of human nature, which are not sinful in themselves, but are part of man's lot since the fall. The glorified human body will not have these sinless infirmities.

Matthew 4:2 recorded that Jesus was hungry. In John 19:28 Jesus said that He was thirsty. In John 4:6 Jesus was being wearied with his journey. Matthew 8:24 recorded that Jesus was asleep. John 19:30 -- "He bowed his head, and

⁴¹ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p171, p172

gave up the ghost." He mourns over Jerusalem (Matthew 23:37); weeps over His dead friend Lazarus, (John 11:35); craves for human sympathy in the garden (Matthew 26:36, 40); tempted in all points like as man are (Hebrews 4:15).⁴²

6.3.8 He Suffered Human Death

Because God has justice at the heart of his nature, all wrongdoing must be punished. Scripture teaches that it was for our sins that He died, the just for the unjust – Jesus did not deserve to die. Scripture is clear that His death was a vicarious substitutionary sacrifice for the sins of the world and that His death was an atonement. Sin alienates humans from God - in other words, it was not just a physical death, but for the Son to die was the equivalent of the human race suffering the second death, eternal separation from God. God's need to see justice has been satisfied, and now nothing can separate humans from him.⁴³ Christ was separated from the Father spiritually on their behalf when He died on the cross.⁴⁴

⁴² The Doctrine of Jesus Christ. (http://biblehub.com/library/evans/the_great_doctrines_of_the_bible/the_doctrine_of_jesus_christ.htm)

⁴³ Jesus' Death and Resurrection (<http://christianity.org.uk/index.php/a/jesus-death-and-resurrection.php>)

⁴⁴ The Death, Burial and Resurrection of Jesus the Messiah (<https://bible.org/seriespage/6-death-burial-and-resurrection-jesus-messiah>)

6.3.9 He Experienced Human Resurrection

When Jesus died on the cross, evil (personified as the devil) made its strongest bid to defeat God.⁴⁵ But when Jesus rose from the dead, His body was sinless, immortal and incorruptible. Connor states that,⁴⁶ “He was raised from the dead and still possesses that virgin-born, crucified, buried, resurrected and now glorified body.” Jesus laid down His life, as the Father commanded Him. God showed himself victorious over evil and now, nothing can keep humans from his love.

6.4 Jesus Baptized

And it came to pass in those days, that Jesus came from Nazareth of Galilee, and was baptized of John in Jordan. And straightway coming up out of the water, he saw the heavens opened, and the Spirit like a dove descending upon him: And there came a voice from heaven, saying, Thou art my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.

Mark 1:9-11 (KJV)

When Jesus was about thirty He came to His relative John, in the Judean desert and asked to be baptized.⁴⁷ John baptised Jesus against his better judgement for he knew who Jesus was and found it incongruous that he, the forerunner of Jesus the Messiah, should be the one who was being used to baptize Him! After all, wasn't John's baptism a baptism of repentance, and

⁴⁵ Jesus' Death and Resurrection (<http://christianity.org.uk/index.php/a/jesus-death-and-resurrection.php>)

⁴⁶ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p173

⁴⁷ Batchelor, Mary (1993) Opening up the Bible. Hatfield, Pretoria: JL van Schaik Publishers. p111

what did Jesus need to repent of? Jesus was the Messiah and lived a sinless life.⁴⁸

Horrobin writes,⁴⁹ "what John could not have understood was the divine purpose in Jesus being baptized by him. The fact that John's baptism was a baptism of repentance was the critical point. For, ultimately, Jesus had come to die for the sins of the world. Submitting to a baptism of repentance was His first public association with the sin of mankind. If He had not submitted to this baptism and stood with sinners in an act of "repentance" on behalf of all those who would believe and receive life through the cross, then He could not have gone to Calvary to die for their sins either.

No wonder His baptism gave such pleasure to the Father. For when Jesus went down into the river Jordan, God's rescue plan was finally being put into action."

God gave John a sign to watch for. The one on whom the Holy Spirit came to rest, like a dove, would be the promised king. As John baptized Jesus he saw this happen and heard the voice of God saying:⁵⁰

And there came a voice from heaven, saying, Thou art my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.

Mark 1:11 (KJV)

⁴⁸ Horrobin, Peter (2008) Healing through Deliverance, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited. p122

⁴⁹ Horrobin, Peter (2008) Healing through Deliverance, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited. p122

⁵⁰ Batchelor, Mary (1993) Opening up the Bible. Hatfield, Pretoria: JL van Schaik Publishers. p111

From the moment Jesus was baptized in the Holy Spirit He was an active threat to Satan and his kingdom. The battle lines had been drawn, for Jesus was now equipped to start unseating demonic power from Satan's strongholds. Concerted action from the powers of darkness was now required! And this wasn't a task that Satan would risk delegating, even to his highest aide in the satanic ranks. It was a job for Satan himself!⁵¹

6.5 The Testing Of Jesus

According to the Tyndale Bible Dictionary, testing is ⁵²“the process of proving one's worth. When ascribed to God in his dealings with people, it means that God tests his peoples' faith and moral character. When the word is used in a negative way, it means “to tempt” – that is, to entice, solicit, or provoke to sin. Both senses of the word could be applied to Jesus' forty days of trial in the wilderness.

And Jesus being full of the Holy Ghost returned from Jordan, and was led by the Spirit into the wilderness,

Luke 4:1 (KJV)

He was tested by God and found faithful, while he was tempted by Satan and found sinless. The Spirit of God led Jesus into the wilderness to have his faith tried; but the agent in this trial was the wicked one, whose whole object was to

⁵¹ Horrobin, Peter (2008) *Healing through Deliverance*, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited. p122

⁵² Comfort, Philip W. , Elwell, Walter A. (2001) *Tyndale Bible Dictionary*. USA, Illinois: Tyndale House Publishers, Inc. p1248

seduce Jesus from his allegiance to God. It was temptation in the bad sense of the term. Jesus passed the test by not giving in to temptation.

For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

2 Corinthians 5:21 (KJV)

For such a high priest became us, who is holy, harmless, undefiled, separate from sinners, and made higher than the heavens;

Hebrews 7:26 (KJV)

6.5.1 The Temptations⁵³

Temptation	Real needs used as basis for temptation	Possible doubts that made the temptations real	Potential weaknesses Satan sought to exploit	Jesus' answer
Make bread	Physical need: Hunger	Would God provide food?	Hunger, impatience, need to "prove his Sonship"	Deuteronomy 8:3 "Depend on God" Focus: God's purpose
Dare God to rescue you (based on misapplied Scripture, Psalm 91:11, 12)	Emotional need: Security	Would God protect?	Pride, insecurity, need to test God	Deuteronomy 6:16 "Don't test God" Focus: God's plan

⁵³ Life Application Study Bible. (2004) Wheaton, Illinois: Tyndale House Publishers Inc. p1559

Worship me! (Satan)	Psychological need: Significance, power, achievement	Would God direct?	Desire for quick power, easy solutions, need to prove equality with God	Deuteronomy 6:13 “No compromise with evil” Focus: God’s person
------------------------	--	----------------------	---	---

TABLE 2: THE TEMPTATIONS

6.5.2 The Temptation In The Wilderness

6.5.2.1 The First Temptation

Jesus felt himself impelled by the Holy Spirit to go deep into the Judean desert alone where He fasted for forty days prior to the commencement of His public ministry. When he was weak with hunger Satan tried to persuade Him to substantiate his claim to be the Messiah through wonderworking and spectacular signs. The temptation seemed to be that of using His supernatural power to turn some stones into bread and meet His immediately physical needs. The doubt introduced in the opening words, “If you are God’s Son”, were the real test. Jesus remembered His Father’s voice from heaven saying, “*You are My beloved Son; in You I am well pleased*” (Luke 3:22, NKJV). Satisfying Jesus’ physical hunger was only the cover for a much deeper test. For Satan knew that the temptation for Jesus to use His own gifting for selfish purposes would be unlikely to throw Him off course, even though it could be very effective indeed with lesser mortals!⁵⁴

⁵⁴ Horrobin, Peter (2008) *Healing through Deliverance*, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited. p123

Batchelor writes, ⁵⁵“Jesus refused to be diverted from the path he knew God wanted him to take. He was to be a Messiah, who was humble and obedient to God, meeting the needs of others and not advertising himself.”

Horrobin writes, ⁵⁶“if only Jesus could doubt (disbelieve), even for one moment, anything of what God the Father had told Him, then He would have sinned and Satan’s arrow would have pierced His very heart and the rescue mission would have failed. “If you are God’s Son... then why not prove it? Just a few loaves of bread. See those stones? Turn them into bread, then You will really know that everything God said is true. Just a little test. Go on – then You’ll never need to doubt again.” So subtle, but also so deadly. If Jesus had for one moment been distracted felt He had to prove that He was the Son of God, doubt would have entered in. Satan so often uses doubt to lead people into sin, and one sin would have destroyed the glorious and eternal potential of Calvary.

Luckily Jesus saw through it all and recognized the voice of the serpent for what it was – deception – and using Scripture with devastating effect, He reminded Satan: *“Man shall not live by bread alone; but man lives by every word that proceeds from the mouth of the LORD” (Deuteronomy 8:3, NKJV)*. His Father’s words were enough for Him, and He did not need to turn any stones into bread to test His calling. God had spoken, and He had no intention of doubting one word of the Father.

⁵⁵ Batchelor, Mary (1993) *Opening up the Bible*. Hatfield, Pretoria: JL van Schaik Publishers. p111-112

⁵⁶ Horrobin, Peter (2008) *Healing through Deliverance, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry*. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited.. p123

Satan's first attack had failed, and he was sent from the battle arena in disarray. But not for long. When one line of attack fails, Satan does not give up. He and his demons are well versed in the effectiveness of persistence."

And when the tempter came to him, he said, If thou be the Son of God, command that these stones be made bread. But he answered and said, It is written, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God.

Matthew 4:3-4 (KJV)

Horrobin writes,⁵⁷ "in looking at the specific tactics of Satan in tempting Jesus, one see many lessons for the Christian in the way demons attack believers. To be tempted and tested is not sin, however, if one does fall into temptation and sin, then man has made oneself vulnerable to the agent of the attack. At that point one can become demonized, but Scripture tells us plainly (in addressing Christians) that *"if we confess our sins [that means agree with what God thinks about our sins], He is faithful and righteous to forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness"* (1 John 1:9, NASB)."

6.5.2.2 The Second Temptation⁵⁸

Then the devil taketh him up into the holy city, and setteth him on a pinnacle of the temple,

Matthew 4:5 (KJV)

⁵⁷ Horrobin, Peter (2008) Healing through Deliverance, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited. p125

⁵⁸ See also Luke 4:5-8

And saith unto him, If thou be the Son of God, cast thyself down: for it is written, He shall give his angels charge concerning thee: and in their hands they shall bear thee up, lest at any time thou dash thy foot against a stone.

Matthew 4:6 (KJV)

The Second Temptation follows directly upon the heels of the First Temptation. It picks up precisely where the First Temptation left off, and, indeed, with our Lord's very response and defeat of the First Temptation.⁵⁹ This time he invited Jesus to prove He was the Son of God by jumping off the pinnacle of the Temple in Jerusalem. The need for a hungry person to have bread is obvious, and to prove His divinity by making bread out of stones could have some logic about it. But what logical reason could there be for Jesus to find the idea of jumping off the Temple in Jerusalem remotely attractive?

The satanic mind is very devious, and in attempts to deceive mankind, Satan and his demons will often quote back things man would like to hear. Jesus had summarily concluded the first temptation by quoting Scripture, so what better way to start than by quoting Scripture back to Jesus? Perhaps, in that way, Jesus could be caught off guard.

Satan took the Word of God, and twisted it, misused it and manipulate it to make it mean something that it manifestly did not mean. Jumping off the Temple would certainly have been a dramatic gesture and wouldn't the people have loved to see a detachment of angels swoop down from the clouds and,

⁵⁹ The Second Temptation By: Dr. Gregory S. Neal (<http://www.revneal.org/writtensermons/SecondT.htm>)

just before Jesus crashed to the ground rescue Him from the oblivion of a sudden death.⁶⁰

According to Horrobin in his book *Healing and Deliverance*⁶¹ “the reason for the temptation was to get Jesus to put on a show, to impress the people and to let them see how great He is. Satan told Jesus everybody will follow Him and He probably won’t need to go to Calvary either. “Just show them what You’re made of, for You know what it says in Scripture, don’t You? “*He shall give His angels charge over you*” (Psalm 91:11, NKJV) as well as, “*They shall beat you up, lest you dash your foot against a stone*” (Psalm 91:12, NKJV). So, Jesus, You’ve nothing to fear. You’ve got Scripture to back this one up. When are You going to do it?”

Jesus would probably have done anything not to have gone to the cross – anything, that is, but swallow Satan’s lies or be disobedient to His Father. Jesus longed for there to be another way and was in distress. Nevertheless, He was willing to do what the Father had asked of Him. Again, Jesus saw through the temptation and with another telling quote from Deuteronomy sent Satan on his way:

Jesus said unto him, It is written again, Thou shalt not tempt the Lord thy God.

Matthew 4:7 (KJV)

⁶⁰ Horrobin, Peter (2008) *Healing through Deliverance*, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited. p127

⁶¹ Horrobin, Peter (2008) *Healing through Deliverance*, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited. p127

Jesus never used the gifting's that God has given Him for His own ends. Nowhere in the Scripture is it recorded that Jesus used His power for any other purpose than to fulfil the promises of Isaiah 61:1 in proclaiming the Gospel, healing the sick and setting the captives free. The miracles He performed was never a sign to prove who He was.

When the Pharisees came to Him seeking a sign, they were demonically inspired and simply being used by Satan to repeat this second temptation in a different form. If Jesus were persuaded by Satan to use God's power for any other purpose than the fulfilment of God's will, then Jesus would have submitted to Satan, and He would have become a sinner.

Jesus was unkind in His criticism to the Pharisees.

But he answered and said unto them, An evil and adulterous generation seeketh after a sign; and there shall no sign be given to it, but the sign of the prophet Jonas:

Matthew 12:39 (KJV)

Horrobin states that ⁶²“the word of adultery in both the Greek of the New Testament and the Hebrew of the Old has far more implications than just sexual sin. It also means spiritual apostasy – going after another “lover” than the One (God the Father) who had loved His people from the beginning. The Old Testament talks about their “adultery” in worshiping false gods. Jesus was not polite to His accusers – even in front of others!

⁶² Horrobin, Peter (2008) *Healing through Deliverance*, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited. p127

There was no way that Jesus was going to be trapped by these Pharisees into performing any supernatural sign for their benefit, not even jumping off the pinnacle of the Temple. One day there would be a very special sign (represented by Jonah's three days in the whale), not just for the Pharisees but for all people and for all ages to come. Three days and nights in the ground – and then the resurrection. A prophetic fact that Satan knew only too well.”

6.5.2.3 The Third Temptation⁶³

Again, the devil taketh him up into an exceeding high mountain, and sheweth him all the kingdoms of the world, and the glory of them;

Matthew 4:8 (KJV)

And saith unto him, All these things will I give thee, if thou wilt fall down and worship me.

Matthew 4:9 (KJV)

Then saith Jesus unto him, Get thee hence, Satan: for it is written, Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve.

Matthew 4:10 (KJV)

In the third temptation of Jesus the tempter takes Jesus in a vision onto a high mountain. He shows him all the kingdoms of the earth and their splendour and offers him kingship over the world. Jesus did not dispute the claim. This was not the mission of the Messiah, for He is supposed to be the King of the world

⁶³ Also Luke 4:9-12 “And he brought him to Jerusalem, and set him on a pinnacle of the temple, and said unto him, If thou be the Son of God, cast thyself down from hence: For it is written, He shall give his angels charge over thee, to keep thee: And in their hands they shall bear thee up, lest at any time thou dash thy foot against a stone. And Jesus answering said unto him, It is said, Thou shalt not tempt the Lord thy God.”

who unifies the whole earth into one Kingdom of peace and well-being and rescue the people from Satan's grip.⁶⁴

Satan began this temptation by speaking truth, and then he brought the deception. "All this can be Yours. After all, isn't that why You came, so that You can win the world back? Let's make a deal, You can have it all, no questions asked."

Satan did not mention the cross, but make no mistake; that was what this temptation was all about. If Jesus were to get to Calvary and voluntarily lay down His life for others, it would be the beginning of the end for Satan and eternal freedom for all those who believed. To keep Jesus from going through with it, Satan was willing to apparently, surrender control of his earthly kingdom.

If thou therefore wilt worship me, all shall be thine.

Luke 4:7 (KJV)

Satan had only one goal, and that was the place of God. Worship was what he craved; and Satan knew that Jesus and the Father (with the Holy Spirit) were one. So if Jesus were to give in on this, then God Himself would also come under Satan's dominion and control. Then all God's plans for Satan's future punishment could be overthrown, for Satan did not relish eternal torment in the lake of fire.

Jesus was given a chance by Satan to achieve His aim without going to the cross. The temptation was direct, very direct. "Accept my offer and You can forget

⁶⁴ Third Temptation of Jesus by Fr. Jefferson Bennit (<https://vaticanos.wordpress.com/2012/06/19/third-temptation-of-jesus/>)

about Calvary. *Worship me and You can have mankind.*” But Jesus knew that, far from achieving His Father’s purposes, to accept Satan’s apparently generous offer would not only destroy the hope of salvation for mankind, but would also place the very Godhead under Satan’s control.

Again Jesus used Scripture to counter Satan’s attack, this time with a third quotation from the book of Deuteronomy:

Thou shalt fear the LORD thy God, and serve him, and shalt swear by his name.

Deuteronomy 6:13 (KJV)

Jesus’ rebuke was short, effective and to the point and did not enter into discussion with Satan, but concluded the matter unequivocally with the Word of God.⁶⁵

6.6 The Reasons Jesus Suffered Temptation

Jesus suffered temptation and therefore He is able to strengthen and succour all believers who are tempted.

- He suffered temptation for the development of a full and complete humanity. His humanity grew in wisdom and stature and in favour with God and man (Luke 2:52). Through His Temptation He learned obedience by the things He suffered (Hebrews 5:8). He developed

⁶⁵ Horrobin, Peter (2008) *Healing through Deliverance*, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited. p131

spiritually, mentally and physically. As Jesus' He suffered sinless infirmities, He suffered temptation in His human nature and proved Himself perfect. That which He suffered in His human nature added, in experience, a completeness to the divine nature, as the Creator was one with the creature, the divine one with the human. "It shows that Jesus was genuinely human."⁶⁶

Though he were a Son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered;

Hebrews 5:8 (KJV)

- He suffered temptation to display to Satan's hosts a perfect humanity.
- Satan conquered Adam, the first man, through temptation, and has similarly conquered all men since. Jesus was the beginning of the "new creation" of God (Revelation 3:14). Satan used the mightiest of his temptations to entice Christ to sin. Satan and all his demonic forces were baffled by this creation, the God-Man. It was a creation in which there was no response to sin. It was a revelation of the coming defeat of sin, its author and his entire kingdom on the cross (Colossians 2:14-17). God was well pleased with His perfect Man, for He is the sample of many sons to follow (Romans 8:20-28).
- He suffered temptation to be approved of God His Father. Jesus of Nazareth was a Man approved of God. His Father spoke from heaven and called Him His Beloved Son. Jesus never used His divine prerogatives apart from the Father's will, but was subject and obedient

⁶⁶ What Was the Purpose of Jesus' Temptation By Don Stewart (https://www.blueletterbible.org/faq/don_stewart/don_stewart_1326.cfm)

to His Father, by the Spirit, for all that He was, said and did.⁶⁷

- Jesus suffered temptation so He could be mankind's example on how to live.⁶⁸
- He suffered temptation in order to become a merciful High Priest in God's service and atone for humankind's sin. As a priest is taken from among men and ordained for men, he must be one who is touched with the feelings of the infirmities of the people He ministers for. Jesus Christ was taken from among men for the same purpose (Hebrews 4:14-16).

The expression "touched with the feelings of our infirmities" means that Christ can sympathize with us in our temptations and trials. Christ, as the God-Man, identified with man in His human nature, with its sinless infirmities. Jesus' human nature enables Him to sympathize with humankind's own weaknesses. Whether Christ could sin or not, the fact is that He did not sin. If He had become identified with us in sin, He would have never been able to be our Saviour. This is an eternal distinction between Christ and us. This was a limited identification of the God-Man with us, even as Creator/Creature and Saviour/Sinner relationships have their distinctions and limits. He is eternally the God-Man and people are eternally redeemed men. The only way He became identified with us in our sin was when He took our sin upon Himself on the cross. In that Jesus did suffer temptation, trials and testing's, He is able to be a merciful High Priest and sympathize with us. He sympathizes with us in our temptations and not in our sinning.⁶⁹

⁶⁷ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p178

⁶⁸ What was the meaning and purpose of Jesus' temptations? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/Jesus-temptations.html>)

A person can ask the question: *“Does Jesus have to sin or be able to sin before He can help and sympathize with the sinful?”*

Would Jesus have more sympathy to us if He had sinned? Jesus did suffer temptations and trials, and therefore He is able to strengthen and succour, as well as sympathize with us in our trials and temptations.

- Kevin J Connor writes that Jesus, ⁷⁰“is now beyond all temptations as all believers will be. Since His resurrection and the glorification of His sinless and incorruptible humanity, Christ is beyond all possible temptation. His glorified body is no longer subjected to sinless infirmities or the weaknesses of human nature. He never slumbers nor sleeps. He is never weary. He does not need to eat or drink. He lives in the power of an endless life. His body is the sample of what is to happen to the believer’s body at the coming of Christ (Philippians 3:20,21; 1 Thessalonians 4:15-18; 1 Corinthians 15:51-57).”
- He suffered temptation in order to supply help to tempted believers. Because He suffered temptation, He knows what man goes through and can supply strength, grace and mercy to help us in our time of need. He has promised that He will not suffer us to be tempted above that which man are able to bear but with the temptation will make a way of escape that man may be able to bear it (Hebrews 2:18; 4:14-16; 1 Corinthians 10:13).”

⁶⁹ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p178

⁷⁰ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p178

6.7 Jesus' Disciples

Jesus chose twelve men to be His disciples. He needed people He could trust to send out His message and to continue the work when He was no longer around.⁷¹ A Jewish rabbi, or teacher, also had his own group of disciples or pupils.

These twelve men were from all walks of life. Some were fishermen: Peter and his brother Andrew, and their friends, the brothers James and John, and was called by Jesus while they were by their boats, saying, 'Follow me'. Levi, also called Matthew, a Jewish tax collector was a disciple too. So was Simon, a member of the strong nationalist party who wanted to wrest Israel from Rome's power.

These are the twelve: Simon, renamed Peter; James son of Zebedee and his brother John; Andrew, Phillip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot and Judas Iscariot.⁷² After Jesus's resurrection and ascension, Jesus sent the disciples out, to be His witnesses, they were then referred to as the twelve apostles – those that were to be sent out in his cause.⁷³

But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

Acts 1:8 (KJV)

⁷¹ Twelve Apostles of Jesus (<http://www.marypages.com/Disciples.htm>)

⁷² Batchelor, Mary (1993) Opening up the Bible. Hatfield, Pretoria: JL van Schaik Publishers. p111-112

⁷³ Twelve Apostles of Jesus (<http://www.marypages.com/Disciples.htm>)

7 JESUS: THE FIVE FOLD MINISTRY

7.1 Jesus As Apostle: Govern

***Wherefore, holy brethren, partakers of the heavenly calling, consider the Apostle and High Priest of our profession, Christ Jesus;
Hebrews 3:1 (KJV)***

In Scripture this is the only time Jesus is called an apostle. “The word itself means “one sent as a messenger.”⁷⁴ When applied to the twelve apostles, it means that they were chosen by Jesus and sent into the world in his name and bearing his message. When applied to Jesus, it means that he was sent from the Father to be the Saviour of the world. This can be seen clearly in John 3:17,

***For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved.
John 3:17 (KJV)***

When Charles Spear wrote on this title, he said that the word “apostle” implies three things:

- The person must be sent by someone else.
- The person must be sent on a particular mission.
- The person must be sent with sufficient power to accomplish the mission.

⁷⁴ Yet, what is also interesting to note is that the Greek word, *apostolos*, and the Latin word, *missum* (origin of our word missionary), mean exactly the same thing. They both mean ‘sent one’. In a most simple understanding, apostle = missionary and missionary = apostle.

Jesus fits this description perfectly, for He was sent by the Father in heaven. He was sent to be the Saviour of the world and with all the prerogatives of deity clothed in human flesh.”⁷⁵

7.2 Jesus As Prophet: Guides

Prophets are presented in the Bible as having several functions. First, prophets are spokesmen for God. When the people of Israel asked the prophet Samuel for a king, God told Samuel, *“Listen to all that the people are saying to you; it is not you they have rejected, but they have rejected me as their king”* (1 Samuel 8:7). Samuel was responsible to relay the Word of God to the people of Israel, and God states that He was the source of Samuel’s authority and words. Thus, Samuel the prophet was God’s representative.

Many other passages in the Old Testament have statements such as “the word of the Lord came to. . .” indicating that the source of the message was God and not the prophet (e.g., 2 Samuel 7:4; 2 Kings 20:4; Jeremiah 1:4; Ezekiel 3:16; and the opening verses of Hosea, Joel, Micah, Jonah, and Zephaniah). Similarly, Jesus taught a heavenly message: *“My teaching is not my own. It comes from the one who sent me”* (John 7:16). He also stated that He spoke *“just what the Father has taught me”* (John 8:28). In Jesus’ High Priestly Prayer, He says, *“I gave them the words you gave me”* (John 17:8). Thus, Jesus clearly fulfilled the role of a prophet, as He was a spokesman for God.⁷⁶ Christians can most assuredly

⁷⁵ How was Jesus an Apostles? By Ray Pritchard (<http://www.jesus.org/is-jesus-god/names-of-jesus/how-was-jesus-an-apostle.html>)

⁷⁶ Was Jesus a Prophet? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/was-Jesus-a-prophet.html>)

affirm Christ's divinity as part of the Triune God, and there for they recognise Christ as the greatest prophet who ever walked the earth.

7.3 Jesus As Evangelist: Gather

"The word *evangelist* (Greek *euaggelistes*) simply means 'a bearer of good news'.⁷⁷ And, it is the word *gospel* (Greek *euangelion*) that means 'good news'. So, yes, Jesus was definitely the great evangelist bringing good news to humanity."⁷⁸

Now after that John was put in prison, Jesus came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of the kingdom of God,

Mark 1:14 (KJV)

And saying, The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is at hand: repent ye, and believe the gospel.

Mark 1:15 (KJV)

The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised,

Luke 4:18 (KJV)

To preach the acceptable year of the Lord.

Luke 4:19 (KJV)

⁷⁷ Jesus as Prophet, Evangelist, Pastor & Preacher by Scott Lencke (<https://prodigalthought.net/2009/12/06/jesus-as-prophet-evangelist-pastor-teacher/>)

⁷⁸ Jesus as Prophet, Evangelist, Pastor & Preacher by Scott Lencke (<https://prodigalthought.net/2009/12/06/jesus-as-prophet-evangelist-pastor-teacher/>)

7.4 Jesus As Pastor: Guard

In its essence, a shepherd is called to care for, feed and lead the sheep. And, as the good shepherd, that is exactly what Jesus did and still does today. God, Himself, is shepherding His people through Christ. In our English versions of the Bible, the Greek word only gets translated as *pastor* one time, and that is in the passage being discussed from Ephesians 4. Everywhere else, it gets translated as *shepherd*.

Therefore, noting that *poimen* literally means *shepherd*⁷⁹, it can definitely be noted how Christ is the great shepherd, or pastor, of God's people:⁸⁰

I am the good shepherd: the good shepherd giveth his life for the sheep.

John 10:11 (KJV)

For ye were as sheep going astray; but are now returned unto the Shepherd and Bishop of your souls.

1 Peter 2:25 (KJV)

7.5 Jesus As Teacher: Grounding

The Hebrew/Aramaic word many times used to describe Christ was "*Rabbi*", which literally means "*teacher of the law*".⁸¹ Seen in passages such as these:

⁷⁹ Stewart, Dr. Mark Allan (2003) *Releasing the Power of Your Spiritual Gifts*. Lincoln, NE: iUniverse, Inc. p172

⁸⁰ Jesus as Prophet, Evangelist, Pastor & Preacher by Scott Lencke (<https://prodigalthought.net/2009/12/06/jesus-as-prophet-evangelist-pastor-teacher/>)

⁸¹ Strong's Exhaustive Concordance 3547. "nomodidaskalos" (<http://biblehub.com/str/greek/3547.htm>)

Then Jesus turned, and saw them following, and saith unto them, What seek ye? They said unto him, Rabbi, (which is to say, being interpreted, Master,) where dwellest thou?

John 1:38 (KJV)

Many times, when Jesus had finished teaching, the crowds would respond with awe at the authority and wisdom by which He taught (see Matthew 13:54; Mark 1:22). Therefore, Jesus was definitely a teacher par excellence, being Himself the Word and the Truth. Jesus was the greatest teacher of all time and taught the very words of God (*For he whom God hath sent speaketh the words of God: for God giveth not the Spirit by measure unto him John 3:34 KJV*), even being the Word incarnate Himself. One would expect the Word incarnate to be able to teach the truth of God with accuracy, authority and power.⁸²

In Matthew and Luke there are two parallel blocks of teaching (Matthew 5; Luke 6). They are sometimes called the 'Beatitudes', which means 'Blessed' (because each statement begins with 'Blessed') or 'truly happy':

Blessed are the poor in spirit: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven. Blessed are they that mourn: for they shall be comforted. Blessed are the meek: for they shall inherit the earth. Blessed are they which do hunger and thirst after righteousness: for they shall be filled. Blessed are the merciful: for they shall obtain mercy. Blessed are the pure in heart: for they shall see God. Blessed are the peacemakers: for they shall be called the children of God. Blessed are they which are persecuted for righteousness' sake: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

Matthew 5:3-10 (KJV)

⁸² Jesus as Prophet, Evangelist, Pastor & Preacher by Scott Lencke (<https://prodigalthought.net/2009/12/06/jesus-as-prophet-evangelist-pastor-teacher/>)

Batchelor writes,⁸³ “most people think happiness is to be found in health, wealth, popularity and self-fulfilment, but Jesus said that true happiness is reserved for the humble, the merciful, those who know they have no goodness of their own and who are truly sorry for the wrong things they have done and said. He also rated highly the happiness of those who would be persecuted for being his followers.”

Jesus taught about prayer, almsgiving and fasting, and in answer to the disciple’s question how to pray, he gave them a “model” on prayer.

After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father which art in heaven, Hallowed be thy name. Thy kingdom come. Thy will be done in earth, as it is in heaven. Give us this day our daily bread. And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors. And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil: For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, for ever. Amen.

Matthew 6:9-13 (KJV)

According to the prayer in Matthew, Christians are reminded that God is a loving Father who is in heaven, that is, far greater and more wonderful than human beings can imagine. That people owe him honour and reverence and should be concerned first with God’s glory and the establishing of his rule in the hearts of men and women. A person can also pray for everyday material needs. A person must also ask God’s forgiveness and recognizing the need to respond by forgiving others. In this prayer a person can ask for God’s help against the temptation to stray from his ways.

⁸³ Batchelor, Mary (1993) Opening up the Bible. Hatfield, Pretoria: JL van Schaik Publishers. p113

Jesus' teaching set people free from narrow legalism. Jesus said it is more important to show mercy and love towards others in order to be like the Father in heaven rather than keeping of strict ceremonial rules.⁸⁴

7.5.1 Teaching By Parable

As per the Tyndale Bible Dictionary,⁸⁵ Jesus uses parables to make his teachings and preaching more accessible. It is important to understand parables to be able to understand the teachings of Jesus as approximately 35 percent of his recorded sayings are parables. A parable is a teaching given by Jesus in the form of story. The vitality, relevance, and appropriateness of his teaching are made clear by the use of parables. Using parable is not unique to Jesus, but he was a master when it came to use parables in his teachings. To a great extent, parables are Jesus' way of preaching, using it to illustrate what he was saying. They are not simple stories; they are "works of art" and "weapons of warfare." The interpretation of the parables is not an easy task. An understanding of the nature of a parable and the essence of Jesus' message will determine the method and content of interpretation.

The level of meaning of parables differs. Mary Batchelor in the book, *Opening up the Bible* explain that some parables are allegories (symbolical). *An allegory is a story where every person and incident stands for something else, with deeper significance.*⁸⁶ The parable of the sower is interpreted in this way but

⁸⁴ Batchelor, Mary (1993) *Opening up the Bible*. Hatfield, Pretoria: JL van Schaik Publishers. p113

⁸⁵ Comfort, Philip W. , Elwell, Walter A. (2001) *Tyndale Bible Dictionary*. USA, Illinois: Tyndale House Publishers, Inc. p988

⁸⁶ Batchelor, Mary (1993) *Opening up the Bible*. Hatfield Pretoria: JL van Schaik Publishers. p116

not all parables contain this in-depth meaning. Most highlight one main truth dramatically and vividly. It is important to look at the setting in which Jesus told it to be able understand the parable.

Another view of Mary Batchelor is that the impression according to Mark was that Jesus has used parables to hide the truth from his listeners. Jesus says in Mark 4:11-12: *“And he said unto them, Unto you it is given to know the mystery of the Kingdom of God: but unto them that are without, all these things are done in parables: That seeing they may see, and not perceive; and hearing they may hear, and not understand; lest at any time they should be converted, and their sins should be forgiven them.”*

But Matthew words the passage differently: here the result of the parable not its purpose, is that hearers do not understand. It is a figure of Jewish speech to express a consequence as if it were deliberate intent.⁸⁷

Parables convey its truth in a story that is easy to remembered but only to those intended on discovering the truth and Jesus' meaning of it. Not so much because they understand the parable, but once they hear it, they ask for the meaning and hang around long enough to have it explained to them. They have a deeper understanding of the subject.

⁸⁷ Batchelor, Mary (1993) *Opening up the Bible*. Hatfield Pretoria: JL van Schaik Publishers. p116

7.5.1.1 Parables Of Jesus⁸⁸

	Matthew	Mark	Luke
Lamp under a bushel	5:14-15	4:21-22	8:16, 11:33
Houses on rock and sand	7:24-27		6:47-49
New cloth on an old garment	9:16	2:21	5:36
New wine in old wineskins	9:17	2:22	5:37-38
Sower and soils	13:3-8	4:3-8	8:5-8
Mustards seed	13:31-32	4:30-32	13:18-19
Tares	13:24-30		
Leaven (yeast)	13:33		13:20-21
Hidden treasure	13:44		
Priceless pearl	13:45-46		
Drag-net	13:47-48		
Lost sheep	18:12-13		15:4-6
Two debtors (unforgiving servant)	18:23-24		
Workers in the vineyard	20:1-16		
Two sons	21:28-31		
Wicked tenants	21:33-41	12:1-9	20:9-16
Invitation to the wedding; man without a wedding garment	22:2-14		
Fig-tree as herald of summer	24:32-33	13:28-29	21:29-30
Ten "bridesmaids"	25:1-13		
Talents (Matthew) Pounds (Luke)	25:14-30		19:12-27
Sheep and goats	25:31-46		
Seedtime to harvest		4:26-29	
Creditors and debtors			7:41-43
Good Samaritan			10:30-37
Friend in need			11:5-8
Rich fool			12:16-21
Alert servants			12:35-40
Faithful steward			12:42-48

⁸⁸ Batchelor, Mary (1993) Opening up the Bible. Hatfield Pretoria: JL van Schaik Publishers. p117

Fig-tree without figs			13:6-9
Places of honour at the wedding-feast			14:7-14
Great banquet and the reluctant guests			14:16-24
Counting the cost			14:28-33
Lost coin			15:8-10
Prodigal son			15:11-32
Dishonest steward			16:1-8
Rich man and Lazarus			16:19-31
Master and servant			17:7-10
Persistent widow and unrighteous judge			18:2-5
Pharisee and tax collector			18:10-14

TABLE 3: PARABLES OF JESUS

7.5.2 The Kingdom Of God

According to Bible.org⁸⁹ another purpose for parables was to reveal truths about the Kingdom of God (or the Kingdom of heaven as Matthew puts it). Matthew 13:10-13 says: *“And the disciples came, and said unto him, Why speakest thou unto them in parables? He answered and said unto them, Because it is given unto you to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it is not given. For whosoever hath, to him shall be given, and he shall have more abundance: but whosoever hath not, from him shall be taken away even that he hath. Therefore speak I to them in parables: because they seeing see not; and hearing they hear not, neither do they understand.”*

It is important to understand what Jesus meant by the Kingdom of God as told in the parables he used. The Greek word for kingdom means ‘rule’ or ‘reign’

⁸⁹ Introduction to the Parables (<https://bible.org/seriespage/introduction-parables>)

and the Kingdom of God is 'God acting in his kingly power, exercising his sovereignty'.⁹⁰

Mary Batchelor in the book, *Opening up the Bible* write that many psalms express the thought that Jewish people believed that God was supreme over the whole world. But that only the Jews, God's people, who obeyed God's law, recognized this kingly rule. The day the Old Testament prophets had looked forward to was the day they believed God would break into history and display his kingly power to the entire world, overthrowing evil and showing mercy to his people.

As soon as Jesus began to preach he announced that God's Kingdom had arrived. With his coming, God himself had at last broken into history. But for the time being only those who accepted Jesus and his teaching would become his subjects. There was still a further day to be awaited. Jesus would conquer sin and death by his own death and resurrection. Then, at a future time, he would return and usher in the universal rule of the kingdom in all its power.

In the Kingdom of God's parables, Jesus explained what man must do to enter the Kingdom and what conditions will be like in it, when one understand that, one have the key to the Gospels and the whole of the New Testament.

⁹⁰ Batchelor, Mary (1993) *Opening up the Bible*. Hatfield Pretoria: JL van Schaik Publishers. p116

7.5.3 Stories About God's Kingdom

Jesus described the Kingdom of God by using parables. He often started his teachings with 'The Kingdom of God is like ...'.

Jesus told the crowds that followed him the story about the sower. As he sowed the seed, some fell on the path; some fell on rocky ground, some among thorns and some on good earth. The ones on rocky ground immediately sprang up but because of lack of good earth, it was scorched by the sun. The plants produced by the seed among thorns were choked by them. Only the seed that fell on good earth were able to germinate and producing a huge harvest.

The disciples failed to understand. He waited until much later, until the crowds had left to explain the meaning behind this story to his disciples.

Jesus explained that the sower sows the word of God; the seeds falling on the path represent those who hear God's word but dismiss it straight away, quickly taken away by the enemy – the Devil/Satan. The seeds falling on the rocky road represent those who hear and receive the word, but only accept it shallowly and not take it deep into their lives. The seeds falling on thorns represent those who hear the word, and take it to heart, but allow worldly concerns, such as money and cares of this world, to choke it. The seeds falling on the good earth represents those who hear, accept and obey God's word, and truly receive it spiritually, persisting until there are results, causing it to bear fruit.

Jesus used many other parables to illustrate the Kingdom of God. In one such parable, He described a woman putting leaven (yeast) into her dough - that

shows how the kingdom grows quietly but rapidly spreading throughout the world. The parable of the little mustard seed is very important for the disciples to hear. It shows that a small seed can grow into a huge shrub. None of the disciples was equipped but they have been called to change the world. The Kingdom of God will develop from the smallest of beginnings into something that will be greater than anyone could have imagined.

In the parable of the prodigal son, Jesus uses the father and his two sons to show the way God loves and welcomes everyone who turns to him. The youngest son came to his father and asked for his inheritance ahead of time. He then left his father and went off spending it and enjoyed himself. The eldest son stayed behind helping out his father farming. Because of the way the youngest son lived, the money runs out and he finds himself in dire circumstances. He took on a job feeding pigs. Realizing that they were better fed than he lived, he came to his senses and decided to return to his father begging for his forgiveness and acknowledged his sin. He was still a long way off when his father saw him, came running towards him and welcomed him home. He came back with nothing to offer, yet his father receives him back with joy and celebration. The son felt unworthy and was remorseful. The eldest son was not impressed and filled with anger. He refused to join the celebration party he found when returning from working in the fields. His father tried to plead with him, *"It was meet that we should make merry, and be glad: for this thy brother was dead, and is alive again; and was lost, and is found"*. (Luke 15:32) and to assure him of his love *"And he said unto him, Son, thou art ever with me, and all that I have is thine"*. (Luke 15:31)

Jesus told this parable to law-keeping religious leaders and the Jewish crowd who, like the older brother, were angry and upset that Jesus taught and

received the outcasts and sinners who came to him. By telling this parable He helped them to understand that salvation does not come by works as per Jewish tradition but by the grace of God.

The parable of the good Samaritan is another well-known story Jesus told. It is about a man traveling on the desolate rocky road from Jerusalem to Jericho and who was attacked by thieves. They robbed him and left him half dead. Two religious men, a priest and a Levite each came down the road failing to help him and passing on the other side of the road so as not to get involved. A Samaritan, one of the people most despised by the Jews, stopped to help the victim, he cleaned his wounds, put him on his donkey, took him to an inn and paid the innkeeper to care for him.

He told this story in answer to the question, 'Who is my neighbour?' The Samaritan saw his neighbour as anyone who was in need. In Matthew 22:38-39 Jesus summarizes God's law as loving God wholeheartedly and loving our neighbour as ourselves.

8 JESUS THE HEALER

Many places in the Bible great crowds followed Jesus. They loved to hear his teaching, but even more the crowds rushed towards Jesus for healing and the deeds that he performed.

One day Jesus had been teaching on the other side of the Sea of Galilee when Jairus, an important Jewish leader, president of the synagogue, broke through the crowd to beg Jesus' help for his dying daughter. Jairus was an important

man but did not worry about what people were thinking about him. He was not ashamed to ask Jesus for help, he had faith that Jesus was able to heal his daughter. Jesus set out with him, hampered by the milling crowd.

In getting through the crowd, a woman who has been suffering from haemorrhage for twelve year pushed through and silently touched the tassels on the hem of Jesus' cloak. These tassels were worn as a reminder of God's Law. It was a deliberate act. The sick woman showed a great deal of determination to get to Jesus in the crush. She had faith that if only she could touch him, her haemorrhage would stop. She was immediately healed, as soon as the woman grasped the blue tassel on Christ's cloak she knew that she had been made whole. Not only did the woman know that she was healed but Jesus knew too. She turned to slip quietly away, but Jesus stopped, and asked who had touched him. With the crowds pressed so tightly the disciples though the question was absurd, but Jesus knew that power had left him. The woman risked everything - public humiliation, if not punishment - According to the law, her touch could make Jesus unclean. But because he was the Son of God, his power of healing overcame her uncleanness. The woman came shyly forward to make her confession of faith and admitted what she had done. She told him her whole story. Jesus wanted to come face to face with her; a personal encounter was part of the whole healing process. He wanted to assure her that it was her faith in him that made the difference. Furthermore, he wanted her to know that the healing would be permanent. Finally, he wanted to establish a personal relationship with her. For all those things to be accomplished, she needed to identify herself to Jesus and to the crowd. It was a powerful testimony to Christ's saving power to the disciples and numerous other bystanders.

Because of the healing of the sick woman, Jesus had been delayed on the way to Jairus' home. A messenger arrived to tell Jairus, that it was too late, that his daughter has died. Jesus told him: 'Don't be afraid, only believe,' and they continued on their way to Jairus' home. With a word of hope, He changes the father's focus, and with gentleness and compassion, comforts him. Jesus told all the people who were crying about the girl's death that they did not need to cry. At Jairus' home, Jesus turned out the professional mourners. These people did not have faith in Jesus. They were not invited to enter the home and witness the miracle. Jesus went into the child's room and resurrects Jairus' daughter in the presence of five appropriate witnesses: the father, mother, and only three of His disciples, Peter, James, and John. He went to the bed and called to the dead child, '*Talitha kum*' – 'Little girl, get up.' Jesus has power over sickness and death. She got up at once and began walking around. Jesus told her parents to give her something to eat, her body was still weak and needed to be strengthened. Jesus finishes by requesting that the parents "tell no one what had happened", to not spread the story far and wide.

9 JESUS' MIRACLES

The first of two exorcism accounts, Boyd looks at is Jesus' exorcism of a multitude of demons out of a man at Gerasa (Mark 5:1-27; Matthew 8:28-34; Luke 8:27-39).⁹¹

⁹¹ Boyd, Gregory A. (1997) *God at War, The Bible & Spiritual Conflict*. Downers Grove, Illinois: InterVarsity Press. p193

Matthew, quite typically, notes that there was another demonized person besides the one all three Synoptic narratives center on (Matthew 8:28-29). Also, there is in the manuscript tradition disagreement about whether this event took place in Gadara, Gerasa or Gergesa. According to the strongest readings,

This account is the most developed dramatic and detailed exorcism narrative in the Gospels.

9.1 Casting Out Legion

Here one find Jesus confronted by a demonized man who lived amid the tombs of this town (Mark 5:3; Matthew 8:28; Luke 8:27).⁹² The man could not be restrained, for he wrenched apart the chain and broke the shackles to pieces. There was no one that had the strength to subdue him.

He lived among the tombs and on the mountains where he bruised himself with stones.

Mark and Luke have Jesus going to Gerasa, while Matthew has him going to Gadara. Gerasa lies 30 miles off the coast of the sea of Galilee, and Gadara 5 miles, making both difficult to square with the narratives. The most likely solution to the problem seems to be see the actual town in which the exorcism took place as being Khersa, which is located squarely on the eastern shore. This could be easily spelled Gerasa in Greek (as in Mark and Luke) and could also be included under the territory of Gadara. We can then suppose that Matthew (again, typically) tried to avoid the ambiguity and thus referred only to the larger and much better known region of Gadara. Later scribes, unfamiliar with the territory, then tried to “correct” Matthew’s “solution” and change this to Gerasa, hence the geographical problems as well as the ambiguity in the manuscript traditions. For discussions, see W.H. Mare, “Gadara,” *The New International Dictionary of Biblical Archaeology*, ed. E.M. Blaiklock et al. (Grand Rapids, Mich.: Zondervan, 1983), p201; C. Blomberg, *The Historical Reliability of the Gospels* (Downers Grove, Ill.: InterVarsity Press, 1987), pp149-50; E.J. Vardaman, “Gadara,” *Wycliffe Bible Encyclopedia*, 2 vols., ed. C.F. Pfeiffer et al. (Chicago: Moody Press, 1975), 1:643; S. Holm-Nielsen et al., “Gadarenes,” *ABD*, 2:866-68. For two helpful discussions of this episode, see G.H. Twelftree, *Jesus the Exorcist: A Contribution to the Study of the Historical Jesus*, WUNT2/54 (Tübingen: Mohr, 1993), pp72-87; H. van der Loos, *The Miracles of Jesus*, NovTSup 8 (Leiden: Brill, 1965), pp382-97

⁹² Murphy, Ed (2003) “Demonized,” *The Reality. The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, Revised and Updated. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. p429

Who had his dwelling among the tombs; and no man could bind him, no, not with chains: Because that he had been often bound with fetters and chains, and the chains had been plucked asunder by him, and the fetters broken in pieces: neither could any man tame him. And always, night and day, he was in the mountains, and in the tombs, crying, and cutting himself with stones.

Mark 5:3-5

When Jesus arrived the demons knew who He was and what He had come to do, for they caused the man to run up to Jesus and to shout “*at the top of his voice, ‘What have you to do with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? I adjure you by God, do not torment me’*” (Mark 5:7).

Interestingly enough, Mark and Luke both note that this was said after Jesus had commanded the unclean spirit to come out of the man (Mark 5:8; Luke 8:29), making this only account in which it seems that Jesus’ word did not immediately effect an exorcism.⁹³

Some demons, Jesus elsewhere teaches, are harder to cast out than others (Mark 9:14-29), and it may be that the sheer numerical force of the demons that challenged Jesus prolonged this exorcism.

His first command having apparently failed, Jesus investigates further (perhaps to find out more precisely what he is up against).⁹⁴

⁹³ So too, as mentioned earlier, Mark suggests that Jesus’ prayer for healing did not always immediately effect a complete healing (Mark 8:22-26). Indeed, he states explicitly that in at least one instance people’s unbelief prevented Jesus from doing many miracles (Mark 6:5). As God-become-man, Jesus was sinless, he exercised faith, and he was perfectly open to the omnipotent Father working through him.

⁹⁴ This observation stands over against R.Guelich (“Spiritual Warfare: Jesus, Paul and Perriti,” *Pneuma* 13, no.1 [1991]:40-41), who minimizes the warfare dimension of the Gospels largely on the basis of the supposed absence of conflict between Jesus and Satan and demons. “We find no hint of a struggle in these

So he asks the demon what his name was, to which the demon replied, “My name is Legion; for we are many” (Mark 5:9; Luke 8:30).⁹⁵

Knowing they cannot ultimately withstand the Son of God, the demons then beg Jesus not to be sent “out of the country” (Mark 5:10; Luke has “into the abyss,” 8:31). Instead, they ask to be sent into a local herd of swine. Surprisingly, Jesus acquiesces to their request.

The plan seems to backfire on the demons, however, for instead of finding a permanent abode that would allow them to stay in the region, the pigs immediately rush headlong over a cliff and drown (Mark 5:11-13; Matthew 8:32-33; Luke 8:33-34). Where they went after that – whether to another area or to the “abyss” – is not clear. But it is clear that they did not get what they wanted, which seems to have been Jesus’ plan all along.

The result is that the man is returned to his “right mind” (Mark 5:15; Luke 8:36), but the townspeople are filled with fear, apparently at the realization that one even stronger than the demons who afflicted this man is in their midst.

encounters” (p40). Not only the failure of Jesus’ command here but the acquisition of a name (see note 6 below) and the common rebukes of Jesus during exorcism, as well as the temptation narratives (to say nothing of his explicit teachings; see chapter eight), suggest that Jesus was in fact engaged in a genuine struggle. The temptation narratives in the Gospels alone should be enough to tell us this much (cf Hebrews 4:15-16; 5:7-10).

⁹⁵ In the ancient Near Eastern world, names were generally viewed as inherently reflecting the realities to which they were attached. Thus to know someone’s name was to know the person, and invoking this name could either capture the power of that person’s presence, as when Jesus’ name is used in exorcism (Luke 10:17; Mark 9:38; Acts 19:13), or give one power over that person, as when the name of demons is used in exorcism. Interestingly, Jesus, in contrast to other exorcists of his day, did not rely upon the power of names in his deliverance ministry. See Twelftree, *Jesus the Exorcist*, p164. For the invocation of names in exorcisms and magic in the first century, see D.E. Aune, “Magic in Early Christianity,” in *ANRW* (1980), 2/23:1545; J.G. Gager, ed., *Curse Tablets and Binding Spells from the Ancient World* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1992). pp3-14

In any case, what is far more significant is their collective name, “Legion.” This is military term denoting a large army unit. Jesus used the term (in the plural) to refer to a vast army of heavenly warriors (Matthew 26:53), and in the Roman army (which, significantly, occupied the whole area) it customarily referred to a unit of six thousand soldiers.

This term as a name for the demons afflicting this man, then, reveals how thoroughly demonized he was.⁹⁶

Indeed, given their name “Legion,” one should not be too surprised when Mark tells us that the number of pigs the demons entered when they left the man was two thousand (Mark 5:13).

The number of swine is also significant. Ancient people generally associated particular demons with particular regions (especially around tombs and desert regions, Luke 8:27, 29; 11:21), and this seems to be reflected in this passage.⁹⁷

The desperation of their cry makes it appear that these degenerate spirits somehow needed to remain in this region, as though (perhaps) this were some sort of geographical assignment they had received from their chief and had to obey.⁹⁸

⁹⁶ Van der Loos, Hendrik (1965) *Miracles of Jesus*. Leiden: E. J. Brill. p388

⁹⁷ So, e.g., 4 Maccabees 18:8 speaks of a “seducer of the desert.” 1 Enoch 10:4-5. On this see Ferguson, E (1980) *Demonology of the Early Christian World*. New York; Mellen, p2

⁹⁸ This again raises the issue of “territorial spirits” Boyd, Gregory A. (1997) *God at War: The Bible & Spiritual Conflict*. Downers Grove, Illinois: InterVarsity Press. p366

They seem to be like spiritual viruses that cannot survive long on their own; they need to infect someone or something.⁹⁹

This belief may be reflected in Jesus' teaching in Luke 11:24-26¹⁰⁰:

When the unclean spirit is gone out of a man, he walketh through dry places, seeking rest; and finding none, he saith, I will return unto my house whence I came out. And when he cometh, he findeth it swept and garnished. Then goeth he, and taketh to him seven other spirits more wicked than himself; and they enter in, and dwell there: and the last state of that man is worse than the first.

Luke 11:24-26 (KJV)

This passage presents the reverse principle of the teaching just before it, namely, that Jesus was stronger than the "strong man" who guards his house, and this ministry was about overpowering this tyrant and "dividing his plunder" (Luke 11:21-22). In other words, what applies to the Kingdom of God also applies to the kingdom of Satan.

The teaching states that when a demon has been cast out of a "house," one can expect it to return with stronger reinforcements to attempt to reclaim what it regards to be its territory. It needs "rest," and it will do whatever it needs to do to find it.

⁹⁹ Like "the disease germs of modern medicine," H.A. Kelly argues, demons in the New Testament are "definitely parasitic in nature" Kelly, H.A (1985) *The Devil at Baptism: Ritual, Theology and Drama*. Ithaca; Cornell University Press, p18.

¹⁰⁰ Also Matthew 12:24-25 "*But when the Pharisees heard it, they said, This fellow doth not cast out devils, but by Beelzebub the prince of the devils. And Jesus knew their thoughts, and said unto them, Every kingdom divided against itself is brought to desolation; and every city or house divided against itself shall not stand: And if Satan cast out Satan, he is divided against himself; how shall then his kingdom stand?*"

“In the context in which these are spoken, it is clear that this principle applies not only to individuals but to whole generations.

Hence, after giving this teaching, Jesus adds, “*So will it be also with this evil generation*” (Matthew 12:45), implying that is possible for an entire generation to be demonized by multitudes of demons.”¹⁰¹

As Boyd notes; “it is dangerous to have Jesus simply cast out a demon; one needs to follow him, to have the Kingdom of God present in one’s “house” as well. Hence he prefaces his teaching by saying, “*Whoever is not with me is against me, and whoever does not gather with me scatters*” (Luke 11:23).

He concludes by saying, “*Blessed...are those who hear the word of God and obey it*” (Luke 11:28). The only protection against the kingdom of darkness is to belong to the Kingdom of God.

When an individual, or an entire generation, resists the kingdom, they open themselves up to significant demonic activity.”¹⁰²

Professor Brand writes,¹⁰³ “finally, the whole teaching is based on the premise that demons are “restless,” like one travelling in a desert without water, until they locate a “house,” whether this be a person, a region, a nation or a generation. Having “abandoned their own home” by rebelling against their

¹⁰¹ Michaels, Ramsey J. (1976) Jesus and the Unclean Spirits, in Demon Possession, ed. J.W. Montgomery. Minneapolis: Bethany. pp53-54

¹⁰² Boyd, Gregory A (1997) God At War, The Bible & Spiritual Conflict. Downers Grove Illinois; Inter Varsity Press, p196

¹⁰³ Brand, Dr. Connie M.J. The Warfare Theme of Jesus’ Ministry As seen in The Old and New Testament p114

Creator (Jude 6), these spiritual parasites perpetually seeks to make another being their host. Reading in this light, one can perhaps better understanding why “Legion” begged Jesus to let them remain in the “house” of their “country,” by entering the “house” of the swine.”

9.2 Delivering A Demonized Child

The second concerns Jesus’ exorcism of a young boy who suffered from grand mal epilepsy. (Mark 9:14-30; Matthew 17:14-21; Luke 9:37-45).¹⁰⁴ Coming down from the Mount of Transfiguration where Jesus, Peter, James and John (Mark 9:2-12), shared the incredible experience of talking to Moses and Elijah, Jesus finds his other disciples arguing with certain “scribes” or “teachers of the law” in the midst of a great crowd of people (Mark 9:14-16).

A crisis occurred while Jesus was away, the crisis being a demonized boy which His disciples could not heal. On His way down the mountain Jesus was greeted by the anguished father of the boy, who clearly was under the impression that the disciples should have been able to heal him. In some detail, Mark recounts the distraught father’s predicament as well as his plea to Jesus.

And one of the multitude answered and said, Master, I have brought unto thee my son, which hath a dumb spirit; And wheresoever he taketh him, he teareth him: and he foameth, and gnasheth with his teeth, and pineth away: and I spake to thy disciples that they should cast him out; and they could not.

Mark 9:17-18 (KJV)

¹⁰⁴ For discussions see Twelftree, Jesus the Exorcist, pp91-97; van der Loos, Miracles of Jesus, pp397-405

Jesus ignored the boy and his father and addressed the disciples directly and expressed something of His frustration with them when He said:

He answereth him, and saith, O faithless generation, how long shall I be with you? how long shall I suffer you? bring him unto me.

Mark 9:19 (KJV)

When the disciples asked Jesus why they couldn't get the demon out Jesus told them that it was in part a lack of faith that prohibited the exorcism.

And he said unto them, This kind can come forth by nothing, but by prayer and fasting.

Mark 9:29 (KJV)

As soon as the demon in the boy sees Jesus, he throws the boy down on the ground in a fit or convulsion (Mark 9:20). Jesus is apparently impressed by the severity of this case of possession, for he then asks the father, *"How long has this been happening to him?"* (Mark 9:21), to which the father replies, *"From childhood. It has often cast him into the fire and into the water, to destroy him; but if you are able to do anything, have pity on us, and help us"* (Mark 9:21-22; Matthew 17:15).¹⁰⁵

In Mark's narrative the need for faith is then reiterated as Jesus tells the man, *"All things can be done for the one who believes."* The Father responds with a tentative but honest confession of faith: *"I believe; help my unbelief!"* (Mark 9:23-24).

¹⁰⁵ Brand, Dr. Connie M.J. The Warfare Theme of Jesus' Ministry As seen in The Old and New Testament p115

This is apparently enough for Jesus, for he proceeds to “rebuke the unclean spirit” saying, “*You spirit that keeps this boy from speaking and hearing, I command you, come out of him, and never enter him again!*” (Mark 9:25; Matthew 17:18; Luke 9:42).

The exorcism is successful, but (according to Mark) only after the demon “shrieked” and “convulsed him violently,” leaving the boy so lifeless that the crowd thought he was dead (Mark 9:26).

Following this scene, Mark and Matthew include a conversation Jesus has with his disciples concerning why they had been unsuccessful in driving the demon out of the boy. In Mark, Jesus’ response is that “this kind can come out only through prayer” (Mark 9:29), while in Matthew Jesus attributes their inability to lack of faith (Matthew 17:20).¹⁰⁶ Three things about this account are especially noteworthy. First, the terrorizing characteristics by this child and by the Gerasene demonic are typical of demonizations and exorcisms as they were understood throughout the ancient world. For that matter, they are typical of cases of demonizations and exorcisms reported throughout the world today.

“Experiences of radically demonized people having sporadic supernatural strength, becoming mouthpieces for demons, convulsing on the ground, foaming at the mouth, becoming stiff and rigid, and so on, were frequent in ancient times and are common on the mission field yet today.

¹⁰⁶ Some manuscripts add “and fasting” to Mark 9:29, and some add “But this kind does not go out except by prayer and fasting” to Matthew 17:20.

In the context in which the Gospels were written, the physically violent and grotesque behaviours sometimes exhibited by demonized people appear to be simply the physical by products of an evil, parasitic force living its life through that person.

According to Dr Brand,¹⁰⁷ “When these behaviours occur during exorcism, they are perhaps the physical manifestations of a spirit who is fighting for its life to stay in its “house.” Why this occurs sometimes and not other times, are not told, though one guess, based on this passage, is that it has something to do with how long the demon has been there, and thus how thoroughly the demon entrenched is in the “house.””

Hence Jesus responds to the boy's convulsing behaviour by asking, *“How long has this been happening to him? (Mark 9:21).*

However, it may also have something to do with the kind of demon that was occupying the “house” (viz., how strong it is) as evidenced by Jesus' statement: *“This kind can come out only through prayer” (Mark 9:29).*¹⁰⁸ Another feature of this story concerns the simple fact that it is a young boy that are demonized and needed deliverance.

¹⁰⁷ Brand, Dr. Connie M.J. The Warfare Theme of Jesus' Ministry As seen in The Old and New Testament p119

¹⁰⁸ In keeping with general apocalyptic thought, “Christ acknowledges that there are different classes of demons, some of whom had more powers than others” (Gokey, Terminology, p49). But he never speculates beyond this point, as the apocalyptic thinkers frequently did.

An important point that was made by Jesus and the Gospel authors, is that demonization was not something for which the demonized person was responsible.

Nowhere does Jesus imply that the demonization of a person is his or her fault, even in the case of Mary Magdalene, out of whom Jesus cast seven demons (Luke 8:2).¹⁰⁹ “She was the person whom God gave a unique honour. He had never given it to any other person – she was the first woman witness to the resurrection of Christ. She was not inferior because she has been delivered of 7 demons - in fact she is the only person who saw Jesus alive before He ascended to the Father. Jesus had such compassion on her broken heart that He would not even go to the Father until he revealed Himself to her. This in one of the marvellous illustrations of the compassion of Jesus. He left His apostles but there was one woman who was so much in love with Him that He could not even leave earth before he revealed Himself to her.

Her testimony – He delivered me from 7 demons.”¹¹⁰

Now when Jesus was risen early the first day of the week, he appeared first to Mary Magdalene, out of whom he had cast seven devils.

Mark 16:9 (KJV)

As Raymond Brown notes, for Jesus and the Gospels authors, “demoniacal possession is not so much the result of a league with Satan as an expression of

¹⁰⁹ So argues Kallas, J (1961) *The Significance of the Synoptic Miracles*. Greenwich; Seabury. p63
Langton, Edward (1949) *Essentials Of Demonology*. Ams PressInc. pp152-53

¹¹⁰ Prince Derek – Spiritual warfare on earth - YouTube video

bondage under Satan's dominion.”¹¹¹ Deliverance was a sign of the coming Kingdom of God, not as sign of various individuals' moral improvement therefore the Kingdom of God advances as victims of the kingdom of Satan are freed.

Jesus never suggested that those who were immoral such as the self-righteous Pharisees were demonized, He did however express intense anger towards them. Toward the demonized, He never expressed anger; only compassion. The need for deliverance should not be a shame, if pride keeps a person from receiving deliverance then that should be a shame.

As Langton notes, “Pity rather than anger characterizes the attitude of Jesus toward the possessed.... He treats them as if they were the victims of an involuntary possession.”¹¹²

According to Professor Brand¹¹³ “it is clear from Jesus' warfare ministry; however, the common modern assumption that life in the spiritual realm is fair is simply wrong.

God's will is not the only will, on earth or in the “world in between,” and thus there is no guarantee that either of these spheres will exhibit more justice than injustice. In Jesus' view, as in apocalyptic thought (and, to some extent, as in the Old Testament), the “world in between” is characterized by warfare, and the earth is part of its battleground.”

¹¹¹ Brown, R (1967) Gospel Miracles, New Testament Essays. Garden City, N.Y.: Doubleday. p223

¹¹² Langton, Edward (1949) Essentials Of Demonology. Ams Press Inc. pp171-72

¹¹³ Brand, Dr. Connie M.J. The Warfare Theme of Jesus' Ministry As seen in The Old and New Testament p124

Hence people, even innocent children (as in the passage under discussion), can sometimes become casualties of this war.

According to the Gospels Jesus did not believe that despite themselves, demons or evil angels were carrying out a secret providential plan of God. Each case of demonization was treated by Jesus as an instance of spiritual rape: an alien force had illegitimately and cruelly invaded a person's being. In the passage that is considered, the demons had "robbed" this child of his speech and hearing and had attempted to rob him of his life as well.¹¹⁴

In John 10:10, the enemy always comes to steal, kill and destroy, and nothing could be further from the will of his loving Father than this.

The thief cometh not, but for to steal, and to kill, and to destroy: I am come that they might have life, and that they might have it more abundantly.

John 10:10 (KJV)

By exorcism, healing or by both, Jesus devoted his ministry to getting these "spiritual rapists" off their victims. He didn't waste time searching for a hidden divine will behind evil, asking "how could God do this?" or "why would God allow this?" or tried to get people to piously resign themselves to God's supposed "secret plan for their lives" in the face of evil. Jesus' ministry was a ministry not of resignation but of revolt and He appalled against the cruel tyranny of a world ruler that was oppressing God's people.

¹¹⁴ Brand, Dr. Connie M.J. The Warfare Theme of Jesus' Ministry As seen in The Old and New Testament p124

Jesus' only goal was about restoring humanity to its rightful place of dominion over the earth, and empowering humans to rise up against Satan, to give back to people and to win back for his Father, what the enemy had stolen and destroyed.

Indeed, one are not going too far if claimed that Jesus' very existence as the God-man on earth was an act of revolt.

All things are possible to one who believes and is willing to pray, including expelling demons like the one possessing this young child (Mark 9:23; John 11:40). Through simple faith and prayer, God's power is manifested and the Kingdom of God is established. This sets Jesus' exorcism and healing ministry apart from the exorcist and healing activities of his contemporaries.

Exorcisms, healings and other miracles over nature, revealed yet another dimension of his war on Satan. When Jesus saw the sick and hungry, He was moved by compassion toward those who had died and those who mourned. He knew that these things were never intended to be part of God's creation (John 11:33-35). This is, the work of the devil, and it grieved and angered Him.

Definite acts of war that were accomplished and demonstrated his victory over Satan was Jesus' miracles over nature, as well as his healings, exorcisms and especially his resurrection. These acts thereby established the Kingdom of God in people's lives and in nature and demonic forces were routed.

9.3 The Miracles Of Jesus

	Matthew	Mark	Luke	John
Healing of physical and mental disorders				
Leper	8:2-3	1:40-42	5:12-13	
Centurion's servant	8:5-13		7:1-10	
Peter's mother-in-law	8:14-15	1:30-31	4:38-39	
Two Gadarenes	8:28-34	5:1-15	8:27-35	
Paralyzed man	9:2-7	2:3-12	5:18-25	
Woman with a haemorrhage	9:20-22	5:25-29	8:43-48	
Two blind men	9:27-31			
Man dumb and possessed	9:32-33			
Man with withered hand	12:10-13	3:1-5	6:6-10	
Man dumb, blind and possessed	12:22			
Canaanite woman's daughter	15:21-28	7:24-30		
Boy with epilepsy	17:14-18	9:17-29	9:38-43	
Bartimaeus and another blind man	20:29-34	10:46-52	18:35-43	
Deaf and dumb man		7:31-37		
Man possessed, synagogue		1:23-26	4:33-35	
Blind man at Bethsaida		8:22-26		
Woman bent double			13:11-13	
Man with dropsy			14:1-4	
Ten lepers			17:11-19	
Malchus' ear			22:50-51	
Official's son at Capernaum				4:46-54
Sick man, pool of Bethesda				5:1-9
Man born blind				9
Commands over the forces of nature				
Calming of the storm	8:23-27	4:37-41	8:22-25	
Walking on the water	14:25	6:48-51		6:19-21
5,000 people fed	14:15-21	6:35-44	9:12-17	6:5-13
4,000 people fed	15:32-38	8:1-9		

Coin in the fish's mouth	17:24-27			
Fig-tree withered	21:18-22	11:12-14,20-26		
Catch of fish			5:1-11	
Water turned into wine				2:1-11
Another catch of fish			21:1-11	
Bringing the dead back to life				
Jarius' daughter	9:18-19,23-25	5:22-24,38-42	8:41-42,49-56	
Widow's son at Nain		7:11-15		
Lazarus				11:1-44

TABLE 4: THE MIRACLES OF JESUS

9.3.1 Jesus Feeds Five Thousand ¹¹⁵

Jesus feeds over 5,000 people with five loaves of bread and two fish. Any guesses about how these few items of food were enough to feed all the people.

9.3.2 Ten Lepers Healed¹¹⁶

Jesus sent ten lepers to go and show themselves to the high priest. An act of faith. Imagine what would have happened if the ten lepers had turned up in the high priest's office without being healed?

¹¹⁵ Matthew 14:15-21 Luke 9:12-17

¹¹⁶ Luke 17:11-19

Jesus, as always, was aware that the leper's healing was already a done and concluded thing. As they went by faith to the high priest, they received their healing, which had already been made provision for in the spiritual realm, into their natural bodies.

The last example shows how faith will work more effectively once there is a clear understanding of the spiritual realm.

Now faith is being sure of what we hope for and certain of what we do not see, This is what the ancients were commended for

Hebrews 11:1-2 (NIV)¹¹⁷

10 THE OFFICES OF CHRIST

10.1 Prophet¹¹⁸

What is a prophet? "A prophet of God is someone who reveals God, speaks for God, and communicates to people the truths that God wants them to know. Undoubtedly, Jesus did this when he came to do the will of the Father (Luke 22:42), to reveal the Father (Matthew 11:27), and to speak the things of the Father (John 8:28; 12:49)."¹¹⁹

¹¹⁷ The Heavenly or Spiritual Realm (<http://www.wordlibrary.co.uk/article.php?id=177>)

¹¹⁸ Price, Paula A. (PhD) (2006) A divine functionary who serves as the spokes-person for a deity. New Kensington, PA: The Prophets Dictionary p399

¹¹⁹ Jesus' Three Offices: Prophet, Priest, and King by Matt Slick (<https://carm.org/prophet-priest-king>)

Moses in particular shadowed forth Christ as The Prophet, The Word of God to man. They came from God representing Him to man, thus the prophets of Israel were God's spokesmen to the people. In this they foreshadowed Christ who came from God, and represented God to man, as the final Word, the perfect revelation of God to mankind (John 1:17-18; Luke 10:16; Hebrews 1:1-2; Acts 2:22-23; 7:37; Luke 13:33; Matthew 13:57; Hebrews 12:25; John 6:14; John 7:40; Luke 7:16; Exodus 4:14-16; 7:1; Deuteronomy 18:15-18). Christ is the infallible teacher and prophet of God. The Gospel of Mark particularly presents Christ as the Prophet.

Jesus refers to himself as a prophet in Luke 13:33 because he knows he is about to die, but he cannot do it outside of Jerusalem.

Nevertheless I must walk to day, and to morrow, and the day following: for it cannot be that a prophet perish out of Jerusalem.

Luke 13:33 (KJV)

Jesus did not do many miracles in his home town, and speak in Matthew 13:57 about a prophet having no honour in his home town. Clearly, Jesus is referring to himself as a prophet.¹²⁰

And they were offended in him. But Jesus said unto them, A prophet is not without honour, save in his own country, and in his own house.

Matthew 13:57 (KJV)

¹²⁰ Jesus' Three Offices: Prophet, Priest, and King by Matt Slick (<https://carm.org/prophet-priest-king>)

Jesus taught from a seated position during His earthly ministry and as the prophet He transmitted messages that God desires to communicate to men. By the ministry of the Holy Spirit He dispense the knowledge of God to His people.

As the Word He speaks to men in behalf of God (Jeremiah 26:12; John 12:49-50; 6:26-51; Deuteronomy 18:12-19; John 1:21), He speaks the truth of God (John 14:6; Acts 3:22; 7:37; John 7:40; 9:17; 14:10:24), He confirms the Word of the Gospel by signs and wonders in earth (Deuteronomy 18:15-18; Mark 16:15-20) and He speaks with authority and anointing (Matthew 7:29; Mark 1:22; Matthew 21:11,46; Luke 7:16; 24:19; Isaiah 61:1; Luke 4:18).

A prophet of God predicts the events of the future, showing the Church things to come (Matthew 24-25; Luke 21; Mark 13; John 16:9-16).

Thus Jesus Christ, as the exalted prophet, speaks the word and will of God to the Church, His body, by the Spirit (Hebrews 1:1; 2:1-4; Luke 13:33; He is God's oracle).¹²¹

In summary - As Prophet Jesus is the word and truth of God.

¹²¹ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p166

10.2 Priest¹²²

The Tabernacle of Moses was built according to God's specifications and was a sacred place where God chose to meet His people. Another purpose for the tabernacle was to create a place where God's people could worship Him and priests could sacrifice animals on the altar in the outer court. The priests in the Old Testament were ordinary people, who served for a number of years. The priest had to offer a sacrifice for himself before he could offer sacrifices for the people to God in order to cleanse of sin. Sacrifices had to be offered again and again because they never really sufficed to take away sin.¹²³

Ultimately, all such priests were representations of Jesus who is the True Priest who offered himself as a sacrifice (Ephesians 5:2; Hebrews 9:26-27; 10:12) by which he cleanses us of our sin (1 John 1:7).¹²⁴

According to Connor¹²⁵ "the prophet represented God to man, the priest represented man to God. Aaron the High Priest and all subsequent priests in their office typified Christ in this office. He was a priest not after the "order of Aaron" but after the "order of Melchisedek"¹²⁶ (Leviticus 21:16-24. Exodus 28-

¹²² One who serves as a high-level minister with special rights, privileges and access to the deity employing him. A mediator between God and His people. The role the New Testament church fills as the New Creation priesthood of the Lord Jesus Christ. Price, Paula A(PhD) (2006) New Kensington, PA: The Prophets Dictionary p393

¹²³ What is the Tabernacle of Moses? (http://the-tabernacle-place.com/articles/what_is_the_tabernacle)

¹²⁴ Jesus' Three Offices: Prophet, Priest, and King by Matt Slick (<https://carm.org/prophet-priest-king>)

¹²⁵ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p166

¹²⁶ Priest of "God Most High" who appeared in patriarchal times, but whose significance was remembered throughout Old Testament times and eventually explained in the Book of Hebrews.

29; Leviticus 8:23-26; Hebrews 1:9; Zechariah 6:12-13; 1 Samuel 2:27-35). The Church is also called to be after the order of Melchisedek (1 Peter 2:5-8; Revelation 1:6; 5:9-10)."

Conner also states,¹²⁷ "This office is vitally connected with the sacrificial system of the offerings for sin. Christ, as High Priest, offering Himself combines both offeror and offering in His one person. He is the propitiation, the Advocate, the Intercessor, the High Priest on behalf of the sins of the people (Hebrews 2:10,17-18; 4:15-16; 5:1-5; 1 Timothy 2:5; Isaiah 53:10-12; John 1:29,36; 1 John 2:1-2; Psalm 110:4).

Christ as a priest on earth offered at Calvary's altar His own body and blood as the supreme sacrifice for sin and as a priest in heaven Christ makes intercession in the heavenly sanctuary for His own people. This is on the basis of His resurrection and ascension and fulfils that which was typified in the great Day of Atonement ceremonies as set forth in Leviticus 16 (Hebrews 7:26-27; Romans 3:25; Hebrews 8:1-2; 9:24; Romans 8:34). The Gospel of Luke particularly presents Christ as our Priest."¹²⁸

Jesus in His exaltation was seated at the Father's right hand as a Great High Priest who had accomplished a "finished work".

¹²⁷ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p166

¹²⁸ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p167

These words spake Jesus, and lifted up his eyes to heaven, and said, Father, the hour is come; glorify thy Son, that thy Son also may glorify thee:

John 17:1 (KJV)

As thou hast given him power over all flesh, that he should give eternal life to as many as thou hast given him.

John 17:2 (KJV)

And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

John 17:3 (KJV)

I have glorified thee on the earth: I have finished the work which thou gavest me to do.

John 17:4 (KJV)

In summary - As Priest Jesus is the reconciler, mediator, advocate and intercessor.

10.3 King¹²⁹

A king is someone who has authority to rule and reign over a nation. Jesus is just such a king and is called the King of the Jews by the Magi (Matthew 2:2). Jesus accepts that title in Scripture¹³⁰:

¹²⁹ A male ruler, established on a throne. Kings were initially believed to rule by divine authority and supernatural grace. Price, Paula A(PhD) (2006) The Prophets Dictionary, Whitaker House 1030 Hunt Valley Circle New Kensington PA p393

¹³⁰ Jesus' Three Offices: Prophet, Priest, and King by Matt Slick (<https://carm.org/prophet-priest-king>)

And Jesus stood before the governor: and the governor asked him, saying, Art thou the King of the Jews? And Jesus said unto him, Thou sayest.

Matthew 27:11 (KJV)

Jesus Christ is presented as King in the Gospel of Matthew. Jesus Christ holds the offices of Prophet, Priest and King and fulfilled each one. As Judge, He is God's Savior and Deliverer to humankind, as Prophet, He is God's word to them, as Priest, He is God's Mediator and offers a sacrifice for the sins of man to a holy God, and as King, He's got the authority to rule over mankind.

He is a King-Priest which constitutes Him in the Order of Melchisedek. The Kings of Judah sat upon the throne of David. Christ as the greater Son of David was to sit on the throne forever. There was to be no end to His Kingdom. The right hand is symbolic of a place of honor, power and authority. The Father gave this place to His Son (Zechariah 3:1; Revelation 12:10; Psalm 110:1; Genesis 48:13-19; Psalm 110:5).

This enthronement fulfills the prophecy of Zechariah that the Man whose name was The Branch would "sit and rule upon the throne; and He shall be a priest upon His throne; and the counsel of peace shall be between them both" (Zechariah 6:12-13).

As King He sits enthroned with the Father God and exercises authority over all things in heaven and earth. (Matthew 28:1-20). As King-Priest He has been given all power and authority, all creatures are subjected to Him and all enemies are to be placed beneath His feet, He will reign until the last enemy, death, has been destroyed (1 Corinthians 15:24-28). As King He rules and reigns in righteousness, and peace and joy (Romans 14:17; Isaiah 32:1) and all

kingdoms of this world are to be subjugated by Him (Daniel 7:14; Psalm 72:11; 22:28; Ezekiel 21:27; Revelation 11:15-19). As King He rules in the Church, His Body, which is also after the Order of Melchisedek, and order of king-priests unto God (1 Peter 2:5-9; Revelation 1:5-6; 5:9-10). God has given Him to be head over all things to the Church (Ephesians 1:20-22).¹³¹

He takes the highest place in the universe because He took the lowest place (Psalm 2:4; 93:1; 96:10; 97:1; Isaiah 16:5; Isaiah 32:1; 1 Corinthians 15:24-28,54-57; Mark 16:19-20; Matthew 22:41-46; Hebrews 4:14; 6:20; 7:1-3; Revelation 3:21; Ephesians 1:20-23; Colossians 3:1).

He is King of the saints (Revelation 15:3), the King of Kings and Lord of Lords (Revelation 19:16). He is the King of Glory (Psalm 24:7-10; Matthew 26:64) and the one who was to sit in the Tabernacle of David, judging, hastening righteousness and exercising mercy (Isaiah 16:5).¹³²

In summary - As King Jesus is the ruler, governor of the universe.

10.4 Judge

The judges were deliverers and saviours of God's people, Israel. Each of them in their office were types and shadows of Christ as The Judge, Deliverer and Saviour. Their chief function was to deliver Israel from the bondage of servitude

¹³¹ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p167

¹³² Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p167

and oppression of their enemies and bring them back into relationship with the Lord God. This is also Christ's ministry to His people (Judges 2:14; Nehemiah 9:27; John 5:19-20; Acts 17:31; Isaiah 33:22; Revelation 20:11-15; Acts 5:31). The Gospel of John particularly presents Christ as the Judge and Saviour.

All the Old Testament judges were types and shadows of His ministry as deliverer and judge of all men. Jesus Christ will be judge of all believers at the Judgement seat of Christ.

But why dost thou judge thy brother? or why dost thou set at nought thy brother? for we shall all stand before the judgment seat of Christ. For it is written, As I live, saith the Lord, every knee shall bow to me, and every tongue shall confess to God. So then every one of us shall give account of himself to God.

Romans 14:10-12 (KJV)

Christ has been committed to be the Judge by the Father, for His moral perfections and attributes qualify Him to be the true Judge of all men's thoughts, words, deeds and motives.¹³³ Every believer will give an account of himself, of the decisions he made including those concerning issues of conscience and of their lives in service to Christ and will be judged by the Jesus Christ. As Judge, He will judge and reward all believers according to their faithfulness serving Him, how well they obeyed the Great Commission, how victorious they were over sin and how well they controlled their tongues etc. The second judgement is that of the unbelievers. They will be judged at the Great White Throne judgement, and therefore already doomed to the lake of fire.¹³⁴

¹³³ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p167

¹³⁴ What does the Bible say about when God will judge us? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/judgment.html>)

In summary - As Lord Jesus is the enthroned and exalted God-Man, worthy of all praise, adoration and worship. He came in His first advent as Prophet. He rules and reigns now as Priest and King, and He will return the second time as Judge.

11 JESUS THE MESSIAH

The Hebrew word *Messiah*¹³⁵ means anointed one the name given to the promised Deliverer who would someday come to the people of Israel as their great Saviour and Redeemer, “anointed” as prophet, and King by God Himself. ‘Christ’ comes from *Christos*, the Greek form of the word. The prophet usually poured oil on the person’s head to mark them out as chosen by God.

According to Mary Bachelor¹³⁶ “the king in particular came to be known as ‘God’s anointed’, and in time the title was used for the ideal king whom God would one day send. There were very different ideas about what kind of king he would be. Some imagined a warrior and national hero, like Judas Maccabaeus while others expected a second and greater King David. Some looked for a supernatural Saviour who would carry out God’s rule as head of his people.

Jesus did not call Himself Messiah for He knew that the popular idea of the Messiah clashed with what He had come to do. Jesus accepted Peter’s declaration”.

¹³⁵ See Terms, Definitions and Abbreviations

¹³⁶ Bachelor, Mary (1993) *Opening up the Bible*. Hatfield Pretoria: JL van Schaik Publishers. p123

11.1 Son Of God

Although Israel was known as God's son in the Old Testament (see, for example, Exodus 4:22), this title is linked with the idea of Messiahship. It occurs in Old Testament verses relating to kings of Israel but was also recognized by Jewish teachers as foretelling the Messiah. In Psalm two, God says of the coming Messiah: 'You are my Son'.

Kiss the Son, lest he be angry, and ye perish from the way, when his wrath is kindled but a little. Blessed are all they that put their trust in him.

Psalms 2:12 (KJV)

Jesus recognized himself as God's son in a unique way. The emphasis was on his obedience to his Father's will and plan for him.

During His trial before the Jewish leaders, the High Priest demanded of Jesus, "I charge you under oath by the living God: Tell us if you are the Christ, the Son of God" (Matthew 26:63). "Yes, it is as you say," Jesus replied. "But I say to all of you: In the future you will see the Son of Man sitting at the right hand of the Mighty One and coming on the clouds of heaven" (Matthew 26:64). The Jewish leaders accused Jesus of blasphemy (Matthew 26:65-66). Later, before Pontius Pilate, "The Jews insisted, 'We have a law, and according to that law He must die, because He claimed to be the Son of God'" (John 19:7). Jesus' claim to be the Son of God was considered blasphemy and worthy of a death sentence. The Jewish leaders understood exactly what Jesus meant by the phrase "Son of God." To be the Son of God is to be of the same nature as God. The Son of God is "of God." The claim to be of the same nature as God is, to in fact be God, and was blasphemy to the Jewish leaders. They demanded Jesus' death, in keeping

with Leviticus 24:15. Hebrews 1:3 expresses this very clearly, “*The Son is the radiance of God’s glory and the exact representation of His being.*”¹³⁷

11.2 Son Of Man¹³⁸

This title is the one most used by Jesus about Himself. “The common understanding is that “Son of God” implies his deity—which it does—and that “Son of Man” implies his humanity, which it does too”¹³⁹ The more sophisticated and important historical insight is that the term “Son of Man” doesn’t merely align him with humanity. It is probably taken from Daniel 7, which depicts a scene where one ‘like a son of man’ comes with clouds and is presented to God, who is in awesome splendour. God invests him with never-ending power and authority and is not just a human being but also an exalted figure. Jesus quoted this passage as referring to himself at his trial before the Sanhedrin. In Mark ten verse forty-five Jesus said:

For even the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

Mark 10:45 (KJV)

Jesus called Himself Son of man very often and by claiming this title Jesus emphasized his genuine humanity yet asserted his place of power and honour,

¹³⁷ What does it mean that Jesus is the Son of God? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/Jesus-Son-of-God.html>)

¹³⁸ Son of man is an expression in the sayings of Jesus in Christian writings, including the Gospels, the Acts of the Apostles and the Book of Revelation. The meaning of the expression is controversial. Interpretation of the use of “the Son of man” in the New Testament has remained challenging and after 150 years of debate no consensus on the issue has emerged among scholars [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Son_of_man_\(Christianity\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Son_of_man_(Christianity))

¹³⁹ Why Is Jesus Called “Son of Man”? Interview with John Piper (<http://www.desiringgod.org/interviews/why-is-jesus-called-son-of-man>)

coming from God. Jesus confessed his open deity right at the point where he knew he would be crucified for it.

“"Son of Man" has the double meaning of human being and, according to Daniel 7, exalted heavenly one. And Jesus means to communicate both of those.”¹⁴⁰

11.3 The Servant

Jesus Christ laid aside His majesty in order to serve humanity. His death is the supreme example of his servanthood: the fulfilling of the will of God His Father.¹⁴¹ Bachelor writes, “¹⁴² the servant who suffers for his people was described by Isaiah in four poems. They were not at that time linked with the Messiah but Jesus took the role upon himself. He said:

For even the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

Mark 10:45 (KJV)

Jesus was a servant by coming to dwell among humanity as a man, by obeying God's will, by ministering to His disciples and by dying on the cross.

In Isaiah 53, the last of the Servant songs describes the death of the servant on behalf of his people. His mission would extend to the nations (Isaiah 42, 49).

¹⁴⁰ Why Is Jesus Called “Son of Man”? Interview with John Piper (<http://www.desiringgod.org/interviews/why-is-jesus-called-son-of-man>)

¹⁴¹ Dictionary of Bible Themes – 2327 Jesus Christ, As Servant (<https://www.biblegateway.com/resources/dictionary-of-bible-themes/2327-Jesus-Christ-as-servant>)

¹⁴² Batchelor, Mary (1993) Opening up the Bible. Hatfield Pretoria: JL van Schaik Publishers. p123

12 THE TRANSFIGURATION

Jesus took James, Peter and John with Him on the Mount of Transfiguration to pray. It is recorded in the Gospels that while they were there, away from the crowds, Jesus was changed. His whole body, and His clothes too, shone with an unearthly splendour. Homer A Kent describes it as ¹⁴³“a transformation from within in which Jesus’ essential glory was revealed to the eyes of His Apostles.” Two others appeared whom they knew, Moses, the great Law –giver, and Elijah, the mighty prophet. Luke tells us that the conversation centred on Jesus’ coming death. Peter met Moses and Elijah face to face and heard the very voice of God affirming to them the divinity of Jesus: “*This is my Son, whom I have chosen - listen to him!*” (Luke 9:35). Peter wanted to make permanent this high point of spiritual experience by building three dwelling places for Jesus, Moses and Elijah! A bright cloud of God’s presence covered them as God spoke from the cloud.

And there was a cloud that overshadowed them: and a voice came out of the cloud, saying, This is my beloved Son: hear him.

Mark 9:7 (KJV)

The disciples were terrified and fell flat on the ground. Jesus touched them on the shoulder and told them to ‘Get up’ and ‘Don’t be afraid.’

When they looked around there was no one to be seen but Jesus. Jesus asked them not to tell any-one about this special experience until after he had risen from the dead.

¹⁴³ Kent, Homer A. Jr. (1981) Studies in the Gospel of Mark. Winona Lake, Indiana: BMH Books. p68

13 JESUS' DEATH

13.1 Crucifixion

The crucifixion was not invented by the Romans but they refined it to the cruellest form of execution. In Palestine it was reserved for runaway slaves or the worst kind of criminals against the state.

Before being crucified the prisoner was whipped with a metal-tipped whip which caused horrific injury and blood loss. The prisoner was then expected to carry the cross-beam through the streets to the place of execution where the upright post was already in place.

The prisoner's arms were stretched out and nailed to the cross-beam before it was attached to the upright – to which the victim's feet were nailed. An inscription was put up with the prisoner's name and crime written on it.

Death was extremely slow and excruciating, sometimes taking several days, and was finally caused by asphyxiation.¹⁴⁴

13.2 Judas The Betrayer

Judas is described as the “*son of perdition*.” (John 17:12) John 6:71, states that Judas was the son of Simon. The word perdition means “destruction, ruin,

¹⁴⁴ Horrobin, Peter (2008) *Healing through Deliverance*, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited. p123; p137

waste.” Judas was not the literal son of “ruin, destruction, and waste,” but those things were the identity of Judas' life. Judas was a manifestation of perdition. In this same way, Jesus is the Son of God.”¹⁴⁵

Jesus had many encounters with demons but there is one more in the gospels that the writers are quite specific about being an encounter not just with demons but with Satan himself.

Jesus addressed Satan himself in the encounter with Simon Peter, not just a demon, just as in Judas Iscariot at the moment of betrayal. It was Judas' sin upon his agreement to betray Jesus that opened him up to being taken over. Judas not just became demonised but a host for Satan himself – at the moment he acted upon his sinful decision.¹⁴⁶

Judas agreed upon a price of thirty pieces of silver to betray Jesus (Matthew 26:15), he promised to tell the religious leaders when and where Jesus could be found and arrested quietly, away from the crowds. Self-seeking, being greedy and protecting one's own skin at the expense of others are all hallmarks of the “*Judas spirit*.” Jeremiah's words about the deceitfulness of the heart were never truer than at this moment in the life of Judas (Jeremiah 17:9). In spite of having spent three years with Jesus Himself, when the chips were down, selfishness came floating to the surface like a cork in a bucket of water.

Any Christian, even one who walks closely with the Lord as Judas did, could be deceived and used by demons to oppose the purposes of God, if his heart is not

¹⁴⁵ What does it mean that Jesus is the Son of God? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/Jesus-Son-of-God.html>)

¹⁴⁶ Horrobin, Peter (2008) *Healing through Deliverance*, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited. p123 p138

pure and his motives, therefore, become focused on selfish objectives. It is Satan's greatest desire to manipulate and use the need for selfish gain in one person to destroy the purposes of God in another. By the attitude of the heart, mankind gives the demonic a right to act through them and against fellow Christians.

Today the "*Judas spirit*," the spirit of betrayal, is rampant in the Body of Christ.

Believers should guard against spreading the spirit of Judas in their churches and should examine their hearts before God and rigorously root out every motive that could give access to the spirit of Judas.

Satan had tried to take Jesus' life on many occasions. The events of those days in Jerusalem were building up to a climax. Jesus would not be around much longer. Satan began to close in for the kill and Judas was an easy target. Judas' heart was full of greed and jealousy which aroused to hatred of those who might stand in the way of his immediate objectives.

Hatred is a breeding ground for murder. And while betrayal of Jesus into the hands of other murderers was probably seen by Judas as only a small part in the whole scenario, he was as guilty as if he had personally nailed Jesus to the cross.

Jesus was going to die - but only because He had chosen to die as seen in the verse below, Jesus choose to give up His spirit.

Jesus, when he had cried again with a loud voice, yielded up the ghost.

Matthew 27:50 (KJVR)

Judas, upon realisation that he betrayed an innocent man, threw the coins on the Temple floor and committed suicide by hanging himself. **Suicide is one of the objectives of the demonic.**

Driving people into corners so tight that to live seems worse than dying is a trick that Satan and his demons have been playing on the mind since the beginning of time. To Satan, Judas was just another statistic, another person whom, having used, he discarded on the scrap heap of life.

13.3 The Passover And The Last Supper

Jesus celebrated Passover with His disciples in an upstairs room in Jerusalem, He taught them a lesson in humility and unselfishness by washing their feet.

During the meal, knowing he was soon to die, Jesus took some bread and passed it to the disciples to eat, saying:

And as they were eating, Jesus took bread, and blessed it, and brake it, and gave it to the disciples, and said, Take, eat; this is my body. And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, Drink ye all of it; For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins.

Matthew 26:26-28 (KJVR)

He told them to do these things in memory of him.

13.4 Gethsemane

After supper, Jesus and the disciples went to an olive grove called Gethsemane, where they could be quiet and private. Here Jesus prayed in great agony. He foresaw and dreaded the death that lay ahead, but still in obedience to God the Father he prayed that His will be done

Saying, Father, if thou be willing, remove this cup from me: nevertheless not my will, but thine, be done.

Luke 22:42 (KJVR)

13.5 The Arrest

Jesus barely finished praying when the soldiers – under Judas’ guidance came to arrest Him.¹⁴⁷

13.6 Jesus’ Trial

Jesus was taken to the High Priest’s House, His disciples got scared and ran away, Peter and John later followed and watched Jesus from the courtyard as he was being interrogated. It was here that Peter denied Jesus three times when He was asked if he was one of Jesus’ followers. Jesus had warned him earlier that this would happen, but Peter did not believe it.

¹⁴⁷ The Arrest and Trials of Jesus (<http://www.ecclesia.org/truth/trial-jesus.html>)

Jesus was cross-questioned at length, He was asked on oath whether he was the Messiah His reply was pronounced to be blasphemy and Jesus was condemned to die. Meanwhile he has handed over to be ill-treated by the soldiers.

Next morning the Roman governor, Pilate, was approached to ratify the death sentence, which the Jews could not carry out without his authorization. He did his best to release Jesus but in the end he gave in to the Jewish leaders' wishes and ordered Jesus' crucifixion.¹⁴⁸

13.7 Why Jesus Died

"Everything that happened to Jesus was under God's control even if it might seem as if Jesus died as a result of the evil plots of jealous men. The death of Jesus was a voluntary act and was the Son's consent to his Father's plan."

Ye men of Israel, hear these words; Jesus of Nazareth, a man approved of God among you by miracles and wonders and signs, which God did by him in the midst of you, as ye yourselves also know: Him, being delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, ye have taken, and by wicked hands have crucified and slain:

Act 2:22-23 (KJV)

"The gospels record that Jesus foresaw His death from the outset of his ministry, the statements He made echoed the words of Isaiah 53, where the innocent servant dies to bring his people pardon for their sins. Jesus told the

¹⁴⁸ The Arrest and Trials of Jesus (<http://www.ecclesia.org/truth/trial-jesus.html>)

disciples that His death had a universal significance and a definite bearing upon the spirit-world. He spoke of his death as a '*ransom for many*'. At that time a ransom was paid in order to free a slave, and Jesus understood His death as the means of setting people free and reconciling them back to God."

John the Baptist referred to Jesus as the Lamb of God who bears away the sin of the world, in the Old Testament ceremony the guilt of the offeror was transferred to the innocent animal which was slaughtered on the offeror's behalf.

Jesus' death is explained in the Bible as a death on behalf of others, a death to free men and women from sin and the spiritual death, which is the inevitable consequence of wrongdoing.

And he began to teach them, that the Son of man must suffer many things, and be rejected of the elders, and of the chief priests, and scribes, and be killed, and after three days rise again.

Mark 8:31

Christ died a **substitutionary** death on behalf of sinners. His death is also called vicarious, meaning, "one in place of another." Matthew 20:28 states, "the Son of man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give His life a ransom for many" (Mark 10:45).

By dying on the Roman cross Christ died as a substitute for all humanity (2 Corinthians 5:21; 1 Peter 3:18). This doctrine is important inasmuch as the righteous demands of a Holy God were met completely through Christ's complete payment for sin. It is on this basis that God may declare believing sinners righteous and accept them into fellowship without any compromise on

His part. All the believer's sins are placed on Christ, who completely atoned for them and paid for them through His death.

The Death of Christ is indispensable to Christianity. All other world religions are built upon the teachings of their founders, who are dead, or will die. Christianity alone is built upon the death and resurrection of Jesus Christ, its founder. As the rod of Aaron budded to life, attesting to the fact that he was God's ordained and anointed High Priest, so the resurrection of Christ from the dead attests to His divine priesthood. Without the death of Christ, Christianity is reduced to the level of other religions.¹⁴⁹

The death of Christ is essential for salvation, God cannot pardon sinners unless sin is dealt with. The death of Christ is the major theme of the Gospel of grace for Christ died for the sins of mankind. The penalty for sin is death – the death penalty was paid.

Moreover, brethren, I declare unto you the gospel which I preached unto you, which also ye have received, and wherein ye stand; By which also ye are saved, if ye keep in memory what I preached unto you, unless ye have believed in vain. For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures; And that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day according to the scriptures:

1 Corinthians 15:1-4

The death of Christ was the conquest of the whole of Satan's realm. Satan held the power of sin, sickness, disease and death, as well as control over his own kingdom of principalities, powers and wicked spirits of this world system. At the

¹⁴⁹ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p166

death of Christ, God disarmed the princes and powers of Satan, stripping Satan of the keys of death and hell, and turned what seemed to be the greatest defeat into the greatest victory.

And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it.

Colossians 2:15 (KJV)

As Karl Heim puts it, the cross was “God’s final settlement of the Satanic opposing power which has arisen against God.”¹⁵⁰ Hence Christ is now exalted “in the heavenly places.” Where are these “heavenly places”? They are, Paul continues, “far above all rule and authority and power and dominion and above every name that is named ... And he has put all things under his feet and has made him the head over all things for the church”

Far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come: And hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church,

Ephesians 1:21-22 (KJV)

The Death of Christ was complete and final and there is no need of continual sacrifices, as were offered under the Law. Christ offered an acceptable and perfect sacrifice. His death was for the whole world, for the church, His Bride, for the unjust, for the sinner, for the ungodly, for the elect out of every kindred, tongue, tribe and nation.

¹⁵⁰ Heim, Karl (1961) *Jesus the World’s Perfector*. USA: Muhlenberg Press. p70

By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all. And every priest standeth daily ministering and offering oftentimes the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins: But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down on the right hand of God; From henceforth expecting till his enemies be made his footstool. For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified. Whereof the Holy Ghost also is a witness to us: for after that he had said before, This is the covenant that I will make with them after those days, saith the Lord, I will put my laws into their hearts, and in their minds will I write them; And their sins and iniquities will I remember no more. Now where remission of these is, there is no more offering for sin.

Hebrews 10:10-18 (KJV)

The death of Christ was a manifestation of divine and perfect love because God is Love (1 John 4:8), and loves the sinner and therefore died for them.

For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

John 3:16 (KJV)

Jesus' death provided **redemption** for all those who believe in Him, 1 Corinthians 6:20 states that believers "*have been bought with a price.*" Bought is the Greek word "*agorazo*"¹⁵¹, which pictures a slave being purchased in the ancient public slave market. Christ purchased believers out of the slave market of sin and set them free (1 Corinthians 7:23; Galatians 3:13; 4:5; Revelations 5:9; 14:3, 4).

¹⁵¹ Purchase "*agorazo*" is rendered "to purchase" (<http://gospelhall.org/bible/bible.php?search=agorazo&dict=vine&lang=greek>)

A further result of Christ's death is that man is reconciled to God, meaning that man, who was estranged and alienated from God, is now at peace with Him. The enmity and hostility has been removed (Romans 5:10). Through his rebellion in the garden, man moved out of fellowship with God and needed to return to fellowship.

The death of Christ also provided **propitiation**, meaning that the righteous demands of a Holy God were fully satisfied; Christ provided a satisfactory payment for sin through His death. God was satisfied, His holiness was upheld, and His divine wrath was averted. His death resulted in **forgiveness** for sinners and **justification** for believing sinners.

13.8 Jesus' Death And Burial

Jesus was crucified with a criminal on either side of him. At first both cursed him, but one put faith in him even while he was dying. Some of Jesus' enemies came to taunt him, but a small group of faithful disciples, mostly women (his mother among them), stayed close to the cross.

In spite of extreme pain and difficulty in breathing, Jesus spoke several times from the cross. He prayed for his executioners:

Then said Jesus, Father, forgive them; for they know not what they do. And they parted his raiment, and cast lots.

Luke 23:34 (KJV)

He gave the apostle John the care of his mother, Mary.

The Gospel writers articulated that there was darkness for three hours while Jesus endured the agony of the cross. Jesus used the words of a psalm to express His own sense of dereliction:

And about the ninth hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying, Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani? that is to say, My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?

Matthew 27:46 (KJV)

Just before he died he shouted triumphantly: *'It is finished!'* because He knew that He had perfectly completed the work that His Father had given him to do.

And when Jesus had cried with a loud voice, he said, Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit: and having said thus, he gave up the ghost.

Luke 23:46 (KJV)

At the time of Jesus' death the curtain that completely screened the most holy part of the temple was ripped from top to bottom. The Gospel writers understood by this that Jesus, by his death, had opened the way into God's presence.

Two leading Jewish men, who had not agreed to Jesus' death, took care of his burial. One, called Joseph, buried him in the rock tomb prepared for his own use. The women who had witnessed his death watched where Jesus' body was put.

14 THE RESURRECTION OF JESUS CHRIST

The resurrection of Christ is one of the great fundamental doctrines of the Christian faith. There are about 104 references to the resurrection of Christ in the New Testament. Many believe in the death of Christ, yet reject His resurrection, yet both of these facts are declared by the same writers (Acts 26:8).

Christ was “delivered for our offences and raised for our justification” (Romans 4:25). The death and resurrection of Christ should never be separated for one preceded the other, and the one completes the other. A balanced Gospel always includes His saving death and His saving resurrection life. Man are saved first by His death, and then by His life (Romans 5:10). The resurrection was the foundation for Apostolic preaching and practically every sermon in the Book of Acts refers to it. The Apostle Peter speaks much of it (Acts 1:21-22; 2:24, 32; 3:15; 4:10, 33; 5:30). The Apostle Paul also speaks of it much (Acts 13:30, 34; 17:31; Philippians 3:21; Acts 17:18; 23:6). The great resurrection chapter is found in the Epistle to the Corinthians (1 Corinthians 15).

The resurrection of Jesus Christ took place after 3 days and 3 nights. His body saw no corruption. God raised Jesus from the dead, by the power of the Holy Spirit, immortal and incorruptible, to live in the power of an endless life (Hebrews 7:16). The resurrection of Jesus Christ was God’s sign and seal of an accepted atonement of His only begotten Son (Romans 1:4; Acts 3:13-15; Mark 16:16; 1 Corinthians 15:3-4). The resurrection of Christ answers the age-long question of Job — “*If a man die, shall he live again?*” (Job 14:14).

The day after Jesus' death was the Sabbath, when all must rest. But very early on the Sunday morning some of the women who had seen where Jesus was buried hurried back to the place in order to embalm his body with spices. Upon their arrival they found the huge stone at the cave mouth had been rolled away. An angel told them that Jesus was no longer there - **He had risen!**

Although Jesus had repeatedly told his disciples that he would raise on the third day, none of them had taken it in, therefore they were sceptic when the women told them of their experience at the grave.

But when the disciples were together that evening Jesus himself appeared to them. They were terrified at first, thinking they were seeing a ghost. But when Jesus had calmed and reassured them they at last took in the wonderful reality that Jesus was alive.

14.1 The Importance Of The Resurrection Of Christ:¹⁵²

- The resurrection determines the validity of the Christian faith. (1 Corinthians 15:17).
- It was the guarantee of the Father's acceptance of the Son's work. The resurrection indicated that the work of the cross was completed.
- It was essential in the program of God. Jesus promised to send the Holy Spirit as a Helper and Comforter for the disciples (John 16:7), but the Holy Spirit could only come to them when Jesus departed from them.

¹⁵² Enns, Paul P. (1997) *Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology*. USA, Chicago: Moody Press.

- It fulfilled the prophecies concerning His resurrection.
- God raised Him to be a great High Priest (1 Timothy 2:5-6; Hebrews 8:1-4).
- Christ became mankind's Advocate and Intercessor (Hebrews 7:26-28; 1 John 2:1-2; Romans 8:34).

14.2 Proof Of The Resurrection Of Christ¹⁵³

- The empty tomb.
- The shape of the linen wrappings, upon entering the tomb Johan “saw and believed” (John 20:8), he saw the linen wrappings which retained shape of the body and the headpiece “*rolled up in a place by itself*” (John 20:7; 11:44). John knew no one could have taken the body out of the wrappings and replaced the wrappings to retain the shape of a body thus the only one explanation: the body of Jesus had passed through the linen wrappings.
- The resurrection appearances. After the resurrection Jesus was seen by many people in the forty days that followed, among them were the faithful women at the tomb, the two on the Emmaus road, Peter, the Twelve, five hundred believers at one time, James, the apostles, and Paul (Matthew 28:1–10; Luke 24:13–35; 1 Corinthians 15:5–8).
- The transformed disciples. Upon seeing Jesus the sceptical were completely changed. Knowledge of the resurrection made the difference.

¹⁵³ Enns, Paul P. (1997) Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology. USA, Chicago: Moody Press.

- Observance of the first day of the week. The disciples immediately began to meet together in commemoration of Jesus' resurrection (John 20:26; Acts 20:7; 1 Corinthians 16:2; Revelations 1:10).
- Existence of the church. The existence of the church is dependent on the fact of the resurrection. The early church grew through the preaching of the doctrine (Acts 2:24–32; 3:15; 4:2).

J Gresham Machen, writes, ¹⁵⁴“The great weapon with which the disciples of Jesus set out to conquer the world was not a mere comprehension of eternal principles; it was an historical message, and account of something that had recently happened, it was the message, He is risen.”

14.3 The Ascension

The ascension was a fulfilment of Psalm 110:1, it was an act of God's power (Ephesians 1:19-22).

It marked the Lord Jesus Christ's return to the Father: He went to Him who had sent Him into the world (John 6:62; John 7:33; John 14:28; John 16:5; John 20:17).

It included a further glorification of the human nature of the Lord Jesus Christ, as He carried His humanity with Him back to heaven (Hebrews 2:14-18; Hebrews 4:14-16), and He was highly exalted and glorified in doing so (Acts

¹⁵⁴ Machen, J Gresham (1923) *Christianity and liberalism* New York: Macmillan p28-29

2:33; John 7:39; 1 Timothy 3:16), the Father honouring Him with the highest possible honour (Ephesians 1:20-22).¹⁵⁵

Peter indicates the believer is saved through an appeal to the risen, ascended Lord (1 Peter 3:22).

14.3.1 Significance Of The Ascension¹⁵⁶

- It ended the earthly ministry of Christ. It marked the end of the period of self-limitation during the days of His sojourn on earth.
- It ended the period of His humiliation. His glory was no longer veiled following the ascension (John 17:5; Acts 9:3, 5). Christ is now exalted and enthroned in heaven.
- It marks the first entrance of resurrected humanity into heaven and the beginning of a new work in heaven (Hebrews 4:14–16; 6:20). A representative of the human race in a resurrected, glorified body is the Christian's intercessor.
- It made the descent of the Holy Spirit possible (John 16:7). It was necessary for Christ to ascend to heaven in order that He could send the Holy Spirit.

¹⁵⁵ What Happened when our Lord Jesus Christ ascended to Heaven (http://www.teachmethe bible.info/questions/christ/ascended_to_heaven.html)

¹⁵⁶ Enns, Paul P. (1997) Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology. USA, Chicago: Moody Press.

15 THE ANOINTING UPON JESUS

According to Scripture Jesus was born of the Spirit and filled with the fullness of the Spirit. For thirty years Jesus lived a righteous life which was pleasing to God, and carried out His ministry through the anointing of the Holy Spirit. Jesus was baptised by John the Baptist through water baptism when the time was ripe for the manifestation of His messiahship. God anointed Him as he came up out of the waters.

It was only after Jesus' baptism that He stood in the synagogue at Nazareth and proclaim the fulfilment of Isaiah's prophecy in Himself saying, "*The Spirit of the LORD is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the broken-hearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised, to preach the acceptable year of the LORD*" (Luke 4:18; anointed by God in 3:21-23). It was not until after Christ's anointing at His baptism that this Scripture was fulfilled. Before He was anointed at His baptism, it was still prophetic in nature, although the One who would fulfil it was alive and well in the world.¹⁵⁷

Peter stated that God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Spirit and with power, and He went about doing good and healing all who were oppressed by the devil, for God was with Him. According to Christopher B. Kaiser,¹⁵⁸ "Jesus uttered the words of God by the Spirit and healed the sick and cast out demons by the power of the Holy Spirit."

¹⁵⁷ Jesus, the Voice, and the Dove By Jason Dulle (<http://www.onenesspentecostal.com/voicedove.htm>)

¹⁵⁸ Kaiser, Christopher B. (1982) The Doctrine of God. United States of America: Crossway Books. p43

How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power: who went about doing good, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for God was with him.

Acts 10:38 (KJV)

The works of the devil were destroyed by the anointing that was on Jesus Christ.

And it shall come to pass in that day, that his burden shall be taken away from off thy shoulder, and his yoke from off thy neck, and the yoke shall be destroyed because of the anointing.

Isaiah 10:27 (KJV)

He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

1 John 3:8 (KJV)

Peter Tan writes: ¹⁵⁹“Without doubt, one can conclude that the works of Jesus - His teaching, healing and deliverance ministries - were the result of the anointing. The anointing upon our Lord Jesus Christ enabled Him to do the works He did! Knowing that His ministry had come to a completion, Jesus promised His disciples that whoever believes in Him will do the works He did, and greater works.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater works than these shall he do; because I go unto my Father.

John 14:12 (KJV)

¹⁵⁹ Tan, Peter (2008) The Anointing of the Holy Spirit. Canberra, ACT: Peter Tan Evangelism. p12

Looking at the lives of Elijah and Elisha one can say that the anointing can be measured. Elisha had a double portion of Elija's spirit.

And it came to pass, when they were gone over, that Elijah said unto Elisha, Ask what I shall do for thee, before I be taken away from thee. And Elisha said, I pray thee, let a double portion of thy spirit be upon me.

2 Kings 2:9 (KJV)

Scripture recorded that Elija had done eight miracles, while Elisha had done twice as much. Anointing can be measured. Another example of the anointing that can be measured is in the life of Moses. In Numbers eleven verse seventeen God told Moses that He would take the Spirit that was upon Moses and put the same anointing upon the seventy elders. God divided the anointing that was upon Moses and used it to anoint seventy others. John the Baptist said that, *For he whom God hath sent speaketh the words of God: for God giveth not the Spirit by measure unto him. (John 3:34 KJV)*, meaning that the anointing upon Jesus was given without measure.

“Jesus received the fullness of the Spirit as the perfect Man, the Messiah of God, and then poured out that same Spirit upon all flesh and upon those who believe on Him unto eternal life. Upon the acceptance of the finished work of the cross, the believer will find available to him the gift of the Holy Spirit and thus come under His gracious ministrations from regeneration unto glorification (Matthew 3:11; John 1:30-33; Romans 8:25-32).

The believer, as a son of God and member of the Church should follow in the steps of Jesus, who is the pattern Son of God and the example of the workings of the Spirit in humanity in an unhindered operation. Through this the believer

can come under the same workings of the Holy Spirit (1 Peter 2:21; Romans 8:29). The whole life of Jesus was governed by the Spirit. Jesus depended upon the Holy Spirit and therefore Christians so much more need to depend upon the Holy Spirit. All that God has for His children and wants to do in them will only be done by the operation of the Holy Spirit.

Jesus gave the commandments to the disciples by the Spirit. He baptized and empowered the Church by the Spirit and He directs and governs the Church by the Spirit.

16 CONCLUSION

Two streams of thought concerning the prophecies of the Messiah's coming as per the Old Testament was that of the deity of Christ and that of His Humanity. Jewish interpreters of the Old Testament could not reconcile these streams, as they could not comprehend how the Messiah could be divine, and yet also human. They erred in understanding and missed the very Messiah that their Scriptures prophesied would come. These prophecies were foretold in the Old Testament and manifested and were fulfilled in the New Testament with Christ's coming.

A virgin named Mary found favour in the sight of the Lord and gave birth to a Son – Jesus Christ. A body hast thou prepared for me, Jesus said. Jesus didn't say anything about the blood, for He knew God prepared the body for Him and the life of that body came down from heaven.

To affirm that Christ is God is not simply to suggest He is “*God-like*.” Christ is absolutely equal with the Father in His Person and His work. Commenting on the phrase “(Christ) existed in the form of God” in Philippians 2:6, *Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God*, as B.B Warfield says, “He is declared, in the most express manner possible, to be all that God is, to possess the whole fullness of attributes which make God, God.”

The Scriptures are replete with the personal claims of Christ as well as the testimony of others concerning His deity. The gospel of John is particularly rich in its emphasis on Christ’s deity.

He was identified by his forerunner John the Baptist who called people to repentance and spiritual preparation for the coming of Christ. His mission, as promised in Scripture was that He would be anointed by the Holy Spirit in ministry, which would empower Him to preach the Gospel to the poor, break free those who are in spiritual bondage and give sight to the spiritually blind.

John the Baptist referred to Jesus as the Lamb of God who bears away the sin of the world, in the Old Testament ceremony the guilt of the offeror was transferred to the innocent animal which was slaughtered on the offeror’s behalf.

Jesus’ death is explained in the Bible as a death on behalf of others, a death to free men and women from sin and the spiritual death, which is the inevitable consequence of wrongdoing.

Christ died a **substitutionary** death on behalf of sinners. His death is also called vicarious, meaning, “one in place of another.” Matthew 20:28 states, “the

Son of man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give His life a ransom for many” (Mark 10:45).

At the death of Christ, God disarmed the princes and powers of Satan, stripping Satan of the keys of death and hell, and turned what seemed to be the greatest defeat into the greatest victory.

According to Scripture, Christ has overthrown this kingdom with its diabolical ruler, and therefore, believers are no longer slaves. They are not only no longer under Satan’s authority, but in Christ are far above it. For God has “raised us up [Christ] and seated us with him in the heavenly places in Christ Jesus” (Ephesians 2:4-6).

The greatness of God’s power is displayed in Ephesians 1:22- 2:8. in raising Jesus from the dead (Ephesians 1:19-20). This act seated Christ at God’s “right hand” and enthroned him “in the heavenly places, far above all rule and authority and power and dominion” (Ephesians 1:21).

The cosmic dimension of Christ’s resurrection, can be applied to the status of believers: *“You were dead through the trespasses and sins in which you once lived, following the course of this world, following the ruler of the power of the air, the spirit that is now at work among those who are disobedient”* (Ephesians 2:1-2).

Because of God’s “great love” and “grace,” every believer has been “saved” from “the ruler of the power of the air” and has been given all the inheritance that belongs to Christ (Ephesians 2:7-9; Ephesians 1:7, 14). Our fundamental status has changed. Man is each “a new creation; everything old has passed away; see, everything has become new” (2 Corinthians 5:17).

Our salvation is a function of Christ's exalted lordship, and His lordship is a function of His victory over, and now enthronement above, all "rule and authority and power and dominion, and above every name that is named" (Ephesians 1:21).

Christians are members of the body of Christ and they operate by listening to and being obedient to their Head. So it is with believers in relation to Christ, their Head. Jesus Christ leads and guides us through His Spirit. Only as one walk with the Spirit one carry out the desires of the Head. His death and resurrection provides the key to understanding who one is before God. Though one is afflicted now, a person knows that because He conquered sin, death and the devil, man too will ultimately overcome them. Man too will be raised from the dead and will eternally live and reign in His unsurpassable love and joy.

--oOo--



Chapter Two - The Christian Life As Spiritual Warfare

Prophetic word:

Now this I say, brethren, that flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God; neither doth corruption inherit incorruption. Behold, I show you a mystery; We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed, In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed. For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality. So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory. O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory? The sting of death is sin; and the strength of sin is the law. But thanks be to God, which giveth us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ. Therefore, my beloved brethren, be ye steadfast, unmovable, always abounding in the work of the Lord, forasmuch as ye know that your labor is not in vain in the Lord.

1 Corinthians 15:50-58 (KJV)

1 INTRODUCTION/BACKGROUND

O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory? The sting of death is sin; and the strength of sin is the law. But thanks be to God, which giveth us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ. Therefore, my beloved brethren, be ye steadfast, unmovable, always abounding in the work of the Lord, forasmuch as ye know that your labor is not in vain in the Lord.

1 Corinthians 15:55-58 (KJV)

Many Christians blame all their problems on the Devil - is that proper thinking? Some struggles do however come from their spiritual enemy, according to the apostle James.

James the leading elder of the Jerusalem church, felt great responsibility for some of his Jewish convert parishioners who were “scattered abroad.” The revival fervour of the early movement of the Holy Spirit was subsiding somewhat and the problems of living the Christian life in pagan world were evident. The book of James deals with the believer’s problem areas on a very practical level. In James Three the apostle compares a so-called wisdom that produces “bitter envy and selfish ambition” with wisdom from heaven that is “pure peace-loving, considerate, submissive, full of mercy and good fruit”

Who is a wise man and endued with knowledge among you? let him shew out of a good conversation his works with meekness of wisdom. But if ye have bitter envying and strife in your hearts, glory not, and lie not against the truth. This wisdom descendeth not from above, but is earthly, sensual, devilish. For where envying and strife is, there is confusion and every evil work. But the wisdom that is from above is first pure, then peaceable, gentle, and easy to be intreated, full of mercy and good fruits, without partiality, and without hypocrisy.

James 3:13-17 (KJV)

According to this Scripture, James declares that the false wisdom comes from one of three sources - it's earthly or of this world; it's sensual or from fleshly appetites; or it is devilish or demonic.

James presents these three enemies in the order in which believers need to deal with them. Each one of these three enemies are unique and requires a proper Biblical approach to deal with its particular pattern of temptation. Scripture reveals that the enemy that causes fights, wars, lust, murders, and can even corrupt the believers' prayers within themselves.

From whence come wars and fightings among you? come they not hence, even of your lusts that war in your members? Ye lust, and have not: ye kill, and desire to have, and cannot obtain: ye fight and war, yet ye have not, because ye ask not. Ye ask, and receive not, because ye ask amiss, that ye may consume it upon your lusts.

James 4:1-3 (KJV)

God does not answer prayers that flow from a selfish motive. This internal enemy is the flesh, that sinful potential for doing evil that mankind inherited from the fall of man. They are "desires" that battle within mankind therefore one must deal with its internalized power.¹

¹ Bubeck, Mark I. (1998) *Raising Lambs Among Wolves*. Chicago, Illinois: Alpha an imprint of Paternoster Publishing. p120

2 WHAT IT MEANS TO BE A CHRISTIAN

2.1 Definition Of A Christian

“The death, burial, and resurrection of Christ are essential to the Gospel and to believe in it to the point of confessing it is the means of obtaining salvation.

That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved. For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.

Romans 10:9-10 (KJV)

In other words, the minimum faith necessary to become a true Christian is belief in the “death of Christ for our sins, the burial of His body in the tomb, and the bodily resurrection.”² “The apostle also confirms it as the minimum faith necessary to be included in the second coming of Christ for His Church in what the Bible calls the Second Coming,

For if we believe that Jesus died and rose again, even so them also which sleep in Jesus will God bring with him.

1 Thessalonians 4:14 (KJV)

A person does not have to believe in the traditions of the Church or the miracles of Jesus to be saved. The only aspect required – is that a person believe in the resurrection of Christ. Thus one can say, that a person who refuses to believe in the resurrection of Christ from the dead, will be saved.”³

² LaHaye, Tim (1997) Jesus Who is He? Fulham Palace Road, London: Marshall Pickering Publishers. p218-219

³ LaHaye, Tim (1997) Jesus Who is He? Fulham Palace Road, London: Marshall Pickering Publishers. p219

An outline of **who a person are**.

Every human being should understand their value in God's sight and be sure of their own worth. Mark I. Bubeck writes: ⁴"a brief but profound Biblical insight concerning who one are could be stated this way, *"I am a person who has been created in the Image and Likeness of God."* Any human being should not miss the dignity conveyed and the wonder invoked by this statement of truth."

Scripture declares:

For ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus. For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ. There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither bond nor free, there is neither male nor female: for ye are all one in Christ Jesus. And if ye be Christ's, then are ye Abraham's seed, and heirs according to the promise.

Galatians 3:26-29 (KJV)

According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love: Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will,

Ephesians 1:4-5 (KJV)

According to LeRoy Lawson, "the apostle's doctrine is the Christian's hope: Mankind belong! One is a chosen child, a valued member of the family of God. God wants just the best for one including power over the devil himself."⁵

⁴ Bubeck, Mark I. (1997) *Raising Lambs among Wolves* How to protect your children from the influence of evil. Cumbria, UK: Alpha an imprint of Paternoster Publishing. p109

⁵ Lawson, LeRoy (1973) *Victory in Jesus*. Cincinnati, Ohio: The Standard Publishing Company. p113

As a child of God a person is still vulnerable. A child of God is not invincible and his defenses can be penetrated, his resolve weakened. C S Lewis offers a heartening word here:

*"I know all about the despair of overcoming chronic temptations. It is not serious, provided self-offended petulance, annoyance at breaking records, impatience etc. Don't get the upper hand. No amount of falls will really undo us if we keep on picking ourselves up each time. We shall of course be very muddy and tattered children by the time we reach home. But the bathrooms are all ready, the towels put out, and the clean clothes in the airing cupboard. The only fatal thing is to lose one's temper and give it up. It is when we notice the dirt that God is most present in us: it is the very sign of His presence."*⁶

An outline of who a person are can be facilitated by the following teaching:

2.2 A Person Made In The Image Of God

On the last day of creation God said:

And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth. So God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them.

Genesis 1:26-27 (KJV)

God formed man from the dust and breathed His life into the first Adam,

⁶ Lewis C.S. from a letter to Mary Neylen, 20 January 1942

And the LORD God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul.

Genesis 2:7 (KJV)

The human race was alive, and at that time, alive unto God.

The Hebrew root of the Latin phrase for image of God—***imago Dei***—means image, shadow or likeness of God.⁷

Man is unique among all God's creations, having both a material body and an immaterial soul/spirit. "Having the "image" or "likeness" of God means, God's character and attributes are reflected in people. Scripture states that God is Spirit, (John 4:24) and Spirit does not have flesh and bones, the image of God deals with humanity's reflection of God in such things as compassion, rationality, love, hatred, fellowship, etc. God exhibits all of these characteristics, as do people.⁸ The human body was also the form in which God the Son would be incarnated or 'made in the likeness of men' (Philippians 2:7), therefore God made man in that bodily form which He Himself would one day assume — the form in which He wished to reveal Himself.⁹

Adam's body was created in perfect health and was not subject to death and therefore mirrored the life of God. The Image of God refers to the immaterial part of man and sets man apart from the animal world. It fits him for the

⁷ What 'Made in the Image of God' Really Means By Dick Staub (<http://www.relevantmagazine.com/god/deeper-walk/features/23549-qmade-in-the-image-of-godq>)

⁸ What is meant when it says man is made in the image of God? By Matt Slick (<https://carm.org/questions/about-people/what-meant-when-it-says-man-made-image-god>)

⁹ Made in the image of God By Russell M. Grigg (<http://creation.com/made-in-the-image-of-god>)

dominion God intended him to have over the earth (Genesis 1:28), and enables him to commune with his Maker.

Man was created to be creative, as God is creative:

In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.

Genesis 1:1 (KJV)

Man knows that God is creative. Humans were created to be artists who make things with paint, poets, writers, philosophers and lawyers that make things with ideas and the compelling use of words. Consultants make organizations better, manufacturers make things with raw materials, doctors make people healthier, chefs create things with fruits, vegetables, meats and spices. Every human has the capacity to make things, to create, because mankind are all made in the image of a creative God.¹⁰

Humans were created to be spiritual as God is Spirit.

And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.

Genesis 1:2 (KJV)

Every human is more than the sum of their physical parts and possesses spiritual aptitudes and capacities. Though their spiritual nature is unseen, it is as real as their physical nature and nurturing the spirit is as important as eating, drinking and exercising are to the physical body.

¹⁰ What 'Made in the Image of God' Really Means By Dick Staub
(<http://www.relevantmagazine.com/god/deeper-walk/features/23549-qmade-in-the-image-of-godq>)

Socially, man was created for fellowship. The very essence of God is relational, and that essential quality has been imprinted on humans. This reflects God's Triune nature and His love. In Eden, Adam and Eve had a relationship with God. God made woman for He said, it is not good for man to live alone. When a person gets married, hugs a child, enjoys a symphony, calculates a sum, or names a pet, makes a friend, or attends church, he is proclaiming the fact that man are made in the likeness of God.

And they heard the voice of the LORD God walking in the garden in the cool of the day: and Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the LORD God amongst the trees of the garden.

Genesis 3:8 (KJV)

Humans were created to be intelligent agents, because God is intelligent: Scripture states: "In the beginning was the Word [*logos*, a Greek word meaning reason, or logic] and the Word was with God, and the Word was God"

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

John 1:1 (KJV)

Man was created as a rational, volitional agent, mentally, which means, man can reason and have the capacity to make free choices. Humans possess different kinds of intelligence, though each person is to develop their mental capacities to their fullest. Each person possesses a mind and a way of thinking and learning, and this is a reflection of God's intellect and freedom. God's intelligent image is imprinted on every human's life.

Another truth about humans is that they communicate because God communicates:

And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.

Genesis 1:3 (KJV)

According to McFarlane it ¹¹“is not a coincidence that at the heart of Christian faith lies a drive to communicate, an urge to proclaim the good news.” “Anthropologists agree that the emergence of symbolic language—first spoken, then written—represents the sharpest break between animals and humans.” Out of all of God’s creation it is only said of man to be made in the image of their Creator. Because this is so, it means that man is like God and represents God in a unique way which other created beings could never reflect. “The human ability to think and reason, to use language, symbols and art, far surpasses the abilities of any animals. This gift was bestowed when the communicative God's image was imprinted on us.”¹²

So one can say, “*I am a snapshot or facsimile of God.*” Humans alone are imprinted with godlike characteristics and therefore humans occupy a higher place in the created order.

The Bible reveals us that as creation were completed, God saw everything that He had made, and behold, it was good. Although Adam was given a righteous nature, he made an evil choice to rebel against God, his Creator. Adam spoiled the image of God within himself, and he passed that damaged likeness on to all his descendants.

¹¹ McFarlane, Graham W. P. (1996) Christ and the Spirit. Carlisle, Cumbria UK: Paternoster Press. p9

¹² What 'Made in the Image of God' Really Means By Dick Staub (<http://www.relevantmagazine.com/god/deeper-walk/features/23549-qmade-in-the-image-of-godq>)

Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned:

Romans 5:12 (KJV)

Today, humankind still bears the image of God “*Therewith bless we God, even the Father; and therewith curse we men, which are made after the similitude of God. James 3:9 (KJV)*”, but they also bear the scars of sin. Mankind show the effects of sin mentally, morally, socially and physically. When God redeems an individual, He begins to restore the original image of God, creating a “new self, created to be like God in true righteousness and holiness”

And that ye put on the new man, which after God is created in righteousness and true holiness.

Ephesians 4:24 (KJV)

That redemption is only available by God’s grace through faith in Jesus Christ as Saviour from the sin that separates mankind from God.

For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God:

Ephesians 2:8 (KJV)

Not of works, lest any man should boast.

Ephesians 2:9 (KJV)

Through Christ, mankind are made new creations in the likeness of God.”¹³

Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.

2 Corinthians 5:17 (KJV)

¹³ What does it mean that humanity is made in the image of God? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/image-of-God.html>)

Man was created in righteousness and perfect innocence, a reflection of God's holiness. "No one in the world is righteous in the eyes of the Lord except if they receive Jesus by faith. Man's righteousness is based on what Jesus did on the cross. The righteousness that was Christ's is counted to us and as a result, man will spend eternity in the presence of the holy, pure, loving, kind, gentle, and righteous God, for their damnation was made righteous by Jesus' sacrifice on the cross."¹⁴

A person made in the image of God has God-granted authority and has God-granted blessings.

2.3 A Person Of Value And Dignity

And the LORD God took the man, and put him into the garden of Eden to dress it and to keep it. And the LORD God commanded the man, saying, Of every tree of the garden thou mayest freely eat: But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die. And the LORD God said, It is not good that the man should be alone; I will make him an help meet for him. And out of the ground the LORD God formed every beast of the field, and every fowl of the air; and brought them unto Adam to see what he would call them: and whatsoever Adam called every living creature, that was the name thereof. And Adam gave names to all cattle, and to the fowl of the air, and to every beast of the field; but for Adam there was not found an help meet for him. And the LORD God caused a deep sleep to fall upon Adam, and he slept: and he took one of his ribs, and closed up the flesh instead thereof; And the rib, which the LORD God had taken from man, made he a woman, and brought her unto the man. And Adam said, This is now bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh: she shall be called

¹⁴ We Are Made Righteous (<https://bible.org/illustration/we-are-made-righteous>)

Woman, because she was taken out of Man. Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife: and they shall be one flesh. And they were both naked, the man and his wife, and were not ashamed.

Genesis 2:15-25 (KJV)

Everybody were created by God as persons and their value is equal. Personhood communicates dignity, whilst God always treats humans as persons. He never says, "Hey, you."

2.4 As Persons We Inherit A Sinful Condition From The Fall Of Man

Now the serpent was more subtil than any beast of the field which the LORD God had made. And he said unto the woman, Yea, hath God said, Ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden? And the woman said unto the serpent, We may eat of the fruit of the trees of the garden: But of the fruit of the tree which is in the midst of the garden, God hath said, Ye shall not eat of it, neither shall ye touch it, lest ye die. And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die: For God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened, and ye shall be as gods, knowing good and evil. And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was pleasant to the eyes, and a tree to be desired to make one wise, she took of the fruit thereof, and did eat, and gave also unto her husband with her; and he did eat. And the eyes of them both were opened, and they knew that they were naked; and they sewed fig leaves together, and made themselves aprons. And they heard the voice of the LORD God walking in the garden in the cool of the day: and Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the LORD God amongst the trees of the garden. And the LORD God called unto Adam, and said unto him, Where art thou? And he said, I heard thy voice in the garden, and I was afraid, because I was naked; and I hid myself. And he said, Who told thee that thou wast naked? Hast thou eaten of the tree, whereof I commanded thee that thou shouldest not eat? And the man said, The woman whom thou gavest to be with me, she gave me of the tree, and I did eat. And the LORD God said unto the woman,

What is this that thou hast done? And the woman said, The serpent beguiled me, and I did eat.

Genesis 3:1-13 (KJV)

To be sinful means to accept and believe error, (Psalm 19:12; Hebrews 3:10), practice error, (Romans 3:9-18, 23; James 1:13-16; John 8:33-34; 1 John 3:4; James 5:20) and as person one inherited a nature that wants to sin. (Romans 5:12-21; Galatians 5:17-21; Colossians 3:5-8)

2.5 Redeemed Persons Are Lifted Above Fallen Condemnation And Are Of Great Value

According to Scripture redeemed persons are:

Spiritual persons	John 3:6
They are holy persons	Corinthians 1:2, Colossians 3:12; Hebrews 10:10, 14
They are gifted persons	Ephesians 4:7; Romans 12:6-8
They are valuable persons	Colossians 3:12; Romans 5:8; Isaiah 43:1,4
They are persons loved and graced by God	John 15:9-10; 17:23
They are chosen for important service	1 Peter 2:5-9

TABLE 1: REDEEMED PERSONS

2.6 Mankind's Outward And Inward Beings

Scripture states that God has made mankind valuable, and the Bible also notes that mankind as individuals have gone their own independent ways. The way

God has put humans together is quite unique. Each person is composed of three unique parts, body, soul, and spirit. Before one can see how this has affected one's relationship with God and how it affects one's children, one needs to understand how God has put mankind together. The "tripartite" view of man's personhood is followed. This theological view holds that. An alternative view argues that each person has only a body and soul. Scripture states a unique difference between the spirit and soul.¹⁵

And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.

1 Thessalonians 5:23 (KJV)

For the word of God is quick, and powerful, and sharper than any twoedged sword, piercing even to the dividing asunder of soul and spirit, and of the joints and marrow, and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart.

Hebrews 4:12 (KJV)

The diagram is **especially helpful when seeking to understand what happened to man at the Fall:**

¹⁵ Bucbeck, Mark I. (1997) Raising Lambs among Wolves How to protect your children from the influence of evil. Cubria, UK: Alpha an imprint of Paternoster Publishing. p111

MAN AS GOD CREATED HIM¹⁶

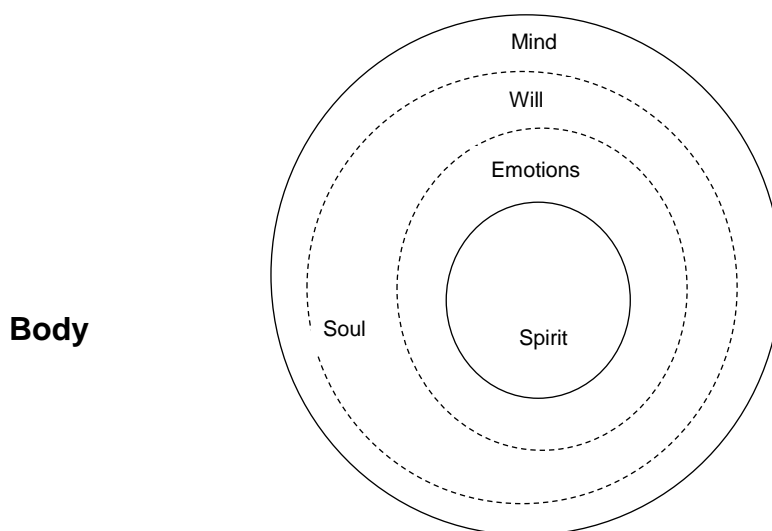


FIGURE 1: MAN AS GOD CREATED HIM

2.7 Doctrine That Changes Us

God only wanted the best for His children.

For I know the thoughts that I think toward you, saith the LORD, thoughts of peace, and not of evil, to give you an expected end.

Jeremiah 29:11 (KJV)

The devil, the serpent, evicted from heaven, started to communicate with God's children and convinced them that God their Father was a cold, controlling authority figure. Satan told God's children that God does not want the best for them and advised them to go on without God. He persuaded them that they

¹⁶ Man As God Created Him; Bucbeck, Mark I. (1997) Raising Lambs among Wolves How to protect your children from the influence of evil. Cubria, UK: Alpha an imprint of Paternoster Publishing. p111

could be the god of their own lives and they could then decide what was good and what was evil.

For God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened, and ye shall be as gods, knowing good and evil.

Genesis 3:5 (KJV)

In Scripture one can see God's pain when His children rebel and go their own way. The Father's heart was grieved by that and one can see God's pain in the following verse:

And GOD saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every imagination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually. And it repented the LORD that he had made man on the earth, and it grieved him at his heart.

Genesis 6:5-6 (KJV)

In the new Covenant, God's heart can still be grieved when mankind continue to behave out of their old nature, for God only wants the best for His children.

And grieve not the holy Spirit of God, whereby ye are sealed unto the day of redemption. Let all bitterness, and wrath, and anger, and clamour, and evil speaking, be put away from you, with all malice:

Ephesians 4:30-31 (KJV)

All humans have emotions, as they were made in God's image, and God has emotions. God's grieving heart can be seen in Scripture, which reveals a sensitive heart, but elsewhere one can read of His joy, His gladness, His love, His singing, and His anger.

"The doctrine of how God has saved mankind, delivering man and woman from sin's wrath through Christ is very important for every believer. Doctrinal truth is not just the something one learn in church or Sunday school but is something

man are to live by every day. The freedom and joy of the Christian's spiritual life is wed to this premise. Freedom demands praying and living out God's truth. Victorious freedom comes from knowing and applying doctrinal truth on a moment-by-moment basis."¹⁷

2.8 The Disaster Of The Fall

***Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned:
Romans 5:12 (KJV)***

After the Fall, man is still said to be in God's image (Genesis 9:6; 1 Corinthians 11:7) and likeness (James 3:9), but the idyllic setting in the Garden of Eden was shattered by man's rebellion at the Fall and all aspects of God's image were tarnished. Nevertheless, these aspects were perfect in the Lord Jesus Christ, who was and is the image of the invisible God' (Colossians 1:15), and 'the express image' of God (Hebrews 1:3), both in His life on earth and in Heaven.¹⁸ The effects of the Fall are numerous and far reaching as sin has affected every aspect of man's being - it has affected humankind lives on earth and their eternal destiny.¹⁹

The Apostle Paul says that believers are transformed or renewed into the image of God by the Gospel, and that this image is then "in righteousness and true holiness" (Colossians 3:10; Ephesians 4:24). This is not something that the natural man can bring about by his own efforts, but is the result of 'receiving

¹⁷ Bucbeck, Mark I. (1997) *Raising Lambs among Wolves* How to protect your children from the influence of evil. Cubria, UK: Alpha an imprint of Paternoster Publishing. p112

¹⁸ Made in the image of God By Russell M. Grigg (<http://creation.com/made-in-the-image-of-god>)

¹⁹ How did the Fall affect humanity? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/fall-affect-humanity.html>)

Christ' in faith and repentance (John 1:12; Galatians 2:20). It is accomplished by the Holy Spirit (Titus 3:5; Romans 8:28-29), who takes up His abode within God's children (1 Corinthians 3:1; 6:19). 'God is long-suffering towards us, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance' (2 Peter 3:9)."²⁰

When God created man they had no flaw. The body was perfect in all of its parts and functions, likewise the soul, where human personality resides and the mind could assimilate and understand all truth - it could think, reason, and understand without flaw or hindrance.

In the human bodies God gave to Adam and Eve aging, disease, and death were not present, emotions were free from such hindrances and sadness, depression, loneliness, and fear, and the will was also free to make choices without coercion or external control.

Man's spirit enabled him to have communion and fellowship with God, he could know God, obey God, and enjoy the intimate, relational, joyful light that comes from perfect communion with the Lord. Innocence and righteousness prevailed.²¹

2.8.1 Spiritual Death

"At the fall Adam and Eve died spiritually. Their relationship with God severed and they were separated from God's presence. For God specifically said:

²⁰ Made in the image of God By Russell M. Grigg (<http://creation.com/made-in-the-image-of-god>)

²¹ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p113

But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.

Genesis 2:17 (KJV)

Satan deceived them, and Eve and then Adam used their free wills to disobey God - they chose to ignore God's warning and as they ate of the tree they died. They died spiritually and was cast out of Eden physically. A Cherubim waving a flaming sword was stationed at the entrance "to guard the way to the tree of life" (Genesis 3:24)."²² "Humankind inherited physical life from Adam and Eve as their first parents, but they also inherited spiritual death from them."²³

Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned:

Romans 5:12 (KJV)

2.8.2 Loss Of Knowledge

"Their bodies didn't die, for Adam lived on for at least nine hundred years (Genesis 5:4), but the sentence of death and the corruption of death entered their bodies. Their souls didn't die, they could still think and feel. They lost their true perception of reality and the idea of knowing was no longer relational - they sewed fig leaves together and tried to hide from God. Surely a faulty understanding of who God is – how can one hide from an omnipresent God? As Paul describes the futile thinking of those who don't know God"²⁴:

²² Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p113

²³ Anderson Niel T. (1990) *Victory over the Darkness Vereeniging RSA*, Christian Art Publishers. p32

²⁴ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p114

Having the understanding darkened, being alienated from the life of God through the ignorance that is in them, because of the blindness of their heart:

Ephesians 4:18 (KJV)

As Mark writes, ²⁵“Innocence was gone – Adam and Eve not only knew the difference between good and evil but death manifested itself in their souls by evil desires. The mind could think evil thoughts, the emotions could feel evil desires, and the will could make evil choices. The soul could still function, but it carried the sentence of death in sinful desires. (See Figure 2.)

“The part of man that died that day was his spirit, or ceased to function - for there was no spiritual life to enable it to function.” Bubeck explains, when a person dies, the body of the deceased are seen at the funeral and it looks like the body of the person who died. The dead body was still the person even though it had no life and could not function. The life that enabled it to function was no longer there. According to Bubeck that is what happened at the Fall to man’s spirit. It died and had no life to function. The body remains part of the person, but without the life of true righteousness and holiness necessary for the Spirit to function.”²⁶

2.8.3 Negative Emotions

Adam and Eve became fearful and anxious. Scripture states:

²⁵ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p114

²⁶ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p114

And he said, I heard thy voice in the garden, and I was afraid, because I was naked; and I hid myself.

Genesis 3:10 (KJV)

When Adam and Eve sinned they realized they were naked and felt shame and guilt. Before the fall they were naked and unashamed.

When Adam and Eve rejected God, they began to sink into immorality, family breakdown, violence and defilement. Their rebellion hardened their hearts and they became prideful, which led to arrogance, which became jealousy, which became greed, and they became angry which eventually turned into murder.²⁷

But unto Cain and to his offering he had not respect. And Cain was very wroth, and his countenance fell. And the LORD said unto Cain, Why art thou wroth? and why is thy countenance fallen? If thou doest well, shalt thou not be accepted? and if thou doest not well, sin lieth at the door. And unto thee shall be his desire, and thou shalt rule over him.

Genesis 4:5-7 (KJV)

And Cain talked with Abel his brother: and it came to pass, when they were in the field, that Cain rose up against Abel his brother, and slew him. And the LORD said unto Cain, Where is Abel thy brother? And he said, I know not: Am I my brother's keeper?

Genesis 4:8-9 (KJV)

And Lamech said unto his wives, Adah and Zillah, Hear my voice; ye wives of Lamech, hearken unto my speech: for I have slain a man to my wounding, and a young man to my hurt. If Cain shall be avenged sevenfold, truly Lamech seventy and sevenfold.

Genesis 4:23-24 (KJV)

²⁷ Anderson, Niel T. (1990) Victory over the darkness. Vereeniging, RSA: Christian Art Publishers. p35

2.8.4 The Choice To Choose

In the Garden of Eden, Adam and Eve could only made one wrong choice – everything they wanted to do was alright except eating from the Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil.²⁸

And the LORD God commanded the man, saying, Of every tree of the garden thou mayest freely eat: But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.

Genesis 2:16-17 (KJV)

They made that one bad choice, and as a result, all of humankind are confronted everyday with myriad good and bad choices. One can choose to pray or not to, to read the Bible or not to, to go to church or not to – thus apart from Holy Spirit in one's life, the greatest power one possess is the power to choose.²⁹

2.8.5 Attributes Became Needs

Another effect of sin is that humankind's attributes before the Fall became needs after the Fall, each of these needs is continuous in a person's life:

- Humankind has a need to belong for their acceptance was replaced by rejection.
- the need for a legitimate sense of worth has to be restored as innocence was replaced by guilt and shame; therefore,

²⁸ Anderson, Niel T. (1990) Victory over the darkness. Vereeniging, RSA: Christian Art Publishers. p36

²⁹ Anderson, Niel T. (1990) Victory over the darkness. Vereeniging, RSA: Christian Art Publishers. p36

- man have a need for strength and self-control as dominion was replaced by weakness and helplessness; therefore.³⁰

2.8.6 Death Became A Reality

Death became a reality because of the Fall, and all creation was subject to it. All men die, all animals die, all plant life dies. As Scripture states in Romans 2:22, the “whole creation groans” *For we know that the whole creation groaneth and travaileth in pain together until now*” waiting for the time when Christ will return to liberate it from the effects of death. Because of sin, death is an inescapable reality, and no one is immune.

For the wages of sin is death; but the gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.

Romans 6:23 (KJV)

Man does not only die, for the worst part is if they die without Christ, they will experience eternal death.³¹

2.8.7 Humans Lost Sight Of The Purpose For Which They Were Created

Man’s main and highest purpose in life is to glorify God and enjoy Him forever.

For of him, and through him, and to him, are all things: to whom be glory for ever. Amen.

Romans 11:36 (KJV)

³⁰ Anderson, Niel T. (1990) Victory over the darkness. Vereeniging, RSA: Christian Art Publishers. p37-38

³¹ How did the Fall affect humanity? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/fall-affect-humanity.html>)

Love to God is the core of all morality and goodness, thus the opposite is the choice of self as supreme. Selfishness is the essence of the Fall, and what follows are all other crimes against God. Mankind call attention to themselves and to their good qualities and accomplishments and they minimize their shortcomings. They seek favours and opportunities in life, always wanting more and wanting what no one else has, they display vigilance to their own wants and needs, while they ignore those of others. In all ways sin is a turning in upon oneself, which is confirmed in the way they live their lives. In short, they place themselves on a pedestal, usurping God's role.³²

2.8.8 The Fall Produced In Humans A State Of Depravity

The apostle Paul said of pagans,

***“Since they do not think it worthwhile to retain the knowledge of God,
He gave them over to a depraved mind”***

Romans 1:28

He told the Corinthians that:

***the god of this age has blinded the minds of unbelievers so that they
cannot see the light of the Gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the
image of God***

2 Corinthians 4:4

Paul spoke of those “*whose consciences are seared*” 1 Timothy 4:2, and those whose minds are spiritually darkened as a result of rejecting the truth, Romans 1:21. In this state, man is not able to do or choose that which is acceptable to God, apart from divine grace.

³² How did the Fall affect humanity? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/fall-affect-humanity.html>)

Jesus said,

I am come a light into the world, that whosoever believeth on me should not abide in darkness.

John 12:46 (KJV)

Paul reminded the Ephesians,

For ye were sometimes darkness, but now are ye light in the Lord: walk as children of light:

Ephesians 5:8 (KJV)

The purpose of salvation is

To open their eyes, and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan unto God, that they may receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among them which are sanctified by faith that is in me.

Acts 26:18 (KJV)

God sent his Son, Jesus Christ to die on the cross and take the penalty for mankind's sin, reconciling them to God and making eternal life with Him possible.

2.8.9 Additional Curses

In addition to the general curse of death, individual curses were pronounced on the serpent, Eve, and Adam - each curse was particularly suited to the nature of the offense.

2.8.9.1 Satan's Curse Was Three-Fold

- **First** - the serpent would eat dust and crawl on his belly all the days of his life, a humbling fate for one so proud and haughty. This one who desired to reign from on high was cut down to the earth. Instead of walking tall on the earth, the serpent must crawl in the dust.

How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations! For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north: I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the most High.

Isaiah 14:12-14 (KJV)

- **Second** - God put enmity between the woman and the serpent. Eve will not be willing to engage in conversation with the serpent, but flee from him on sight.
- **Third** - comes the most encouraging curse of all: Satan's curse finally ends with his destruction. As Satan caused Eve to stumble and fall one of her offspring will crush the serpent's head with a fatal striking blow. In the process, Christ will suffer a bruised heel, an injury our Lord chooses to inflict upon Himself.³³

2.8.9.2 Eve's Curse Is Two-fold

- Eve disobeyed God and acted independently of her husband. Her deliverance would be through her "**seed**," who would crush the serpent's

³³ Larkin, Clarence (1920) Dispensational Truth. USA, Glenside. Pa: Rev Clarence Larkin Est. p150

head.³⁴ Her deliverance would come through a painful process painful to her seed (the bruised heel) and also to her. The means of her deliverance would be through child-bearing, and it would be a painful event. Labour pains were a part of Eve's curse, and for all women who follow in childbirth.

- Eve's **second** curse was to be ruled over by her husband. God created Eve to be her husband's helper, not his leader therefore she would now be ruled by her husband. Even before the fall Adam's headship, was based on his prior existence and the fact that Eve was created from his flesh (1 Corinthians 11:3-12, especially verses 8-12) therefore Eve should have played a subordinate role to Adam, similar to the subordination of the Son to the Father. God's said to Eve: "*Your desire shall be for your husband, and he shall rule over you*" (Genesis 3:16b). The woman's curse brings for her the opposite of what she desires.³⁵

2.8.9.3 Adam Is Cursed With Labour Pains Of A Different Order

Abraham disobeyed God by listening to Eve rather and because of this reversal of obedience, God pronounced two curses on Adam.

- **First**, the ground was cursed and would rebel against Adam even as he had rebelled against God. Adam was to exercise dominion over the creation and to cultivate the land. Before his disobedience, the land provided Adam with all he needed and now he would have to fight for everything which the land only begrudgingly yielded to him. Thorns and thistles would now grow as willingly as food-producing plants once did

³⁴ Larkin, Clarence (1920) Dispensational Truth. USA, Glenside. Pa: Rev Clarence Larkin Est. p150

³⁵ The fall of man in God's perfect plan (<https://bible.org/seriespage/5-fall-man-gods-perfect-plan>)

and from this point on, nothing would come easy and existence will be a matter of survival by the sweat of his face.

- **Second**, while Adam would spend his life working the ground for food for himself and his family, he would ultimately succumb to the ground. As he had come from the dust, in death he would return to the dust - the ground seems to win the life-long struggle which man's curse destines him to wage with it.³⁶

2.9 Man After The Fall ³⁷

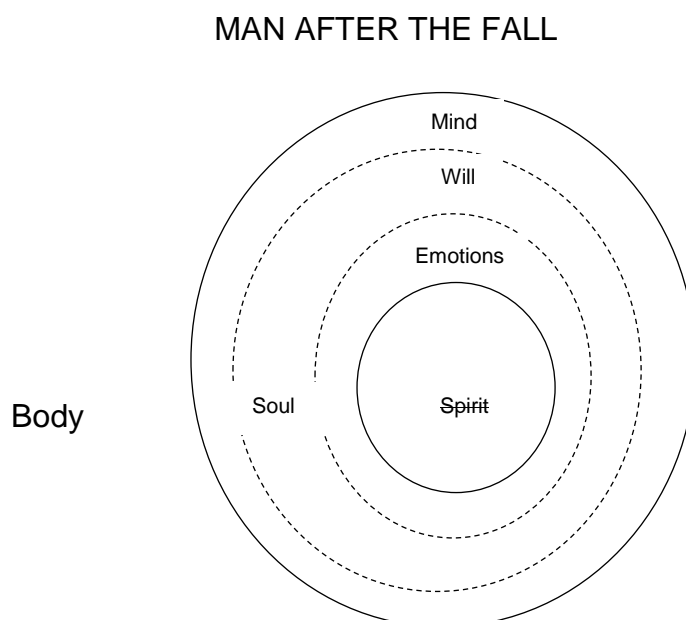


FIGURE 2: MAN AFTER THE FALL

Here, in outline form, is the outcome of our lives after the Fall and after the redemption that God provided through Jesus Christ:

³⁶ The fall of man in God's perfect plan (<https://bible.org/seriespage/5-fall-man-gods-perfect-plan>)

³⁷ Man After The Fall; Bucbeck, Mark I. (1997) Raising Lambs among Wolves How to protect your children from the influence of evil. Cubria, UK: Alpha an imprint of Paternoster Publishing. p113

2.9.1 Consequences On The External Part (The Body)

Man receives the judgement sentence of eventual physical death with all death's consequent expressions. Man is susceptible to pain, toil, disease, and various afflictions and sufferings. Man can use all of its senses and capacities to serve self, sin, and Satan. Man is doomed to eventually die, decay, and return to the physical elements of its creation.³⁸

2.9.2 Consequences On The Internal Parts

Bubeck writes: ³⁹"The soul maintains a corrupted personality in identity with God. Seems to have assumed the internal actions and decisions God originally assigned to the spirit of man:

- **Intellect:** able to receive, use, and evaluate knowledge to do one's own will and to decide one's own religion. Cannot know or please God.
- **Will:** now corrupted to serve the interests, appetites, and desires of self, sin, and Satan. Unable to choose or will to do God's will. Is held in the bondage of Satan's deceptions.
- **Emotions:** now corrupted to experience feelings of anger, hate, love, fear, peace, etc., that flow from self, sin, and Satan's deceptive rule."

At the moment of the fall the spirit of man died and was not able to function:

³⁸ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p117

³⁹ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p118

- No capacity to know God, obey, Him or commune with Him in a pleasing manner.
- Unable to worship God in spirit and truth.
- Correct spiritual understanding of God no longer possible unless spirit is restored to life”⁴⁰

2.10 The New Life Requires New Birth

According to Ephesians 2:1 mankind was born dead in their trespasses and sins. The early life of Jesus introduced God’s plan for transforming mankind from being in Adam to being in Christ. Jesus said:

Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.
John 3:3 (KJV)

Physical birth gains physical life, whereas spiritual life, the eternal life as promised by Jesus Christ to those who come to Him is only gained through spiritual birth.

He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life: and he that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him.
John 3:36 (KJV)

Theologically one call it redemption. Redemption re-unite the believer’s soul with God in the same way Adam was in union with God before the fall. Redemption is just the beginning, for it is the first part of a person’s salvation –

⁴⁰ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p118

salvation is not a future addition, it is a present transformation. Salvation fulfill God's purpose toward man. According to Tom Smith ⁴¹“salvation refers to a person's being saved before God, which includes being forgiven of his sins, being spared from perdition, being regenerated, having the eternal life of God, and becoming a child of God.” It's the beginning of Christian life, this transformation occurs at spiritual birth, not physical death and the believer became spiritually alive and his name is written in the Lamb's book of life.

Salvation also includes:

- **Regeneration** — the believer being reborn of God's Spirit with His divine life (John 3:6, 15).
- **Renewing** — the believer being daily nourished with the fresh supplies of His resurrection life (2 Corinthians 4:16).
- **Sanctification** — the believer having Christ as the life element saturate all his inward parts with His nature of holiness (Romans 6:19, 22)
- **Transformation** — the believer being changed to Christ's image by the riches of Christ's life coming into him as his new element and discharging his old natural element (Romans 12:2; 2 Corinthians. 3:18).
- **Conformation** — the changing of the believer outward form that he may match the glorified image of Christ (Romans 8:29).

⁴¹ What is Redemption? How is Salvation Different? by Tom Smith (<http://holdingtotruth.com/2016/04/17/what-is-redemption-how-is-salvation-different-2/>)

- **Glorification** — the believer entire spirit, soul and body being saturated with the glory of God's life, so that his body might be transfigured and conformed to the body of Christ's glory (Romans 8:30; Philippians 3:21).

In John 3:6 Jesus gave this definite statement *"flesh gives birth to flesh, but the Spirit gives birth to Spirit."* The first part of the statement tells how the results of the Fall came to every person.⁴²

One is born of flesh which came to one from ones biological progenitors, or ones bloodline parents. From them a person receive their body and their soul and genetic physical and behavioural characteristics are also passed on from generation to generation. This resemblance also shows up in the mind, will, and emotions of one's birth parents. Mental, emotional, and willful characteristics are transfered from the birth parents to the child - from our "flesh" lineage, thus *"Flesh gives birth to flesh..."*⁴³

According to Bubeck⁴⁴ "this definitive statement of our Lord also tells us where the fleshy desires and temptations that come from our fallen nature will have their center of activity. Bodily appetites and "soulish" thoughts, emotions and willful actions will be the focus of fleshly temptations."

The second part of the definitive statement of John 3:6 is equally important: "... but the Spirit gives birth to spirit."

⁴² Anderson, Niel T. (1990) Victory over the darkness. Vereeniging, RSA: Christian Art Publishers. p46

⁴³ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers.

⁴⁴ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers.

God's plan for the redemption of fallen humanity required regeneration, for without the supernatural regeneration by the Holy Spirit all men would remain in their fallen state.⁴⁵ This statement tells us where it begins. The spirit of man, which has no life because of the Fall, comes to life at the moment of conversion by the regenerative work of the Holy Spirit. A spiritual birth takes place as the Holy Spirit permanently unites with man's spirit.⁴⁶ As diagrammed in Figure 3.

According to Ephesians 4:24 the believer's new birth or spiritual birth is an awesome work of grace and results in a "... new man which was created according to God, in true righteousness and holiness" (Ephesians 4:24 NKJV).

This statement contains a wonderful truth whilst the reborn human spirit will continue to be perfected in its knowledge and understanding, its righteousness and holiness remain a completed accomplishment of rebirth grace. The Holy Spirit dwells in every reborn person's inner spirit that is truly righteous and holy.

That is not true of the believer's soul. The mind, will and emotions of a person has to go through a lifetime process of "growing in grace." This work of sanctification goes on throughout the lifetime of the believer and the believer must yield himself to the sanctifying ministry of the Holy Spirit in order to function with righteous thoughts, feelings, and actions.

⁴⁵ How did the Fall affect humanity? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/fall-affect-humanity.html>)

⁴⁶ Bucbeck, Mark I. (1997) Raising Lambs among Wolves How to protect your children from the influence of evil. Cubria, UK: Alpha an imprint of Paternoster Publishing. p111

2.11 Man After Redemption⁴⁷

- Being transformed
- Growing in grace
- Being sanctified

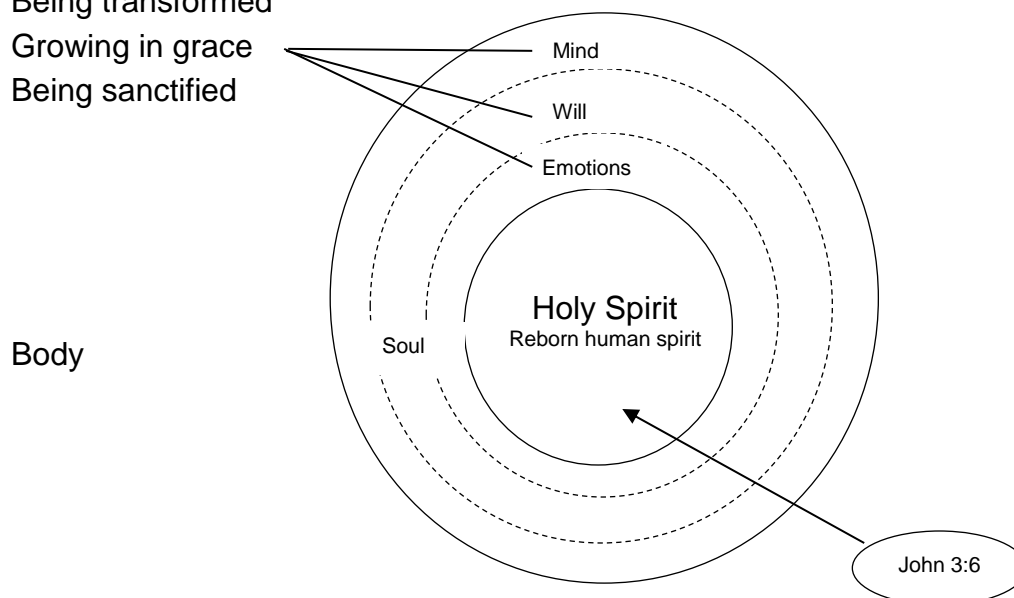


FIGURE 3: MAN AFTER REDEMPTION

This growth in grace goes on until the Lord returns or until the believer dies. According to Two Corinthians 5:8 *“be absent from the body and to be present with the Lord”* (2 Corinthians 5:8, NKJV) indicates that both soul and spirit depart and are united in completion with the Lord’s righteousness and holiness. Each believer will have to deal with the wicked and sinful capacities of the corrupted soul until the Lord returns or until the believer dies.

Bubeck writes, ⁴⁸“the body of the redeemed also must both enter and function within the total righteousness and holiness of God. This does not happen at death. The body decays into dust or burns into the ashes of cremation. Yet, at

⁴⁷ Man After Redemption; Bubeck, Mark I. (1997) Raising Lambs among Wolves How to protect your children from the influence of evil. Cubria, UK: Alpha an imprint of Paternoster Publishing. p111

⁴⁸ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p116

our Lord's return resurrection happens, and each believer lives in a renewed body, as the apostle Paul described in Philippians 3:20-21."

For our conversation is in heaven; from whence also we look for the Saviour, the Lord Jesus Christ: Who shall change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body, according to the working whereby he is able even to subdue all things unto himself.

Philippians 3:20-21 (KJV)

2.12 Man's Redemption: A New Birth

I. Consequences on the external part (the body).

What is new?	What remains from the Fall?
Receives the first breath of the quickening life of the Holy Spirit's presence as a deposit guaranteeing its eventual glorification. (Ephesians 1:14)	Still has the appetites and desires corrupted by the Fall
Is able to function in a manner that serves and pleases God. (Romans 6:11-14)	Still suffers pain, disease, weakness, and the defects that will eventuate in physical death.
Is made a "holy" body by the saving work of grace and the indwelling presence of the Holy Spirit. (Romans 12:1-2)	Becomes a focus point the "flesh" will use to create desire for sinful acts and thoughts.

TABLE 2: CONSEQUENCES ON THE EXTERNAL PART (THE BODY)

II. Consequences on the internal parts.

The soul can renew a personal relationship with God in a way that pleases Him, though a fallen nature can interrupt this fellowship.⁴⁹

What is new?	What remains from the Fall?
A soul still subject to making fleshly choices that produces a chastened, lukewarm Christian life.	An intellect with fallen desires still present, which may cause the mind to make choices to please the sinful appetites of the “flesh” rather than please God.
A will with renewed capacities under the Holy Spirit’s control to choose and act in decisions that will please and glorify God.	A will that can decide to give in to the corrupt desires of the “flesh” that are sinful.
Emotions with the renewed capacity to receive and live out the fruit of the Spirit.	Emotions that still have capacities to feel and experience the depraved desires inherited from the Fall.

TABLE 3: CONSEQUENCES ON THE INTERNAL PARTS

By the regenerating, indwelling work of the Holy Spirit the spirit is restored to life, righteousness, and true holiness. The human spirit is able to be the channel for the Holy Spirit and to bring renewing life and control to the wholeness of the redeemed person’s mind, will, and emotions. The human spirit is able to make righteous choices to obey and serve God in His will and plan through the Holy Spirit. The human spirit is able to love God and to fulfil the desire to worship and know God through the indwelling work of the Holy Spirit.

⁴⁹ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p119

3 REDEEMED MAN FACING HIS ENEMY

3.1 Two Spiritual Enemies: The World And The Devil

A person's relationship to everything in the physical, spiritual, mental and emotional world undergoes a radical change when he becomes a believer in the Lord Jesus Christ. The person is a new creation, everything is becoming new, he is a citizen of Heaven, a child of light, a divine masterpiece and an heir of God. Believers are appointed to suffer with Christ and to be glorified together with Him.⁵⁰

The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God: And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified together.

Romans 8:16-17 (KJV)

All believers are marked targets for attack from the same enemies that oppose and attack the person, plans and purposes of God because of this new relationship to God. The believers must know all they can about their available defense system and their weapons of warfare with such relentless plan of attack against them.⁵¹

⁵⁰ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p22

⁵¹ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p23

The world tries to make believers its friend. Becoming a friend of the world makes one an enemy of God. Believers are warned that they have capacities to be God's enemy at least for a season of time.

According to James 4:7-10 the final enemy is supernatural evil and believers are commanded to "resist the devil."

Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you. Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you. Cleanse your hands, ye sinners; and purify your hearts, ye double minded. Be afflicted, and mourn, and weep: let your laughter be turned to mourning, and your joy to heaviness. Humble yourselves in the sight of the Lord, and he shall lift you up.

James 4:7-10 (KJV)

Scriptural requirements such as "submit to God," and "humble yourselves in the sight of the Lord," make clear that when believers are in proper attitude to Him, their problems with "infernal evil" will be minimal.

A call for a clean break with sin in James 4:8-9 conveys a clear message: "Wash your hands, you sinners, and purify your hearts, you double-minded. Grieve, mourn and wail! Change your laughter to mourning and your joy to gloom." The Lord commands believers to rejoice in His word and therefore, is not against it. If believers have unresolved sin in their lives, it is exceedingly serious. It's time to deal with sin on the level of earnestness conveyed by these lamenting words. When the believer denies sin in his life Satan will have him in his grip and will fail to walk in freedom over sin's rule.

According to Bubeck "the Devil uses every arena of the world to threaten the believer's spirit and soul and innocent worlds such as fashion, finance, entertainment, and even religion can turn us from God towards own self-

advancement. The believer should gain knowledge on the outlines of his spiritual enemies. When the believer's foes defeat him it results in the defeat of God's will and plan for him to walk in freedom. Parents who desire to walk in their freedom and to teach their children to do so should make a prayerful study of these outlines.⁵²

Outlines on Our Spiritual Enemies

3.2 The World As Enemy

3.2.1 The Nature Of The Enemy

The world is an external enemy that puts pressure on the believer to conform to its value system.

It is a philosophy. The Greek word for world is *aion*, and appears more than forty times in most English translations of the New Testament. This word refers more to the attitude, teaching, or prevailing philosophy of the culture in which a believer lives. (Romans 12:1-3; 2 Corinthians 4:4). It is an organized system and the word focuses on the organized structure and system of function in the world. (James 4:4-6; 1 John 2:15-17). The Greek word *kosmos* is translated "world" in most English translations more than 160 times.⁵³ The world is the enemy of truth and righteousness and the enemy of God. Satan is the god ruling the world and friendship with it aligns one as God's enemy.

⁵² Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p121

⁵³ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p121

In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

2 Corinthians 4:4 (KJV)

Ways the world pressures man to conform to its organized value system.

It is the “extension” department for the appetites (1 John 2:16). What man desires in his fallen nature is offered by the world in attractive packages. Advertising, media presentations, and social programs are being used to get the attention of the flesh and give it what it wants.

“It is the “extension” department for the clever and deceptive lies of Satan and his kingdom. As the “god of this age,” Satan introduces his deceptive rule over the nations.”⁵⁴ (2 Corinthians 4:4; Ephesians 2:1-2). It pressures believers through its many organized and philosophic expressions to conform to its value system.

Numerous world-organized structures such as the worlds of politics, education, finances, taxation, and religion pressure people to conform. Philosophic and sensual appeal also pressures conformity. By means of entertainment, music, fashion, literature, and advertising the believers are pressured to conform.

God has provided believers with resources to help them overcome the pressures and temptations of the world system. Believers can judge the world's

⁵⁴ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p121

fare through the truth embodied in the Gospel and the Christian faith equips. (1 John 5:1-5). Knowledge of Biblical ways to overcome the world's fleshly temptations will enable believers to resist the world's fleshly offerings. (Galatians 5:16-25). Believers will be able to resist and overcome Satan's worldly tactics of deceptive and threatening ways by usage Biblical knowledge of the believers weapons of warfare. (James 4:7-10)⁵⁵

3.3 Satan's Kingdom As Enemy

3.3.1 Satan's Kingdom: Both External And Internal

3.3.1.1 External Significance Of The Kingdom.

In Two Corinthians 4:4 Satan is called the god of this age or world. Bubeck writes ⁵⁶“Satan's chief place of influence and rule is over the world. He and his wicked spirits work to control both the philosophy and organized structure of the world system.” Satan is not omnipresent like God. From any geographic location in the world his organized kingdom of spirit-beings can communicate with him instantaneously. Satan tries to force his evil plans and God-rejecting will upon nonbelievers by his control over them. (Ephesians 2:1-3). By having his demonic host directly to attack believers Satan tries to defeat them or use the world's organized structure to hinder them.⁵⁷

⁵⁵ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p121

⁵⁶ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p122

⁵⁷ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p122

Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord, and in the power of his might. Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places. Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand.

Ephesians 6:10-13 (KJV)

3.3.1.2 Internal Significance Of The Kingdom

With subtle, deceptive cleverness Satan and his host of fallen angels are able to project thoughts, emotions, and a rebellious attitude into the mind, will, emotions, and body of a believer. For believers to discern between their own thoughts, emotions, and will from those of satanic origin is often difficult.

From that time forth began Jesus to shew unto his disciples, how that he must go unto Jerusalem, and suffer many things of the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and be raised again the third day. Then Peter took him, and began to rebuke him, saying, Be it far from thee, Lord: this shall not be unto thee. But he turned, and said unto Peter, Get thee behind me, Satan: thou art an offence unto me: for thou savourest not the things that be of God, but those that be of men.

Matthew 16:21-23 (KJV)

(Matthew 16:21-23). Internalised affliction, rule, and control will be experienced in a believer's life when ground is given to the kingdom of darkness.⁵⁸

⁵⁸ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p123

Wherefore putting away lying, speak every man truth with his neighbour: for we are members one of another. Be ye angry, and sin not: let not the sun go down upon your wrath: Neither give place to the devil. Let him that stole steal no more: but rather let him labour, working with his hands the thing which is good, that he may have to give to him that needeth.

Ephesians 4:25-28 (KJV)

3.3.2 An Evil, Supernatural Kingdom Under The Reign Of Satan

A kingdom ruled and headed by Satan, one of God's most powerful created beings. (Jude 9). Satan is a created angelic being who rebelled against God and led one-third of the created angels to follow him in rebellion (Revelation 12:4). His kingdom is organized and structured with the aim to defeat believers in their assigned task to evangelize the world and glorify God in the world (Ephesians 6:10-12). A powerful kingdom though infinitely inferior to God's.⁵⁹ One day Jesus Christ will take away the kingdoms of this world from Satan and they will become His.⁶⁰ The book of Revelation reveals, "...The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and His Christ; and He shall reign forever and ever (Revelation 11:15). Satan's kingdom will ultimately be judged by consignment in the lake of fire. (Matthew 25:41; Revelation 20:10)

3.3.3 How Satan's Kingdom Tempts Believers To Do Evil

Satan has been tempting mankind since their Creator placed His first two children in the Garden of Eden. Satan tempts believers to deceive and to be

⁵⁹ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p123

⁶⁰ Satan's kingdom (<http://www.biblelineministries.org/articles/basearch.php3?action=full&mainkey=SATAN%26%2339%3BS+KINGDOM>)

deceived. (John 8:44; Acts 5:1-4). He tempts believers to be fearful (1 Peter 5:8-9) and prowls the earth looking to drive a wedge between God and His children and to question God's Word, God's attributes, and God's will. (Genesis 3:1-6). Satan accuses believers and attempts to torment them with false guilt. (Revelation 12:10-12). His temptations are a daily part of the believer's life and tempts them to destroy their lives or to take their lives by suicide⁶¹ (Hebrews 2:14-15; John 8:43-45).

Although Satan may be the dark force ultimately behind the tempting, it is mankind's fallen and corrupted human nature that allows these temptations to take root and causes man to act on them, thereby "giving birth to sin"⁶² (James 1:15). Satan seeks to get man to justify his lack of forgiveness and to manipulate him into his control toward others (Matthew 18:21-35) and toward himself. (John 21:15-19; cf. Luke 22:31-37). He tempts believers to pride (1 Timothy 3:6-7) by using God's power for personal gain (Luke 4:1-4) and to worship Satan and to desire his power (Luke 4:5-8). Satan tempts mankind to test God's Word and His promises. (Luke 4:9-13)⁶³

God provided resources for believers to defeat Satan and walk in freedom from Satan's rule.⁶⁴

⁶¹ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p123

⁶² What are the keys to resisting temptation (<https://gotquestions.org/resisting-temptation.html>)

⁶³ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p124

⁶⁴ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p124

- A. God has provided four citadels that make a believer invincible over Satan's kingdom in the doing of God's will. (Ephesians 6:10-20)

The believer's union with Jesus Christ in all of His person and work (Ephesians 6:10a). The phrase " <i>Be strong in the Lord</i> " or its equivalent is used more than forty times in Ephesians.	
In His name.	Acts 9:15; Colossians 3:17; Revelation 3:11-13
In His incarnation	Colossians 1:22; 2:9-10
In His cross	Galatians 2:20; Hebrews 2:14-15
In His resurrection	Ephesians 2:6; John 14:19
In His ascension	Ephesians 1:20-23; 2:6-7
In His glorification	Ephesians 2:6; Romans 8:30
In His return	Colossians 3:4; 1 Thessalonians 4:15-18

TABLE 4: THE BELIEVER'S UNION WITH JESUS CHRIST

The person and work of the Holy Spirit (Ephesians 6:10b). One must keep the focus on His ministries to believers ⁶⁵	
Convicting ministry	John 16:7-11
Indwelling ministry	Romans 8:9
Sealing ministry	Ephesians 1:13-14
Baptizing ministry	1 Corinthians 12:13
Quickening ministry	Romans 8:9-11
Interceding ministry	Romans 8:26-27
Filling ministry	Ephesians 5:17-18

TABLE 5: THE PERSON AND WORK OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

⁶⁵ Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers. p124

The whole Armour of God. (Ephesians 6:11-17)	
Belt of truth	Ephesians 6:14a
Breastplate of righteousness	Ephesians 6:14a
Helmet of salvation	Ephesians 6:17a
Shoes of peace	Ephesians 6:15
Shield of faith	Ephesians 6:16
Sword of the spirit	Ephesians 6:17b

TABLE 6: THE WHOLE ARMOUR OF GOD

The all-ness of prayer. (Ephesians 6:18-20)	
The Paraclete of prayer	"..... in the Spirit")
The persistence of prayer	"..... on all occasions
The parameters of prayer	"..... with all kinds of prayer")
The protection of prayer	"..... be alert
The panorama of prayer	".... for all the saints")
The projection of prayer	".... for me"). Paul wanted prepared, penetrating, courageous words to share

TABLE 7: THE ALL-NESS OF PRAYER

- B. Passive assumption will not lead the believer to walk in freedom. To walk in freedom requires the aggressive application of the provided victory. (Note frequent imperatives in Ephesians 6)

4 THE SPIRITUAL BARRIER

When are radical treatments necessary? When something is radically wrong. In the case of trees, it might be Dutch Elm disease, beetle infestations, or a fungus. In the case of people, the diagnosis usually boils down to something called sin. Though not pleasant to relate pain to the concept of sin, the two are

so intertwined it is impossible to separate them. In fact, one could say that all pain is caused by sin – either one's own or the sins that others commit against one.

Humankind are created with God-given capacities for love, relationship, significance, conscience, and creativity. When these capacities and desires become marred and out-of-kilter through the experiences of life and through sin, man hurt. God wants to restore these parts of mankind's personality and being to their intended state, but this will never happen if they don't seek true healing from the One who created them.

The very capacities and gifts given to man by God can turn into destructive forces if the potential for evil within man isn't recognised. Sin is not merely a distant concept conjured up by theologians endlessly debating esoteric issues in faraway ivory towers. Perhaps a more concrete way to talk about sin is to consider things like child abuse, rape, racism, anger violence, exploitation, and untold other hurtful acts that help us see how selfish man can be as human beings.

In Romans 6:23, when Paul says, "the wages of sin is death," he has in mind spiritual death. But throughout his letter it is clear he understands that this death spreads its deadly fingers into every corner of our experience, not just the eternal state. Three chapters earlier, for example, he gives us an ugly list of just a few particular sins and their consequences: lying, vicious, cursing tongues; feet quick to shed blood; ruin and misery as a way of life; and failure to know peace (Romans 3:10-19).

4.1 Sin As A Barrier

Man's need to understand the different forms of spirit barriers that he will encounter in his walk with Jesus. Let's look at three different ones. The first is created by sin. Often when one comes before the Lord, one does not always feel that one go straight into His presence. One knows that He is there, yet one cannot seem to attract His attention. One knows that He has heard; yet one cannot commune with Him. It is at this point that one say through the Holy Spirit within one, "What is wrong, Lord?" He then tells man what the problem is; either man has not done something that he should have done, or maybe he hasn't done something He told man not to do. Maybe man has not spoken rightly to someone, or has even forgotten to ask for forgiveness over something or other.

There is a barrier of some kind between the Father and oneself until one gets right with Him. It is believe that this barrier, is of the Holy Spirit, to help one to be right with the Father before one ask to go into His intimate presence – remember Matthew 5:23-24 where God says *"Go and get right with your brother before you bring your gift to the altar"*. When one knows the right thing to do and do not do it, it is classed as sin. The barrier is created for one's benefit so one need to know when it is in existence. The Holy Spirit is more than conscious of the work that Jesus did on the cross, and He knows that Jesus as well as Himself is standing between mankind and the Father interceding for mankind.

The Holy Spirit desires that mankind receive the very best before the Father. He does not want the devil to have any opportunity to get at mankind. He makes sure that people are right with one another as well as being right with God, before they can enter into His Holy presence. It is not His will that one

push ones way into His presence by insisting on ones right to do so. Allow the Holy Spirit to take one with Jesus right up to the throne of the Father. Then man will be receiving what the Father has for mankind.

The Holy Spirit will always be working for good in mankind's lives, for they are sealed with Him in Christ Jesus. He desires that one know when one is not in rightstanding with one another, or in rightstanding with the Father. There is a need in discerning this barrier to help mankind understand the real joy of going into the Father's presence. Mankind will always feel the release of this barrier as they repent of their wrongdoing, and get in rightstanding with the Lord. The barrier as they repent of their wrongdoing, and get right with the Lord. The barrier being removed brings peace to mankind, and confidence that God the Father chooses to respond to them. The way is then open for Him to communicate with His child, knowing that Jesus' blood is upon him, and he is cleansed.

According to Professor Brand: ⁶⁶“Sin in short is the vast moral disease which affects the whole human race, of every rank, and class and name and nation and people and tongue; a disease from which there never was but born of woman that was free.”

In the book of One John three verse four, sin is the transgression of the law.

Whosoever committeth sin transgresseth also the law: for sin is the transgression of the law.

1 John 3:4 (KJVR)

⁶⁶ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2000) Spiritual Warfare Three, The Sin War. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions. p38

As J.C Ryle justly stated, “*but I do think it necessary in these times to remind my readers that a man may commit sin and yet be ignorant of it, and fancy himself innocent when he is guilty.*”⁶⁷

Unless mankind does not discern sin and are conscious of it, sin will not be sin to them.

Professor Brand writes that: “*sin is a disease which pervades and runs through every part of our moral constitution and every faculty of our minds.*”⁶⁸

Search me, O God, and know my heart: try me, and know my thoughts: And see if there be any wicked way in me, and lead me in the way everlasting.

Psalms 139:23-24 (KJVR)

David was a man after God’s own heart. He was a shepherd boy destined to rule God’s Kingdom on earth. He went through an arduous preparation which would have tested the faith of many. Servant-hearted David came through and was finally installed as king of Israel. However, one shouldn’t always see David as a model for he is far from perfect. He fell into the sin of adultery with Bathsheba and then murder (2 Samuel 11). This story is horrifying because it reminds mankind that they all have the potential to sin badly. David broke three of the Ten Commandments.

First of all, David was in the wrong place at the wrong time. He should have been leading his men in the war, but instead he sends off others to do his

⁶⁷ Ryle, J.C. forward by Lloyd-Jones, Martyn D. (1952) *Holiness, Its nature, Hindrances, Difficulties and Roots*. Great Britain; Burleigh Press, p2.

⁶⁸ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2000) *Spiritual Warfare Three, The Sin War*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions. p43

bidding. He went from being the 'hands on' king of the people, who was a servant of the Lord, to an aloof king.

What can mankind learn about sin from David's downfall and subsequent restoration? Sin always deceives – Satan is the deceiver and father of lies. Sin leads to death and destruction.

Secondly sin always destroys – one sin leads to lying as a cover up, leading to more lies and in David's case leading to murder. For all of mankind, choosing to sin puts a barrier between God and man, which lowers man's sensitivity to sin. Humankind eventually loses all self-respect, reaching out to sources that will never bring the desired results.

Thirdly – sin is always discovered. Satan tempts humans to believe that no one will ever know and that they can hide their sin. Satan's so effective in this that many of mankind are even lying to themselves, thinking that their sins are only known to them. They start to think like David, that they've succeeded in covering their tracks. God sees everything, it is laid before His eyes and He won't be mocked. There is a window of opportunity to repent, but after that sin is always discovered.

Professor Brand writes,⁶⁹ "sin is never fair, but it is predictable. Sins that are repeatedly committed are like weeds planted in the heart. These weeds can be mowed down, but until they are understood and dealt with, they will crop up back. Iniquities are like the seeds of weeds – they may die, as ones forefathers have, but they will return. Whether the seed are planted by a person, their

⁶⁹ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2000) *Spiritual Warfare Three. The Sin War*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions. p88

parents, or their forefathers, the result is a crop of inherited weaknesses of family iniquities.

As the bird by wandering, as the swallow by flying, so the curse causeless shall not come.

Proverbs 26:2 KJV

Thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them: for I the LORD thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me;

Exodus 20:5 KJV

According to the Word of God, the law of iniquity states that the sins of the fathers will continue to the third and fourth generation for those who hate God. What about those of mankind who love God? For them, God has made provision to reverse the curse of iniquities. Just as iniquities are passed through the bloodline, one's exemption from the law of iniquity is through the blood of the Lamb. The blood sacrifice of one's covenant with God. In the Old Covenant that sacrifice was of bulls and goats, but in the New Covenant the perfect, precious blood of Jesus cleanses Christians from sin and iniquity.⁷⁰

Confessed sin is always forgiven by the blood of Jesus. God never turns His ear away, He always listens. As Marily Hickey states;⁷¹ "a person no longer have to live bound by iniquities and generational curses, being defeated by sin, because Jesus became both their sin offering and the scapegoat for their iniquities. Christians need to ask God to show them the sins of their hearts. By

⁷⁰ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2000) *Spiritual Warfare Three. The Sin War*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions. p88

⁷¹ Hickey, M (2000) *Breaking Generational Curses, Overcoming the Legacy of Sin in Your Family*. Oklahoma, Harrison House. p145-147

confessing these sins they will be able to know the joy of living a life which is blameless before God.

All the kings of the earth shall praise thee, O LORD, when they hear the words of thy mouth. Yea, they shall sing in the ways of the LORD: for great is the glory of the LORD.

Psalms 138:4-5 (KJV)

To overcome the sinful nature a person needs to give no place to sinful thoughts. Resist and reject temptations and walk in the Spirit. Ponder thoughts of how to please the Spirit of God and one will not fulfil the lusts of the flesh.

This I say then, Walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfil the lust of the flesh.

Galatians 5:16 (KJV)

Fill one's mind with God's truth and how to please Him and to crucify the flesh the victory in the battle to enter God's Kingdom. According to Scripture this is the all-encompassing way one can overcome evil with good.

Be not overcome of evil, but overcome evil with good.

Romans 12:21 (KJV)

And overcome a person must or one will be thrown into the lake of fire

He that overcometh shall inherit all things; and I will be his God, and he shall be my son. But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death.

Revelation 21:7-8 (KJV)

The way a person react and what one do about this battle with ones sinful nature and how it turns out will affect that person throughout all eternity:

Be not deceived; God is not mocked: for whatsoever a man soweth, that shall he also reap. For he that soweth to his flesh shall of the flesh reap corruption; but he that soweth to the Spirit shall of the Spirit reap life everlasting. And let us not be weary in well doing: for in due season we shall reap, if we faint not.

Galatians 6:7-9 (KJV)

According to Scripture Paul knew he must also win in his own personal spiritual conflict with the flesh or be lost eternally:

But I keep under my body, and bring it into subjection: lest that by any means, when I have preached to others, I myself should be a castaway.

1 Corinthians 9:27 (KJV)

Paul's repeated warning to the saints was about the need to crucify the flesh, for the acts of the sinful nature are obvious: sexual immorality, impurity and debauchery; idolatry and witchcraft; hatred, discord, jealousy, fits of rage, selfish ambition, dissensions, factions and envy; drunkenness, orgies, and the like.⁷²

Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are these; Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, Idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies, Envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told you in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God.

Galatians 5:19-21 (KJV)

⁷² The Fight To The Death (Crucify The Flesh or Die) By Dan Corner (<http://www.evangelicaloutreach.org/crucify-the-flesh.htm>)

4.2 The War Within – Flesh vs Spirit

There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.

Romans 8:1 (KJV)

That the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.

Romans 8:4 (KJV)

The second barrier is manifested in a different way, often in times of worship. How many times has there been heaviness in meetings when starting to worship? Many people have come into the place of worship from a bad situation, or had a “bad day” at work, or having been upset at home before coming, etc. Sometimes the pressure over the gathering from evil spirits can also affect it. Mankind start to worship the Lord and to open their hearts and lives to Him, and before too long there comes a release over the people. There is a barrier of the soul that has to be risen over, or as one would say, “one broke through into Spirit filled worship”. This barrier is broken through by choosing to worship Jesus despite the heaviness around, and despite the soul’s problems of the day. Mankind’s souls are wide open to their feelings, and so they need to use discernment, so that when the barrier exists, they exercise their will, and choose positively to worship Jesus. It is good to practice during worship times – is He close and peaceful, or is He far away.

For, brethren, ye have been called unto liberty; only use not liberty for an occasion to the flesh, but by love serve one another. For all the law is fulfilled in one word, even in this; Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself. But if ye bite and devour one another, take heed that ye be not consumed one of another.

Galatians 5:13-15 (KJV)

4.3 Barriers Created By Evil Spirits

The third barrier is a demonic one created by evil spirits to attempt to block mankind from going into God's presence. Spiritual forces are always at work to try and block God's people from communicating with their Master. How many times is it that when one closes one's eyes to pray, or choose to read the Bible, that one suddenly get floods of thoughts, all about things other than the very things that one would like to talk to the Father about. Spiritual beings form a barrier of injected thoughts over one to attempt to divert one from prayer, or from hearing the Lord through His book of truth. A spirit of fear can also be another barrier that stops one from receiving from the Lord. A fear of getting it wrong will affect one's hearing.

A fear of failure, rejection or guilt can sometimes create a barrier that will stop one from knowing the presence of God. These barriers need to be discerned so that they can be dealt with. Whether that means repentance or speaking to the source of the thoughts and fears, will depend on the circumstances in one's life.

Whatever the barrier, one can be sure that God wants to remove it from mankind, yet He also wants mankind to practice to discern the good and the evil that is about. He will allow things to happen to mankind, and things to come to man that will teach man to move in discernment, so that mankind can move more in Him. He desires that mankind rule from the spiritual realm.

Mankind should therefore be moving within the spiritual gifts and in the discernment that God has given to them, to be able to function here in this natural realm on earth. Wherever one go one should be able to discern the

spiritual realm around himself, and know what is tainting a particular place or area. Some things one can see in the natural, but others will have to be discerned by listening with the sensitivity of the spiritual awareness within oneself.

In our land there are many kinds of spiritual powers and each will have to be dealt with in a different way. An example; *consider a demon may be affecting a person who is a non-believer, for example a friend called Jack. Jack is suffering badly because of a spirit of lust, which is causing him untold pressure in controlling himself at the place of work. Mankind intend to rule over every power that would seek to affect the place a person are in. The fight is not only against uncontrolled Jack and his lust; but dealing with the spirit of lust controlling Jack.*

In the name of Jesus, one bind that spirit of lust and forbid it to affect the place where one is at work. Jack is then free to control himself, but only if he so wishes. The spirit of lust would have had the right to manifest itself through Jack's desire – however, after being bound in Jesus name the spirit will have to obey and not show itself in that workplace. Jack will still be able to manifest his own desire but not the demons personality coming forth. The battle is not always won in one day; it will depend on ones faith, the strength of the will of Jack, and the authoritative rule that one have wherever one go. Remember that the ultimate goal is to see Jack born again and serving Jesus as his master.

Let's take another situation.

The Lord has shown a person that there is a spiritist living next door to them, and every Monday evening they have a séance in their lounge next door. Perhaps the children have been having problems sleeping, headaches affect the family most of the week, and something needs to be done. In the name of

Jesus, pray for protection for the neighbor, pray that they would be free from the control of the spirits involved. Then, take authority over the spirits of spiritualism, clairvoyance and mind control, and anything else that the Holy Spirit reveals.

Forbid them to use the people next door, forbid them to affect anyone and command them to be bound in the name of Jesus. Pray until there is known victory within ones spirit. The walls between one count, as nothing when speaking to the demons next door, so be bold in proclaiming the authority of Jesus over the place. Speak out the Word of God against the evil power and prohibit it from affecting ones own property and all that dwell within it. Put on praise tapes and spend time in worshipping the Lord, and one will soon see the victory no more spiritist power next door.

Mankind have ruled in the spiritual realm over ones home and family. Remember that the ultimate goal is to see ones neighbors in Christ Jesus. So one continue as one can to witness to the power of Jesus, and His saving grace.

One has seen how the victory can be gained over a demon that had controlled a man, also the victory gained over a house and a household. Now let's see similar example over a street. A group of young men are maybe causing untold damage to the fences, trees and gardens within the street, causing many older folks to stay indoors at night, and are chasing the smaller children, threatening them with violence. First of all pray, ask the Lord if they have any right to do this in the street – sometimes, as one will see in the next chapter, the enemy has a right to use certain people and places.

The Lord will show a person, if a person ask Him, what the stronghold is. One might have to come in some sort of repentance before the Lord for some gross sin that has been allowed in the street, like a Halloween party for all the neighbors, or rioting, raping, murder etc., in the past. Occult activity in the street would allow the enemy to affect the whole area. After any necessary repentance has been expressed, then go to work on the negative spiritual powers over the street, and take full authority over the spirits of violence, rebellion and witchcraft. Control over people or an area often has witchcraft spirits behind it. Rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft (1 Samuel 15:23), and if a person do not seek to control the spirit behind the witchcraft and rebellion, it will certainly seek to control ones street and oneself. Bind its power and influence over ones street, and command it to leave the young folk and go from ones area.

Walk up and down the street and claim the area for Jesus. Speak the word of God out into the street; one verse in Scripture for this case would be Luke 10:19 *“Behold I have given you all authority to tread upon serpents and scorpions and over all the power of the enemy and nothing shall injure you”*. Claim it for ones street, and ask the Holy Spirit to give one His word to read out so that one may quote it whenever one go out and come home. A person have ruled over their street. The Kingdom of God has prevailed over the kingdom of darkness, and a person will see its effect.

The authority used to deal with the man with the lust, the authority of Jesus, is the same authority used for the demons over the street. In the street one may be dealing with a few more. If one do not enter into the battle, then the enemy, the demonic forces, sees that one is not willing to fight for faith, and they will rule over our place of work, neighbours and street.

Mankind are the ones given power to rule in the spirit wherever they go, wherever they live and work. The Lord expects mankind to function as spiritual people, and not as worldly people, who only look at things from the natural way, and only see the things in a natural way. People looking from the natural realm, without discernment, cannot see what is going on in the spiritual realm around them. They have no conception of what is spiritual, unless they have entered into the occult side of the spiritual realm, in this case they would be seeing things from a mixed view, instead of seeing through the eyes of the Holy Spirit.

5 GOD'S COVERING

“The Hebrew word for “shelter” literally means a place of cover.”⁷³

“God’s covering can be described as the spiritual protection and nurture which God provides for all those who are in a covenant relationship with Him. This covering cannot be seen but its effect can certainly be experienced”⁷⁴. “One read in Scripture that the moment one receives Christ; an awning of protection is stretched out over one’s live. This truth can be seen in the description of the Passover”⁷⁵

⁷³ Cross, David (2008) *God’s Covering A Place of Healing*. Lancaster, England: Sovereign World Ltd. p 67

⁷⁴ Cross, David (2008) *God’s Covering A Place of Healing*. Lancaster, England: Sovereign World Ltd. p11

⁷⁵ Understanding the Covering of God By David Cannistraci (<http://www.charismamag.com/spirit/spiritual-growth/1617-gods-got-you-covered>)

Then Moses called for all the elders of Israel, and said unto them, Draw out and take you a lamb according to your families, and kill the passover. And ye shall take a bunch of hyssop, and dip it in the blood that is in the bason, and strike the lintel and the two side posts with the blood that is in the bason; and none of you shall go out at the door of his house until the morning. For the LORD will pass through to smite the Egyptians; and when he seeth the blood upon the lintel, and on the two side posts, the LORD will pass over the door, and will not suffer the destroyer to come in unto your houses to smite you. And ye shall observe this thing for an ordinance to thee and to thy sons for ever. And it shall come to pass, when ye be come to the land which the LORD will give you, according as he hath promised, that ye shall keep this service. And it shall come to pass, when your children shall say unto you, What mean ye by this service? That ye shall say, It is the sacrifice of the LORD'S passover, who passed over the houses of the children of Israel in Egypt, when he smote the Egyptians, and delivered our houses. And the people bowed the head and worshipped.

Exodus 12:21-27 (KJV)

“⁷⁶God released a spirit of death against the firstborn of the Egypt. The Israelites were protected by the shed blood of a spotless lamb on the doorposts of their dwellings. No harm came near them if the blood was in place.” “Today Christ is our Passover Lamb, the world cannot truly understand God’s covering but all mankind desperately needs it. Outside this shelter, men and woman are vulnerable to a hostile spiritual realm which governs all those who remain in rebellion to the One who created them.”⁷⁷

For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.

Ephesians 6:12 (KJV)

⁷⁶ Understanding the Covering of God By David Cannistraci (<http://www.charismamag.com/spirit/spiritual-growth/1617-gods-got-you-covered>)

⁷⁷ Cross, David (2008) God’s Covering A Place of Healing. Lancaster England: Sovereign World Ltd. p11

“Another example of the covering power of the blood is in the amazing story of a harlot from Jericho (see Joshua 2). Rahab knew it was inevitable that Israel would prevail against her own lost city. Rahab helped two Israelites, when they came to spy out the land of Jericho. “When the King heard there were spies in his city, he ordered that they must be brought to him. Rahab hid them on her roof, provided that she and her family were spared in the upcoming battle. When the coast was clear she helped them down the roof by a rope through her window.”⁷⁸ With legendary faith, she requested and received protection during the invasion.

Though Jericho was destroyed, Rahab and her family was spared through the red cord hanging from her window.

“One cannot overlook the common thread of truth in these examples of Christ's provision: Spiritual protection for God's people depends completely upon proper positioning. A promise of safety was given to Rahab and the Israelites, but unless they were not in the right place they would not have been safe. Had the Israelites left their homes during Passover and had Rahab been anywhere but behind the crimson cord, they would not have been covered.”⁷⁹

He that dwelleth in the secret place of the most High shall abide under the shadow of the Almighty.

Psalms 91:1 (KJV)

He shall cover thee with his feathers, and under his wings shalt thou trust: his truth shall be thy shield and buckler.

Psalms 91:4 (KJV)

⁷⁸ What should we learn from the life of Rahab? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/life-Rahab.html>)

⁷⁹ Understanding the Covering of God By David Cannistraci (<http://www.charismamag.com/spirit/spiritual-growth/1617-gods-got-you-covered>)

There is light, truth and healing where God covers and the opposite where the enemy covers any part of our lives namely, darkness, deception and damage.

“God has expressed His love towards mankind by establishing a covenant with them. This covenant provides for their permanent well-being as they respond to Him. David Cross writes,⁸⁰ the spiritual clothing which God has provided for mankind is not just to cover their nakedness but also to give them dignity and authority. His cloak over their lives is an indication of the authority, responsibility and value which God places on them. Clothing has always been used as a means of declaring authority – scripture refers to a mantle resting on those whom was God’s spokesman. This is seen nowhere more clearly than in the life of the prophet Elisha:”

He took up also the mantle of Elijah that fell from him, and went back, and stood by the bank of Jordan;

2 Kings 2:13 (KJV)

According to David Cross,⁸¹ “God wants the garment of His authority in every person’s life to be recognized by the powers and principalities of the heavenly realms. God wants the very best for His bride and they can delight in the garments He gives them. The prophet Isaiah said:”

I will greatly rejoice in the LORD, my soul shall be joyful in my God; for he hath clothed me with the garments of salvation, he hath covered me with the robe of righteousness, as a bridegroom decketh himself with ornaments, and as a bride adorneth herself with her jewels.

Isaiah 61:10 (KJV)

⁸⁰ Cross, David (2008) God’s Covering A Place of Healing. Lancaster, England: Sovereign World Ltd p11

⁸¹ Cross, David (2008) God’s Covering A Place of Healing. Lancaster, England: Sovereign World Ltd. p15

Clothing is used as one of the beautiful Biblical metaphors of salvation for coming into the presence of God and fellowship with Him.⁸² God has prepared a garment of salvation for mankind through His Son Jesus Christ who died on the cross. Jesus shed His blood on the cross to wash away the sins of every man who confesses his sins. Thus, the garment of salvation is prepared and provided by God and is not something man can make themselves or purchase. In One John 1:9 God promises the forgiveness of sins.⁸³

If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.

1 John 1:9 (KJV)

Through a covenant God expressed His love towards mankind. This covenant is a sacred agreement between God and mankind where God sets specific conditions, and He promises to bless them as they obey those conditions.

For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

John 3:16 (KJV)

5.1 Covenants God Made With People

God has made several covenants with people over the years and in these covenants, God promised to bless the people as long as they were obedient to the will of God. But again and again, people broke the covenant and God punished them.

⁸² Garments Of Salvation By Henry M. Morris, Ph.D.(<https://www.icr.org/article/20988/>)

⁸³ He Hath Clothed Me With The Garments of Salvation (<https://simplemeditations.wordpress.com/2013/02/11/he-hath-clothed-me-with-the-garments-of-salvation/>)

1. The **covenant with Adam and Eve** was about obedience to God - **Edenic covenant**: Adam and Eve were blessed by God. God told them that they would be masters of the whole earth, to subdue the earth, to have dominion over the animal creation, to restrict themselves to food from the plants, to prepare the land for raising of crops, to abstain from eating of the Tree of the knowledge of good and evil (Genesis 2:15-17). When Adam and Eve broke that covenant, they were punished – the punishment was physical death⁸⁴. (Genesis 3:16-19, 23).
2. The **covenant with Adam and Eve - Adamic covenant**: was given to Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden before they were expelled from the garden. It was without conditions, and embodied a “curse” and a “promise”. “Larkin writes,⁸⁵ The curse was fourfold – to the serpent, to the woman, to the man and to the ground. The promise was that the seed of the woman (Christ) should bruise the “Serpents” head, while his “seed” should bruise Christ’s heel. Here is the promise that Christ shall redeem the world from the power of Satan, and restore the human race and the Earth to their condition before the “Fall””
3. The **covenant with Noah** is an **unconditional covenant**, it was made to Noah and all his descendants and was sealed with a sign – the rainbow. This promise is based on God’s faithfulness alone and it did not depend upon anything Noah and his descendants had to do to fulfil the covenant. God promised that He would never again send a flood to destroy the earth and all the living and that the “day” and “night” and the “seasons”

⁸⁴ Larkin, Clarence (1920) Dispensational Truth. USA, Glenside, Pa: Rev Clarence Larkin Est. p149

⁸⁵ Larkin, Clarence (1920) Dispensational Truth. USA, Glenside, Pa: Rev Clarence Larkin Est. p150

shall not cease. That Noah and his family should be fruitful and multiply and replenish the earth, that they should have dominion over the animals, they were not restricted to a vegetable diet any longer and could eat meat if the blood was drained from it.⁸⁶

4. The **covenant with Abraham - Abrahamic covenant**: The covenant was unconditional and ushered in the Dispensation of the family and contained seven promises. *“I will make of thee a great nation”* – a promise for natural prosperity and spiritual prosperity. *“I will bless thee”* – this was fulfilled in flocks, and herds and land. *“and make thy name great”* – Abraham next to Christ is the outstanding name in Scripture. *“And though shalt be a blessing”* – The chosen seed came from the line of Abraham. *“I will bless them that bless thee”*. *“and curse Him that curseth thee”* - This covenant extends to the “end of the earth,” the sign of the covenant is circumcision (Gen 17:9-14).
5. The **covenant with Abraham** which talked **about receiving blessings** on the basis of *faith*: God made a different covenant with Abraham which was not focused on the people of Israel, but on all people of the world. God promised blessing to all people in the world through Abraham and his descendants (Genesis 12:3; 17:4-6). The only thing God asked of Abraham and his descendants in this covenant was to trust him (Genesis 15:6; 22:1-18; Romans 4:1-5; Galatians 3:6-14). This is why Abraham is called the “father of faith” and those who trust in God are the true “children of Abraham” (Romans 4:11-12; Luke 19:9; 13:16). When God renewed the covenant of faith through Jesus, many Jews did not accept

⁸⁶ Unpublished paper by Iver Larsen, 1997

this new covenant, but only kept to the old covenant of circumcision (John 8:31-41; Romans 4:9-25). This covenant of faith/trust applies to all people in the world, and those who accept it make up the new people of God (Galatians 6:15-16).

6. The “**Mosaic covenant was given to Moses** on Mt Sinai shortly after the Exodus from Egypt. It is based on **keeping the laws** given through Moses, the Moral law – consist of the Ten Commandments. The civil law, the Ceremonial law – this includes the Tabernacle, the Priesthood and the order of service. The sign of this Covenant is the Sabbath. This Covenant continued in force until the Jews were scattered at the destruction of Jerusalem in A.D. 70 and will be renewed when Israel is converted and restored to their own land. The covenant will then be recognized as the Palestinian Covenant and which ends with the “Renovation of the Earth by Fire”.⁸⁷
7. The **covenant with David** to be the *shepherd and ruler* for God’s people (**The Davidic covenant**): King David was recognized as the greatest king in Israel through all times. God himself appointed David to be the shepherd and ruler over Israel (Deuteronomy 17:14-20; 1 Samuel 16:1-13; 2 Samuel 5:1-5; Psalms 78:70-72). King David was able to bring a certain amount of peace to the nation (2 Samuel 7:1). When David wanted to build a temple for God, God did not want a temple. (He would rather move around with the people than be restricted to one location (2 Samuel 7:6-7)). Instead God pronounced the blessings which were part of the covenant with David: God would bring complete peace, and after

⁸⁷ Larkin, Clarence (1920) Dispensational Truth. USA, Glenside, Pa: Rev Clarence Larkin Est. p150

David was dead, one of his descendants would be king forever and he was the one to build a house (or temple) for God (2 Samuel 7:8-18). Although David's son Solomon did build a temple for God, the words here point to Jesus as the "Son of David" which means a descendant of David. It was Jesus who built the temple God wanted to live in, that is the Church, and it is Jesus who rules forever. It was Jesus who became the greatest shepherd and ruler of all times (Matthew 3:6).⁸⁸

8. The **Palestinian Covenant** – this Covenant is conditioned on the **repentance of Israel** and was given to Israel through Moses. It will go into effect after their return to Palestine and it ushers in the "Millennial Dispensation" and ends with it.⁸⁹
9. The **new covenant with everyone** based on **grace** and the death of Jesus Christ as a sacrifice (**The New covenant**): The people forget the laws and therefore the covenant based on keeping the law did not work. God had already in the Old Testament promised that he would make a new covenant, one that would never be forgotten. (Jeremiah 31:31-34; 50:5; Hoseah 2:16-20). This new covenant fulfils and to a certain extent replaces all earlier covenants. Jesus himself introduced the new covenant based on his own blood for the forgiveness of sin (Luke 22:20; Romans 11:27; 1 Corinthians 11:23-26; Hebrews 9:15-22). The purpose was to bring true and lasting forgiveness for sins (Romans 11:27; Hebrews 9:15-22).

⁸⁸ Unpublished paper by Iver Larsen, 1997

⁸⁹ Larkin, Clarence (1920) Dispensational Truth. USA, Glenside, Pa: Rev Clarence Larkin Est. p151

It is a continuation and fulfilment of the covenant made with Abraham based on faith (Matthew 1:1; Acts 3:24-26), and it is a fulfilment of the covenant made with King David (Matthew 1:1; 12:22; 21:6; 22:42-45). But it is very different from the covenant based on keeping the law of Moses (Galatians 3:15-18). Instead of having laws which were written down on stone or paper, the will of God is written in the heart of the Christian by the Holy Spirit (2 Corinthians 3:6-18; 4:21-5:1). The covenant of law did not work. There was nothing wrong with the law, but man rebelled against God's commands. That old covenant of law has therefore been replaced by a completely new and much better covenant (Romans 5:20-21; 6:14; 7:4; 8:1-4; 13:8-10; Hebrews 7:22-8:13; 9:15-22).

Christians should no longer try to live under the covenant of law which was given to Moses (Romans 6:14-15; 7:4; Galatians 5:1) but live a life led by the Holy Spirit who first came to the believers on the Day of Pentecost. God has called us to a higher level of righteousness than what could be accomplished by living under the law (Matthew 5:20).⁹⁰ "Jesus is the guarantor of God's covenant and God's covering – He is the go-between for all God's promises. Jesus was the perfect representative for man and therefore man's relationship with God was restored into the friendship God desired to have with man. Adam's sin in the Garden broke the covenant man had with God. The only way the fullness of God's covering could be restored was if a new covenant agreement could be completely honoured by man. Jesus – the sinless One, was the only One who could restore man's covenant with God, as

⁹⁰ Unpublished paper by Iver Larsen, 1997

all men rebelled against God's commands. During Biblical times, a covenant made by one person, represented each member of the group or family entering into the alliance. When David and Jonathan made a covenant with each other, King David honours the vows he had made with his friend and the blessings of the covenant were extended to Jonathan's son."⁹¹

And David said unto him, Fear not: for I will surely shew thee kindness for Jonathan thy father's sake, and will restore thee all the land of Saul thy father; and thou shalt eat bread at my table continually.

2 Samuel 9:7 (KJV)

"Humankind are part of the broken covenant of Adam, but through their covenant with Jesus they become part of the fulfilled covenant – they are in Christ when he renewed man's covenant with God and died for their sins. Through the Holy Spirit mankind are joined into Jesus and God's covering is restored."⁹²

For ye are dead, and your life is hid with Christ in God.

Colossians 3:3 (KJV)

6 THE DOCTRINE OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

"The most important doctrine in the Word of God is the doctrine of the Holy Spirit. It is one of the foremost truths of redemption and every believer should seek to know all he can of the Person, ministry and work of the Holy Spirit as

⁹¹ Cross, David (2008) God's Covering A Place of Healing. Lancaster, England: Sovereign Books. p159

⁹² Cross, David (2008) God's Covering A Place of Healing. Lancaster, England: Sovereign Books. p159

revealed in Scripture.⁹³ *“If the Holy Spirit is a divine person, worthy to receive our adoration, our faith and our love, and one do not know and recognize Him as such, then one is robbing a divine Being of the adoration and love and confidence which are His due.”*⁹⁴ The workings of the Holy Spirit can be seen throughout Scripture from Genesis to Revelation, relative to both creation and redemption.⁹⁵

Since the beginning one see the Spirit of God move:

In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth. And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.
Genesis 1:1-2 (KJV)

In Revelation 22:17 the Holy Spirit is mentioned for the last time where

And the Spirit and the bride say, Come. And let him that heareth say, Come. And let him that is athirst come. And whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.
Revelation 22:17 (KJV)

Readers of the Scripture have a vast amount of Biblical revelation of the Holy Spirit's ministry between these two verses, the beginning and consummation of the Spirit's work.

In the Old Testament the Holy Spirit is mentioned more than ninety times with at least eighteen different titles and mentioned more than two hundred and sixty

⁹³ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine Portland, Origan Bible Temple Publishing p73

⁹⁴ The Personality and Deity of the Holy Spirit (https://www.blueletterbible.org/comm/torrey_ra/fundamentals/34.cfm)

⁹⁵ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine Portland, Origan Bible Temple Publishing p73

times along with thirty-nine different names and titles in the New Testament. Except for Two John and Three John the Holy Spirit is referred to in all other the books of the New Testament. During the Old Testament times the Spirit was only available to a select few in Israel. The Old Testament foretold the coming of “the last days” when the Holy Spirit would be poured out upon all flesh, thus in God’s plan, this present age has been given over to the ministry of the Holy Spirit.

Therefore it is important for the believer to know, understand, appreciate and experience the Person, work and ministry of the Spirit in his life. The Holy Spirit brings the revelation of the Father and the Son to the heart of man.

If ye love me, keep my commandments. And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever; Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you. I will not leave you comfortless: I will come to you. Yet a little while, and the world seeth me no more; but ye see me: because I live, ye shall live also. At that day ye shall know that I am in my Father, and ye in me, and I in you. He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him. Judas saith unto him, not Iscariot, Lord, how is it that thou wilt manifest thyself unto us, and not unto the world? Jesus answered and said unto him, If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him. He that loveth me not keepeth not my sayings: and the word which ye hear is not mine, but the Father's which sent me. These things have I spoken unto you, being yet present with you. But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

John 14:15-26 (KJV)

Fear, formalism and ignorance robs the Church from studying the doctrine of the Holy Spirit and thus making room for His blessed ministrations.

6.1 The Personality Of The Holy Spirit

“The Holy Spirit is sometimes referred to as “it” or a “thing” or simply an influence. Having the characteristics of personality, the Holy Spirit is not simply an influence but a Person.”⁹⁶ “The Holy Spirit is revealed as the power of God and has a personal influence on the life of the believer. Many believers consider the Spirit to be an impersonal influence, power or energy and are therefore robbed of a personal relationship with the Holy Spirit. There are several reasons why this misunderstanding has arisen, the main being the following:

- The term pneumatology comes from two Greek words, namely, pneuma meaning “wind,” “breath,” or “spirit” (used of the Holy Spirit) and logos meaning “word,” “matter,” or “thing.”⁹⁷ The Holy Spirit is spoken of as being “(Isaiah 40:7; John 3:5-8).
- The Holy Spirit is symbolized as being wind, water, fire, oil, a seal, or other impersonal objects. This seems to disprove the fact that the Holy Spirit is a divine Person. There are many symbols relative to the Son of God, such as a lamb, a rock, and a lion, yet these things do not negate

⁹⁶ Enns, Paul P. (1997) Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology. USA, Chicago: Moody Press. p72

⁹⁷ Pneumatology: The Holy Spirit (<https://bible.org/seriespage/4-pneumatology-holy-spirit>)

the Son being a divine Person. Neither do the symbols of the Spirit negate His personality⁹⁸

- The Holy Spirit's work seems to be so mystical, secret and invisible. This does not, however, deny personality of the Spirit, for "God is a Spirit" (John 4:24) yet a real divine Person
- Believers seems to find it harder to relate to the divine title of Holy Spirit than to the titles "Father" and "Son" (Matthew 28:19). The reason being these titles have a much more human feeling about them than "the Holy Spirit". Connor writes ⁹⁹"but this does not deny the personality of the Spirit. Evil spirits are real personalities and their work is evidenced everywhere. Angels are also spirit beings, yet real personalities (refer to section 12). Man is a spirit being with soul and body, a real person having corporality."

The spirit of man is the candle of the LORD, searching all the inward parts of the belly.

Proverbs 20:27 (KJV)

Thus the Holy Spirit is a real person, though invisible and incorporeal.

⁹⁸ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p73

⁹⁹ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p73

6.2 The Work Of The Holy Spirit Versus The Work Of Satan¹⁰⁰

The Holy Spirit's work	Satan's work
Seeks to show a person that his infinite worth and value to God make God desire fellowship with him	Seeks to convince a person that he is bad and that God does not want anything to do with him
To show a person that no matter how bad his sin was, God forgives all sin and restores the person	Seeks to convince the person that his sin is unpardonable and there is no forgiveness for him
Uses God's word to give a person hope and assurance of God's love and forgiveness	Uses God's word out of context to convince the person that there is no hope for him
Builds faith, hope and love in a person's heart and increases his confidence and assurance of salvation	Creates despair, doubt, resentment and anger toward God, His Word and His people. Seeks to convince a person that he is bad and cannot be saved

TABLE 8: THE WORK OF THE HOLY SPIRIT VERSUS THE WORK OF SATAN

6.3 The Facets Of The Holy Spirit

As a person the Holy Spirit has many facets to His personality. The following are only a few of the numerous traits within His character.

¹⁰⁰ Bubeck, Mark I. (1984) Overcoming the Adversary. USA: The Moody Bible Institute of Chicago. p51

6.3.1 Convicting Or Pleading

And when he is come, he will reprove the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment: Of sin, because they believe not on me;

John 16:8-9 (KJV)

The Holy Spirit keeps His finger on what is wrong until the issue is settled and through this facet draws a person to Jesus.¹⁰¹

6.3.2 Cleansing

When the Holy Spirit rises up in a person it causes the person to hate sin, or to take authority over Satan and causes one to hate the sin that destroys the people of God. When Jesus cleansed the Temple it was this element of the Holy Spirit that operated.

And they come to Jerusalem: and Jesus went into the temple, and began to cast out them that sold and bought in the temple, and overthrew the tables of the moneychangers, and the seats of them that sold doves; And would not suffer that any man should carry any vessel through the temple. And he taught, saying unto them, Is it not written, My house shall be called of all nations the house of prayer? but ye have made it a den of thieves.

Mark 11:15-17 (KJV)

Jesus hated the sin committed against the Temple of God – not the people. Today all children of God are the temple of the living God and when the Lord

¹⁰¹ Alves, Elizabeth (1998) Becoming a prayer warrior. Ventura, California, USA: Regal Books. p78

desires to clean His temple (people) He moves through the cleansing power of the Holy Spirit.¹⁰²

6.3.3 Communion

The Holy Spirit desires to spend time with the believer exchanging ideas, opinions, thoughts or feelings. The Lord wants to communicate with the believer and does this through prayer, praise, worship and reading the Word of God.¹⁰³

6.3.4 Compassionate

In Greek “to have compassion” literally means to have the bowels yearn – a yearning deep within the intestine. It is not only a sympathetic concern, but creates an identity deep within that brings with it a demonstration of the power of God for miracles. Scripture states that Jesus was “filled with compassion” – He had compassion for the hungry, He healed the blind, raised the dead, cast out demons and cleansed the leper.¹⁰⁴

6.3.5 Teaches

Before Jesus departed He told the disciples He would send a Helper, Counsellor to lead and guide them into all truth. A counsellor is one called to come alongside someone to guide, exchange ideas, give advice and to help.

¹⁰² Alves, Elizabeth (1998) *Becoming a prayer warrior*. Ventura, California, USA: Regal Books. p79

¹⁰³ Alves, Elizabeth (1998) *Becoming a prayer warrior*. Ventura, California, USA: Regal Books. p80

¹⁰⁴ Alves, Elizabeth (1998) *Becoming a prayer warrior*. Ventura, California, USA: Regal books. p81

The Holy Spirit teaches and instruct through the counsellor. The disciples were reminded by the Holy Spirit of the things Jesus taught them earlier.¹⁰⁵

But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

John 14:26 (KJV)

6.3.6 Commanding

This is the pre-emptory facet of the Lord, for His commands terminate all debate or action. When Jesus and His disciples were in the boat, a storm came up. The disciples woke Jesus and He commanded the storm to cease.¹⁰⁶

And they came to him, and awoke him, saying, Master, master, we perish. Then he arose, and rebuked the wind and the raging of the water: and they ceased, and there was a calm. And he said unto them, Where is your faith? And they being afraid wondered, saying one to another, What manner of man is this! for he commandeth even the winds and water, and they obey him.

Luke 8:24-25 (KJV)

6.3.7 The Spirit Testifies

The Holy Spirit would testify concerning the teaching of Christ that He had come forth from the Father and had spoken the truth of God. The same word is used of the disciples' testifying concerning Christ in John 15:27. As the disciples

¹⁰⁵ Enns, Paul P. (1997) Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology. USA, Chicago: Moody Press. p73

¹⁰⁶ Alves, Elizabeth (1998) Becoming a prayer warrior. Ventura, California, USA: Regal Books. p82

would bear witness concerning Christ so also would the Holy Spirit bear witness of Christ.¹⁰⁷

6.3.8 The Spirit Intercedes

The Holy Spirit takes the believer's groanings and intercedes on his behalf when the believer is weak. The Father understands the intercession of the Spirit and answers the prayer and works all things together for good in the believer's life. Just as Jesus intercedes on behalf of the believers, so does the Holy Spirit. One is again reminded: an inanimate entity could not intercede for others; a person intercedes.¹⁰⁸

6.3.9 Conquering

Christians are more than conquerors in Him. It is the overcoming power of the Lord, that which causes one to be victorious. David knew who he was in the Lord when he overcame Goliath. This is what the Lord gave David – he went forth to conquer without fear or doubt.¹⁰⁹ (1 Samuel 17).

6.3.10 Concert

In this facet the Lord will bring forth joy, comfort, peace, direction, guidance etc. God moves through a melody in a person's heart.¹¹⁰

¹⁰⁷ Enns, Paul P. (1997) Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology. USA, Chicago: Moody Press. p73

¹⁰⁸ Enns, Paul P. (1997) Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology. USA, Chicago: Moody Press. p74

¹⁰⁹ Alves, Elizabeth (1998) Becoming a prayer warrior. Ventura, California, USA: Regal Books. p83

Thou art my hiding place; thou shalt preserve me from trouble; thou shalt compass me about with songs of deliverance. Selah.

Psalms 32:7 (KJV)

6.3.11 The Spirit Brings About Regeneration

A person has been regenerated by the Spirit when he experiences new birth and has been born of the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit regenerates people just as the Son of God gives life to believers.¹¹¹

6.4 The Holy Spirit Is Spoken Of As Having Personal Feelings That Could Not Be Attributed To An Impersonal Power¹¹²

- He can be grieved (Ephesians 4:30)- the Holy Spirit can be grieved when the believer sins
- He can be insulted (Hebrews 10:29) - *Of how much sorer punishment, suppose ye, shall he be thought worthy, who hath trodden under foot the Son of God, and hath counted the blood of the covenant, wherewith he was sanctified, an unholy thing, and hath done despite unto the Spirit of grace? Hebrews 10:29 (KJV).*
- He can be lied to (Acts 5:3) – Annanias and Sapphira lied to the Peter who accused them of lying to the Holy Spirit. They were both judged with death for their sin of having lied to the Spirit
- He can be blasphemed (Matthew 12:31-32) - Blasphemy is normally

¹¹⁰ Alves, Elizabeth (1998) *Becoming a prayer warrior*. Ventura, California, USA: Regal Books. p84

¹¹¹ Enns, Paul P. (1997) *Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology*. USA, Chicago: Moody Press. p74

¹¹² Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p75

thought of as being rendered against God the Father

- He can be resisted (Acts 7:51) – Stephen accused the unbelieving Jews of being stiff-necked and uncircumcised in heart and ears...always resisting the Holy Spirit”
- He can be tempted (Acts 6:9)
- He can be vexed (Isaiah 63:10)
- He can be quenched (1 Thessalonians 5:19)

The Holy Spirit is a divine Person. He is God indwelling the redeemed and working within the believer to fulfil the will of God. It is the blessed and glorious privilege of all believers to have the conscious joy and knowledge of the Spirit within.”

6.5 How To Open Up To The Holy Spirit”¹¹³

Are there specific essentials God require from mankind to receive Him in His fullness and to receive through Him all the blessings He promises? According to the Word of God there are seven requirements to receive the fullness of the Holy Spirit

6.5.1 Repent

On the day of Pentecost the people asked Peter what they should do and he replied:

¹¹³ Prince, Derek (1999) Derek Prince on Experiencing God’s Power. Charlotte, North Carolina, USA: Whitaker House. p54-58

Now when they heard this, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men and brethren, what shall we do? Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

Acts 2:37-38 (KJV)

According to this Scripture there are two conditions before one can receive the gift of the Holy Spirit – *repent* and be *baptised*. Prince writes ¹¹⁴to *repent* means to turn sincerely from all sinfulness and rebellion and submit ourselves without reservation to God and to His requirements. To be *baptised* is to go through an ordinance or a sacrament by which each of us is personally and visibly identified with Jesus Christ to the world in His death, burial and resurrection.

6.5.2 Ask God

And I say unto you, Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you. For every one that asketh receiveth; and he that seeketh findeth; and to him that knocketh it shall be opened. If a son shall ask bread of any of you that is a father, will he give him a stone? or if he ask a fish, will he for a fish give him a serpent? Or if he shall ask an egg, will he offer him a scorpion? If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children: how much more shall your heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him?

Luke 11:9-13 (KJV)

Although this is a very simple condition it is very important. In Scripture Jesus also told His disciples “Your Father will give you the Holy Spirit if you ask for it.” The third condition is to ask the Father.

¹¹⁴ Prince, Derek (1999) Derek Prince on Experiencing God’s Power. Charlotte, North Carolina, USA: Whitaker House. p55

In John 7:37-39 Jesus said the following:

In the last day, that great day of the feast, Jesus stood and cried, saying, If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink. He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water. (But this spake he of the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive: for the Holy Ghost was not yet given; because that Jesus was not yet glorified.)

John 7:37-39 (KJV)

In this passage Jesus states 3 simple but practical requirements “*If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink.*”

6.5.3 Be Thirsty

Thirst is one of the strongest desires in the human body and to be thirsty means a person have recognized their need more than they already have

6.5.4 Come to Jesus

Jesus is the baptizer in the Holy Spirit therefore, if one want the baptism one should come to the One who baptises in the Holy Spirit.

6.5.5 Drink

One should not be passive – drinking is receiving something within a person by a decision of one’s will and a physical response and thirsting, coming to Jesus and drinking are all essential.

6.5.6 Yield

According to Scripture the believer's body are destined by God to be the temples of the Holy Spirit.

What? know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own?

1 Corinthians 6:19 (KJV)

Firstly, the believer's body are destined by God to be the temple of the Holy Spirit and secondly the believer must offer or yield to God the parts of his body as instruments for His service.

Neither yield ye your members as instruments of unrighteousness unto sin: but yield yourselves unto God, as those that are alive from the dead, and your members as instruments of righteousness unto God.

Romans 6:13 (KJV)

The part of the body that needs God's help most is the tongue and should be dedicated to God for His service. When filled with the Holy Spirit the first immediate result is some utterance that comes out of the mouth – speaking, prophesying, praising, singing speaking in tongues – the mouth is always engaged. In Matthew 12:34 Jesus stated very clearly that there will be an overflow, and it will be out of the person's mouth, right after the person came to Jesus to drink. The heart will be filled and will overflow through the mouth – that is the ultimate purpose of God.

O generation of vipers, how can ye, being evil, speak good things? for out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaketh.

Matthew 12:34 (KJV)

He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water.

John 7:38 (KJV)

Present one's body as a temple, as a temple for the Holy Spirit and ones members as instruments of righteousness.

To be able to do this, one can pray a pattern prayer that include the seven requirements.

Prayer by Derek Prince¹¹⁵

Lord Jesus, I'm thirsty for the fullness of Your Holy Spirit. I present my body to You as a temple and my members as the instruments of righteousness, especially my tongue, the member I cannot tame. Fill me, I pray, and let Your Holy Spirit flow through my lips in rivers of praise and worship. Amen

6.6 Baptism In The Holy Spirit

For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit.

1 Corinthians 12:13 (KJV)

According to Derek Prince the right translation for this verse is: ¹¹⁶*for in one Spirit were mankind all baptized into one body ... and mankind were all given to drink of one Spirit*. First the preposition in the original Greek means "in" and not "by". With regard to the Greek verb *baptizo*, which means "to baptize" there

¹¹⁵ Prince, Derek (1999) Derek Prince on Experiencing God's Power. Charlotte, North Carolina, USA: Whitaker House. p58

¹¹⁶ Prince, Derek (1995) Baptism in the Holy Spirit. Christchurch, New Zealand: Derek Prince Ministries. p6-7

are only two propositions that ever follow it in the Greek New Testament. One is *en* which means “in” and the other is *eis*, which means “into”. “In one Spirit, the verse says, were mankind all baptized.”

After the outpouring of the Holy Spirit on the Day of Pentecost Peter answered the multitude by:

Now when they heard this, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men and brethren, what shall we do? Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

Acts 2:37-38 (KJV)

In Greek this is literally “be baptizes ...into the remission of sins”. Does that mean their sins were not remitted before they were baptized? No – their sins were remitted when they repented and they put their faith in Jesus Christ. Their baptism was an outward testimony that they had met the conditions. Look at the following in Galatians - they were already in the condition into which they were baptized:

Wherefore the law was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ, that we might be justified by faith. But after that faith is come, we are no longer under a schoolmaster. For ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus. For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ.

Galatians 3:24-27 (KJV)

The order is clear and decisive and one can see the only condition required to make a person a child of God is faith in Christ. In John 6:47 Jesus said: *Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me hath everlasting life. John 6:47 (KJV).*

*Prince writes:*¹¹⁷“That is the doctrine for which Luther stood – justification by faith alone. Nothing but an active faith in Jesus Christ is required for a person to become a child of God. Anything that teaches otherwise is a false doctrine”

When a person is baptized in the Holy Spirit it is a supernatural seal that is given to each individual member and acknowledges the member as part of the body of Jesus Christ. Christ alone can confer this supernatural seal, there is no one else in Scripture to whom that privilege is given but to Jesus Christ, who thus acknowledges the membership of His body and sets the apostolic seal upon the believers who receive it.

Now he which stablisheth us with you in Christ, and hath anointed us, is God; Who hath also sealed us, and given the earnest of the Spirit in our hearts.

2 Corinthians 1:21-22 (KJV)

According to this Scripture it is clear that sealing is a work of God, apart from any effort or striving on a person's own part. A person is sealed unto God the moment he is saved and his security and assurance of eternal life is guaranteed.¹¹⁸

And John bare record, saying, I saw the Spirit descending from heaven like a dove, and it abode upon him.

John 1:32 (KJV)

¹¹⁷ Prince, Derek (1995) Baptism in the Holy Spirit. Christchurch, New Zealand: Derek Prince Ministries. p10

¹¹⁸ Bubeck, Mark I. (1984) Overcoming the Adversary. USA: The Moody Bible Institute of Chicago. p53-54

John answered, saying unto them all, I indeed baptize you with water; but one mightier than I cometh, the latchet of whose shoes I am not worthy to unloose: he shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost and with fire:

Luke 3:16 (KJV)

And, being assembled together with them, commanded them that they should not depart from Jerusalem, but wait for the promise of the Father, which, saith he, ye have heard of me. For John truly baptized with water; but ye shall be baptized with the Holy Ghost not many days hence.

Acts 1:4-5 (KJV)

With baptism in the spirit power is bestowed upon the person - this power is for the purpose of the preaching of the gospel (Acts 4:31), living a purer life, having a deeper devotion to God and living a more victorious life in Christ. One does not follow in his own strength, but are led by His power. So “walk in the Spirit” means stay hooked up to the divine source of power and go wherever he leads.¹¹⁹ Also, it is frequently accompanied by speaking in tongues.¹²⁰ Acts 2:4, “And they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit was giving them utterance.”

According to Scripture, if someone does not have the Spirit of God, they are not children of God because “For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.” Romans 8:14 (KJV), “And he that keepeth his commandments dwelleth in him, and he in him. And hereby we know that he abideth in us, by the Spirit which he hath given us 1 John 3:24 (KJV). The Holy Spirit makes us part of the Body of Christ. If one don’t have the Holy Spirit, one is none of His since¹²¹ “if anyone

¹¹⁹ What is baptism in the Holy Spirit by Matt Slick (<https://carm.org/what-baptism-holy-spirit>)

¹²⁰ What is baptism in the Holy Spirit by Matt Slick (<https://carm.org/what-baptism-holy-spirit>)

¹²¹ What is baptism in the Holy Spirit by Jack Wellman (<http://www.whatchristianswantto know.com/what-is-baptism-of-the-holy-spirit/>)

does not have the Spirit of Christ, he does not belong to Christ" (Romans 8:9). Indeed, "those who are led by the Spirit of God are the children of God" (Romans 8:14).

6.7 Warnings Against Baptism In The Holy Spirit

Unless one is not serious with God it is not recommended to seek baptism in the Holy Spirit or any other spiritual experience, for ones condemnation will be all the greater, and ones problems will also be all the greater.

Baptism is not forced – the Holy Spirit is not a dictator, but a Comforter and a teacher. When baptised in the Holy Spirit one should be willing to be guided, counselled, directed and controlled by the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit does not force anyone against his will therefore baptism demands a life of continual submission and waiting upon God. Someone once said: "it is easier to get filled with the Spirit than it is to stay filled with the Spirit"¹²².

Secondly baptism is not a substitute for any other provision of God. Love is not a substitute for the gifts of the spirit and vice versa.

But covet earnestly the best gifts: and yet shew I unto you a more excellent way.

1 Corinthians 12:31 (KJV)

Follow after charity, and desire spiritual gifts, but rather that ye may prophesy.

1 Corinthians 14:1 (KJV)

¹²² Prince, Derek (1995) Baptism in the Holy Spirit. Christchurch, New Zealand: Derek Prince Ministries. p29

According to Scripture one should pursue both and if not, a person is not obeying the Word of God. The baptism in the Holy Spirit is a spiritual experience, a supernatural experience.

And it came to pass in those days, that Jesus came from Nazareth of Galilee, and was baptized of John in Jordan. And straightway coming up out of the water, he saw the heavens opened, and the Spirit like a dove descending upon him: And there came a voice from heaven, saying, Thou art my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased. And immediately the Spirit driveth him into the wilderness. And he was there in the wilderness forty days, tempted of Satan; and was with the wild beasts; and the angels ministered unto him.

Mark 1:9-13 (KJV)

When Jesus was anointed for His ministry the Holy Spirit came down on him and thereafter abode upon Him. Satan immediately tempt Jesus and the same kind of thing can happen in one's life when baptised in the Holy Spirit, for one enters into a new spiritual realm, one in which Satan and his demonic become more real. Jesus overcame Satan by the written Word, therefore one should also be able to overcome Satan not only by quoting the Word of God better than Satan does, but one should be able to choose and wield the right Scripture because one knows and understand the Word of God.

6.8 The Purpose Of The Baptism In The Holy Spirit

Baptism in the Holy Spirit is intended by God to accomplish a number of important purposes in the life of the Christian.

It is a gateway to the supernatural – it is intended by God that the baptized believer should walk in the supernatural – one can say the supernatural become

natural. The New Testament church cannot be experienced without the supernatural.

For it is impossible for those who were once enlightened, and have tasted of the heavenly gift, and were made partakers of the Holy Ghost, And have tasted the good word of God, and the powers of the world to come,

Hebrews 6:4-5 (KJV)

Baptism in the Holy Spirit joins mankind to the body of Christ, and identifies them as united with other believers thus, baptism in the Holy Spirit means they are risen with Him to newness of life (Romans 6:4). The believer should exercise his spiritual gifts to keep the Body of Christ functioning properly as stated in One Corinthians 12:13.

Experiencing baptism in the Holy Spirit serves as an exhortation to keep unity of the church (Ephesians 4:5). Being identified with Christ in His death, burial, and resurrection-through baptism in the Holy Spirit-establishes the basis for realizing our separation from the power of indwelling sin and our walk in newness of life (Romans 6:1-10, Colossians 2:12).¹²³

For **witnessing** – baptism in the Holy Spirit is to clothe the believer with supernatural power from on high so that he can be witnesses unto Jesus Christ.¹²⁴

¹²³Baptism in the Holy Spirit (<http://www.allaboutgod.com/baptism-in-the-holy-spirit.htm>)

¹²⁴ Prince, Derek (1995) Baptism in the Holy Spirit. Christchurch, New Zealand: Derek Prince Ministries. p37

But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

Acts 1:8 (KJV)

For **prayer** – this experience also produces a revolution in a Christian's prayer life and the person praying becomes the instrument through which the Holy Spirit prays.¹²⁵

A spiritual reality regarding the bride of Christ:

I sleep, but my heart waketh: it is the voice of my beloved that knocketh, saying, Open to me, my sister, my love, my dove, my undefiled: for my head is filled with dew, and my locks with the drops of the night.

Song of Solomon 5:2 (KJV)

The Holy Spirit burning day and night on the believer's heart

I sleep, but my heart waketh: it is the voice of my beloved that knocketh, saying, Open to me, my sister, my love, my dove, my undefiled: for my head is filled with dew, and my locks with the drops of the night.

Song of Solomon 5:2 (KJV)

The believer should always pray in the Spirit for one cannot always pray in one's understanding or physical body.

Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints;

Ephesians 6:18 (KJV)

¹²⁵ Prince, Derek (1995) Baptism in the Holy Spirit. Christchurch, New Zealand: Derek Prince Ministries. p39

The following two verses are related; one can quench the Spirit by putting the fire that the Holy Spirit kindles out – this is not God’s will.

Pray without ceasing.

1 Thessalonians 5:17 (KJV)

Quench not the Spirit.

1 Thessalonians 5:19 (KJV)

Paul said to Timothy: *Neglect not the gift that is in thee, which was given thee by prophecy, with the laying on of the hands of the presbytery. 1 Timothy 4:14 (KJV)*

For ***teaching*** – Jesus promised that the Holy Spirit as the great Teacher would lead the believer into all truth, teach them and bring them to a remembrance of all that Jesus said. The apostle John said: “He shall glorify me” (John 16:14). The Holy Spirit is the Teacher and the great Revealer of Jesus Christ. These two functions go together as Jesus is the living Word, the Holy Spirit is the author of the written Word, the One who comes in to be the Interpreter of the Word.¹²⁶

But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

John 14:26 (KJV)

To ***exalt Christ*** – baptism in the Holy Spirit is to exalt Jesus Christ.

¹²⁶ Prince, Derek (1995) Baptism in the Holy Spirit. Christchurch, New Zealand: Derek Prince Ministries. p42

For **guidance** – In the world man live in today supernatural warning and guidance are needed to survive. The Holy Spirit gives supernatural direction and revelation of things to come, therefore leading the believer in the right direction.¹²⁷

Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.

John 16:13 (KJV)

For **health** – the life of Jesus Christ is a resurrection life, a victorious life, a powerful life that should manifest in the mortal life of the believer. It is divine health and eternal resurrection life that penetrates, operates and manifests in the mortal bodies of the believer – that is the Holy Spirit, the administrator of this resurrection life is Jesus Christ, imparting it to the believer's body¹²⁸: *And if Christ be in you, the body is dead because of sin; but the Spirit is life because of righteousness But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you. Romans 8:10-11 (KJV)*

Always bearing about in the body the dying of the Lord Jesus, that the life also of Jesus might be made manifest in our body. For we which live are always delivered unto death for Jesus' sake, that the life also of Jesus might be made manifest in our mortal flesh.

2 Corinthians 4:10-11(KJV)

¹²⁷ Prince, Derek (1995) Baptism in the Holy Spirit. Christchurch, New Zealand: Derek Prince Ministries. p47

¹²⁸ Prince, Derek (1995) Baptism in the Holy Spirit. Christchurch, New Zealand: Derek Prince Ministries. p49

For **unity** - The ultimate purpose of the Holy Spirit baptism is the unity of Christ's body. This unity makes every individual member an effective agent in bringing unity, not division in the body.¹²⁹

For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit.

1 Corinthians 12:13 (KJV)

In Galatians 5:13–15 the believer learns that the good news of Christ is a call to freedom. The revealed will of God for all of humanity is that they have the opportunity, the ability, and the desire to do what will give them the greatest satisfaction now and in a thousand years. A lesson learned is that the only activity which they can perform in freedom is love.

For, brethren, ye have been called unto liberty; only use not liberty for an occasion to the flesh, but by love serve one another.

Galatians 5:13 (KJV)

Love is not optional, it is a command and it is very radical: “*You shall love your neighbor as yourself.*” In other words, Christians are called in their freedom to desire and seek the happiness of others with the same zeal that they want in life. This is so contrary to one's natural inclinations that it seems utterly impossible. For the Christian to feel as much concern for the needs of someone else as for his own seems utterly beyond one's power – and if this is the Christian life — then it is hard, indeed, and one can feel hopeless to ever live it out.

¹²⁹ Prince, Derek (1995) Baptism in the Holy Spirit. Christchurch, New Zealand: Derek Prince Ministries. p14

In Galatians 5:16–18 Paul's answer to this discouragement is:

This I say then, Walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfil the lust of the flesh. For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would. But if ye be led of the Spirit, ye are not under the law.

Galatians 5:16-18 (KJV)

As Christian one should remember that one are not called to live life by one self, but to live it “in the Spirit of God”. The command of love is not a new legalistic burden laid on the Christian's life; but happens automatically when walking in the Spirit. People who try to love without relying on God's Spirit always wind up trying to fill their own emptiness rather than sharing their fullness - and so love ceases to be love. It is not always easy to love – therefore the secret is to simply learn to walk in the Spirit.

6.9 Methods Of Revelation

In the Old Testament God revealed Himself in various ways:

6.9.1 Spoken Word

God spoke to Abraham, Moses and Isaiah in an audible voice.

6.9.2 Dreams

God spoke in dreams to Abimelech, Joseph and Nebuchadnezzar.

6.9.3 Visions

Prophets frequently received visions and seem to have been a higher category of revelation, reserved for spiritually mature people. People receiving visions in the Old Testament were Abraham, Nathan, Ezekiel and Daniel.

6.9.4 Theophanies

An Old Testament theophany¹³⁰ was a manifestation of God in a physical sense. Persons of high spiritual maturity had the privilege to be visited by God in this fashion. Examples of Old Testament theophany's are to Abraham, Joshua, Gideon and Daniel.¹³¹

7 UNDERSTANDING THE FEAR OF THE LORD

The definition of the fear of the Lord can be described as: the continual awareness that mankind's loving heavenly Father is watching and evaluating everything they think, say, and do" (Matthew 12:36; Psalm 139:2; Jeremiah 12:3). As Jesus told each of the seven churches in Revelation 1—2, "*I know your works.*" Nothing escapes His attention.

¹³⁰ Theophany comes from the Greek words *theos* (God) and *phanein* (to appear)

¹³¹ Enns, Paul P. (1997) *Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology*. USA, Chicago: Moody Press. p82

The fear of the Lord is a primary theme throughout the entire Old Testament and the word “fear” is derived from Hebrew words such as *yir’ah*.¹³² In the Bible, the word translated “fear” can mean several things. It can refer to the terror one feels in a frightening situation (Deuteronomy 2:25). It can mean “respect” in the way a servant fears his master and serves him faithfully (Joshua 24:14). Fear can also denote the reverence or awe a person feels in the presence of greatness (Isaiah 6:5). The fear of the Lord is a combination of all of these.

The fear of God is only the beginning of understanding but they’ve got to read the rest of the story! In fact, the Love of God reflected through Jesus Christ in the New Testament scriptures has the power to cast out this fear and set mankind free – isn’t that *great* news! ¹³³ “Manning writes, ¹³⁴“Christianity moves in a climate completely penetrated by love and one are called to a life of discipleship compatible with it, not living at a pre-Christian level eyeing God solely in terms of laws, rules and obligations – God is love and the Christian is called by Jesus Christ into an intimate friendship in which one member is a human being and the other the eternal God.”

There is no fear in love; but perfect love casteth out fear: because fear hath torment. He that feareth is not made perfect in love.

1 John 4:18 (KJV)

¹³² Fear of God (<http://www.allaboutgod.com/fear-of-god.htm>)

¹³³ Fear of God (<http://www.allaboutgod.com/fear-of-god.htm>)

¹³⁴ Manning, Brannan (1992) *The Signature of Jesus*. Portland, Oregon UK: Multnomah Press. p133

Beloved, let us love one another: for love is of God; and every one that loveth is born of God, and knoweth God. He that loveth not knoweth not God; for God is love. In this was manifested the love of God toward us, because that God sent his only begotten Son into the world, that we might live through him. Herein is love, not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son to be the propitiation for our sins. Beloved, if God so loved us, we ought also to love one another. No man hath seen God at any time. If we love one another, God dwelleth in us, and his love is perfected in us.

1 John 4:7-12 (KJV)

Therefore as by the offence of one judgment came upon all men to condemnation; even so by the righteousness of one the free gift came upon all men unto justification of life.

Romans 5:18 (KJV)

This is my commandment, That ye love one another, as I have loved you. Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends.

John 15:12-13 (KJV)

In order to develop the fear of the Lord, one must recognize God for who He is. Without total awe, wonder, terror, dread, reverence, and respect for a perfectly holy, righteous, and just Creator, can a person truly appreciate what Jesus Christ, the Son of God, did for them on Calvary's cross?¹³⁵ One must glimpse with one's spirit the power, might, beauty, and brilliance of the Lord God Almighty (Revelation 11:17; Hosea 12:5; Isaiah 6:1–5). Those who fear the Lord have a continual awareness of Him, a deep reverence for Him, and sincere commitment to obey Him.¹³⁶

¹³⁵ Fear of God (<http://www.allaboutgod.com/fear-of-god.htm>)

¹³⁶ How is the fear of the Lord the beginning of wisdom (<https://www.gotquestions.org/fear-Lord-beginning-wisdom.html>)

According to Derek Prince “one of the best words to describe the fear of the Lord is *reverence*¹³⁷ and with goes a submissive attitude toward God.

7.1 Facts About The Fear Of The Lord

Scripture states that “*The fear of the LORD is clean, enduring for ever: the judgments of the LORD are true and righteous altogether. Psalms 19:9 (KJV).*

The fear of the Lord is	The fear of the Lord is not:
Sometimes a very powerful, physical fear	Natural fear
Awe, reverence	It is not demonic or tormenting fear
Submissiveness	It is not fear of man
What one fear is ones god (Genesis 31:42,53)	

TABLE 9: THE FEAR OF THE LORD

Psalms 25:12-14 describes the benefits of the fear of the Lord. God chooses His students on the basis of character and does not commit Himself to teach those who have no fear of the Lord. God will share His secrets with His student.

What man is he that feareth the LORD? him shall he teach in the way that he shall choose.

Psalms 25:12 (KJV)

The secret of the LORD is with them that fear him; and he will shew them his covenant.

Psalms 25:14 (KJV)

¹³⁷ Adapted from Derek Prince teachings “The Fear of the Lord” Derek Prince Ministries (www.derekprince.org/publisher/file.aspx?id=1000021515)

Proverbs 10:27 promises the believer that if he has the fear of the Lord in his life he will live longer than he would have without it.

The fear of the LORD prolongeth days: but the years of the wicked shall be shortened.

Proverbs 10:27 (KJV)

Another promise is the fear of the Lord does not make a person timid – but gives one strength.

In the fear of the LORD is strong confidence: and his children shall have a place of refuge.

Proverbs 14:26 (KJV)

When a person fears the Lord, he does not have to fear anything else, therefore it is a remedy for all other ungodly forms of fear.

In Proverbs 19:23 lay another promise about the fear of the Lord

The fear of the LORD tendeth to life: and he that hath it shall abide satisfied; he shall not be visited with evil.

Proverbs 19:23 (KJV)

What a great promise this is by the Lord. This same promise is repeated in Proverbs 14:27 *The fear of the LORD is a fountain of life, to depart from the snares of death*” and in Proverbs 22:4 *By humility and the fear of the LORD are riches, and honour, and life.*

7.2 Does The Believer Need The Fear Of The Lord After He Has Been Saved?

One Peter 1:15-19 is a message written to the people who have been redeemed by the blood of Jesus

But as he which hath called you is holy, so be ye holy in all manner of conversation; Because it is written, Be ye holy; for I am holy. And if ye call on the Father, who without respect of persons judgeth according to every mans work, pass the time of your sojourning here in fear: Forasmuch as ye know that ye were not redeemed with corruptible things, as silver and gold, from your vain conversation received by tradition from your fathers; But with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot:

1 Peter 1:15-19 (KJV)

Peter states to be holy in all one's conduct, not some, not most, but all. Prince writes, ¹³⁸*"the very fact that God paid our redemption with the blood of Jesus - the most precious thing in the universe – is a reason why one should always walk in fear. The believer should live a life that does not betray his Redeemer and lower the price of his redemption to something cheap and insignificant"*.

7.3 How To Get The Fear Of The Lord

In Proverbs 2:1-5 God has given an *if-then* statement that shows the believer step-by-step how to receive the fear of the Lord.

The conditions - the "ifs" for receiving the fear of the Lord

¹³⁸ Adapted from Derek Prince teachings "The Fear of the Lord" Derek Prince Ministries (www.derekprince.org/publisher/file.aspx?id=1000021515)

My son, if thou wilt receive my words, and hide my commandments with thee;

Proverbs 2:1 (KJV)

- Receive God's Word with respect, with an attitude of submission, obedience and as the most valuable element of one's life. The believer should treasure¹³⁹ it – because it is of most value.

So that thou incline thine ear unto wisdom, and apply thine heart to understanding;

Proverbs 2:2 (KJV)

- demonstrate a submissive attitude and become teachable

Yea, if thou criest after knowledge, and liftest up thy voice for understanding;

Proverbs 2:3 (KJV)

- One should have a heart committed to prayer – impassioned prayer.

If thou seekest her as silver, and searchest for her as for hid treasures;

Proverbs 2:4 (KJV)

- God does not put everything out in the open therefore one should grasp for them. This is how one should approach wisdom – search for it wherever it may be found.

Now after all the “ifs” here is the “then” promise:

¹³⁹ Strong's Concordance - 6845. tsaphan - To hide, treasure up (The Hebrew word means to store something up in the secret place) (<http://biblehub.com/hebrew/6845.htm>)

Then shalt thou understand the fear of the LORD, and find the knowledge of God.

Proverbs 2:1-5 (KJV)

- According to Isaiah 11:2-3 one cannot separate the fear of the Lord from the knowledge of the Lord.

And the spirit of the LORD shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the LORD; And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the LORD: and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears:

Isaiah 11:2-3 (KJV)

The knowledge of the Lord and the fear of the Lord cannot be separated – one cannot have more knowledge of the Lord than fear of the Lord. Only the Holy Spirit can teach a person about the fear of the Lord. Psalm 34:11 says *Come, ye children, hearken unto me: I will teach you the fear of the LORD.* Psalms 34:11 (KJV), therefore one needs to ask the Lord to impart the fear of the Lord into his life.¹⁴⁰

8 SPIRITUAL AUTHORITY

And the seventy returned again with joy, saying, Lord, even the devils are subject unto us through thy name. And he said unto them, I beheld Satan as lightning fall from heaven. Behold, I give unto you power to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy: and nothing shall by any means hurt you. Notwithstanding in this rejoice not, that the spirits are subject unto you; but rather rejoice, because your names are written in heaven.

Luke 10:17-20 (KJV)

¹⁴⁰ Adapted from Derek Prince teachings “The Fear of the Lord” Derek Prince Ministries (www.derekprince.org/publisher/file.aspx?id=1000021515)

8.1 The Believers Anointing

Anointing can be categorized as follows:

- The anointing of the believer – which is the anointing within an individual
- The ministerial anointing – is the anointing upon an individual and
- The corporate anointing – is the anointing upon a gathering of believers

The primary anointing is the believer's anointing for all other manifestations are judged by this anointing.

But the anointing which ye have received of him abideth in you, and ye need not that any man teach you: but as the same anointing teacheth you of all things, and is truth, and is no lie, and even as it hath taught you, ye shall abide in him.

1 John 2:27 (KJV)

One could say that the anointing of the believer is the most important of them all, for all other anointing's are built about and around this anointing. This anointing did not manifest in the Old Testament and is only available to New Testament saints.

The ministerial anointing of prophet, priest and king was the only anointing available in the Old covenant – thus old testaments saints had the anointing upon. Only chosen ones had the anointing in the Old Testament like the prophets, priests and kings and all other people had to rely on what the prophet said. The only protection they had was in the written law. The people had to wait for what the prophet said to come to pass, and even then it must not lead to idol worship which was against the written law.

If there arise among you a prophet, or a dreamer of dreams, and giveth thee a sign or a wonder, And the sign or the wonder come to pass, whereof he spake unto thee, saying, Let us go after other gods, which thou hast not known, and let us serve them; Thou shalt not hearken unto the words of that prophet, or that dreamer of dreams: for the LORD your God proveth you, to know whether ye love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul. Ye shall walk after the LORD your God, and fear him, and keep his commandments, and obey his voice, and ye shall serve him, and cleave unto him.

Deuteronomy 13:1-4 (KJV)

Today the Word of God, the fruit of the ministry and the believer's anointing are tests for a manifest ministerial anointing. Today God's people are not led by the New Testament prophets, they are only instruments to confirm what God has already spoken by the inward witness.

8.2 Can The Anointing Within Be Increased?

"The capacity to perceive right from wrong is a working of the believer's anointing and this capacity can be increased and trained.

But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, even those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil.

Hebrews 5:14 (KJV)

Some may say that a believer's anointing cannot increase. When born again every believer receive the same predetermined measure of faith, grace, and glory. As Scripture states that a believer grows in faith, glory and grace through

faithfully growing in the Word, prayer and worship their anointing will also grow.”¹⁴¹

For therein is the righteousness of God revealed from faith to faith: as it is written, The just shall live by faith.

Romans 1:17 (KJV)

But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord.

2 Corinthians 3:18 (KJV)

And of his fulness have all we received, and grace for grace.

John 1:16 (KJV)

8.2.1 Growth In Faith Produces An Increase In The Believer's Anointing

Every believer receives the same amount of anointing when born again. It is the responsibility of the believer to grow in faith by spending time in hearing the Word of God. Scripture states that faith comes by hearing and hearing the Word of God. (Romans 10:17) The believer's faith can grow exceedingly by spending time hearing the Word of God and their faith will be increased.

We are bound to thank God always for you, brethren, as it is meet, because that your faith groweth exceedingly, and the charity of every one of you all toward each other aboundeth;

2 Thessalonians 1:3 (KJV)

¹⁴¹ Tan, Peter (2008) The Anointing of the Holy Spirit. Canberra Australia: Peter Tan Evangelism. p19

Not boasting of things without our measure, that is, of other men's labours; but having hope, when your faith is increased, that we shall be enlarged by you according to our rule abundantly,

2 Corinthians 10:15 (KJV)

“The believer operates in an anointing that is proportional to his faith level, thus a man full of faith is a man full of power and anointing. In Matthew ten verse one the disciples could not cast out a devil because of their lack of faith. It would be unfair to expect a baby Christian to grow beyond the faith level he received at conversion, when one does not expect a believer to remain at their first level of his anointing. Scripture is full of verses to prove that one should grow in one's anointing. As stated earlier, when faith increases, the anointing increases.”¹⁴²

The believer's faith is motivated by love (see Galatians 5:6). Love is what causes us to live in the Spirit and is the greatest virtue of all.

Without faith a person can't please God, thus without love man can't know Him at all. The ultimate spiritual weapon against sin, temptation, offense, disunity, sickness, oppression and spiritual corruption, and death is love filled with truth is - love conquers all.

When a believer applies these principles to his life with God, he can expect to see God's glorious power and anointing released in him and through him.”¹⁴³

¹⁴² Tan, Peter (2008) The Anointing of the Holy Spirit. Canberra Australia: Peter Tan Evangelism. p20

¹⁴³ How to Maintain the Flow of the Anointing By Claudio Freidzon (<http://www.charisma-mag.com/spirit/supernatural/9382-maintaining-the-flow>)

8.2.2 Growth In Grace Produces An Increase In The Believer's Anointing

"When a person gets born again he receive a measure of grace.

For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God:

Ephesians 2:8 (KJV)

As in faith the operation of anointing is also related to the operation of grace. According to Ephesians 3:7 Paul was anointed according to grace and his was also perceived by the apostles as grace from God."¹⁴⁴

(For he that wrought effectually in Peter to the apostleship of the circumcision, the same was mighty in me toward the Gentiles:) And when James, Cephas, and John, who seemed to be pillars, perceived the grace that was given unto me, they gave to me and Barnabas the right hands of fellowship; that we should go unto the heathen, and they unto the circumcision.

Galatians 2:8-9 (KJV)

"The grace of God and the anointing of God are directly related and through the knowledge of Jesus the believer's grace can be multiplied.

Grace and peace be multiplied unto you through the knowledge of God, and of Jesus our Lord,

2 Peter 1:2 (KJV)

Scripture states that a believer can grow in grace and that leads to growth in the anointing of God. As a believer should not remain at the anointing level of his

¹⁴⁴ Tan, Peter (2008) The Anointing of the Holy Spirit. Canberra Australia: Peter Tan Evangelism. p20

born again experience he should not remain at the grace level he received at conversion.”¹⁴⁵

But grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. To him be glory both now and for ever. Amen.

2 Peter 3:18 (KJV)

8.2.3 Growth In Glory Produces An Increase In The Believer's Anointing

“An increase in glory in mankind's lives would definitely produce an increase in the anointing. People fall under the power of the Holy Spirit by the glory of God. One can say the glory of God and the anointing of God are directly related. Scripture states, when the anointing of God fills a place, the glory of God is sometimes manifested as a cloud (Exodus 40:34; 2 Chronicles 5:14). When a believer is encouraged to grow from glory to glory, and growing in glory produces growth in the anointing, he should realize that he can grow in the anointing (2 Corinthians 3:18).”¹⁴⁶

But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord.

2 Corinthians 3:18 (KJV)

That he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with might by his Spirit in the inner man; That Christ may dwell in your hearts by faith; that ye, being rooted and grounded in love,

Ephesians 3:16-17 (KJV)

¹⁴⁵ Tan, Peter (2008) The Anointing of the Holy Spirit. Canberra, Australia: Peter Tan Evangelism. p20

¹⁴⁶ Tan, Peter (2008) The Anointing of the Holy Spirit. Canberra, Australia: Peter Tan Evangelism. p21

**Now unto him that is able to do exceeding abundantly above all that we ask or think, according to the power that worketh in us,
Ephesians 3:20 (KJV)**

“When Paul prayed for the Ephesians who were already born again and baptized in the Holy Spirit to be strengthened with might (Greek word *dunamis*¹⁴⁷ - which means ‘power’ and is related to the anointing - Acts 1:8) in their spirits according to the riches of His glory, he was actually praying for an increase in the anointing within, which is the believer’s anointing.

The believer’s anointing which he received at conversion can be increased. The principles for increasing the believer’s anointing are the same as for the ministerial and corporate anointing.

There are five signs that follow all believers and through the believers anointing he will be able to:

- Cast out demons
- Speak in new tongues
- Have authority over serpents when preaching the gospel
- Protection against attacks from the enemy when preaching the gospel
- Recovery of the sick through laying on of hands - (Mark 16:17, 18)¹⁴⁸

¹⁴⁷ But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth. Acts 1:8 (KJV)

¹⁴⁸ Tan, Peter (2008) The Anointing of the Holy Spirit. Canberra, Australia: Peter Tan Evangelism. p21

And these signs shall follow them that believe; In my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; They shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover.

Mark 16:17-18 (KJV)

8.2.4 The Importance Of The Believers Anointing

In these days God leads his people by the anointing within. The believers anointing produces a Christ-like character and all the fruit of the Spirit (Galatians 5:22, 23). As believers are living in the New Covenant, the apostles or prophets does not sit around waiting for a spectacular vision or manifestation to lead them.

The manifestations of the anointing upon have to be checked by the anointing within, for some dreams, visions, impressions, or thoughts are not from the Holy Spirit. The realm of the spectacular is subject to counterfeit and a manifestation that the enemy cannot counterfeit is the anointing within because it is inside our spirits. Therefore the believer should flow in the ministerial anointing using the anointing within as a guide to direct him.¹⁴⁹

When Christian's with the gift of discernment moves about area, they will sometimes be aware of certain places that provoke their spirits, often just to a feeling of not wanting to be around the place. In some cases, a sense of fear, oppression and a real heaviness can come over him. His spirit will be triggered to some kind of reaction knowing that something is wrong. The Spirit of God is making him sensitive to some other spiritual power. A word of knowledge may

¹⁴⁹ Tan, Peter (2008) The Anointing of the Holy Spirit. Canberra, Australia: Peter Tan Evangelism. p22

flow through the Holy Spirit into his thoughts of feelings giving revelation about the spirit concerned. This practicing to discern what is good and evil is essential to spiritual awareness.”¹⁵⁰

Are one through the barrier and in His joy and peace, and do one feel his love surrounding them? Practice this and it will help a person to discern the difference between the spirit, which wants to worship Jesus, and the soul, often ruled by feelings.

For they that are after the flesh do mind the things of the flesh; but they that are after the Spirit the things of the Spirit. For to be carnally minded is death; but to be spiritually minded is life and peace.

Romans 8:5-6 (KJV)

That passage shows mankind's behaviour is the result of the thoughts they ponder either to gratify the flesh or the Spirit. When mankind change their thought life, their behaviour will change. **That is how one crucify the flesh.** This fact is one of the primary reasons why all Christians should be memorizing Scripture and talking about God and the things of God as often as possible throughout the day and night.

BETH. Wherewithal shall a young man cleanse his way? by taking heed thereto according to thy word. With my whole heart have I sought thee: O let me not wander from thy commandments. Thy word have I hid in mine heart, that I might not sin against thee.

Psalms 119:9-11 (KJV)

¹⁵⁰ Spiritual Mapping. From Discerning the Mixture. David Tidy (prayerwarriorsintl.blogspot.com/p/spiritual-mapping.html)

And these words, which I command thee this day, shall be in thine heart: And thou shalt teach them diligently unto thy children, and shalt talk of them when thou sittest in thine house, and when thou walkest by the way, and when thou liest down, and when thou risest up. And thou shalt bind them for a sign upon thine hand, and they shall be as frontlets between thine eyes. And thou shalt write them upon the posts of thy house, and on thy gates.

Deuteronomy 6:6-9 (KJV)

9 THE GIFTS OF THE FATHER, THE SON AND THE HOLY SPIRIT

9.1 The Difference Between The Gifts Of The Father, Jesus Christ And The Holy Spirit¹⁵¹

Mankind has already seen that God has created them for a purpose / destiny and He has placed inside them, at conception, at least two of the redemptive gifts. They will be the aspect of the Bride of Christ that one is called and anointed to manifest in reflecting God's Love to one's neighbour. Just to clarify the various terminologies used:

1) **Fivefold ministry** (office) is about walking in ruler ship. Certain believers are called to walk in positions of governance.

¹⁵¹Healing our wounded hearts Part 1: Man's Purpose and the Gifts of the Spirit. Kanaan Ministries. p34-36

And His gifts were [varied; He Himself appointed and gave men to us] some to be apostles (special messengers), some prophets (inspired preachers and expounders), some evangelists (preachers of the Gospel, traveling missionaries), some pastors (shepherds of His flock) and teachers. His intention was the perfecting and the full equipping of the saints (His consecrated people), [that they should do] the work of ministering toward building up Christ's body (the church), [That it might develop] until we all attain oneness in the faith and in the comprehension of the [full and accurate] knowledge of the Son of God, that [we might arrive] at really mature manhood (the completeness of personality which is nothing less than the standard height of Christ's own perfection), the measure of the stature of the fullness of the Christ and the completeness found in Him.

Ephesians 4:11-13 (NIV)

This represents standing in a full time ministry, recognised by the outpouring of God's gift to give direction to the Body of Christ. It is clear the person is the one "gifted" for the purpose of equipping the other saints.

2) The **Gifts of the Holy Spirit** is the flow of the Holy Spirit's leading, which allows benefit for mankind.

Now there are distinctive varieties and distributions of endowments (gifts, extraordinary powers distinguishing certain Christians, due to the power of divine grace operating in their souls by the Holy Spirit) and they vary, but the [Holy] Spirit remains the same. And there are distinctive varieties of service and ministration, but it is the same Lord [Who is served]. And there are distinctive varieties of operation [of working to accomplish things], but it is the same God Who inspires and energizes them all in all. But to each one is given the manifestation of the [Holy] Spirit [the evidence, the spiritual illumination of the Spirit] for good and profit.

- ***To one is given in and through the [Holy] Spirit [the power to speak] a message of wisdom,***
- ***and to another [the power to express] a word of knowledge and understanding according to the same [Holy] Spirit;***
- ***To another [wonder-working] faith by the same [Holy] Spirit,***

- to another the extraordinary powers of healing by the one Spirit;
- To another the working of miracles,
- to another prophetic insight (the gift of interpreting the divine will and purpose);
- to another the ability to discern and distinguish between [the utterances of true] spirits [and false ones], to another various kinds of [unknown] tongues,
- to another the ability to interpret [such] tongues.

All these [gifts, achievements, abilities] are inspired and brought to pass by one and the same [Holy] Spirit, Who apportions to each person individually [exactly] as He chooses. For just as the body is a unity and yet has many parts, and all the parts, though many, form [only] one body, so it is with Christ (the Messiah, the Anointed One).

1 Corinthians 12:4-12 (NIV)

(See also 1 Corinthians 14)

This represents the supernatural interaction between: • God and man, • Man and the Body of Christ at a specific time and specific set of circumstances as the Holy Spirit works through a believer. The manifestation of this gift will have a direct / beneficial outworking on the individual himself in many cases.

3) The **Gifts of the Father** are given in order that one can go about fulfilling his purpose so that the Bride of Christ is drawn closer in intimacy with God.

Having gifts (faculties, talents, qualities) that differ according to the grace given us, let us use them: [He whose gift is] prophecy (PROPHET), [let him prophesy] according to the proportion of his faith; [He whose gift is] practical service (SERVANT), let him give himself to serving; he who teaches (TEACHER), to his teaching; He who exhorts (encourages) (EXHORTER), to his exhortation; he who contributes (GIVER), let him do it in simplicity and liberality; he who gives aid and superintends (RULER), with zeal and singleness of mind; he who does acts of mercy (MERCY), with genuine cheerfulness and joyful eagerness.

Romans 12:6-8 (NIV)

The DNA of a person is made up with the gift / gifts, and it defines what God has destined the person to be. That “part” reflects God’s full Glory as each one of the gifts unite in the Body of Christ, they represent the “Radiance” that will reflect the One True God. Each specific gift or colour is needed to create the whole “rainbow”.

9.2 The Path To A Purpose Filled Life ¹⁵²

A) The person must obtain an understanding of what God’s redemptive gifts are and which area of calling God has elected for him to reveal to the body of Christ what his motivational / redemptive gifts are? One should know how to identify his gift and place in the body of Christ?

Everyone has a redemptive gift (i.e. at least 2-3 gifts which will be ones major “job” in life to use / to fit into and form the entire complete body of Christ. According to One Peter 4:10 every person has a gift:

As each of you has received a gift (a particular spiritual talent, a gracious divine endowment), employ it for one another as [befits] good trustees of God’s many-sided grace [faithful stewards of the extremely diverse powers and gifts granted to Christians by unmerited favor].

1 Peter 4:10 (NIV)

There are seven of these motivational / redemptive gifts. A person need to identify which one is their special focus? What they are called to do as an area of ministry? Where do they fit into the Body of Christ?

¹⁵² Healing our wounded hearts Part 1: Man’s Purpose and the Gifts of the Spirit. Kanaan Ministries. p37-41

For as in one physical body we have many parts (organs, members) and all of these parts do not have the same function or use, So we, numerous as we are, are one body in Christ (the Messiah) and individually we are parts one of another [mutually dependent on one another]. Having gifts (faculties, talents, qualities) that differ according to the grace given us, let us use them:

- **[He whose gift is] prophecy (PROPHET), [let him prophesy] according to the proportion of his faith;**
- **[He whose gift is] practical service (SERVANT), let him give himself to serving;**
- **he who teaches (TEACHER), to his teaching;**
- **He who exhorts (encourages) (EXHORTER), to his exhortation;**
- **he who contributes (GIVER), let him do it in simplicity and liberality;**
- **he who gives aid and superintends (RULER), with zeal and singleness of mind;**
- **he who does acts of mercy (MERCY), with genuine cheerfulness and joyful eagerness.**

Romans 12:4-8 (NIV)

Before creation in the womb, this gift was woven into each person – the gift is not by chance, but by specific proclamation of God.

For You did form my inward parts; You did knit me together in my mother's womb. I will confess and praise You for You are fearful and wonderful and for the awful wonder of my birth! Wonderful are Your works, and that my inner self knows right well. My frame was not hidden from You when I was being formed in secret [and] intricately and curiously wrought [as if embroidered with various colors] in the depths of the earth [a region of darkness and mystery]. Your eyes saw my unformed substance, and in Your book all the days [of my life] were written before ever they took shape, when as yet there was none of them.

Psalms 139:13-16 (NIV)

The purpose of this is to highlight that every person has a unique purpose, that God ordained that fathers and mothers would identify this gift from an early age.

Train up a child in the way he should go [and in keeping with his individual gift or bent], and when he is old he will not depart from it.

Proverbs 22:6 (NIV)

Parents who correctly recognize the unique set of gifts will go about the process of:

- Developing that attribute
- Guarding against hurts which could wound the child.
- Dealing with generational issues that could restrain the child from the fullness of the victory.
- Encouraging the outflow of the gifts into the Body of Christ.

Every individual is accountable for the gifts / talents that one has been given. They are warned not to neglect the gift:

Do not neglect the gift which is in you, [that special inward endowment] which was directly imparted to you [by the Holy Spirit] by prophetic utterance when the elders laid their hands upon you [at your ordination].

1 Timothy 4:14 (NIV)

But he who did not know and did things worthy of a beating shall be beaten with few [lashes]. For everyone to whom much is given, of him shall much be required; and of him to whom men entrust much, they will require and demand all the more.

Luke 12:48 (NIV)

God declares that all people are equal – they are one before Him – the only One God.

Hear, O Israel: the Lord our God is one Lord [the only Lord].

Deuteronomy 6:4 (NIV)

Since everybody is equal but have different gifts, they must recognize that every gift will have equal value in God's eyes.

Paul clearly says that mankind are “parts” of One Body – that one is mutually dependant on each other.

For as in one physical body we have many parts (organs, members) and all of these parts do not have the same function or use, So we, numerous as we are, are one body in Christ (the Messiah) and individually we are parts one of another [mutually dependent on one another].

Romans 12:4-5 (NIV)

Ezekiel, the prophet describes how the Body of Christ will be a restored united army.

Thus says the Lord God to these bones: Behold, I will cause breath and spirit to enter you, and you shall live; And I will lay sinews upon you and bring up flesh upon you and cover you with skin, and I will put breath and spirit in you, and you [dry bones] shall live; and you shall know, understand, and realize that I am the Lord [the Sovereign Ruler, Who calls forth loyalty and obedient service]. So I prophesied as I was commanded; and as I prophesied, there was a [thundering] noise and behold, a shaking and trembling and a rattling, and the bones came together, bone to its bone. And I looked and behold, there were sinews upon [the bones] and flesh came upon them and skin covered them over, but there was no breath or spirit in them. Then said He to me, Prophecy to the breath and spirit, son of man,

and say to the breath and spirit, Thus says the Lord God: Come from the four winds, O breath and spirit, and breathe upon these slain that they may live. So I prophesied as He commanded me, and the breath and spirit came into [the bones], and they lived and stood up upon their feet, an exceedingly great host. Then He said to me, Son of man, these bones are the whole house of Israel. Behold, they say, Our bones are dried up and our hope is lost; we are completely cut off. Therefore prophesy and say to them, Thus says the Lord God: Behold, I will open your graves and cause you to come up out of your graves, O My people; and I will bring you [back home] to the land of Israel. And you shall know that I am the Lord [your Sovereign Ruler], when I have opened your graves and caused you to come up out of your graves, O My people. And I shall put My Spirit in you and you shall live, and I shall place you in your own land. Then you shall know, understand, and realize that I the Lord have spoken it and performed it, says the Lord.

Ezekiel 37:5-14 (NIV)

Every single person has a unique gift and must fit into a Body of other Believers to be part of the Army of God. Let us verify that each motivation / redemptive gift is connected to a part of the physical body.

1. **The prophet** – is the one that must see the way in which God's principles of design can be made operational, i.e. the prophet is the eye.

The eye is the lamp of the body. So if your eye is sound, your entire body will be full of light. But if your eye is unsound, your whole body will be full of darkness. If then the very light in you [your conscience] is darkened, how dense is that darkness!

Matthew 6:22-23 (NIV)

2. **The Servant** – must reach out to others in need, must hold up the hands of those in leadership, i.e. the servant is the hands.

She opens her hand to the poor, yes, she reaches out her filled hands to the needy [whether in body, mind, or spirit].

Proverbs 31:20 (NIV)

- 3. The Teacher** – must have a mind to apply to study and collate the facts.

Now these [Jews] were better disposed and more noble than those in Thessalonica, for they were entirely ready and accepted and welcomed the message [concerning the attainment through Christ of eternal salvation in the kingdom of God] with inclination of mind and eagerness, searching and examining the Scriptures daily to see if these things were so.

Acts 17:11 (NIV)

- 4. The Exhorter** – has the power over suffering and therefore has the ability to speak into the lives of others – the mouth.

After the reading of the Law and the Prophets, the leaders [of the worship] of the synagogue sent to them saying, Brethren, if you have any word of exhortation or consolation or encouragement for the people, say it.

Acts 13:15 (NIV)

- 5. The Giver** – has the ability to use his strength / wisdom / initiative to build generational wealth – the arms.

He has shown strength and made might with His arm; He has scattered the proud and haughty in and by the imagination and purpose and designs of their hearts.

Luke 1:51 (NIV)

[Zion now cries to the Lord, the God of Israel] Awake, awake, put on strength and might, O arm of the Lord; awake, as in the ancient days, as in the generations of long ago. Was it not You Who cut Rahab [Egypt] in pieces, Who pierced the dragon [symbol of Egypt]?

Isaiah 51:9 (NIV)

- 6. The Ruler** – has the gift to call people to a vision, to organize and manage a project to completion – the shoulders.

For to us a Child is born, to us a Son is given; and the government shall be upon His shoulder, and His name shall be called Wonderful Counselor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father [of Eternity], Prince of Peace.

Isaiah 9:6 (NIV)

- 7. The Mercy** – has a heart for the broken and the hurt.

THE SPIRIT of the Lord God is upon me, because the Lord has anointed and qualified me to preach the Gospel of good tidings to the meek, the poor, and afflicted; He has sent me to bind up and heal the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the [physical and spiritual] captives and the opening of the prison and of the eyes to those who are bound,

Isaiah 61:1-3 (NIV)

9.3 The Correlation Between The Gifts Of God And The Armour Of God

Every believer is placed in One Body where God wants him to function:¹⁵³ Each gift correlates to one of the parts of the armour of God.

“This reveals the area of warfare where one have been given the greatest potential strengths to war on behalf of the Body of Christ, but also the area where our individual weakness will also cause the most damage to the Body of Christ.”

¹⁵³ Healing our wounded hearts Part 1: Man’s Purpose and the Gifts of the Spirit. Kanaan Ministries. p42-44

In conclusion, be strong in the Lord [be empowered through your union with Him]; draw your strength from Him [that strength which His boundless might provides]. Put on God's whole armor [the armor of a heavy-armed soldier which God supplies], that you may be able successfully to stand up against [all] the strategies and the deceits of the devil. For we are not wrestling with flesh and blood [contending only with physical opponents], but against the despotisms, against the powers, against [the master spirits who are] the world rulers of this present darkness, against the spirit forces of wickedness in the heavenly (supernatural) sphere. Therefore put on God's complete armor, that you may be able to resist and stand your ground on the evil day [of danger], and, having done all [the crisis demands], to stand [firmly in your place]. Stand therefore [hold your ground],

- a. Prophet: having tightened the belt of truth around your loins***
- b. Servant: and having put on the breastplate of integrity and of moral rectitude and right standing with God,***
- c. Teacher: And having shod your feet in preparation [to face the enemy with the firm-footed stability, the promptness, and the readiness produced by the good news] of the Gospel of peace.***
- d. Exhorter: Lift up over all the [covering] shield of saving faith, upon which you can quench all the flaming missiles of the wicked [one].***
- e. Giver: And take the helmet of salvation***
- f. Ruler: and the sword that the Spirit wields, which is the Word of God.***
- g. Mercy: Pray at all times (on every occasion, in every season) in the Spirit, with all [manner of] prayer and entreaty. To that end keep alert and watch with strong purpose and perseverance, interceding in behalf of all the saints (God's consecrated people).***

Ephesians 6:10-18 (NIV)

a) Prophet: having tightened the belt of truth around ones loins

The prophet “A man or woman who represents the interests of God to the people. Having stood in the council of God, the prophet releases a clarion call to the people of what is in God's heart at the moment.” ¹⁵⁴

Prophets reveal God's heart to His people, giving guidance to individuals and the body, giving revelation, as well as often interpretation, application and timing.¹⁵⁵ The prophet speaks to declare the truth of God's design and purposes into every situation. The believer can use it as a benchmark for a point of reference to be restored.

b) Servant: and having put on the breastplate of integrity and of moral rectitude and right standing with God,

The Servant will use the authority to hold up and restore leadership to a place of right standing.

c) Teacher: And having shod ones feet in preparation [to face the enemy with the firm-footed stability, the promptness, and the readiness produced by the good news] of the Gospel of peace.

The Teacher Teachers teach and edify the church, imparting divine life and anointing to their listeners who become hungrier for the Word of God, as the teacher illumines Scripture and brings forth truth never seen by their listeners before.¹⁵⁶ Teachers will study, organize and present an ongoing revelation of the heart of God.

¹⁵⁴ Goll, James W. (2001) *Praying for Israel's Destiny: Effective Intercession for God's Purposes in the Middle East*. Grand Rapids, MI: Chosen Books. p163

¹⁵⁵ A Biblical understanding of Fivefold Ministry (<http://healing2thenations.net/papers/fivefold.htm>)
Date: 27/06/2016

¹⁵⁶ A Biblical understanding of Fivefold Ministry (<http://healing2thenations.net/papers/fivefold.htm>)
Date: 27/06/2016

d) Exhorter: Lift up over all the [covering] shield of saving faith, upon which one can quench all the flaming missiles of the wicked [one].

The Exhorter will – after hearing from God – speak the word of direction and life into people's situations and pain so that they can return to God.

e) Giver: And take the helmet of salvation

The Giver will recognize and know that God is the Provider of all good things and will use his blessing to manifest God's will to change the lives of others.

f) Ruler: and the sword that the Spirit wields, which is the Word of God.

The Ruler will take the authority and courage to lead others on a path of empowerment and to a place of victory.

g) Mercy: Pray at all times (on every occasion, in every season) in the Spirit, with all [manner of] prayer and entreaty. They intercede in behalf of all the saints (God's consecrated people) and keep alert and watch with strong purpose and perseverance. Helmet, Shield, Breast-plate, Sword, Belt, Shoes

The Mercy will implement the Heart of God in acts of compassion to all hurt and wounded people, bringing an offer of worship.

Romans 12:4-8	Ephesians 6:10-18
Prophet	Truth-girded belt
Servant	Breastplate of righteousness
Teacher	Shoes of peace
Exhorter	Shield of faith
Giver	Helmet of Salvation
Ruler	Sword of the Spirit Mercy Lance / Spear of Prayer

TABLE 10: GIFTS OF GOD VERSUS THE WHOLE ARMOUR OF GOD

An Example: **The Exhorter** who does not lift up those around them, or who causes / break ups in relationships due to their own hurts will individually, but also corporately, causes the Shield of Faith to fall to the ground – giving Satan an opening to steal, kill and destroy.

10 WEAPONS OF DEFENSE

As representatives of God's Kingdom here on earth, Christians find themselves involved in an all-out war with a highly organized kingdom ruled by Satan. This is a kingdom of evil spirit beings whose headquarters are in the heavenly realms.¹⁵⁷ Prince states that ¹⁵⁸“the battleground on which this war is being fought is the minds of humanity. In these evil days one needs to secure himself with the armour of God to withstand the attacks of the enemy. Even Christians

¹⁵⁷ The Kingdom of Satan will be discussed in the next chapter

¹⁵⁸ Prince, Derek (1999) Derek Prince on Experiencing God's Power. Charlotte, North Carolina: Whitaker House. p479

will not escape the evil day and must be prepared to go through it.¹⁵⁹ In the light of this Paul said:

Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord, and in the power of his might. Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places. Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand. Stand therefore, having your loins girt about with truth, and having on the breastplate of righteousness; And your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace; Above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked. And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God: Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints;

Ephesians 6:10-18 (KJV)

One should put on the spiritual armour daily because it fulfils the same function spiritually as the physical armour fulfilled for a Roman soldier. Christians are called to walk with Christ daily therefore, be diligent as a soldier of God's army, wearing the armour and be ready for battle.¹⁶⁰ The Roman soldiers were in fulltime service to his commanders as Paul stated in his writing to Timothy:

No man that warreth entangleth himself with the affairs of this life; that he may please him who hath chosen him to be a soldier.

2 Timothy 2:4 (KJV)

¹⁵⁹Prince, Derek (1999) Derek Prince on Experiencing God's Power. Charlotte, North Carolina: Whitaker House. p479

¹⁶⁰ Alves, Elizabeth (1998) Becoming a prayer warrior. Ventura, California, USA: Regal Books. p113-119

Christians, living a life of single-minded allegiance to Christ symbolizes their loyalty to Jesus, their Commander in Chief.

According to Romans 13:12,14 the believer is clothed in Jesus and he will be their defence and as they walk they will be in total security and covered in Jesus.

The night is far spent, the day is at hand: let us therefore cast off the works of darkness, and let us put on the armour of light.

Romans 13:12 (KJV)

But put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh, to fulfil the lusts thereof.

Romans 13:14 (KJV)

Therefore, a Christian should put on the armour of God daily to:

- Help him stand against the schemes of the devil
- To keep him strong in the Lord and in the power of His might
- To enable him to resist in the evil day of the enemy's attack
- To secure his safety and repels the enemy
- To accomplish the Father's will.

The believer is victorious in Christ, for Christ Himself is the conqueror, and with the armour of God in place knows that it is in and through Christ Jesus alone that the one triumph.¹⁶¹

¹⁶¹ Alves, Elizabeth (1998) *Becoming a prayer warrior*. Ventura, California, USA: Regal Books.p113-119

Now thanks be unto God, which always causeth us to triumph in Christ, and maketh manifest the savour of his knowledge by us in every place. For we are unto God a sweet savour of Christ, in them that are saved, and in them that perish:

2 Corinthians 2:14-15 (KJV)

And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it.

Colossians 2:15 (KJV)

Through prayer and intercession, the battle over the forces of darkness is won and to withstand and overcome during this war one needs to constantly wear the armour of God.

Charts for each piece of the armour are on the next few pages explaining the meaning of each piece of armour based on Ephesians 6:14-17. From her book *Becoming a prayer warrior*, Elizabeth explains in the charts the “area of protection”, including the “definition” and “application”, the “affirmation” (Scriptures) and the “declaration” for that piece of armour.¹⁶²

¹⁶² Alves, Elizabeth (1998) *Becoming a prayer warrior*. Ventura, California, USA: Regal Books. p113-119

10.1 The Whole Armour Of God

10.1.1 Standing Firm

Area of Protection

<p>DEFINITION</p> <p>To STAND means to resist without yielding; to maintain a position; to persist, to endure, to remain upright; to encounter, to meet face-to-face</p>	<p>Affirmation</p> <p>2 Chronicles 20:15,17</p> <p>Joshua 1:9</p> <p>1 Corinthians 16:13</p> <p>Ephesians 6:11-14</p> <p>Philippians 4:1</p> <p>1 Thessalonians 3:6-8</p> <p>2 Thessalonians 2:1-5</p>
<p>APPLICATION</p> <p>As an heir and child of God, a person is to STAND in that place that is already theirs. It has been delivered to them through the cross of Jesus Christ.</p> <p>Do not in any way surrender to an uprising of the enemy. Submit oneself to God; then STAND and resist the devil and he will flee.</p> <p>Note: Jesus did not use the Word of God to attack the devil; He used it to maintain the victory He already had.</p>	
<p>DECLARATION</p> <p>Having done all, I am going to stand firm. I will not yield to the devil's schemes, but will hold fast to the Word of God.</p> <p>I will stand in faith on the solid rock, Jesus. You are my foundation; I will not be moved by roar of the enemy, nor by negative circumstances. I will stand valiant and strong, for with You on my side, who can be against me?</p> <p>As a priest before You, O Lord, I will bless Your holy name and serve You in obedience.</p> <p>I will stand in the victory that has been won, for the battle is not mine but Yours. In this way, I am more than a conqueror in Christ Jesus.</p>	

TABLE 11: STANDING FIRM

10.1.2 The Girdle Or Belt Of Truth

Area of Protection

<p>DEFINITION</p> <p>LOINS are a picture of strength, power, vigor and maturity. They include the reproductive organs, the digestive system and the bowels.</p> <p>Weak loins disable a soldier. The GRIDLE of BELT, worn about the loins to brace him for the fight, was a symbol of a soldier's strength and superior ability. It kept the armour in place, and supported the sword, money and valuables were also carried here. To GIRD means to prepare oneself for action</p>	<p>Affirmation</p> <p>Exodus 12:11 Deuteronomy 33:11 Psalm 51:6 Luke 12:35 John 8:32, 14:6 1 Corinthians 2:16 Ephesians 4:15; 6:14 2 Thessalonians 2:13 2 Timothy 2:15 James 1:8; 4:8 1 Peter 1:13</p>
<p>APPLICATION</p> <p>A person whose mind is girded with truth will be strong and vigorous with mature spiritual insight, and will reproduce the Word of God for His glory. One who is double-minded is unstable in all his/her ways. TRUTH is the teaching presented in God's Word, embodied in Jesus Christ, revealed to us by the Holy Spirit. WE GIRD OURSELVES WITH TRUTH</p> <p>When we embrace and uphold God's revelation to us, and walk in agreement with Him.</p>	
<p>DECLARATION</p> <p>Jesus, You are the truth. You have made me to know the truth in my inward parts. I am dressed in readiness because Your truth clothes me.</p> <p>I encompass my mind with Your truth so I am ready for action. I resist all double-mindedness, and claim that I have the mind of Christ.</p> <p>I shall know the truth and the truth will set me free. I will speak forth the truth in love today.</p> <p>I will accurately handle the Word of truth, and will plant seeds of truth in others so. You may be reproduced in them.</p> <p>Thank you, Jesus, for choosing me from the foundation of the world for salvation through sanctification by the Spirit and faith in the truth.</p>	

TABLE 12: THE GIRDLE OR BELT OF TRUTH

10.1.3 The Breastplate Of Righteousness

Area of Protection

<p>DEFINITION</p> <p>The Breastplate, covering the soldier's vital organs (heart, lungs, liver, etc.), came down over the girdle or belt, increasing the protection of the loins. By protecting these vital organs, the breastplate emboldened a soldier to face the enemy without fear</p>	<p>Affirmation</p> <p>Proverbs 28:1 Isaiah 59:16-17 Romans 3:22, 25, 26 Romans 5:17-19 2 Corinthians 5:21 Ephesians 6:14 1 Thessalonians 5:8 1 John 1:7,9</p>
<p>APPLICATION</p> <p>RIGHTEOUSNESS-right-standing or uprightness</p> <p>Before God-is imparted by Christ to the believer.</p> <p>This BREASTPLATE OF RIGHTEOUSNESS preserves the Christian's soul and conscience – the “vital organs” of the spirit-man. The spirit-man thus the Christian is filled with courage, knowing he/she is protected by the righteousness of Christ and can face the enemy without fear.</p>	
<p>DECLARATION</p> <p>Jesus, You are my righteousness. In You I live and move and have my being. Help me to conform to Your character and Your will in my life.</p> <p>I put on Your righteousness by faith and ask that You protect my heart, that I may walk with pure motives.</p> <p>Help me to do that which is right and just, so that I have a clear conscience and not be afraid of evil consequences. Thank You for courage to face the enemy without fear.</p> <p>Thank you for cleansing me from my sins and restoring me to fellowship with You because You were the perfect sacrifice for my sins.</p>	

TABLE 13: THE BREASTPLATE OF RIGHTEOUSNESS

10.1.4 The Shoes Of The Gospel Of Peace

Area of Protection

<p>DEFINITION</p> <p>The phrase “preparation of the gospel of peace” means “to be ready, or dressed in readiness,” which was vital when a soldier had to dodge, stand or run in hand-to-hand combat with the enemy. His SHOES had metal cleats which made him more surefooted in battle.</p>	<p>Affirmation</p> <p>Exodus 12:11 1 Samuel 2:9 Psalm 18:33 Psalm 66:8,9 Isaiah 26:3 Matthew 12:18-21 Ephesians 6:15 Colossians 1:20 1 Thessalonians 5:23</p>
<p>APPLICATION</p> <p>FEET represent a person’s walk with the Lord. Ones “walk” is the witness of ones speech, ones behavior and ones attitude. SHOD means to bind under or to tie up: i.e., to be ready to receive marching orders. Shoes were removed upon entering a house, and put on again when going out. GOSPEL is the good news that Jesus Christ was crucified for our sins, was raised from the dead, and has defeated the enemy. PEACE is freedom from strife-inner peace, which comes from God when conflict with the enemy rages without. It is a walk founded in reconciliation.</p>	
<p>DECLARATION</p> <p>Jesus, You are my peace. You have brought to my life wholeness and harmony with the Father. May Your peace sanctify my whole body, soul and spirit.</p> <p>I shod my feet with Your gospel, Your peace, I desire to walk today in a quiet, unquarrelsome manner. Thank you for keeping my feet from harm, and guiding my path.</p> <p>My feet will not be moved from the gospel, for I am not ashamed of the good news. Your gospel is the power of God for salvation to everyone who believes.</p> <p>Because my feet are set securely in Your peace, I am ready to maneuver in any direction the Holy Spirit leads me. Keep me in a state of readiness so I can boldly tread upon enemy territory to set the captives free from Satan’s bondage.</p>	

TABLE 14: THE SHOES OF THE GOSPEL OF PEACE

10.1.5 The Shield Of Faith

Area of Protection

<p>DEFINITION</p> <p>The SHIELD, a defensive weapon, was usually carried on the left arm and was used to protect the entire body of a soldier. The surface was kept bright with oil, which reflected the sun to blind the enemy. It helped deflect the enemy's blows.</p>	<p>Affirmation</p> <p>Proverbs 30:5 Jeremiah 1:12 2 Corinthians 5:7 Galatians 2:20 Ephesians 6:16 Colossians 1:10-11 Hebrews 10:22; 11:1 James 1:6; 4-7 1 Peter 1:5; 5-9 1 John 5:10</p>
<p>APPLICATION</p> <p>A SHIELD represents protection and security; our shield of faith works in cooperation with the other pieces of armour to quench the fiery darts of doubt, fear and unbelief, and to blind the enemy. The mind and the will control its movements FAITH is simply believing, accepting and appropriating what God has said. FAITH requires a total trust in the Lord Jesus in all things</p>	
<p>DECLARATION</p> <p>Lord Jesus, You are my shield of faith. My self nature has been crucified with You, and the life I now live. I live by faith in You. I will resist the devil by being firm in that faith.</p> <p>Thank you for being a shield unto me. I put my trust in You, choosing to walk by faith, not by sight of circumstances. I will speak words of faith and I will ask in faith without doubting.</p> <p>Your Word is Your power. Thank You, Father, that You are alert and active, watching over Your Word to perform it. It protects me from the evil one because..." It is written". The devil runs in terror from me because I draw near unto You and resist him in Jesus' name by lifting up this shield of faith which is anointed with the oil of Your Holy Spirit.</p>	

TABLE 15: THE SHIELD OF FAITH

10.1.6 The Helmet Of Salvation

Area of Protection

<p>DEFINITION</p> <p>The HELMET was the armour worn by a soldier to protect his head. It often bore insignia or ornaments identifying the army to which the soldier belonged.</p>	<p>Affirmation</p> <p>Psalm 140:7 Isaiah 51:6, 59:16,17 Romans 8:6; 12:2 2 Corinthians 2:16; 10:5 Ephesians 4:23; 6:17 Colossians 3:2 1 Thessalonians 5:8 Titus 1:2; 3:7 Hebrews 5:9 1 Peter 1:13</p>
<p>APPLICATION</p> <p>The HELMET, the hope of salvation, guards one's mind from the enemy's darts. One's mind directs the use of one's shield and one's sword and all movements of the body; thus it must be protected so one can be an effective soldier.</p> <p>A person's mind is the battleground between the flesh and the spirit; a disciplined soldier will not yield to the flesh, but will be strong in Spirit.</p>	
<p>DECLARATION</p> <p>Jesus, You are my salvation. You have covered my head in the day of battle. You are my strength and song, and You have become my salvation.</p> <p>I put my hope and trust in You. The helmet of hope shall be as a helmet of deliverance to me. You have set my mind free from the darts of the enemy.</p> <p>Today I will renew my mind by the Word of God; I refuse to entertain the thoughts of doubt and unbelief the enemy would bring to me. I bring every thought into captivity to the obedience of Christ. I will concentrate on those things which pertain to life and peace. All praise be unto You, the God of my salvation!</p>	

TABLE 16: THE HELMET OF SALVATION

10.1.7 The Sword Of The Spirit

Area of Protection

<p>DEFINITION</p> <p>The SWORD was both defensive and offensive. It defended the soldier from the enemy's assault, and was used to would or kill the enemy. It was wielded with the right arm, and was a symbol of power and authority.</p>	<p>Affirmation</p> <p>1 Samuel 17:51,54 Psalm 149:6 Jeremiah 15:16 Luke 21:15</p>
<p>APPLICATION</p> <p>The SWORD OF THE SPIRIT is the Word of God quickened and made alive by the Holy Spirit; the wielding of this sword is only effective when the other pieces of armour are in place.</p> <p>The WORD comes from a person's mouth. The Word of God is ones power and authority when quickened by the Holy Spirit. It will judge the thoughts and intents of ones own heart, and of the heart of the one spoken to.</p>	<p>John 1:1,14 1 Corinthians 1:30 Ephesians 6:17 Hebrews 1:3; 4:12</p>
<p>DECLARATION</p> <p>Lord Jesus, You are the Living Word, I go forth with praises in my mouth and a two-edged sword in my hand. Today I will confess Your Word before men, and You will confess me before the Father in heaven. Your words are rue. Your Word is the foundation of the world. You are the joy and rejoicing of my heart because I have been called by Your name, and therefore have the authority to use this weapon. I will to speak forth Your Word in power. Your Word abides in me and I in You.</p> <p>Your Word is quick and powerful and sharper than any two-edged sword; it divides between that which is spiritual or godly, and that which is soulish or of the flesh. Your Word is Your wisdom. The Holy Spirit will give me in the hour of need a mouth of wisdom which none of my opponents will be able to resist or refute. Thank you, Lord Jesus, for giving me the provision of Your Word, my SWORD</p>	

TABLE 17: THE SWORD OF THE SPIRIT

When the enemy attacks in these areas, refer to the page where the appropriate piece of armour is listed. Then read the Scriptures given and repeat the 'DECLARATION'.

In summary:

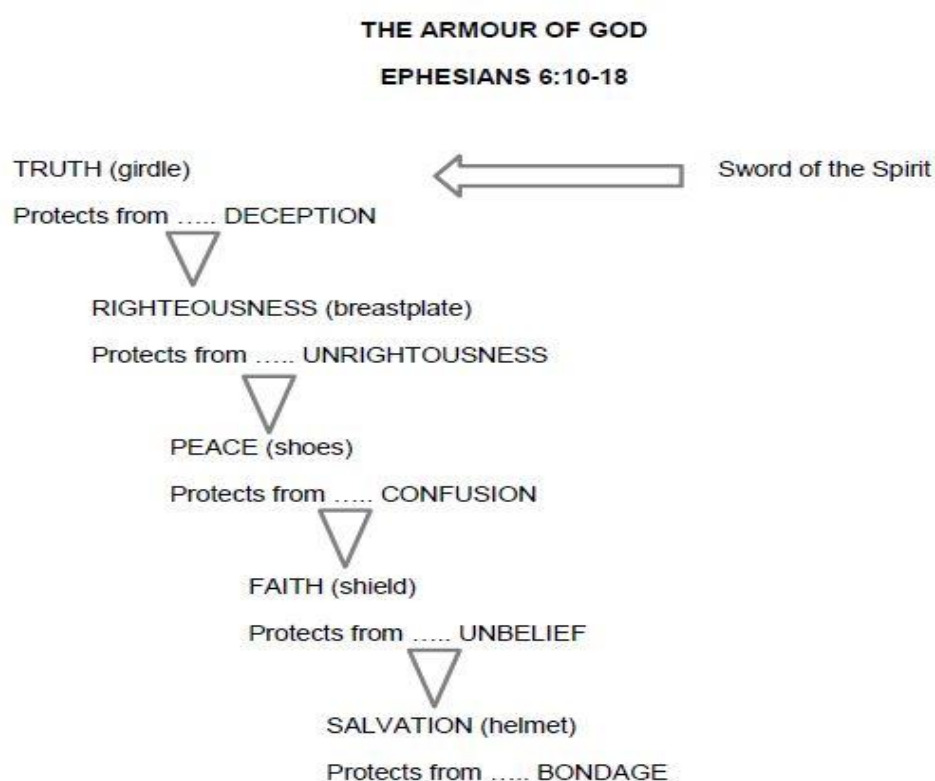


FIGURE 4: THE ARMOUR OF GOD¹⁶³

¹⁶³ Spiritual Strategies A Manual for Spiritual Warfare Harvestime International Institute p145
(<http://harvestime.org/translations/english/SpiritualStrategies-Warfare.pdf>)

11 THE SPIRITUAL REALM AS AXIOM

Praise be to the God and father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who has blessed us in the heavenly realms with every spiritual blessing in Christ. For he chose us in him before the creation of the world to be holy and blameless in his sight

Ephesians 1:3-4 (NIV)

The spiritual realm is as real as the natural realm. In fact, the spiritual realm determines what takes place in the natural realm.

God has blessed us in the heavenly realms with every spiritual blessing in Christ. When Jesus died and rose again He appeared to his disciples and then ascended up into heaven (Acts 1:9-11).

Although the location of heaven is up high above the earth, its operation is all over the earth and in our hearts. Once a person received the Lord Jesus Christ as his Lord and Saviour, Jesus came to live in his heart. Thus Heaven is in one's heart. The reborn Christian has access to the heavenly realm through Christ Jesus (Colossians 1:27, Colossians 3:3-4, Colossians 1:12-14)

The heavenly realm is where God has His provision. To receive from the heavenly realm, we need to reach out in faith and take it.

Reaching out in Faith is not believing for something that does not exist, but rather receiving something that God has already made available in the Spiritual realm and bringing it into our natural realm. Our salvation is a beautiful example. We received the salvation of Jesus by faith and became Children of God (John 1:12-13). Our faith reached out to take something that already existed in the spiritual realm. Jesus has already died for us. That is a truth.

But except a person reaches out by faith and receives Jesus into his or her heart the salvation of Jesus (which although invisible to the natural eye) already available will not benefit that person.

“The spiritual realm is a real world, invisible to the natural eye but visible to the eye of faith”¹⁶⁴

Several examples of people reaching out or seeing things in the spiritual realm exist in the Bible

1. **Elijah and the widow** - (1 Kings 17:7-15) Read the whole story. Notice that God had commanded (or made provision for) the widow to take care of Elijah. The widow was not even aware of this. Elijah had to tell her. The widow obeyed Elijah and the jar of flour was not used up nor did the oil run out. Elijah's faith was reaching out to receive God's provision in the heavenly or spiritual realm and bringing it into the natural realm.
2. **Elisha and his servant** - (2 Kings 6:8-17) Read the whole story. Here again Christians see Elisha's servant's eyes of faith opened in answer to Elisha's prayer. Elisha saw God's provision in the spiritual realm.
3. **Jesus feeds 5,000** - (Matthew 14:15-21 Luke 9:12-17) Jesus feeds over 5,000 people with five loaves of bread and two fish. Any guesses about how these few items of food were enough to feed all the people.

¹⁶⁴ The heavenly or spiritual realm By Dele Oke (<http://www.wordlibrary.co.uk/article.php?id=177>)

4. **Ten lepers healed** - (Luke 17:11-19) Jesus sent ten lepers to go and show themselves to the high priest. An act of faith. Imagine what would have happened if the ten lepers had turned up in the high priest's office without being healed?

Jesus, as always, was aware that the leper's healing was already a done and concluded thing. As they went by faith to the high priest, they received their healing, which had already been made provision for in the spiritual realm, into their natural bodies.

5. The last example shows how our faith will work more effectively when we have a clear understanding of the spiritual realm.

***“Now faith is being sure of what we hope for and certain of what we do not see, This is what the ancients were commended for
Hebrews 11:1-2 (NIV)¹⁶⁵***

12 THE ANGELS OF GOD

“Angels are mentioned about three hundred times in Scripture. The Scripture writers had no difficulty in dealing with angels, to them angels were a natural and real part of spiritual life.”¹⁶⁶ “Jesus assures us that there is a world of intelligent, powerful, invisible creatures about us and above us. Scripture, the Old as well as the New Testament witness the existence of angels and gives the believer a reason to pray and study and challenge them to expand their

¹⁶⁵ The heavenly or spiritual realm By Dele Oke (<http://www.wordlibrary.co.uk/article.php?id=177>)

¹⁶⁶ Horrobin, Peter J. (1991) Healing through deliverance. Lancaster, England: Sovereign World Limited. p65

categories of thought and to change their conduct of life in accord with God's truth."¹⁶⁷ As seen in chapter two, before Lucifer, fell from his place in glory he used to be part of the angelic hosts. "He also was one of the highest angels in rank and authority. The demonic realm is directly opposed to the work of God. To know how angels, operate and function under God's control the believer will understand how demons do the work of Satan."¹⁶⁸

12.1 The Origin Of Angels

"In John one verse one to three one reads that Jesus Christ created the eternal world, and created all things. Jesus acted as God's creative agent:

All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made.

John 1:3 (KJV)

The Apostle Paul declares:

For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:

Colossians 1:16 (KJV)

All angels were created at or near the same time and they were created to honor, worship and serve God and Christ. As creatures they were created good and holy and had great privileges. They had the joy of knowing God, were His sons by direct creation and He was their Creator-Father. They do not possess omnipresence but are limited to space and cannot be at more than one place at

¹⁶⁷ Dickason, Fred C. (1975) Angels elect & Evil. United States of America, Chicago: Moody Press. p25

¹⁶⁸ Horrobin, Peter J (1991) Healing through deliverance. Lancaster, England: Sovereign World Limited. p65

once. They are not omnipotent and have limited power and authority. They are limited in intellect and acquire His revelations and limited in holiness. According to scripture some fell into sin and bondage through defection from God's will."¹⁶⁹

How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations!

Isaiah 14:12 (KJV)

As creatures all angels are responsible to God and they must answer to their Creator.

12.2 The Personality Of Angels

"Angels have intellect. The possess great intelligence to carry out God's wise and great tasks. They are eager to learn of man's great salvation. Their knowledge exceeds that of man, whilst the wisdom of God is reflected in their created abilities."¹⁷⁰ In 1 Corinthians 13:1 we can see that they can communicate with people on earth and deliver God's message.

Though I speak with the tongues of men and of angels, and have not charity, I am become as sounding brass, or a tinkling cymbal.

1 Corinthians 13:1 (KJV)

Angels have emotions. Angels have deep and sensitive emotions for they respond to God's wondrous creation with joy. According to Scripture, angels worship God with a deep sense of awe and humble reverence, crying Holy,

¹⁶⁹ Dickason, Fred C. (1975) Angels elect & Evil. United States of America, Chicago: Moody Press. p30

¹⁷⁰ Dickason, Fred C. (1975) Angels elect & Evil. United States of America, Chicago: Moody Press. p34

Holy, holy.”¹⁷¹ “Angels rejoice over God’s creation and the repentant sinners. Angels are patient as they wait on God to do His bidding.”¹⁷²

And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, is the LORD of hosts: the whole earth is full of his glory.

Isaiah 6:3 (KJV)

“Angels have wills. Angels were created to do the will of God and to worship Him. Some rebelled against God – their wills opposed the will of God. Lucifer, also called Satan, rebelled against God with five assertions of “I will”. Scripture states that many angels joined him in his defection, where they exercised their own wills against the will of God.”¹⁷³

“Angels are *holy*. The elect angels have sinless perfection from which it is impossible to fall. Their victory over Lucifer’s appeal to self-will won them this attribute of derived holiness.”¹⁷⁴

Whosoever therefore shall be ashamed of me and of my words in this adulterous and sinful generation; of him also shall the Son of man be ashamed, when he cometh in the glory of his Father with the holy angels.

Mark 8:38 (KJV)

“Angels are *clear and transparent* and there is no darkness in them. Angels are usually spoken of as being clothed in white or clothing that is bright as light.”¹⁷⁵

¹⁷¹ Dickason, Fred C. (1975) Angels elect & Evil. United States of America, Chicago: Moody Press. p35

¹⁷² Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p90

¹⁷³ Dickason, Fred C. (1975) Angels elect & Evil. United States of America. Chicago: Moody Press. p35

¹⁷⁴ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p90

“Angels are *immortal* and they derive their immortality from God. Although they are sometimes permitted to assume human form or appearance, they are not subject to physical death.

Angels have a *free will*. The fact that some angels joined Lucifer in his self-will sin shows they all had the power of choice and could either choose God’s will or not.

Angels are a *company of beings not a race*. They were created as sexless, individual spirit beings and they are not involved in marriage. Each individual angel that sinned, sinned as an individual. Their sin is not transmitted as it is in the human race from Adam to his unborn offspring.

Angels are *invisible*, though at times they can become visible to human eyes.”¹⁷⁶

For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:

Colossians 1:16 (KJV)

12.3 The Position Of Angels

“Jesus as eternal creator and Sovereign is superior to them. Angels are creatures and servants and are lesser than Christ in essence and position. As man is weaker and subject to death, angels are higher than man. Since

¹⁷⁵ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p90

¹⁷⁶ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p90

believers are “in Christ’ they are positioned above angels and in the resurrection, they shall rule over angels with Christ.”¹⁷⁷

12.4 The Names And Classifications Of Angels

“Angel is the transliteration of the Greek word angelos.”¹⁷⁸ The Hebrew word is “malak”. The basic meaning of both words is “messenger”. In Hebrews 1:7 angels are referred to as spirit beings and are used by God as messengers or they execute the purposes God made known to them.”¹⁷⁹

And of the angels he saith, Who maketh his angels spirits, and his ministers a flame of fire.

Hebrews 1:7 (KJV)

In Psalm 104:4 they are referred to as those who minister for, and in the presence of God in spiritual service. Angels minister to God’s people.

Who maketh his angels spirits; his ministers a flaming fire:

Psalms 104:4 (KJV)

“Angels are also hosts. They form part of God’s army to accomplish His will and they fight His battles and are an extension of His power and providence. They watch over and protect God’s people and they watch over the interest of churches.

In the book Zechariah they are chariots and were also described as “four spirits of heaven” going forth after standing before the Lord of all the earth”. As

¹⁷⁷ Dickason, Fred C. (1975) Angels elect & Evil. United States of America, Chicago: Moody Press. p61

¹⁷⁸ Dickason, Fred C. (1975) Angels elect & Evil. United States of America, Chicago: Moody Press. p62

¹⁷⁹ Dickason, Fred C. (1975) Angels elect & Evil. United States of America, Chicago: Moody Press. p62

chariots they carried out God's military judgements on the nations surrounding Israel."¹⁸⁰

And he answered, Fear not: for they that be with us are more than they that be with them. And Elisha prayed, and said, LORD, I pray thee, open his eyes, that he may see. And the LORD opened the eyes of the young man; and he saw: and, behold, the mountain was full of horses and chariots of fire round about Elisha.

2 Kings 6:16-17 (KJV)

And the angel answered and said unto me, These are the four spirits of the heavens, which go forth from standing before the Lord of all the earth.

Zechariah 6:5 (KJV)

"In Daniel 4:13,17 watchers denote angels as supervisors and agents under God employed by Him in the control of world government, where they have influence over the affairs of nations. They execute Gods will and perform extraordinary acts on behalf of God's people."¹⁸¹

I saw in the visions of my head upon my bed, and, behold, a watcher and an holy one came down from heaven;

Daniel 4:13 (KJV)

"Angels are referred to as Sons of the Mighty – the mighty ones, Sons of God, Elohim, Holy ones and Morning Stars. Angels are as stars of light. Lucifer was the Day-star before he sinned against God, and then became the fallen star."¹⁸²

¹⁸⁰ Dickason, Fred C. (1975) Angels elect & Evil. United States of America, Chicago: Moody Press. p62

¹⁸¹ Dickason, Fred C. (1975) Angels elect & Evil. United States of America, Chicago: Moody Press. p62

¹⁸² Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p91

12.5 The Order Of Angels

According to the Word of God, there are several special classes or orders of angels where each class has its special distinguishing characteristics.

12.5.1 Cherubim

“In Genesis they guard the Garden of Eden, following Adam and Eve's banishment from the Garden, and are described holding flaming swords to protect the tree of life. The prophet Ezekiel has a vivid vision of heaven where he sees many angelic beings. His description of the Cherubim is powerful – each one has four faces and four wings, and the overall appearance could be likened to a man.”¹⁸³

“Their main purpose and activity is to guard God's Holy domain and presence from any sin and corruption. They are the protectors of God's glorious presence, His sovereignty and His Holiness and known as the throne angels as they are seen to be around the throne of God.”¹⁸⁴ “The cherubim indicate the intervention of a sovereign God in the affairs of men.”¹⁸⁵

12.5.2 Seraphim

The Hebrew word Seraphim (one seraph, two or more seraphim) means “burning ones” or nobles. The name seraphim also speak of their consuming devotion to God. Isaiah 6:24 records:

¹⁸³ Seraphim, Cherubim & The Four Living Creatures (http://www.whyangels.com/seraphim_cherubim_creatures.html) 18 /08/2016

¹⁸⁴ Seraphim, Cherubim & The Four Living Creatures (http://www.whyangels.com/seraphim_cherubim_creatures.html) 18 /08/2016

¹⁸⁵ Dickason, Fred C. (1975) Angels elect & Evil. United States of America, Chicago: Moody Press. p66

Above it stood the seraphims: each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly. And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, is the LORD of hosts: the whole earth is full of his glory. And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke.

Isaiah 6:2-4 (KJV)

“Seraphim are angels that worship God continually, singing His praises as they call special attention to God’s glory and majesty. They also serve as agents of purification and are perfectly obedient to God.”¹⁸⁶

“When Isaiah was being commissioned by God to be a prophet he had a vision of heaven. This is the only time where seraphim are fully described in the Scriptures. Seraphim are also called the 'ones of love' because their name might come from the Hebrew root for 'love'.”¹⁸⁷ They are angelic-type beings who perform a priestly-type service for God and their purpose is to show for the God’s holiness and ethical transcendence.

12.5.3 Living Beings

“They are mentioned in the Book of Revelation and they worship God and witness the worshipping of God by redeemed men. They are like the cherubim mentioned in Ezekiel – faces like a lion, a calf, a man, and an eagle, and to multiple wings and to many eyes. The differences between the cherubim and the living beings are their faces, for in Ezekiel each one had four faces and in

¹⁸⁶ What are seraphim? Are seraphs angels? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/seraphim.html>) 18/08/2016

¹⁸⁷ Seraphim, Cherubim & The Four Living Creatures (http://www.whyangels.com/seraphim_cherubim_creatures.html) 19/08/2016

Revelation each one only had one face. In Ezekiel each one had four wings and in Revelation each one has six, and their eyes are different.”¹⁸⁸

12.5.4 Angels That Was Named

12.5.4.1 “Michael – he is designated as “the archangel” and he is the military leader of an army of angels in battle with Satan. Michael is also the only angel specifically called an archangel”¹⁸⁹ in the Bible (Jude 1:9).¹⁹⁰ His name means “Who is like God” or “God-like”. Connor writes that ¹⁹¹“many expositors believe he is the archangel that comes with the Lord Jesus in His second advent relative to the resurrection of the saints and the change over from mortality to immortality of the living saints.”¹⁹² The angels of God are well organized under the archangel Michael, who will lead God’s army of angels in battle against Satan and his angels in the coming Great Tribulation.

For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first:

1 Thessalonians 4:16 (KJV)

12.5.4.2 “Gabriel – which means “mighty one of God”. He is an angelic being presented in human form on occasions and he is God’s special

¹⁸⁸ Dickason, Fred C. (1975) Angels elect & Evil. United States of America, Chicago: Moody Press. p69

¹⁸⁹ The word *archangel* comes from the Greek word *archaggelos*, which means “archangel” or “chief of the angels” (*Strong’s Lexicon*).

¹⁹⁰ Michael the Archangel By Chris Moen (<http://lifehopeandtruth.com/prophecy/understanding-the-book-of-daniel/angels/michael-the-archangel/>) 29/08/2016

¹⁹¹ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p88

¹⁹² Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p88

messenger. He reveals and interprets God's purpose and program concerning Messiah and His Kingdom to the prophets and people of Israel."¹⁹³ He appeared to Daniel, Zacharias, John the Baptist's father and Mary and each visitation involved a Messianic revelation.

12.5.4.3 "Lucifer – which means "day star" or "light bearer", or "son of the morning". Lucifer was the archangel associated with the throne of God and was the leader of the worship of God among the angelic hosts."¹⁹⁴ "Lucifer became rebellious and rallying under the banner of the archangel, Michael, he and the disobedient angels were ejected from heaven."¹⁹⁵

12.5.5 Special Groups Of Angels

In the book of Revelation there are reference to several groups of angels. They are:

- Four angels who stand on the four corners of the earth and control the four winds of the earth
- "seven angels who stand before God" who are the messengers of God's judgement during the tribulation period, they held the trumpets and as each sound, great plagues will fall upon the earth successively.
- Seven angels who administrate the seven last plagues – they hold the seven golden bowls with God's wrath in and will pour it upon the earth bringing great destruction.

¹⁹³ Dickason, Fred C. (1975) *Angels elect & Evil*. United States of America, Chicago: Moody Press. p73

¹⁹⁴ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p87

¹⁹⁵ Lindsay, Gordon *Satan Fallen Angels and Demons*. Dallas Texas, USA: Christ for the Nations. p9

- Twenty – four elders of Revelation 4 and 5 – there is not sufficient evidence to determine whether the twenty-four are men or angels, but they seem to be angels who surround the throne of God.

12.6 The Angel Of The Lord

According to Scripture the angel of the Lord speaks as God, identifies Himself with God, and exercises the responsibilities of God.

And the angel of the LORD appeared unto him in a flame of fire out of the midst of a bush: and he looked, and, behold, the bush burned with fire, and the bush was not consumed.

Exodus 3:2 (KJV)

And an angel of the LORD came up from Gilgal to Bochim, and said, I made you to go up out of Egypt, and have brought you unto the land which I swore unto your fathers; and I said, I will never break my covenant with you. And ye shall make no league with the inhabitants of this land; ye shall throw down their altars: but ye have not obeyed my voice: why have ye done this? Wherefore I also said, I will not drive them out from before you; but they shall be as thorns in your sides, and their gods shall be a snare unto you. And it came to pass, when the angel of the LORD spake these words unto all the children of Israel, that the people lifted up their voice, and wept.

Judges 2:1-4 (KJV)

“Those who saw the angel of the Lord in these appearances, feared for their lives because they had “seen the Lord.” Therefore, it is clear that in at least some instances, the angel of the Lord is a theophany”¹⁹⁶ - a pre-cross manifestation and revelation of the Lord Jesus Christ before His incarnation in human form.

¹⁹⁶ Theophany - A theophany is a manifestation of God in the Bible that is tangible to the human senses; (<http://www.gotquestions.org/theophany-Christophany.html>)

There were no more appearances of the angel of the Lord after the incarnation of Christ and after the birth of Christ “the angel of the Lord’ was not mentioned again.”¹⁹⁷ “There is some confusion regarding different translations of Matthew 28:2, where the King James Version says “*the angel of the Lord*” descended from heaven and rolled the stone away from Jesus’ tomb and other say “the angel” or “an angel.” It is important to note that the original Greek has no article in front of *angel*. It was “an angel,” is the better wording and are also used in other translations besides the King James Version.

In John 8:58 Jesus declared Himself to be existent “before Abraham.” Therefore it is logical that He would be active and manifest in the world. Whether the angel of the Lord was a pre-incarnate appearance of Christ (Christophany) or an appearance of God the Father (theophany), the phrase “*the angel of the Lord*” usually identifies a physical appearance of God.”¹⁹⁸

13 LIVING AS VICTORS IN CHRIST

“In Luke 10 Jesus adds His own personal account of Satan’s expulsion from heaven, when talking to the seventy-two who returned full of joy because they found the demons were subject to their commands. Jesus immediately put their exuberance into a right context when He explained to them that He had all power and authority in the first place, as was demonstrated by the fact that He was there when Satan was expelled from heaven and therefore He had the authority to delegate His power and authority to those whom He chose.

¹⁹⁷ Who is the angel of the Lord? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/angel-of-the-Lord.html>) 29/08/2016

¹⁹⁸ <http://www.gotquestions.org/angel-of-the-Lord.html> 29/08/2016

Who are “those” whom He chose? – it is all of those who “received Him”, for to them He gave the right to become children of God, even to those who believe in His Name.

But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

John 1:12 (KJV)

We have delegated rights as children of God, therefore Jesus was able to say to the seventy-two that He had given them authority over “serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy.”

Behold, I give unto you power to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy: and nothing shall by any means hurt you.

Luke 10:19 (KJV)

Jesus however reminded them that they should rather rejoice in the fact that their names are written in the book of life, for they only had power and authority over the enemy because their names were written in heaven. For those who would seek to be obedient to the commission to cast out demons – remember that the first and foremost priority is to be evangelists. Also know that outside the Kingdom of heaven mankind are nothing.”¹⁹⁹

¹⁹⁹ Horrobin, Peter J (1991) Healing through deliverance Lancaster England Sovereign World Limited p74

14 CONCLUSION

As a person one need to make a choice – light or darkness, life or death, truth or lies. In Deuteronomy God asks one to make a choice – choose life or choose death and when a person make the choice of life, truth is essential. There are a few consequences and a person will be faced with a few challenges. One will no longer be able to live in unreality and deception and letting the light shine in those areas can be painful. *“For you were once in darkness, but now you are the light in the Lord. Walk as children of light Finding out what is acceptable to the Lord (Ephesians 5:8;10).*

One may ask – What is acceptable to the Lord. Scripture tells us that “praying and interceding for leaders and kings so we can live at peace in godliness and reverence is ‘acceptable to the Lord (1 Timothy 2:3). Romans 14:18 says, *“he who serves God in these things (the verses before tells us that righteousness, peace and joy are what is indicated) is acceptable to God and approved by men”*.

A person may think one need to try harder, pray more, give more service in order to be acceptable for that is what these Scriptures are indicating but Acts 10:35 gives us the definite answer to the question posed in the verse – what is acceptable to the Lord. Acts 10:35 tells us, *“but in every nation anyone who fears Him and does what is right is acceptable to Him.”*

Integrity, servanthood, humility, faith, perseverance and self-sacrifice are the ways of the Christian. Jesus is our ultimate paradigm. He not only did what God wanted Him to do but also did it how God wanted Him to do it. There is no model greater than His. Nor is there a model that requires greater sacrifice than His. Paul instructs that we as followers of Christ should imitate Jesus.

“Let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus: Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God: But made himself of no reputation, and took upon him the form of a servant, and was made in the likeness of men: And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross.”

Philippians 2:5-8 (KJV)

Jesus himself tells us that there is no way to follow Him other than by adopting this self-sacrificing lifestyle: And whosoever doth not bear his cross, and come after me, cannot be my disciple.

In Luke 14:27 (KJV) Peter declares, *“For even hereunto were ye called: because Christ also suffered for us, leaving us an example, that ye should follow his steps”*

--oOo--



Chapter Three - The Reality of Satan, the Devil – Supernatural Solicitation to Sin

Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour:

1 Peter 5:8 (KJV)

For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.

Ephesians 6:12 (KJV)

1 INTRODUCTION / BACKGROUND

And they worshiped the dragon which gave power unto the beast: and they worshiped the beast, saying, Who is like unto the beast? who is able to make war with him? And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.

Revelation 13:4, 8 (KJVR)

The aforementioned Scripture from the Christian Bible enlightens the concept of two persons, namely the Jesus Christ, the Son of God, referred to as the Lamb, and Satan referred to as the dragon. This is relevant to warfare, worship and all dwellers upon the earth, which represent the whole of humankind. The dragon (Satan) empowers the beast, with a strategy and purpose to steal and pervert from the One and Only God and His Kingdom.

Due to the sin of rebellion against God, Satan lost his ruling over the planets he resided and lost his place in heaven as a high ranking cherub –

Thine heart was lifted up because of thy beauty, thou hast corrupted thy wisdom by reason of thy brightness: I will cast thee to the ground, I will lay thee before kings, that they may behold thee.

Ezekiel 28:17 (KJVR)

Not a novice, lest being lifted up with pride he fall into the condemnation of the devil. Moreover he must have a good report of them which are without; lest he fall into reproach and the snare of the devil.

1 Timothy 3:6-7 (KJVR)

And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels, and prevailed not; neither was their place found any more in heaven. And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.

Revelation 12:7-9 (KJVR)

My army is ready for battle, My master of Wisdom and Myself at the head. That battle will be fought for the continuance of man on this earth. Rest assured that my army shall triumph!

Lord Maitreya, the New Age “Christ

The primary goal of Satan is to enslave the world, and he won’t be satisfied until all of humanity comes to worship him and him alone.

To accomplish his dark objectives, he has re-established his church, *MYSTERY BABYLON*¹. Dr. Ana Méndez Ferrel² refers to *Babylon* as a religious system that kills the spiritual life of the Church and renders them inept to reign. This is popularly called, the NEW AGE MOVEMENT. The NEW AGE MOVEMENT has within its fold, thousands of individual cults, churches, groups and organizations and is spanning the globe and encompassing hundreds of millions of teachers and disciples. It is a perverse and diabolical institution founded on a web of lies and deceit, which influence can regrettably be seen in some mainline Christian churches.

1 Revelation 17:5 (KJV) “And upon her forehead was a name written, MYSTERY, BABYLON THE GREAT, THE MOTHER OF HARLOTS AND ABOMINATIONS OF THE EARTH.”

2 Ferrell, Dr. Ana Mendez (2012) *Apocalypse*. USA: Published By Ana Mendez Ferrell, Inc. pp129-130

By the exhortation of the Apostle Peter, the church needs to be alert to the devil and his tactics, by standing “firm in the faith” –

Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour: Whom resist steadfast in the faith, knowing that the same afflictions are accomplished in your brethren that are in the world.

1 Peter 5:8-9 (KJVR)

Ryrie writes that the denial of SATAN’S reality usually takes the form of considering the idea of SATAN as the personification of evil but not actually a being whom has his own separate existence.³

According to Professor Brand, *“Ignorance of SATAN’s nature and schemes, impels people become open to satanic attacks. Rather than accepting responsibility for personal actions, like Eve who blamed the serpent for her choice, such theology seeks to put all the blame on the devil.”*⁴

Some people may talk about the devil but refuse to believe in his existence, ridiculing the whole idea. For others, Satan is just an evil influence, thinking that the idea of the devil is merely a synonym for evil. Biblically Satan is described as a personal being at work, but most of humankind denies this fact.

Satan has many faces, schemes and approaches which are not necessarily obvious or ugly. Some of them may appear very lovely, handsome, sophisticated, educated, polite and apparently good.

³ Ryrie, Charles C. (1999) Basic Theology. USA, Chicago: Moody Press.

⁴ Brand, Prof C. (2007) Spiritual Warfare Six, Satan in Context. RSA, Pretoria: Self-publication. p138

In trying to defeat Satan, humankind need to know how Satan operates, how he thinks, his characteristics, his strengths, his hierarchy, his power, the power of his army, his ultimate goal, plan and purpose, his weaknesses and his methods or schemes, for he is in all a dangerous sham, designed to deceive and defeat.

Through the knowledge of Satan's deceit, a person can be prepared to effectively counter his attacks. The doctrine of SATANOLOGY⁵ is a very important study. A study which is often filled with opposition for SATAN, THE DECEIVER, never likes to be exposed for who and what he is and how he operates.

It is a command from God to stay informed. The Apostle Paul wrote:

.... for we are not ignorant of his devices.

2 Corinthians 2:11b (KJVR)

But I fear, lest by any means, as the serpent beguiled Eve through his subtlety, so your minds should be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ.

2 Corinthians 11:3 (KJVR)

Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.

James 4:7 (KJVR)

The character of Satan's sin was rebellious ambition, this ambition being totally contrary to a creature who owned everything that he was and had to the Creator.

⁵ See Terms, Definitions and Abbreviations

As Prince noted that it was God who gave Lucifer his power, his authority, his beauty, his wisdom – all those were gifts from God. Yet Lucifer's wrong attitude turned them into instruments for his own destruction.⁶

Two different wills result in conflict. The most simplistic definition of sin is born from the self is "I will....", irrespective of who utters it.

The will of God will be a line of truth and goodness and is immutable. Any variation from the will of God is sin, be it only in the slightest fraction of a degree. It results in separation and deviation from God. When Satan chose his own will above God's, there was rebellion.

According to Professor Brand, pride produces a warped paradigm that places 'me' at the centre of the reasoning process. With 'self' at the centre the consequence would be to become confused about the true issues. Reasoning becomes anything, but God centred. Against all odds, apart from all the arguments and views of the New Age Movement, Satan is in fact a maniac.⁷ She also states that Satan is deceived and blinded by his pride, with a complete transference of his spiritual legacy onto his followers.

⁶ Prince, D. (2003) War in Heaven. New Zealand: Derek Prince Ministries p52-53, 58

⁷ Brand, Prof C. (2007) Spiritual Warfare Six, Satan in Context. RSA, Pretoria: Self-publication. p208

2 THE KINGDOM OF DARKNESS

2.1 The Reality Of The Kingdom Of Darkness

The Scriptures clearly state that Satan has a kingdom in which there are various areas and levels of authority and the headquarters are in the heavenly regions”⁸ Satan’s kingdom is not divided but highly organized and it stands and has not yet been overthrown. This is clearly stated in Matthew twelve.

Then was brought unto him one possessed with a devil, blind, and dumb: and he healed him, insomuch that the blind and dumb both spake and saw. And all the people were amazed, and said, Is not this the son of David? But when the Pharisees heard it, they said, This fellow doth not cast out devils, but by Beelzebub the prince of the devils. And Jesus knew their thoughts, and said unto them, Every kingdom divided against itself is brought to desolation; and every city or house divided against itself shall not stand: And if Satan cast out Satan, he is divided against himself; how shall then his kingdom stand? And if I by Beelzebub cast out devils, by whom do your children cast them out? therefore they shall be your judges. But if I cast out devils by the Spirit of God, then the kingdom of God is come unto you.

Matthew 12:22-28 (KJV)

Beelzebub means, literally “lord of flies” and it is the title of Satan, particularly as the ruler over demons. According to Derek Prince demons are compared to the whole insect domain.⁹

⁸ Prince, Derek (1987) *Spiritual Warfare*. DPM UK: DPM-UK. p10

⁹ Prince, Derek (1987) *Spiritual Warfare*. DPM UK: DPM-UK. p11

In this Scripture Jesus mentions another Kingdom, namely the Kingdom of Light. Where Jesus said: “*When I drive out demons by the Spirit of God, then you know the kingdom of God has come,*” He implicates that the ministry of driving out demons brings the forces of Satan’s kingdom out into the open and also demonstrates the superiority of the Kingdom of God because the demons are driven out under the authority of the Kingdom of God. In the above passage, the invisible kingdom of Satan is represented by the demons; the invisible Kingdom of God is represented by Jesus and these two invisible spiritual kingdoms are at war with one another - all believers are called to continue His ministry in His name.¹⁰

Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater works than these shall he do; because I go unto my Father.

John 14:12 (KJV)

Writing to the Colossians, Paul said the following:

Giving thanks unto the Father, which hath made us meet to be partakers of the inheritance of the saints in light: Who hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated us into the kingdom of his dear Son: In whom we have redemption through his blood, even the forgiveness of sins:

Colossians 1:12-14 (KJV)

¹⁰ Prince, Derek (2013) Pulling Down Strongholds. Charlotte, North Carolina: Whitaker House. p14

Notice again, here are two domains or kingdoms, where God's Kingdom which is the Kingdom of Light is the very antithesis of the kingdom of Satan. Satan is in control of this kingdom and under his authority there are numerous fallen angels and demon spirits.

The contrast between the two opposing Kingdoms:

GOD'S KINGDOM	SATAN'S KINGDOM
A Kingdom of Light	A Kingdom of Darkness
A Kingdom of Holiness and Righteousness	A Kingdom of Sin and Unrighteousness
A Kingdom of Healing and Health	A Kingdom of Sickness and Disease
A Kingdom of Truth	A Kingdom of Deception
A Kingdom of Joy and Life" ¹¹	A Kingdom of Sorrow and Death

TABEL 1:THE CONTRAST BETWEEN THE TWO OPPOSING KINGDOMS

¹¹ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p103

2.1.1 Hierarchy Of The Kingdom Of The Light¹²

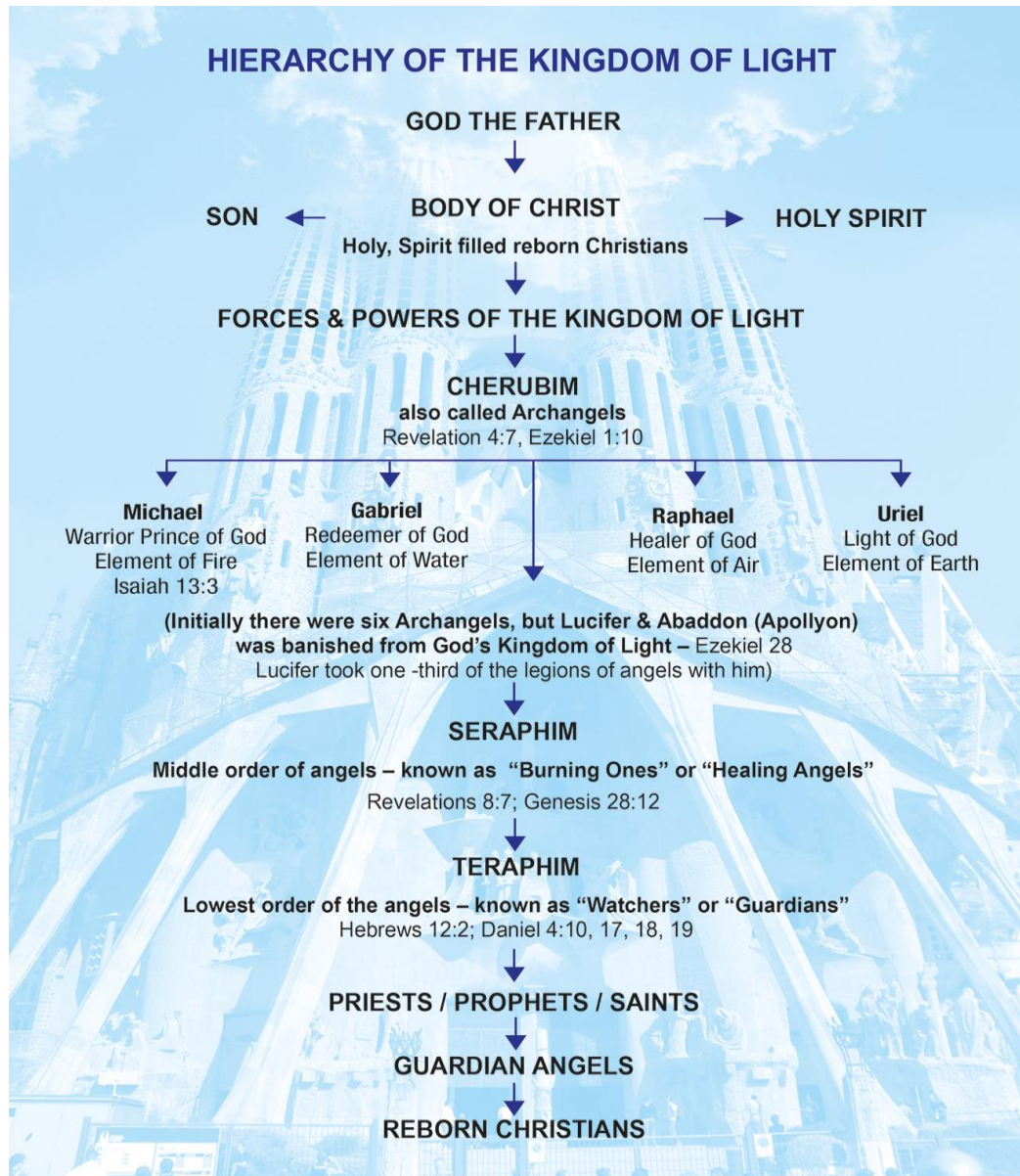


FIGURE 1: HIERARCHY OF THE KINGDOM OF LIGHT

¹² Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2013)- With Permission

Hierarchy Of The Kingdom Of The Darkness¹³

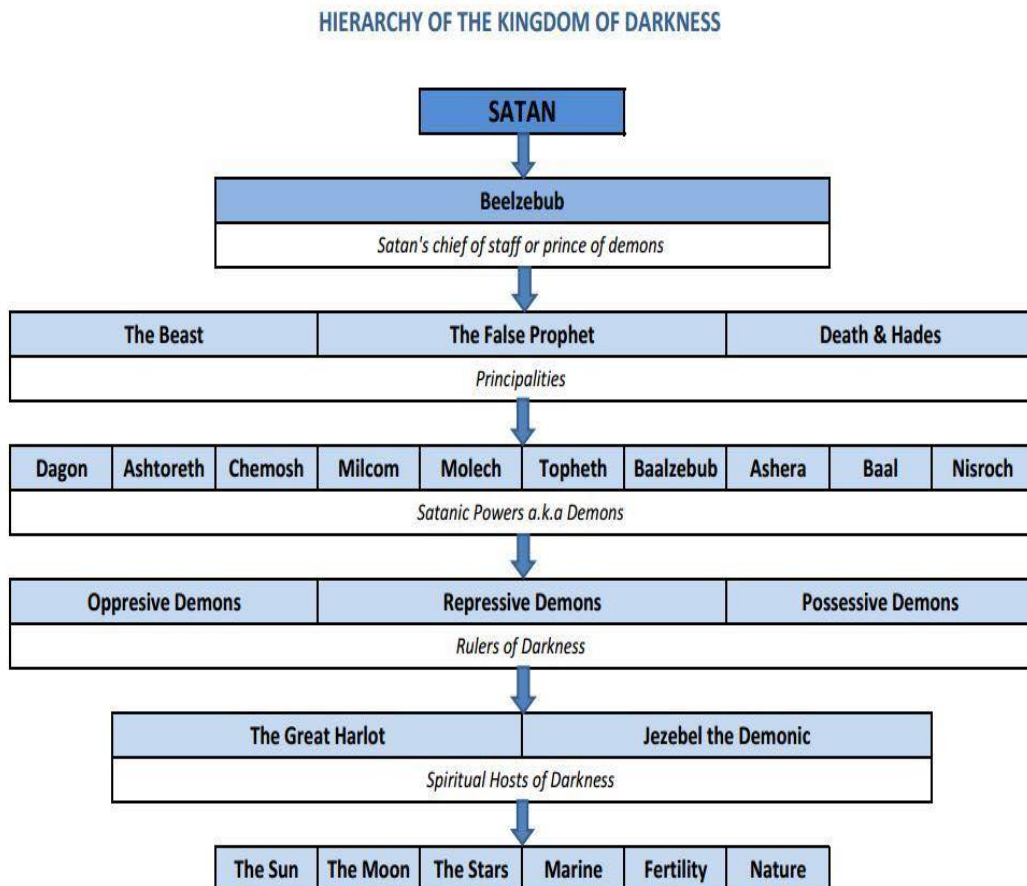


FIGURE 2: HIERARCHY OF THE KINGDOM OF THE DARKNESS

¹³ A Peep Into The Darkened World Of Satan's Kingdom By Moshood Fayemiwo (<http://nigeriaworld.com/feature/publication/fayemiwo/030413.html>)

Peter Horrobin,¹⁴ writes: there are five significant contrasts between Satan and God.

God is Creator	Satan is a created being	Ezekiel 28:13-15
God is omnipresent – present at all times and in all places	Satan is limited in both time and location. He can only, therefore, carry out his work through the agency of demons and evil spirits that are under his command	Job 1:6-7
God is omniscient – there is nothing that He does not know	Satan and his forces are limited in knowledge	Acts 19:15
God is omnipotent – His power is unlimited	Satan's power is limited and restricted within the confines that God has allowed	Job 1:6-12
God is eternal – there is no beginning or ending to God's Kingdom	Satan's time is strictly limited. One day Jesus is coming again as King of kings and Lord of lords. At that time Satan's rule and reign will come to an end and the scenario of Revelation will commence. Satan and his demons know the Scripture well, and the prophetic words in the Bible that tell of the end for Satan and all his angels are feared and hated by the demonic powers.	

TABLE 1: FIVE SIGNIFICANT CONTRASTS BETWEEN SATAN AND GOD

¹⁴ Horrobin, Peter (2008) *Healing through Deliverance*, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited.

Revelation 20:7-15, Hebrews 2:14-15 and Matthew 25:41-46 are all very encouraging reading for God's people and very effective passages of Scripture for undermining the supposed rights of demonic powers. Sadly, demons have a greater appreciation of the truth and authority of these Scriptures than do most Christians.¹⁵

2.2 The Domain Of The Kingdom Of Darkness

The word “domain” refers to “the rule, reign and territory over which a king rules” and is wherever Satan exercises his dominion. Satan's domain is called Satan's kingdom (Matthew 12:25-26; Luke 11:14-19) and can be described as a kingdom of darkness (Colossians 1:13-14; Revelation 16:10), which influences the kingdoms of this world system – this includes business, society, politics and religion (Luke 4:5-6; Revelation 11:15; Matthew 4:8-10), and influence the world kingdoms from the atmospheric heavens or “the heavenly places” (Ephesians 2:2; 3:10; 6:12; Revelation 12:3,7-12) and is also diametrically opposed to the Kingdom of God in nature, character and purpose.¹⁶

Paul stated that Satan's headquarters are in the heavenlies. There is a general misunderstanding among many church members who speak about Satan as if he is in hell. Hell is a below the surface of the earth, a place of confinement, a place for wicked people. Derek Prince comment on the misunderstanding is:
¹⁷“It would be nice if Satan were in hell, but he isn't. He is very much at large

¹⁵ Horrobin, Peter (2008) *Healing through Deliverance*, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited. p78-79

¹⁶ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p103

¹⁷ Prince, Derek (2013) *Pulling Down Strongholds*. Charlotte, North Carolina: Whitaker House. p19

here on earth. He is extremely active. And his kingdom is in heavenlies. One might be thinking, wasn't it just stated that Satan and his angels were cast out of heaven? Yes, however the key is to understand the location of Satan's kingdom. The Bible teaches that there are more heavens than the one people usually talk about and it is absolutely essential to understand this reality."

Genesis one verse one says:

"In the beginning God created the heavens [plural] and the earth [singular]."

Genesis 1:1 (NIV)

The Hebrew word for heavens is "*shamayim*" – "*im*" is the plural ending, thus from the very beginning of the Bible, man have this revelation that there is more than one heaven. In Solomon's prayer to the Lord at the dedication of the temple he said:

But who is able to build him an house, seeing the heaven and heaven of heavens cannot contain him? who am I then, that I should build him an house, save only to burn sacrifice before him?

2 Chronicles 2:6 (KJV)

In Hebrews it says "the heaven of heavens", and the translation says "the highest heaven – therefore both translations clearly indicates there is more than one heaven.

There are also two passages in the New Testament that clearly confirm this point.

I knew a man in Christ above fourteen years ago, (whether in the body, I cannot tell; or whether out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) such an one caught up to the third heaven. And I knew such a man, (whether in the body, or out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) How that he was caught up into paradise, and heard unspeakable words, which it is not lawful for a man to utter.

2 Corinthians 12:2-4 (KJV)

Here Paul was writing about people he knew who had enjoyed marvellous spiritual experiences and mentioned one particular person who had been caught up from the earthly level into the heavenlies. Paul wrote that he didn't know whether the person had this experience while in his body or outside of it.

Notice that Paul said this fellow Christian “was caught up to the third heaven.” He also said that he “was caught up into Paradise,” which would seem to suggest that “paradise” is in the third heaven. This man heard the words of God, in the third heaven (paradise) and one could assume that it can be the dwelling place of God.¹⁸ According to Derek Prince,¹⁹ “if there is a third heaven, there must be a first and a second. There never has been a third of anything without a first and a second. Scripture tells us that there are at least three heavens”.

Other Scriptures that infer the existence of more than one heaven is:

Behold, the heaven and the heaven of heavens is the LORD'S thy God, the earth also, with all that therein is.

Deuteronomy 10:14 (KJV)

¹⁸ Prince, Derek (2013) Pulling Down Strongholds. Charlotte, North Carolina: Whitaker House. p20

¹⁹ Prince, Derek (2013) Pulling Down Strongholds. Charlotte, North Carolina: Whitaker House. p20

Thou, even thou, art LORD alone; thou hast made heaven, the heaven of heavens, with all their host, the earth, and all things that are therein, the seas, and all that is therein, and thou preservest them all; and the host of heaven worshippeth thee.

Nehemiah 9:6 (KJV)

He that descended is the same also that ascended up far above all heavens, that he might fill all things.

Ephesians 4:10 (KJV)

So, when Paul said that Jesus ascended “*above all the heavens*,” there must have been (and still are) more than one heaven.

But will God indeed dwell on the earth? behold, the heaven and heaven of heavens cannot contain thee; how much less this house that I have builded?

1 Kings 8:27 (KJV)

But who is able to build him an house, seeing the heaven and heaven of heavens cannot contain him? who am I then, that I should build him an house, save only to burn sacrifice before him?

2 Chronicles 2:6 (KJV)

O LORD our Lord, how excellent is thy name in all the earth! who hast set thy glory above the heavens.

Psalms 8:1 (KJV)

The question that Derek Prince asks is “*What are the three heavens?*” and then suggests ²⁰“that the first heaven could be the visible heaven that one see – the sky above us, with the clouds. According to 2 Corinthians 12 the third heaven is the dwelling place of God – paradise, the place of rest of the departed

²⁰ Prince, Derek (2013) Pulling Down Strongholds. Charlotte, North Carolina: Whitaker House. p22

righteous. One is left with the second heaven, and the assumption made by Prince is, that it is somewhere between the visible heaven (sky) and the heaven of God's dwelling place. Prince believes that this intermediate heaven is where Satan's headquarters are located. Could this be the reason why believers are struggling to get breakthroughs in their prayer lives, for they have to break through the headquarters of Satan?

3 SATAN - THE KING

3.1 The Origin Of Satan

Clarence Larkin²¹ refer to Satan as a “created being” of the exalted type. God gave Lucifer the power and authority, as vice-regent over His creation and it was his responsibility to have guarded the interests of God's Kingdom and to have been on the alert against anything that might have jeopardized its security. Who would have thought with all this power and authority that Lucifer would betray the trust imposed in him, and thus become the arch-traitor of all time?

In Jude nine, the extent of Lucifer's power, in relation to even the mightiest of other heavenly beings, is hinted, where believers are informed that Michael, the great archangel, “durst not bring against him a railing accusation.” This indicates that Lucifer's power was superior to that of all other created beings. As a believer one should know what the Bible teaches about the person of

²¹ Larkin, Clarence (1920) *Dispensational Truth*. USA, Glenside. Pa: Rev. Clarence Larkin Est. p112

Satan and as a believer one should know what the Bible teaches about the person of Satan.²²

The Kingdom of Light is patterned after its King, God, so all that is in the kingdom of darkness is patterned after its king, Satan. Each kingdom displays the nature and character of its head, therefore the king represents the kingdom and the kingdom is like the king.²³ In scripture there are two main passages that describe Satan's origin and fall:

How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations! For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north: I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the most High. Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit.

Isaiah 14:12-15 (KJV)

The word of the LORD came again unto me, saying, Son of man, say unto the prince of Tyrus, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Because thine heart is lifted up, and thou hast said, I am a God, I sit in the seat of God, in the midst of the seas; yet thou art a man, and not God, though thou set thine heart as the heart of God: Behold, thou art wiser than Daniel; there is no secret that they can hide from thee: With thy wisdom and with thine understanding thou hast gotten thee riches, and hast gotten gold and silver into thy treasures: By thy great wisdom and by thy traffick hast thou increased thy riches, and thine heart is lifted up because of thy riches: Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Because thou hast set thine heart as the heart of God; Behold, therefore I will bring strangers upon thee, the terrible of the nations: and they shall draw their swords against the beauty of thy wisdom,

²² Lindsay, Gordon. *The Fall of Lucifer - Satan Fallen Angels and Demons*. Dallas, Texas

²³ Conner, Kevin J (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing p103

and they shall defile thy brightness. They shall bring thee down to the pit, and thou shalt die the deaths of them that are slain in the midst of the seas. Wilt thou yet say before him that slayeth thee, I am God? but thou shalt be a man, and no God, in the hand of him that slayeth thee. Thou shalt die the deaths of the uncircumcised by the hand of strangers: for I have spoken it, saith the Lord GOD. Moreover the word of the LORD came unto me, saying, Son of man, take up a lamentation upon the king of Tyrus, and say unto him, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Thou sealest up the sum, full of wisdom, and perfect in beauty. Thou hast been in Eden the garden of God; every precious stone was thy covering, the sardius, topaz, and the diamond, the beryl, the onyx, and the jasper, the sapphire, the emerald, and the carbuncle, and gold: the workmanship of thy tabrets and of thy pipes was prepared in thee in the day that thou wast created. Thou art the anointed cherub that covereth; and I have set thee so: thou wast upon the holy mountain of God; thou hast walked up and down in the midst of the stones of fire. Thou wast perfect in thy ways from the day that thou wast created, till iniquity was found in thee. By the multitude of thy merchandise they have filled the midst of thee with violence, and thou hast sinned: therefore I will cast thee as profane out of the mountain of God: and I will destroy thee, O covering cherub, from the midst of the stones of fire. Thine heart was lifted up because of thy beauty, thou hast corrupted thy wisdom by reason of thy brightness: I will cast thee to the ground, I will lay thee before kings, that they may behold thee. Thou hast defiled thy sanctuaries by the multitude of thine iniquities, by the iniquity of thy traffick; therefore will I bring forth a fire from the midst of thee, it shall devour thee, and I will bring thee to ashes upon the earth in the sight of all them that behold thee. All they that know thee among the people shall be astonished at thee: thou shalt be a terror, and never shalt thou be any more.

Ezekiel 28:1-19 (KJV)

According to Scripture, in the beginning, Satan, then called Lucifer²⁴, was a sinless and righteous being. In Ezekiel 28: 15 the original integrity and

²⁴ Lucifer, which means 'day star, son of the morning, or light bearer', Isaiah 14:12 with 2 Corinthians 11:14

uprightness of the great archangel are stated with these words “*Thou wast perfect in thy ways from the day that thou wast created till iniquity was found in thee.*” One cannot imagine that this wicked creature, now the arch-enemy of God and man, was at one time a holy being, and guardian of the throne of God. He was a good, wise and beautiful angel, an object of Divine confidence, an archangel entrusted with great authority, and who for a season discharged his duties faultlessly and in perfect obedience to God.” That far from being an adversary of God, he was “the anointed cherub”²⁵ that covereth”, whose deeds and conduct were above suspicion, and who enjoyed the confidence of God to such extent that the guardianship of heaven was entrusted into his hands.”²⁶

From the passages in Ezekiel and Isaiah the following description of Satan, prior to his fall, is given. Satan is a real personality and his evil personified and characteristics are ascribed to him. He is not an impersonal influence or power and personal pronouns, intelligence, knowledge, will and action are attributed to him (Job 1:8; 2:1-2; Zechariah 3:1; 2 Corinthians 2:11; Matthew 4:6; Revelation 12:12; 2 Timothy 2:26; Matthew 25:41; Isaiah 14:12-13).

Satan, angels and God are spirit beings. Satan is a created being, therefore dependent upon God for his very existence (Ezekiel 28:13,15). He was decorated with precious stones set in gold (very similar to the stones in the Breastplate of Aaron, Israel’s High Priest (Ezekiel 28:13 with Exodus 28:15-21). Lucifer was a mighty being, and had been given a high position near the throne of God; anointed ministry to lead heaven’s angelic worship of the triune God

²⁵ Just as Old Testament prophets, priests and kings were anointed for office, Ezekiel 28:14,16,18.

²⁶ Lindsay, Gordon. *The Fall of Lucifer - Satan Fallen Angels and Demons*. Dallas, Texas

(Ezekiel 28:13). “Wiser than Daniel,” there was no secret among the angelic hosts that was hidden from him and he was once in the truth (John 8:44).²⁷

The following four reasons make it quite clear that these verses refer to Lucifer and not the earthly king of Tyre:

- He was in Eden, the Garden of God (Ezekiel 28:13).
- He was in the holy mountain (or Kingdom) of God, in the sides of the north (Ezekiel 28:14, 16, with Psalm 48:1).
- He was perfect since the day of creation (Ezekiel 28:15).
- He was the cherub who covers²⁸

3.2 What Caused Satan’s Fall

Lucifer possessed rare gifts and had been endowed with great wisdom and knowledge. To him were entrusted many of the secrets of creation. By reason of these unique gifts and abilities, God had exalted him to the position of vice-regent over His creation and with his wisdom and superior intelligence was enabled to have deep insight into the mysteries of the universe.

But there is a realm in which are involved the eternal purposes of God – and which may be entered only through reverent faith and trust. God alone understands the end from the beginning (Acts 15:18). He, as Creator, is the Judge of what is wise and right. (Genesis 18:25)

²⁷ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p103

²⁸ Satan and his Kingdom By Prof. Johan Malan, Mossel Bay, South Africa (May 2012) (<http://www.bibleguidance.co.za/Engarticles/Satanskingdom.htm>)

How then did it happen that this mighty archangel, Lucifer, son of the morning, fell from his exalted position into the depths of depravity to become the prince of darkness? The Scriptures are not silent regarding this profound question.

Lucifer was the perfection of beauty and possessed a personality and charm that commanded the admiration of the host of heaven.²⁹ His beauty, wisdom and might – all the good things created in him by God - led him to pride. Satan fell through pride and self-will, the very essence of sin (Isaiah 14:12 with Proverbs 16:18 and Luke 10:18).

Up until this time he had discharged his duties blamelessly and without fault. “He desired to enter the very presence of God. He wanted his throne on God’s throne above the other angels; he wanted to be like the “Most High”.³⁰ In God’s eternal plan this exaltation was reserved for Christ - it was given to Christ alone to sit down with the Father in His throne. (Revelation 3:21). Lucifer though vice-regent, the chief archangel and the anointed cherub, was to hold a lesser position than Christ. When it became evident to Lucifer that he was not to have the supreme position, he saw his ambitions frustrated.

The hour had come, he wanted to be independent of God and rebellion was born in his heart, which led him to his fall.³¹ He exalted himself and came under condemnation for it is not uncommon for those who are endowed with unusual beauty to acquire an inordinate desire for the admiration of others. Lucifer

²⁹ Lindsay, Gordon. *The Fall of Lucifer - Satan Fallen Angels and Demons*. Dallas, Texas

³⁰ Enns, Paul P. (1997) *Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology*. USA, Chicago: Moody Press. p100

³¹ Why did God create a Devil? By Ragnar (<http://considerthegospel.org/blog/2012/09/23/why-did-god-create-a-devil/>)

although of angelic order, was not an exception to this weakness, as Scripture states, *“Thine heart was lifted up because of thy beauty.” Ezekiel 28:17.* Supreme power in a kingdom universal, stirred a restless ambition within him and he made no attempt to repress this unholy spirit of self-exaltation, but gave it full encouragement. He allowed the seed of pride to take root, and as it grew it produced a harvest of misery and woe for him, and for those who followed him, that only the Infinite may access to its full extent.

Not a novice, lest being lifted up with pride he fall into the condemnation of the devil.

1 Timothy 3:6 (KJV)

The record indicates that in the course of events, Lucifer developed a strange self-infatuation and little by little, he permitted the centre of his universe to shift from God to himself.”³² He manifested self-will against God’s will.

According to Scripture Lucifer’s five “I will” emphasizes his sin³³ and in a brief but clear language the story of Lucifer’s self-exaltation, rebellion, and subsequent fall is stated:

For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north: I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the most High. Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit.

Isaiah 14:13-15 (KJV)

³² Lindsay, Gordon. *The Fall of Lucifer - Satan Fallen Angels and Demons*. Dallas, Texas

³³ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p

He fell as lightning (Luke 10:18 with 2 Corinthians 11:14) and was cast down by God in this self-deification (Ezekiel 28:16-17). Satan was the original sinner, and iniquity (lawlessness) was found in him (Ezekiel 28:15, 16, 18; 1 John 3:8). He did not abide in the truth and was self-deceived (John 8:44) which lead him to become a liar and murderer (John 8:44). “The Mystery of Iniquity” is personified in him and he is the source of all sin. He is the original Antichrist (2 Thessalonians 2:7 with Genesis 3:1-6) and was the first apostate that caused other angels to sin in heaven. He never lost his power and God-given wisdom which became corrupted, and by which he deceives mankind today (Ezekiel 28:17,18; James 3:15).

He will eventually be destroyed by fire (Ezekiel 28:18; Matthew 25:41). Many expositors believe that his fall took place before the creation of man, that he was cast out of the immediate presence of God, and that he fell to the earth bringing about the chaotic condition seen in Genesis 1:1-2 (Isaiah 45:18; Jeremiah 4:23-26).³⁴

3.3 The Nature And Character Of Satan

In Scripture, the name of a person has enormous significance. This is true of the many names of God, especially in the Old Testament – each one of them showing believers something different and special about His character. This Jewish custom also enables us to understand something of the character, work and nature of this fallen archangel. Looking at the names of Satan – and their

³⁴ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p105

meanings, should alert the believer to his real character. Many of the names clearly indicate the filth, depravity and evil intent of this prince of demons. Following is a list of his names with its interpretation is given along with suitable Scriptural references.³⁵

Abaddan or Apollyon, the Destroyer	Revelation 9:11
Accuser of the Brethern – one against, one charging with an offence	Revelation 12:10; with Job 1:6-7; 2:1-2; Zechariah 3:1
Adversary – the enemy, the opposer	1 Peter 5:8
Angel of light	Luke 10:18; 2 Corinthians 11:13-15
Angel of the Abyss – the bottomless pit	Revelation 9:11
Antichrist – one over against Christ, Spirit of Antichrist, alternative to Christ	1 John 2:18-22, 4:1-4; 2 John 7
Beelzebul or Beelzebub – prince of devils. Derived from Beelzebub, a dung god of the Ekronites (Lord of the flies), god of the dunghill. This was a heathen god believe to be ruler of all evil spirits.	Matthew 10:25; 12:24, 27; 2 Kings 1:2; Mark 3:22; Luke 11:15-19
Belial – worthless, perverse, lawless	1 Samuel 30:22; 2 Corinthians 6:15; 1 Samuel 10:27; 2 Samuel 23:6
Condemner	1 Timothy 3:6
Deceiver	Revelation 12:9; 2 Corinthians 11:3
Devil – accuser, slanderer, whisperer. Slanders God to man and man to God (used about 35 times in the Bible)	Matthew 4:1; 13:39; 25:41; John 8:44; Ephesians 4:27; Hebrews 2:14; Ephesians 6:11; James 4:7; Revelation 12:10

³⁵ Horrobin, Peter (2008) *Healing through Deliverance*, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited p76

Dragon – great enchanting serpent. Speaks of the vicious beastly nature and rage of Satan	Revelation 12:3-17; 13:2, 4, 11; 16:13; 20:2; Isaiah 51:9; Ezekiel 29:3; 32:2
Enemy – hater, hostility	Matthew 13:39
Evil One	Matthew 13:19
Fowler – one out to entrap and ensnare	Psalms 91:3
God of This Age	Luke 4:6; 1 John 5:19; 2 Corinthians 4:4; Galatians 1:4; 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
King	Revelation 9:11
King of a Kingdom	Matthew 12:26-29; Acts 26:18; Colossians 1:13
Leviathan – great water animal	Isaiah 27:1
Liar	John 8:44
Lucifer – daystar, morning star, lightbearer, shining one	Isaiah 14:12
Murderer – killer, destroyer of life	John 8:44
Oppressor – one who dominates	Acts 10:38
Prince of the Power of the Air	Ephesians 2:2 with 6:12
Prince of this World – prince of the world-system	John 12:31; 14:30; 16:11; 2 Corinthians 4:4
Roaring Lion	1 Peter 5:8
Ruler of the Demons	Matthew 12:24
Ruler of the World	John 12:31; 14:30; 16:11
Satan – adversary, hater, one who opposes, enemy (used about 52 times in the Bible)	Matthew 4:10; 1 Chronicles 21:1; Job 1:6-12; 2:1-7; Zechariah 3:1-7, 1 Kings 11:1, 23-25; 2 Corinthians 2:11
Serpent, snake – enchanter, beguiler, speaker of subtility and wisdom perverted to evil ends	Genesis 3:1-14; Revelation 12:9, 14-15; Matthew 10:16; 2 Corinthians 11:3; James 3:15
Sinner	1 John 3:8
Son of Perdition	2 Thessalonians 2:1-12

Tempter – enticer	Matthew 4:3; 1 Thessalonians 3:5; 1 Chronicles 21:1; 1 Corinthians 7:5
The Wicket One – hurtful, evil one	Matthew 13:19, 38-39; 1 John 5:18-19; 3:12
Thief – one who steals by subtility	John 10:10; Luke 8:12
Wolf	John 10:12

TABLE 2: LIST OF SATAN' NAMES WITH ITS INTERPRETATION AND SCRIPTURAL REFERENCES

Satan is a tempter and no matter how glossy the wrappings around the temptations that Satan puts in front of a person may be, his real character will always eventually be exposed. In the movie *Chitty Chitty Bang Bang* the obnoxious “child collector” tricks children into a decorated cart that offers all sorts of fancy and exciting attractions. As the children enter the cart, the iron gates slam shut and the children find themselves not inside a children’s wonderland, but in a prison on wheels that rushes them off to the dungeons.

Satan operates in the same way and people become victims of their own desire, and then the gate slams shut! In Scripture, James comments that “evil desires conceive and give birth to sin; and sin, when it is full-grown, gives birth to death” (James 1:15). People only find out what the real character of Satan is like when it is too late - but luckily there is One who is able to deliver them out of the hands of the enemy, and His name is Jesus.³⁶

³⁶ Horrobin, Peter (2008) *Healing through Deliverance*, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited p76

3.4 Satan's Activities

Gibson writes that ³⁷the whole world is a prison, and everyone in it a spiritual prisoner from birth. Satan is the head jailor, and demons are his prison guards. They serve their master well, and delight in afflicting those under their charge.

And we know that we are of God, and the whole world lieth in wickedness.

1 John 5:19 (KJV)

And you hath he quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins; Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience: Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others.

Ephesians 2:1-3 (KJV)

Satan's main aim was to attract worship to him and turn people away from God. Since the beginning of time he has not altered his tactics. Men and women have been led into sin generation after generation with Satan's age old, well-tried temptations.

The activities of Satan may be grouped in the following main areas.

- **Temptation** - He tempts people to sin, by putting various kinds of imaginations in the minds of men and women and speaking words of deceit (Genesis 3:1-6). Satan is the enticer and even tempted Jesus. Jesus revealed to us the way to overcome temptation by using the Word

³⁷ Gibson, Phyl & Noel (1993) *Evicting Demonic Intruders*. West Sussex, United Kingdom: New Wine Press p74

of God (Matthew 4:1-10, Mark 1:13, Luke 4:1-13 Corinthians 7:5; John 14:30; 1 John 5:18).

- **Sin** – Making sin attractive, satisfying and addictive. He is the originator of rebellion against divine authority (1 John 3:8; Ephesians 2:2).
- **Deception** - Deception was his weapon in the Garden of Eden and is still his greatest power. Once a person is deceived, the progression of temptations that can follow is endless. As long as a person remain deceived on some important point, Satan's have something he can work with. It is his last day weapon to also deceive the nations of the earth. (Genesis 3:1-4,13; 2 Corinthians 11:3; 1 Timothy 2:14; 2 Corinthians 11:13-15; John 8:44; 2 Thessalonians 2:9-10; Revelation 13:14; Acts 13:10; Revelation 12:9; 20:2-10; 2 Corinthians 2:11; Ephesians 6:11; Acts 5:3; 1 Timothy 5:15; 1 John 2:22; 4:1-6; 2 John 7; 1 Timothy 3:7; 2 Timothy 2:26; Revelation 2:9, 24; 3:9). Once people are walking in deception, they become vulnerable to being disturbed. Conflict arises inside between their God-given sensitivity to the Lord and the desires that they are giving way to the flesh. This can lead to depression, with a whole range of sicknesses following that can ride in on the back of a depressed personality.
- **Distress** is the next stage of the downward spiral and individuals may need heavier medication to keep them on an even keel. A person's life can get controlled by his or her condition and the consequential medication, that life begins to lose its purpose. Despair sets in, and thoughts of suicide forms in the mind. Satan is a filthy fighter, he does not respect anyone and he hates God so much that he will stop at nothing to destroy those whom God created. But God loved people so much that He sent His Son to die for them. Satan will do anything to keep people from finding out the truth - that they can be set free in the name of Jesus.

Satan has not yet forgotten his defeat at Calvary and works overtime to discredit the deliverance ministry and those working to bring healing through deliverance to God's people! James' advice to "resist the devil" is effective practical guidance for everyday living (James 4:7, NIV), for if one do not resist, one lay ones lives wide open to the demonic.³⁸

- **Accusation** - He is an accuser of God's people so that they have reduced effectiveness in their prayers and their relationship with God. Satan hurls his accusations against the saints continually but the believer can thank God that he has an Advocate, Jesus Christ, interceding on his behalf (Revelation 12:10; Job 1:2; Zechariah 3:1-2)
- **Affliction** - He torment through sickness and the breakdown of human relationships – he seeks to afflict physically and mentally (1 Corinthians 5:5; Luke 13:16; 2 Corinthians 12:7).
- **Opposition** - Satan and his hosts lead a great spiritual war against God and His Kingdom (1 Chronicles 21:1; Acts 10:38; Revelation 2:10; 12:13,17; 13:7; 1 Thessalonians 2:18; 1 Peter 5:8; Revelation 12:4; 2 Timothy 2:25-26).
- **Threaten** – he suggests all kinds of negative scenarios in order to create anxiety and fear.³⁹
- **Enslaves** - Satan seeks to recruit slaves through the power of witchcraft and other forms of false religion. People are unwittingly bowing the knee to Satan in serving any of those false gods. He does not mind that people are ignorant of what they are really doing. He clearly, get great satisfaction out of the rituals of Satanism where people knowingly worship

³⁸ Horrobin, Peter (2008) Healing through Deliverance, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited. p77

³⁹ Chief Activities of Satan and Demons (<http://www.christian-faith.com/spiritualwarfare/demonactivities.html>)

him – especially when he is paid the ultimate “honour” through the sacrifice to him of a human being. Tactics that lay close to Satan’s heart which he uses are power, sex, wealth or false religion, however subtly they may be dressed up for public consumption! Self-pleasing, greed and lust for power are the things in fallen man – all of which make fertile ground for Satan to sow his seeds of rebellion.⁴⁰ Jesus said, *What will it profit a man if he gains the whole world, and loses his soul? (Mark 8:36)*

- **Death** - Death is the greatest power of Satan manifested, but Jesus has conquered death by resurrection (Hebrews 2:14; Jude 9; 1 John 3:12; John 8:44). Satan hates to see people live long, fulfilled lives in the service of God therefore, the sooner a person’s life is terminated, and the less opportunity there is for salvation to be accepted. Horrobin said ⁴¹“that at a recent meeting he asked the body of Christians present how many of them had ever contemplated suicide, however fleetingly. Over 60 percent of them admitted to having had suicidal thoughts. The progression to self-destruction is down a well-worn path that begins with deception.”

Horrobin writes: “Satan reigns as the ruler of this world and as God, he is not omnipresent.”⁴² Prince also reiterates “It is important to note that the extent of Satan’s domain is limited by God and he cannot exercise authority where God does not allow.”⁴³ This can be clearly seen in the life of Job and Satan’s attacks against his person, household and possessions (Job 1-2 with Luke 22:31; 1

⁴⁰ Horrobin, Peter (2008) *Healing through Deliverance*, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited. p76

⁴¹ Horrobin, Peter (2008) *Healing through Deliverance*, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited. p76

⁴² Horrobin, Peter (2008) *Healing through Deliverance*, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited. p79

⁴³ Prince, Derek (2013) *Pulling Down Strongholds*. Charlotte, North Carolina: Whitaker House. p14

Corinthians 5:5; 1 Timothy 1:20). Though Satan is mighty, he is not all-mighty; though he is wise and knowing, he is not omniscient; though he is powerful, he is not all-powerful and can only go as far as God permits in affecting mankind.

In Chapter four the reader will see why Evangelism, healing and deliverance are urgent commissions to be fulfilled by the Church of Jesus Christ. They are not optional extras that one might occasionally practice and the day one cease from evangelism, one cease from following Jesus. If believers do not minister healing and deliverance to people one leave them in bondage, that which Jesus died to set them free from. And as Christians one is not obedient to a command that Jesus gave to the Church within the Great Commission of Matthew 28:18-20.

And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth. Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Matthew 28:18-20 (KJV)

3.5 Satan's Counterfeit

Man was created to worship and is thus by nature religious. If man does not worship by the power of the Holy Spirit, the true and living God, then he often resorts to the counterfeit, accepting another form of religion and worshipping with the help of evil spirits, the god of this world. This gives Satan a complete counterfeit religion and when Satan said "I will be like God" (Isaiah 14:12-14), he did not mean that he would be like God in character in holiness. He wanted to be like God in the sense of independence and he wanted to be God and to

be worshipped as God. He imitated all that God is and does and set up his rival religion.

Satan's imitation of God is seen in the following counterfeits:

- Satan have a throne (Revelation 2:13), a great depths of doctrines (Revelation 2:24; 1 Timothy 4:1; 1 Corinthians 2:10) and a synagogue (Revelation 2:9; 3:9). He have a communion table (1 Corinthians 10:21) and have people sacrifice at his altar (Deuteronomy 32:17; 1 Corinthians 10:20).
- Satan also have a counterfeit cup (1 Corinthians 10:21) and he gives his doctrines to men to teach (1 Timothy 4:1). He himself is an angel of light (2 Corinthians 11:14). Satan have his messengers, demonic and human (2 Corinthians 11:13) and he have a kingdom (Matthew 12:26).
- Satan does counterfeit miracles, signs and wonders (Revelation 16:14; Exodus 7:8-12) and have false apostles, prophets and teachers (2 Corinthians 11:13-14; 2 Peter 2:1; Mark 13:22; Matthew 13:38).
- Satan have a city, Mystery Babylon, to oppose the city of God, New Jerusalem (Revelation 17:5). Satan also have a harlot church, to counterfeit the Bride of Christ (Revelation 17:5). Satan and his demons seek to be worshipped (Leviticus 17:7; Deuteronomy 32:17; 2 Chronicles 11:15; Psalm 106:37; 1 Corinthians 10:20; Revelation 9:20; Matthew 4:8-10) and he have his false Christ, the rival of God's Christ (1 John 2:18-22).
- Satan imitates the revelation of the Godhead in his Satanic three in Revelation 13: the Beast (Anti-Father); the Antichrist (Anti-Son) and the False Prophet (Anti-Spirit). (Revelation 16:13-14; John 5:43). Satan's "Mystery of Iniquity" is the counterfeit of God's "Mystery of Godliness" (2 Thessalonians 2:7 with 1 Timothy 3:16).

- Satan wants to live in human bodies as temples for his demon spirits as God wants to live in human bodies by His Spirit (John 13:27 with 1 Corinthians 6:19). Satan seals his followers with a name on their forehead, which is the counterfeit of God's name on His people's forehead (Revelation 13:16 with 7:1-3).⁴⁴

3.6 Satan's Judgement

The question is: Why did God, after the devil rebelled not punish him at once? Conner writes that ⁴⁵“God could have destroyed Satan and the sinning angels the moment they rebelled.” “God considered it necessary to demonstrate that Lucifer's rebellion was altogether the wicked, treacherous, and infamous thing that it was. God wanted to give the universe opportunity to observe how that rebellion pervert's holy beings into wicked and vicious creatures.” ⁴⁶ “In God's overall plan, it is evident that He is dealing with Satan in a progressive manner.

There are seven steps in the judgement of Satan:

- The moment he sinned he was cast out of Paradise, the third heaven, which is the immediate presence of God. (Isaiah 14:15; Ezekiel 28:16; Luke 10:18).
- He was judged in Eden's earthly Paradise, when Satan caused Adam and Eve to sin (Genesis 3:14-15). He is under the irrevocable and eternal curse of God.

⁴⁴ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p107

⁴⁵ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p107

⁴⁶ Lindsay, Gordon. *The Fall of Lucifer - Satan Fallen Angels and Demons*. Dallas, Texas p11

- He was conquered by Christ at Calvary's cross (John 12:31; 16:11; Hebrews 2:14; 1 John 3:8) where his power of death over people was broken.
- He and his hosts are being conquered by the church as they release the captives of the human race who are under his control. (Mark 16:15-20; Acts 26:18; Romans 16:20).⁴⁷
- "Satan will be forcefully removed out of heaven to the earth in the time of tribulation at the close of the age. This casting out is the result of an angelic war in the heavens (Ezekiel 28:17; Ephesians 2:2; 6:12; Revelation 12:4-13).
- At the end of the tribulation he will be captured and thrown into the bottomless pit for a thousand years at the second coming of Christ (Revelation 20:2-3). For the first time he will be subjected to personal punishment.
- He will be released from the bottomless pit for a little season, after which he will be cast into the Lake of Fire and Brimstone for all eternity"⁴⁸ (Revelation 20:10; Isaiah 14:15; 27:1; Matthew 25:41). The eternal judgement upon Satan will also be the same for all his hosts and all men who choose to serve him in this life.

⁴⁷ Conner, Kevin J (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing p108

⁴⁸ Satan's Doom By Todd Strandberg (<http://www.raptureready.com/rr-doom.html>)

4 SATAN'S HIERARCHY

For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.

Ephesians 6:12 (KJV)

Just like the military, there are levels (hierarchy) of demonic rankings. In Scripture, they are called angels, authorities, principalities, powers, rulers of darkness, wicked spirits, and demons (1 Peter 3:22; Ephesians 6:12; 1:21; 3:10; Romans 8:38; Titus 3:1; Colossians 2:5,10; Daniel 10:13, 20-21; Luke 22:53; Colossians 1:13). Satan (or Beelzebub) is the King of his demonic kingdom; and the commander of this army of demons. In Scripture there does seem to be a distinction between fallen angels and demon spirits. Each spiritual level is more powerful than the level under it. There are demonic rulers set over nations, countries, states, cities, churches, homes on down to individuals. Each "sergeant" would have rule over other demons that are under him.

Satan with his unique gifts and abilities was the vice – regent in God's Kingdom. Therefore, he knows how to run a kingdom and he copies the way God does things; only for evil purposes. God is a very orderly God, and the angels in His kingdom are also divided up in ranks to do certain tasks. However, GOD'S KINGDOM is more powerful and victorious!⁴⁹

Three functions of the kingdom of darkness are described in the Bible, they are rulers, principalities and powers.

⁴⁹ Understanding Satan's Kingdom By Frank Hilton (<http://word-spirit.org/UnderstandingSatansKingdom.htm>)

4.1 Rulers Of Darkness

Pulling down strongholds with the truth of God's Word, the power of the Holy Spirit, and in the operation of faith in our spiritual warfare with the world, flesh and devil!⁵⁰

“Whosoever shall confess that Jesus is the Son of God, God dwelleth in him, and he in God.”

1 John 4:15

According to the Merriam Webster Dictionary a “ruler” is “a person who rules a country, area, group, etc”.⁵¹ The word in Greek is kosmokratōr “a ruler of this world”⁵² and according to Strong's Concordance definition “ruler of this world, that is, of the world as asserting its independence of God; used of the angelic or demonic powers controlling the sublunary world.”⁵³

“World Rules” are sometimes associated by Christian authors with magic and demonic gods like Artemis of the Ephesians and “Molech” of the Ammonites. In ancient time temples were dedicated to these deities and children offered to them.

⁵⁰ Principalities-Powers-Rulers of Darkness-Wickedness By Magdalene (http://www.battleinchrist.com/principalities_powers_world_rulers_of_darkness_spiritual_wickedness_in_spiritual_warfare.htm)

⁵¹ Merriam-Webster's Learner's Dictionary: Simple Definition of Ruler (<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/rulers>)

⁵² Strong's Concordance - 2888. kosmokratōr (<http://biblehub.com/greek/2888.htm>)

⁵³ Strong's Concordance - 2888. kosmokratōr (<http://biblehub.com/greek/2888.htm>)

Satan gets access to the earth to exert his opinion over the will of men by infiltrating existing human authority structures, touching lives on many levels, from the local school sports club to the government of the day. In the Bible there are reference to words like thrones, dominions, authorities, and rulers. These words describe offices held by spirit beings. In Matthew 16, Jesus spoke about the “gates of hell”. In Biblical times, the leaders of a city made decisions regarding the governing of a town by sitting at the city gates. The modern equivalent to “gates” would not be the city limits, but rather Parliament, the Oval Office, the Kremlin, No 10 Downing Street – any place where important corporate decisions are made.

“Gates” refer to the choice of authority and “walls” are a Biblical symbol for the protection of authority in society. If structures of authority function properly, Satan cannot enter, he is shut out by the walls of authority. Without authority or submission Satan can and will infiltrate and where there is chaos and rebellion, Satan rules. Marriages, families, churches and schools are constantly under vicious attack because of that.

In the Old Testament, a city’s walls were the first priority even before building the house of God. Today, Satan still seeks to destroy but have changed his strategies of battle.

Satan’s kingdom is highly organised. There are rulers in his kingdom, each with a particular area of responsibility and under each of those rulers are sub-rulers who are responsible for subareas in that kingdom.⁵⁴

⁵⁴ Prince, Derek (2013) Pulling Down Strongholds. Charlotte, North Carolina: Whitaker House. p16

Derek Prince offers the following theory:

“Over the course of my ministry, I have travelled a lot by plane. Once, on a flight from New Zealand to Singapore, Ruth and I were flying at an altitude of 39000 feet, which is a long, long way up. At the height, I had the feeling that I was above Satan’s kingdom. It felt like it was easier to pray. I didn’t have to fight my way through opposition.

This may be completely my own subjective impression. But somewhere between God’s heavenly domain and us is a hostile kingdom that opposes us and seeks to hinder our prayers. And that is why one sometimes has to push through enemy territory when one prays. It is not that one is praying out of the will of God, or that God is unwilling to hear us, but that one has penetrated a hostile kingdom in the heavenlies in order to reach Him.”⁵⁵

Peter Horrobin writes a similar story:

“Recently, when traveling from one country that has had a severely oppressive history into a neighbouring country that has seen a great deal of religious freedom, I was immediately conscious in my spirit of a change in the “atmosphere” – something that could not have been measured but was certainly felt. There was a different ruling spirit in operation.

Similarly, within a nation one can move from one region to another and be conscious of discernible spiritual changes. And every minister who has had to move about the country during his ministry will be able to recount stories of the different prevailing spiritual climates in the towns in which he has ministered.

⁵⁵ Prince, Derek (2013) *Pulling Down Strongholds*. Charlotte, North Carolina: Whitaker House. p23

An American couple ministered with from time to time recounted their experience of a dark foreboding “presence” while driving through a certain valley in Scotland. Several days later, while they were enjoying an accurate Scottish historical novel, they realized they had been passing through the place where the Campbells had massacred their “guests.” The curse on the land was perceptible to them even though at the time they knew nothing of the history of the area.

The extent to which demonic powers can continue to hold sway in a country, a region or a town is directly related to the commitment to intercessory prayer of the Christians in that territory. The freer country referred to above has had a body of intercessors interceding for the nation for close to forty years. The effect was noticeable.”⁵⁶

4.2 Principalities

Principality(ties) is the preferred word when translating the Greek word “arché”⁵⁷ to English. This refer to *the territory or jurisdiction of a prince : the country that gives title to a prince* according to the Merriam Webster Dictionary.⁵⁸

As in the physical world, there are princes and kings in the spiritual realm as well. Satan is known as the prince of power of the air. For the Christian, Jesus Christ is the Prince of Peace and Life. Principalities are the first level of power

⁵⁶ Horrobin, Peter (2008) *Healing through Deliverance*, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited. p79-80

⁵⁷ Strong’s Concordance - 746. arché (<http://biblehub.com/greek/746.htm>)

⁵⁸ Merriam-Webster's Learner's Dictionary: Simple Definition of Principality (<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/principalities>)

in the kingdom of darkness. According to *The Consolidated Webster Encyclopedic Dictionary*, a "principal" means "first in time or order." A principality can have dominion within the confines of a larger dominion or rule.⁵⁹ Principalities are assigned to rule in the spiritual realm over countries, nations and cities. Not all of them are good. In Matthew 12:24, the devil is called "Beëlzebub".⁶⁰ As lord of the dwelling, "Beëlzebub, operate under Satan's dominion and have wicked spirits that are subject him. They direct, control, rule and carry out instructions given by "Beëlzebub" in the spiritual realm of this world."⁶¹ As seen in Revelation 12:7 "*And there was war in heaven ("ouranos"- the abode of God, as well as the spirit realm): Michael and his angels fought against the dragon (satan); and the dragon fought and his angels, And prevailed not...*" angelic forces in the heavenly realm is fighting for control over earthly regions⁶².

Principalities are often referred to as "territorial spirits". They are not bigger or more evil but they have a bigger area of influence. Each geographic area has its own battle plans and powers of darkness operating as initiated by Satan.

⁵⁹ What Are Principalities And Powers That Are Talked About In The Bible? By Jack Wellman (<http://www.patheos.com/blogs/christiancrier/2015/08/26/what-are-principalities-and-powers-that-are-talked-about-in-the-bible/>)

⁶⁰ Beelzebub - The word has two parts: *Baal*, which was the name for the Canaanite fertility gods in the Old Testament; and *Zebul*, which means "exalted dwelling." Putting the two parts together, they formed a name for Satan himself, the prince of demons. <http://www.gotquestions.org/who-Beelzebub.html>

⁶¹ Principalities-Powers-Rulers of Darkness-Wickedness By Magdalene (http://www.battleinchrist.com/principalities_powers_world_rulers_of_darkness_spiritual_wickedness_in_spiritual_warfare.htm)

⁶² Principalities (Satan Class of Angels) And Spiritual Warfare (<https://www.scribd.com/document/91263723/Principalities-and-Spiritual-Warfare>)



FIGURE 3: THE FOUR PRINCIPALITIES⁶³

⁶³ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. – With Permission

PRINCIPALITIES / PRINCES as seen in Occultism & Egyptian Mythology				
PRINCIPALITY	DIRECTION	AREA	GOD'S or GODDESSES	EGYPTIAN MYTHOLOGY
BELIAL	(False) LION PRINCE of the NORTH	ON THE EARTH	MOON, EARTH MOTHER GODS (Buto, Shu, Mehueret, Isis)	Mesthap/Hap/ Hapi – with an Ape head
APPOLLYON ABBADDON	LUCIFERIC PRINCE of the EAST	IN THE AIR (In Celtic known as Lugh)	SUN-GOD (Bast, Min, Osiris, Ra)	Taumutef/ Duamutef – with a Jackal head
THE BEAST HELLHOUND	SATANIC PRINCE of the SOUTH	UNDER THE EARTH (The Fire Kingdom)	TERROR, WAR, BATTLE GODS (Nekhebet. Sekhmet)	Akeset/Amset/ Imsety with a Human Head
LEVIATHAN	SERPENT or DRAGON PRINCE of the WEST	IN THE WATER	BLOODLUST, UNDERWORLD, DESTRUCTION GODS (Ament, Hathor, Neith, Anubis, Temu, Sebek Nephthys)	Qebhsennuf/ Qebhsmuf – with a Hawk Head

TABEL 3: PRINCIPALITIES / PRINCES AS SEEN IN OCCULTISM & EGYPTIAN MYTHOLOGY⁶⁴

⁶⁴ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. – With permission

4.2.1 Belial - The Devil – False Lion⁶⁵ - The Satanic Prince Of The North

Belial is the prince of iniquities

This authority is in control of all occult and magical art and the main force behind the practice of metaphysics in the world. Belial is responsible for the development of all instances and lodgings of Mystical nature, for example Rosicrucian and Freemasonry. Some of these occults belong to up to a thousand secret organisations because they can astral (Astral projection) to any place in the world within seconds.

Satan, Belial, Paimon and others work together to form false prophetic churches, for example the White Garment Churches in West-Africa. Their “agents” which are present in every church, make use of a person’s inherent need for the supernatural to pull people in (especially in Africa), to recruit members by means of magic.

Belial opens the future for the fortune tellers, astrologists and “soothsayers”. (He is the Prince behind the Pharaoh’s who stood against Moses. One must remember they did miracles then and can still do it today through Belial and the Darkness. The Egyptians were very experienced in the Occult). Belial encourages people to combine magic and yoga together with their worship. He works a lot of the time with Paimon, Arion, Marine and Leviathan to promote these evil agents. Belial is responsible to bring intellectualism into worship.

⁶⁵ Brand, Prof Dr Connie M.J. (2016) *Spiritual Warfare Volume III – Satan in Context: Expounding the Hierarchy and Strategies of the Demonological Kingdom of Darkness*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

Belial misleads people to believe a lie on the basis of how it sounds for their understanding. He is very crafty with this tactic – come against him in Christian warfare, for people who are caught by Intellectualism, in Jesus Christ's name.

Belial mixes light and darkness to a greyness and makes everything worthless; e.g. authority, faith, life, spiritual growth, position with Three-One-God, marriage. Belial work on emotions/rage, attacks mind/thoughts, destroys a person's finances, makes money worthless and break down a person's business. He destroys the intellect of a person.

The best defence against Belial is prayer, praise, worship and faith.

4.2.2 Satan: The Hellhound/The Animal⁶⁶

The Satanic Prince of the South

According to the Word in Revelation the influence of The Animal at the End of Time will increase on a massive scale in order to mislead people and to bring on blood shedding, false worship and destruction. He is very evil.

When ye therefore shall see the abomination of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet, stand in the holy place, (whoso readeth, let him understand:) Then let them which be in Judaea flee into the mountains: Let him which is on the housetop not come down to take any thing out of his house: Neither let him which is in the field return

⁶⁶ Brand, Prof Dr Connie M.J. (2016) *Spiritual Warfare Volume III – Satan in Context: Expounding the Hierarchy and Strategies of the Demonological Kingdom of Darkness*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

back to take his clothes. And woe unto them that are with child, and to them that give suck in those days! But pray ye that your flight be not in the winter, neither on the sabbath day: For then shall be great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the world to this time, no, nor ever shall be. And except those days should be shortened, there should no flesh be saved: but for the elect's sake those days shall be shortened.

Matthew 24:15-22 (KJV)

Also read Revelation 13:1-8 and Revelation 17:8-11. His number is 666 and he is able to transform into 666 different forms. It is interesting that the evil spirits of the Darkness can change into a large variety of creatures but NOT in the form of a DOVE.

And the word of the LORD came unto me, saying, Son of man, set thy face against Gog, the land of Magog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal, and prophesy against him, And say, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I am against thee, O Gog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal: And I will turn thee back, and put hooks into thy jaws, and I will bring thee forth, and all thine army, horses and horsemen, all of them clothed with all sorts of armour, even a great company with bucklers and shields, all of them handling swords: Persia, Ethiopia, and Libya with them; all of them with shield and helmet: Gomer, and all his bands; the house of Togarmah of the north quarters, and all his bands: and many people with thee. Be thou prepared, and prepare for thyself, thou, and all thy company that are assembled unto thee, and be thou a guard unto them. After many days thou shalt be visited: in the latter years thou shalt come into the land that is brought back from the sword, and is gathered out of many people, against the mountains of Israel, which have been always waste: but it is brought forth out of the nations, and they shall dwell safely all of them. Thou shalt ascend and come like a storm, thou shalt be like a cloud to cover the land, thou, and all thy bands, and many people with thee. Thus saith the Lord GOD; It shall also come to pass, that at the same time shall things come into thy mind, and thou shalt think an evil thought: And thou shalt say, I will go up to the land of unwallled villages; I will go to them that are at rest, that dwell safely, all of them

dwelling without walls, and having neither bars nor gates, To take a spoil, and to take a prey; to turn thine hand upon the desolate places that are now inhabited, and upon the people that are gathered out of the nations, which have gotten cattle and goods, that dwell in the midst of the land. Sheba, and Dedan, and the merchants of Tarshish, with all the young lions thereof, shall say unto thee, Art thou come to take a spoil? hast thou gathered thy company to take a prey? to carry away silver and gold, to take away cattle and goods, to take a great spoil? Therefore, son of man, prophesy and say unto Gog, Thus saith the Lord GOD; In that day when my people of Israel dwelleth safely, shalt thou not know it? And thou shalt come from thy place out of the north parts, thou, and many people with thee, all of them riding upon horses, a great company, and a mighty army: And thou shalt come up against my people of Israel, as a cloud to cover the land; it shall be in the latter days, and I will bring thee against my land, that the heathen may know me, when I shall be sanctified in thee, O Gog, before their eyes. Thus saith the Lord GOD; Art thou he of whom I have spoken in old time by my servants the prophets of Israel, which prophesied in those days many years that I would bring thee against them? And it shall come to pass at the same time when Gog shall come against the land of Israel, saith the Lord GOD, that my fury shall come up in my face. For in my jealousy and in the fire of my wrath have I spoken, Surely in that day there shall be a great shaking in the land of Israel; So that the fishes of the sea, and the fowls of the heaven, and the beasts of the field, and all creeping things that creep upon the earth, and all the men that are upon the face of the earth, shall shake at my presence, and the mountains shall be thrown down, and the steep places shall fall, and every wall shall fall to the ground. And I will call for a sword against him throughout all my mountains, saith the Lord GOD: every man's sword shall be against his brother. And I will plead against him with pestilence and with blood; and I will rain upon him, and upon his bands, and upon the many people that are with him, an overflowing rain, and great hailstones, fire, and brimstone. Thus will I magnify myself, and sanctify myself; and I will be known in the eyes of many nations, and they shall know that I am the LORD.

Ezekiel 38:1-23 (KJV)

The Anti-Christ's army is from the ten powers which make up the Old Roman Empire area. Hungary, Bulgaria and Romania make up these lands. The fall of the Berlin wall was a sign of the coming time of the Animal.

At present he is busy setting up his prophets and religious systems. Their purpose is to set up the biggest deception that the human race has ever experienced.

Multitudes, who will see the signs and wonders in the last days, will be misled, especially the Western people, because they have not been exposed to the counterfeit wonders like some African churches.

And that no man might buy or sell, save he that had the mark, or the name of the beast, or the number of his name. Here is wisdom. Let him that hath understanding count the number of the beast: for it is the number of a man; and his number is Six hundred threescore and six.

Revelation 13:17-18 (KJV)

And the first went, and poured out his vial upon the earth; and there fell a noisome and grievous sore upon the men which had the mark of the beast, and upon them which worshipped his image.

Revelation 16:2 (KJV)

And the beast was taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image. These both were cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone.

Revelation 19:20 (KJV)

Those (human Agents of Satan) who travelled astral to the spiritual plane where the Animal lives know to describe him as a fat, red 'MAN' who sits on a throne with the appearance of a gorilla, but his symbol in the Occult is a leopard.

His tasks are:

- According to the Word of God to terrorise the earth during the last days before Jesus Christ comes to recover his Kingdom.
- The Animal will come as a big master of deception in 2 areas:
 - “Ecclesiastical” System - He will create a system for Satan-worship. Those who resist will be killed. This system has already started everywhere in the world – the same as with Bible Prophecy one know the time is soon.
 - Government of Political System – he will use the Antichrist to organise a force to attack Jerusalem. He will rule politics by controlling the World-monetary power and food control. (Daniel 7)

Tasks inspired by him:

- * Prevent prayer
- * Prevent Bible study
- * Prevent doing good things for others
- * Prevent driving force / causing passivity
- * Causing depression
- * Causing spiritual sickness
- * Causing suicide
- * Freemasonry

4.2.3 Abaddon⁶⁷ - the Satanic Prince of the East

The meaning of the name Apollyon and Abaddon is “eternal destruction”. In Hebrew the name is Abaddon; and in Greek it is Apollyon.

Abaddon is a big, black, very smelly demon (his presence can be smelt during the deliverance of homosexuality). In Africa he is sometimes called the polluting demon. He is the power behind the construction and establishment of discotheques and clubs all over the world, where sexual immorality is practised and promoted. He is the Prince, responsible for the invention of the ‘strobe light’ which is used in these establishments, for the distribution of drugs through the air conditioners and other methods of drug distribution, alcohol addiction in these places in the world of *pleasure* - also the satanic ‘rock concerts’ where altar calls are done for Satan.

It is very important to know that Satan’s “main goal” with mankind is the destruction of their innocence.

Abaddon works on the same principles through the:

- Confusion of thoughts
- Scattering of thoughts
- Create doubts
- Deception
- Strife and quarrels

⁶⁷ Brand, Prof Dr Connie M.J. (2016) *Spiritual Warfare Volume III – Satan in Context: Expounding the Hierarchy and Strategies of the Demonological Kingdom of Darkness*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

- Breaking up of families
- Breaking up family bonds
- Luring a person into the occult
- Addiction – drugs, alcohol, sex and power

Even though it is said that Abaddon has the same name as Appolyon, his functions come in line with those of Leviatan the Dragon from the west. Satan gives his name to multiple forces to mislead and confuse the believer. One should be lead by Holy Spirit with the specific names, as believers should know that Abbadon works with the Murder Spirits and Bloodshed; Molec; Marduk (dragon); Nimrod; Thor; Odin; Koki; Grendle (Troll); Athena; Mars; Valhalla; Morrigen; Ice Giants. The last 12 names operates under the Principalities of War.

Astarte, Dagon, Hades, Hecate and 3 phases of Hecate work with Leviatan; the Grimm Reaper (Janus, Janvir); and Khush – the god of confusion.

4.2.3.1 Abaddon The Destroyer⁶⁸

His main goal is to poison the human race – especially Christians and to make them unholy and therefore unfit to stand before God. When he has made the Christian unholy, that person is powerless because he is alienated from God and his prayer life is non existing. Abaddon restrains Christians from repenting when they have sinned and are not in fellowship with God.

⁶⁸ Brand, Prof Dr Connie M.J. (2016) *Spiritual Warfare Volume III – Satan in Context: Expounding the Hierarchy and Strategies of the Demonological Kingdom of Darkness*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

On top of everything he holds such a person in a state of ongoing sin because the person blames God, or his nearest, for what happened, he can't see his own faults and alienates himself from Jesus Christ, his strength, and helper. A person who isn't strengthened by the Holy Spirit is spiritually neutralised and is no threat for the Dark Kingdom. Helplessness, futility, aggression, worthlessness and passivity are some of the many features of this pollution.

Abaddon works with Satan to poison thoughts and manipulate actions and contributes towards the bad habits that take root in Christians, which they battle to get rid of. He cultivates; adultery, fornication, incest, homosexuality, bestiality, pornography, paedophilia.

Furthermore, Abaddon is the authority responsible for alcoholism. He wants a person to not have control of his own will and understanding; here he works with Bacchus (lustful pleasure god) and Hordes from the Darkness. If these abovementioned powers are successful, the victim is an open target for control and manipulation by other dark forces including sex and drugs.

Abaddon sends the powers of lust and addiction to:

- get the person in a dirty and unclean condition before God,
- infect the thoughts, understanding, will and emotions, needs and desires, eventually infecting the spirit and soul with a Spirit of lust and addiction – totally diverted from the Triune God, for example: sex = nymphomania
alcohol = alcoholism cocaine = drug addiction
- Abaddon focus on bloodlines and territory as a 'right' to possess and control a person (such a person has trouble thinking about God).

Abaddon's aim is to enslave a person with multiple demons of slavery and uses this enslavery to let the spirits of "Rock Music and Drugs" (also Christian rap music) and "Prostitution and drugs" loose. Abaddon controls +- 50,000 evil spirits which he sends out against the people on a mission called "NO MERCY". He works primarily with the powers of Asmodee and Mammon and they control the world by, financial markets, sex, and "greed". Abaddon is also responsible for "back stabbing" and "Dog eat Dog" attitude in companies and organisations.

It is important to note that Abaddon influence Christians and make them unhappy and unsatisfied with their belongings, marriage/marital partner/friend/children/relationships, work and working conditions and ministries. Therefore, a person can concede to a more materialistic outlook in place of the spiritual principles which one have learnt from Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit.

If ye then be risen with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God. Set your affection on things above, not on things on the earth.

Colossians 3:1-2 (KJV)

If a person violates the abovementioned principle, he won't be able to hear the Holy Spirit's voice for guidance. Another aim of Abaddon is to get Christians to spend money on things they don't need, by which they will come under the control of Mammon in terms of "the climb of the corporate ladder" with all the godless potholes which will cohere.

As this cycle progresses, man will find that he has less time for God and his family. Workaholics - craving for wealth and power can lead to marriage

breakups, alcoholism, and so on. Abaddon is also responsible for “gluttony” and Lusts of the flesh – work through stomach and sex organs.

It is important to know that Abaddon can’t force a person to do something that he does not want to do, but only through pressure he can get one to concede. To know the Word of God will help the person “to flee temptation”. If man sinned, he must confess it immediately (and repent), and if there is already a stronghold, the person needs to be delivered. By making a quality decision to live in obedience to God’s Word a person can prevent Abaddon from putting the works from hell in his path. A believer should pursue a life of sanctification and stay in fellowship with God Almighty.

***I am the vine, ye are the branches: He that abideth in me, and I in him,
the same bringeth forth much fruit: for without me ye can do nothing.
John 15:5 (KJV)***

4.2.4 Apollyon⁶⁹ - The Satanic Prince Of the East

Apollyon is a Devilish Prince of the East and he is known as a bearer of the light.

His primary work is to get people not to serve God by the preventing, combating and standing against true worship of the Father, Son and Holy Spirit.

He is also known as:

⁶⁹ Brand, Prof Dr Connie M.J. (2016) *Spiritual Warfare Volume III – Satan in Context: Expounding the Hierarchy and Strategies of the Demonological Kingdom of Darkness*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

- Angel of the light
- Wandering spirit
- Lying spirit
- He exchanges light and darkness around
- He causes sins as well
- No guilty feelings and
- Pagan religion and
- Causes FEAR and
- Causes sickness
- He is a deceiver and the Father of falsehood

It is important to know that he is very active today in the promotion and implementing of false religions. Never before in human history were there more false religions as what one experience now. Apollyon has a mass of special serving demons who specialise in leading people to false religion and worship.

As a result of doctrines he causes church-splitting and does the ground-breaking work to bring false doctrines into churches – as well as into the body of Christ, the Real Church. Apollyon is primarily responsible for the “doctrines of demons (devils)”

An area where Apollyon works very hard is commitment. He prevents Christians from making a decision for the Triune God and to keep it. (This work is very subtle, his serving demons will react to the slightest confession that a person or others will make about their relationship with the Lord, or the Church or their nearest or their ministry.)

He will attack the unit and commitment of the Body of Christ, with regards to vision – if there is no spiritual warfare against Apollyon he will destroy the church or person, by destroying the commitment and vision – he must be bound by name.

Verily I say unto you, Whatsoever ye shall bind on earth shall be bound in heaven: and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven.

Matthew 18:18 (KJV)

And I will give unto thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth shall be bound in heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven.

Matthew 16:19 (KJV)

Apollyon prevents, stands against and destroys financial support and promises to church and ministry – here he works with Mammon. A method which he uses in the previously mentioned is to encourage strife and discord and disagreement in the church or group so the people are too discouraged to give (tithe and donations). He will, for example, put spirits of gossip and nosy people, troublemakers as well as “twisters and turners” to work to say for example: “Did you see the pastor’s wife has got another new outfit on? Praise the Lord, then they don’t need my money.”

Apollyon is still very busy sending demons against Christians to keep them spiritually dry and unable to pray. He nurtures and establishes sin and spiritual haughtiness and develops criticism in the Body of Christ. If there is haughtiness and pride, this breaks the unity in the true children of God because the Holy

Spirit cannot work where the Body of Christ is in disharmony and broken. (Church leaders and ministers must realise Apollyon is the number one Dark Power to pray against, by name, in the Name of Jesus Christ.)

Apollyon is the cause of arguments about trifling, jealousy, pride, arrogance and stupidity – he is set on eternal destruction of one's life, marriage and family and service. ("Spirit of disunity" = spirit of disagreement and spirit of discord)

Apollyon works a lot with the two Powers, Baäl and Ashtaroth (between the three, there are about 50 legions of demonic angels at their disposal.) This Authority's primary goal is to keep people away from the Triune God, to lead them into idolatry - anything which is more important than man's Creator is an idol, for example, money, status, sex, honour, sport, music, profession, calling, wife and child, and so on.

His effort is twofold namely to get people into Hell and to prevent people from doing anything for God Almighty (think about all peoples good intentions!)

Previous members of the Dark Kingdom have said that Apollyon has erected about 120 false religions on earth (circa 5 B.C.). The Word refers repeatedly to two other forces working together with Apollyon that are responsible for false religions and idolatry, especially Baäl and Ashtaroth.

Apollyon is a "Greek" Prince and was well known as a very prominent and feared Greek god. In the depictions and images in Greek mythology, he has the appearance of being enormous and fearsome, dressed in iron.

He was in control of the muses, art, drama, literature, music, mimic and was also an orator.

4.2.5 Leviathan⁷⁰ - The Satanic Prince Of the West

Leviathan is the Prince of the West, the head aborter of lives, also known as the shriker (executioner spirit).

He is also a water spirit that work with Asmodee and Marine. He was revealed by God in Isaiah 27:1. He is referred to as a dragon or a monster of the sea.⁷¹

In that day the Lord with his sore and great and strong sword shall punish leviathan the piercing serpent, even leviathan that crooked serpent; and he shall slay the dragon that is in the sea.

Isaiah 27:1 (KJV)

Canst thou draw out leviathan with an hook? or his tongue with a cord which thou lettest down?

Job 41:1 (KJV)

Now the serpent was more subtil than any beast of the field which the Lord God had made. And he said unto the woman, Yea, hath God said, Ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden?

Genesis 3:1 (KJV)

⁷⁰ Brand, Prof Dr Connie M.J. (2016) Spiritual Warfare Volume III – Satan in Context: Expounding the Hierarchy and Strategies of the Demonological Kingdom of Darkness. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

⁷¹ Spirit of Leviathan (<http://www.thelordmybanner.com/spirit-of-leviathan/>)

Leviathans' main demonic influence is spiritual pride and blocking Deliverance thus keeping people in bondage. This evil, demonic spirit of pride, manipulates and controls the masses of this world. He is doing this by:

- Confusing the mind and scattering thoughts = Kisieme (runaway spirit) & Vagabond spirit
- “Me, myself and I” - pride and arrogance
- Doubt and misleading
- Causes disunity, division, twist and fighting
- Break up families, marriage and family ties
- Occultism
- Addictions, drugs, smoking, alcohol
- Spirit of Python
- Spirit of Jezebel
- Cold bloodedness – murder
- Abort everything in one's life: Finances, children, barrenness, love, relationships, etc.

Leviathan attack with his tongue, it is a lying, critical tongue. He attacks out of his mouth with lies, gossip, accusation, criticism, fault-finding, and slander.⁷²

4.2.5.1 Jezebel – witchcraft spirit

The Jezebel spirit is according to the article⁷³ *The Jezebel Spirit and How it Operates* “the nastiest, evil, most disgusting, cunning, and seductive spirit in

⁷² Spirit of Leviathan (<http://www.thelordmybanner.com/spirit-of-leviathan/>)

Satan's hierarchy" and is responsible for infiltrating and destroying Christianity by tearing down churches, pastors, and different Christian ministries. Another area of attack is breaking up many marriages, friendships, companies. Jezebel come to kill and is getting people to commit cold-blooded murders and suicide.

Some of the ways Jezebels operates include:

- To kill off the true prophets (Baal prophets)
- Come to kill: spiritually, emotionally and even physical and sexually
- Control, dominate, manipulate, intimidate, seducing spirit
- Rule
- Selfish – self
- Inherited through bloodlines, deep wounds in utero
- Cold bloodedness, unapproachable, emotional abort
- Independent spirit
- Strife, fighting, disturb peace, rebellion
- Sexual perversion
- Inability to show emotions – bound in the womb
- Performance orientated
- Siren spirit, seduction of men

⁷³ The Jezebel Spirit and How it Operates (<http://www.bible-knowledge.com/the-jezebel-spirit-and-how-it-operates/>)

4.2.5.2 Witchcraft – Athalia – Lilith⁷⁴

Leviathan operate strongly together with the spirit of witchcraft, Jezebel and Agab,

- To manipulate and control; Confuse the mind and thoughts – make everything grey and remove all borders; Mind control; Fearless spirit; No spirit of discernment
- The root of this is in the womb:
 - At Conception – Leviathan
 - At Birth – Astarte
 - Placenta – Lesbos – homosexuality
- Agab – paralysis – Trance – Hermes

To become free from these evil forces one need to repent leave the past behind through Deliverance and have an intimate relationship with Jesus Christ.

Humble yourselves therefore under the mighty hand of God, that he may exalt you in due time: Casting all your care upon him; for he careth for you. Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour: Whom resist stedfast in the faith, knowing that the same afflictions are accomplished in your brethren that are in the world. But the God of all grace, who hath called us unto his eternal glory by Christ Jesus, after that ye have suffered a while, make you perfect, stablish, strengthen, settle you.

1 Peter 5:6-10 (KJV)

⁷⁴ Brand, Prof Dr Connie M.J. (2016) Spiritual Warfare Volume III – Satan in Context: Expounding the Hierarchy and Strategies of the Demonological Kingdom of Darkness. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

4.2.6 Satan's Seven High Ranking Principalities Of Hell As Taught To Witches

- 1) "**Rege** - He is the General of the occult and deals with drugs such as marihuana, hashish, cocaine, speed, LSD, peyote and mescaline. These are drugs of sorcery. They attack the mind and open it up for a demon to enter. Rege is also responsible for seeing that music is hexed."
- 2) "**Larz** - He is the demon of Sexual lust, homosexuality, bi-sexuality, adultery, and other such sexual pleasures. Our daily news is filled with sex and sexual perversions. Pornography, both "hard core" and soft core" can be found in any small to large town and city throughout our land and television air waves are full of movies and sitcoms that liberally use sex to entice people to watch. There are a lot of convicted people in prison for of all sorts of sexual crimes, from rape to child molestation. 'Adults Only' 'XXX-Movies' can be rented at any Video and internet is crawling with such "Adult Only" pornography.
- 3) "**Bacchus** - Demon of *addictions*, such as [on] drugs, smoking, and alcohol." Satan can control a person for his diabolical, perverted ends when the person is in bondage through some sort of addiction.
- 4) "**Pan** - Demon of the mind." He causes mental illnesses, depression, suicide, nerves, and rejection. Very often when a person becomes depressed, or feels rejected, he'll turn to drugs or something else that will eventually become addictive? See how one demon will cause a person to go to another? Pan causes one to become depressed, so that a person go to Rege, the demon of the occult and drugs, and he in turn sends the person to Bacchus, the demon of addiction. It's all one big circle in which they try to keep one trapped forever.

- 5) **"Medit -** Demon of hate, murder, killing, war, jealousy, envy, and gossip." This sounds like our TV Soap Operas, both daytime and night, does it not? This demon fills our daily news with murder and mayhem, and is very active in our daily lives today. One wonder if the activist who are fighting domestic abuse and violence ever contemplated that they may be fighting a demonic host. Again, when this demonic division cooperates with the divisions promoting addiction, drugs, alcohol, mental illness, and the like, one get a most powerful group of problems, of a disastrous nature!
- 6) **"Set -** Demon of Death. There really IS such a thing." Wars, terrorism, and murder are raging throughout the world.

And I looked, and behold a pale horse: and his name that sat on him was Death, and Hell followed with him. And power was given unto them over the fourth part of the earth, to kill with sword, and with hunger, and with death, and with the beasts of the earth.

Revelation 6:8 (KJV)

This Twentieth Century has been the most violent and bloody in world history and almost all the massive genocides have occurred this century. The return of Israel back to her land started the End of the Age time clock ticking, also in this century [1948, to be exact]. This demon marches with the armies of this world, with the guerrillas in the jungles, and with the inner city gangs. This demon lurks in the darkness of night, waiting to strike without warning, without mercy, and without any reason. "Set" is his name; Death is his game.

- 7) **"Christian Demon -** This particular demon has no set name. He is so powerful that most witches won't even bother him ... Getting Christians to talk about each other through gossiping and causing strife within the church and among the brethren ... He will also try to weaken a Christian's walk

with the Lord by making him content, fail to live up to church commitments, such as tithing, soul-winning, church participation, and much more."⁷⁵

4.3 Powers

The Greek word in the Strong's Concordance for "Powers" is *exousia* meaning power to act or authority⁷⁶. "Powers" or "strongholds" are kinds of evil and demons assigned to sins. Ephesians 2:2 "*according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience*" tells us that they have human beings through whom they are operative. This would include all high-ranking, evil supernatural powers and the power of sin and evil operation in the world.⁷⁷ In other words, these demons in Satan's kingdom have power over kingdoms, principalities and empires and the authority to carry out his orders⁷⁸.

There is no place on earth where Satan does not have these evil powers in place. As a result of the degree that people are sinning and living selfishly, Satan is active in this world. Satan's attack on the physical is just a diversion but his actual target is the soul of man. He and his demons have precisely the amount of authority that is given to them when people live in opposition to God.

As seen in Luke 8:30 "*And Jesus asked him, saying, What is thy name? And he said, Legion: because many devils were entered into him.*" a person can be filled with

⁷⁵ The Seven Principalities Of Satan's Rebellious Kingdom (<http://www.cuttingedge.org/news/n1050.html>)

⁷⁶ Strong's Concordance - 1849. *exousia* (<http://biblehub.com/greek/1849.htm>)

⁷⁷ Principalities-Powers-Rulers of Darkness-Wickedness By Magdalene (http://www.battleinchrist.com/principalities_powers_world_rulers_of_darkness_spiritual_wickedness_in_spiritual_warfare.htm)

⁷⁸ At War Against The Big 4 By ACMTC Staff (<http://www.aggressivechristianity.net/articles/big4.htm>)

more than one demon or evil spirit. Satan uses “power assignments”, or demonic forces assigned according to the type of evil to which people open themselves to. This can be powers of greed, homosexuality, depression, fear, witchcraft, and so on. There can be as many powers as there are sins.⁷⁹

Countries, cities, people groups, families and individuals can have power assignments. The choices of thousands of individuals in a specific place, establish a power assignment of those particular sins. This can be in the current day and age or it can be traced back hundreds of years to a time when people were giving themselves over to a specific practice of evil there.

Principalities and powers are the one-third⁸⁰ of the angelic host who were banished with Lucifer and are called fallen angels. They still occupy a designated portion of the heavens and are territorially assigned over regions of the earth. There is reference to powers, principalities and rulers but sometime a principality can also be a ruler, exerting control over a human authority structure. A power could also be a principality, as in the case of those ruling over Romania. The same demon can have various functions. Many activities of the enemy are functions that intersect in the heavenlies.

There are three types of spiritual strongholds:

1. **Personal strongholds** of the mind that bind people in sinful mindsets and lifestyles.

⁷⁹ Brand, Prof Dr Connie M.J. (2014) *Spiritual Warfare Volume I – Identifying Satan as the Enemy of the God of the Bible*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

⁸⁰ Since Satan is referred to as a star which fell or was cast down to earth, and Revelation 12:4 says a third of the stars were cast out with him, then the conclusion is that the stars in Revelation 12 refer to fallen angels, fully one third of the heavenly host. (<https://answers.yahoo.com/question/index?qid=20120611201924AAyT4aS>)

2. **Cultural strongholds** or values in our society, that is in agreement with darkness. Cultural strongholds are agreements with Satan's values in our society at large. There are many ways in which people agree with him and keep those evil values entrenched.
3. **Cosmic strongholds**, which are demonic powers and principalities in the air, are demonic angels or demonic hosts. Paul describes them in his letter to the Ephesians: *"For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this age, against spiritual hosts of wickedness in the heavenly places"* (Ephesians 6:12).

Whole geographic regions can be affected by the same lies and assaulted by the same demonic darkness that is manifest. One has to pull down and dismantle spiritual strongholds by agreeing with God and His Word and by "casting down arguments"—renouncing the lies—that are against the knowledge of God, His Word and His will. In this way one breaks any false agreements with Satan.

The Holy Spirit will reveal how Satan is working in any given place or situation. One dismantles these strongholds by agreeing with God and renouncing Satan's lies through our prayers and actions.⁸¹ To come against Satan's works in specific prayer, the Lord may lead to pray against a principality over a country, or against a spirit attacking families, or against a demon keeping people in atheism. Simple obedience in prayer is far more important than attempts to make elaborate categories of the spirit world.⁸²

⁸¹ Praying Down Powers and Principalities By Mike Bickle (<http://www.charismamag.com/spirit/spiritual-warfare/21551-praying-down-powersprincipalities?showall=&start=1>)

4.4 Fallen Angels

How did Lucifer hope to persuade the angels to join with him in his rebellion? What did he promise them? To answer this question, one has to fully understand and recognize that evil has an element of delusion in its nature.

And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie: That they all might be damned who believed not the truth, but had pleasure in unrighteousness.

2 Thessalonians 2:11-12 (KJV)

Evil is something that even the wisest and most brilliant dare not play with. Jesus, in His statement concerning the defection of Satan, indicated that the devil deceived the angels. *“He abode not in the truth because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own; for he is a liar and the father of it.” (John 8:44).* Satan lied to the angels at the time of his fall as he later did to Eve in the Garden.

By believing his own lies, Lucifer, embraced the delusion that he had foreseen everything, that he had made provision for everything, contingency and could not fail. Even today, Satan and the fallen angels battle on in desperation and refuse to concede defeat, even though, the reality of their impending doom, must be increasingly evident.

⁸² Brand, Prof Dr Connie M.J. (2016) *Spiritual Warfare Volume I – Identifying Satan as the Enemy of the God of the Bible*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

Therefore rejoice, ye heavens, and ye that dwell in them. Woe to the inhabitants of the earth and of the sea! for the devil is come down unto you, having great wrath, because he knoweth that he hath but a short time.

Revelation 12:12 (KJV)

“What are fallen angels? According to Scripture fallen angels are invisible, supernatural, angelic, spirits created by God. Satan employs them as his immoral agents and messengers. It is possible that one-third of the heavenly angels sided with Satan. When Satan fell, this vast company of angels fell with him and they were cast out of heaven to the earth.”⁸³

And his tail drew the third part of the stars of heaven, and did cast them to the earth: and the dragon stood before the woman which was ready to be delivered, for to devour her child as soon as it was born.

Revelation 12:4 (KJV)

In Scripture Peter tells us that God did not spare certain angels which sinned but cast them down to hell (Greek “*Tartarus*”) (2 Peter 2:4).

For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment;

2 Peter 2:4 (KJV)

Jude 6 declares the angels who sinned to be “bound with everlasting chains. It is clear that some angels are bound in various places of the earth, and other angels are loose (Revelation 9:14-15; 2 Peter 2:4), able to appear as angels of light (2 Corinthians 11:14-15). Michael and his angels will eventually cast Satan and his angels out of heaven. (Revelation 12:7-9). The fallen angels will be

⁸³ Fallen Angels (<http://www.allaboutgod.com/fallen-angels-faq.htm>)

judged by the saints (1 Corinthians 6:3) and finally, the devil and his angels will be cast into the Lake of Fire (Matthew 25:41; 2 Peter 2:4; Jude 6).⁸⁴

Conner writes:⁸⁵ “Expositors are divided over the particular sin of the angels mentioned in Peter and Jude as well as over the time when it took place. The two theories are as follows:

- Because these angels were not content to remain in their God-appointed positions and responsibilities they fell with Satan in the eternities past. Their sin of pride and rebellion caused them to be cast down to Tartarus and now they await the Day of Judgement after which they will be cast into the eternal Lake of Fire with their leader, Satan.”

For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment;

2 Peter 2:4 (KJV)

- As a result of the co-habiting between the angels and “the daughters of men”, unnatural offspring or giants (the Hebrew word for giants is “nephilim” which means “fallen ones”, Genesis 6:1-4; Numbers 13:1-33) were birthed. Scripture suggested that this was “the strange flesh” that is spoken of in 2 Peter 2:4 and Jude 6. The estate and habitation these angels left was heaven, they came to earth and assumed human bodies for such abominable sins.

⁸⁴ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p108

⁸⁵ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p108

Jesus said that angels neither marry nor are given in marriage therefore, this is a main objections used against the latter theory (Luke 20:35-36; Matthew 22:30; Mark 12:25) and those who hold the first theory, explain away the latter by saying that “the Sons of God” were the sons of Seth, of the godly line, who intermarried with “the daughters of men” or the ungodly line of Cain. The student is referred to those works which deal more fully with both theories. The angels that did sin are bound in Tartarus awaiting the great White Throne Judgement, while other evil angels are still loose doing their work in the earth.⁸⁶

And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.

Revelation 12:9 (KJV)

The next section will look at demons, and their origin is different than that of fallen angels. They are terrestrial spirits, confined to the face of the earth. Demons are unclean spirits who primarily invade and corporeally inhabit the bodies of men or women - they literally “walk” and seek the resting place of a human body.

4.5 Demon Spirits

Where does evil come from?” is another related question that seems to be obscured right along with this Satanic mystique. Christians have often been deceived into attributing evil to God Himself, because clear-cut teaching on the origin of evil spirits has been lacking. The Bible testifies of God as a loving,

⁸⁶ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p108

benevolent Father and as one look into demon spirits, one will see that God's good intentions and His creation of free will have been perverted by evil spirits. They have cleverly deceived people into believing that God is responsible for the evil in the world. They have intentionally been kept out of sight and beyond explanation by their evil spirit manifestations of "smoke and mirrors," causing mankind to blame God for the evil caused by the evil spirits.

A truly observant, discerning person should not ask the question "Do evil spirits actually exist?" The pitied fool who does not believe in the existence of evil spirits probably has a dog named "Lucky," who just "coincidentally" is missing.

People who want to succeed in life need to know about these creatures—not for sensational reasons, but for simple survival because evil spirits are real! The following information on the subject will help to identify evil spirits and their nature and origin, and will remove the mystique surrounding them. To increase one's knowledge on demons and evil spirits will also increase one's authority over them.⁸⁷

This inquiry into evil spirits cannot be dismissed as an insignificant matter by individuals who want to fully exercise and claim the authority that Jesus gave the believers (Matthew 10:1). God tells us in 2 Corinthians 2:11 that people are not to "be ignorant of Satan's devices." Believers are called as soldiers of the Lord (2 Timothy 2:3), and are actively wrestling against these unseen foes (Ephesians 6:12). One is further instructed in 1 Corinthians 9:26 to fight not as one that "beats the air," but to engage the prince of the power of the air

⁸⁷ Principalities, Powers and Demons. Their Differences, Their Origins and Our Authority Over Them
By Dale M Sides (<http://www.lmci.org/articles.cfm?Article=76>)

(Ephesians 2:2). Furthermore, Jesus is looking for overcomers (Luke 11:21; Revelation 3:21).⁸⁸

One should not give demons too much credit and attributed by considering demons to be fallen angels. The believer's main objectives will be accomplished when he realizes their proper identity: to shrink them down to proper size and thereby remove any fear of dealing with them. This objective will also help to emphasize the believer's ability to exercise his authority over the evil kingdom and bring deliverance to the captives.

The Christian must remember that Satan is the *father of lies* and the master of deception and there is a method behind his madness. By allowing the Christian world to accept that demons are fallen angels, coupled with a related lie that angels are superior to men, Satan has imposed a sentence of inferiority upon mankind. Through this deception he can make people think that demons are more powerful than they really are, and that they are more powerful than men. (Misinformation is a powerful weapon in warfare.) A major reason why this deception has been successful stems from not differentiating between the category of demons and the category of principalities and powers.

Concerning the origin of demon spirits, the four primary views are:

1. The most logical conclusion is that they are angels who fell with Satan, some of which are bound while others are still loose (Psalm 78:49).
2. That they are the disembodied spirits of a pre-Adamic race of beings, or some similar creation who fell when Satan and his angels fell. There is no

⁸⁸ Principalities, Powers and Demons. Their Differences, Their Origins and Our Authority Over Them
By Dale M Sides (<http://www.lmci.org/articles.cfm?Article=76>)

scriptural support for this view. The bible declares that Adam was the first man (1 Corinthians 15:45)

3. That they are the spirits of the unnatural union of angels (the Sons of God) and antediluvian women in the days of Noah (Genesis 6:1-6). There is no scriptural support for this view.⁸⁹
4. They are spirits of deceased wicked men; however, this cannot be, for the Scripture declares the unsaved dead are in Hades and not roaming the earth. (Psalm 9:17, Luke 16:23, Revelation 20:13)⁹⁰

The Bible does not specifically state their origin. They are persons without bodies and they have distinctive personalities, they have the ability to speak, think, act and no one is alike. (Matthew 8:29-31; Luke 4:35, 41; James 2:19). Demons want to be recognized by their names. Demons are real persons with characteristic attributes. They are spirit beings, are invisible and incorporeal, and manifest their nature and character through human beings. (Matthew 8:16; Luke 10:17, 20; Matthew 17:18; Luke 9:38-42). They do not want to be bothered but lie dormant until they are discovered.

The most distinctive thing of demons is they crave to occupy a body they are not satisfied until they are inside a body.⁹¹ The difference between demons and fallen angels seem to be that fallen angels do not seek to inhabit a human body, while demon spirits do. They prefer to occupy human bodies and it is even possible for them to inhabit animal bodies to express their destructive nature

⁸⁹ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p109

⁹⁰ Demons in the Bible – Different Types and How They Attack By Dr. Elmar Towns (<http://www.bible-sprout.com/articles/hell/demons>)

⁹¹ Prince, Derek - Video Spiritual warfare on earth - <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ZNp6DNQOOL0>

(Mark 5:1-20; Matthew 8:29; John 13:27).⁹² These demons are wicked, unclean, vicious and have power to derange both mind and body. In the Old Testament they were called the “familiar spirits” and “wizards” and “the seducing spirits” of whom Paul warned Timothy.⁹³

Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils;

1 Timothy 4:1 (KJV)

When they made the choice to side with Satan in his rebellion, they became his slaves, obligated to do his bidding. Thus the choice they made was really Satan’s, and through self-will they became slaves to his will (Matthew 12:22-30). They are numerous – In the Bible on one occasion a demon admitted to Jesus that his name was Legion, for “we are many” (Mark 5:9; Luke 8:30; Matthew 12:26-27). As God has legions of good angels at His command, so Satan has legions of demon spirits at his command.⁹⁴

Another attribute is that they are symbolized. God and His Kingdom are known by many symbols, so Satan and his hosts are symbolized various things. Each symbol brings out some aspect of their nature.

- As fowls of the air (Matthew 13:4,19).
- As unclean birds in a cage (Revelation 18:1-3).
- As unclean frogs (Revelation 16:13-14).

⁹² Conner, Kevin. J (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p109

⁹³ Larkin, Clarence (1918) Dispensational Truth or God’s Plan and Purpose in the Ages Glenside Pa, USA: Rev Clarence Larkin Est. p 113

⁹⁴ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p109

- As locusts from the bottomless pit (Revelation 9:1-10).
- As an army of horses and horsemen, with lion's heads and serpent's tails by which they torment mankind (Revelation 9:16-19).
- As serpents and vipers (Luke 3:7).

Demons are localized but not omnipresent and can only be at one place at a time. The demons indwelt the two men of the Gadarenes, and when they were expelled they indwelt the swine. In each case they were localized (Matthew 8:28–34; cf. Acts 16:16).

Demons are intelligent but not omniscient. Demons were aware of the identity of Jesus (Mark 1:24); they were also aware of their ultimate destiny (Matthew 8:29). They have an end, meaning that they can and will be destroyed. Paul refers to “doctrines of demons” (1 Timothy 4:1), indicating that they propagate their false teaching through their emissaries. They are not, however, omniscient or they would be like God; only God is omniscient.

Demons are powerful but not omnipotent. The man of the Gerasenes who was demon possessed could break shackles and chains; no one was able to bind him because of his unusual strength (Mark 5:3–4). The demon in the young boy has often cast him into the fire and into the water, trying to destroy him (Mark 9:22). Demon possession impaired a man's speech (Matthew 9:32) and kept a girl in cruel slavery (Matthew 15:22), yet demons are limited in their power; they cannot do the work of God (John 10:21).⁹⁵

⁹⁵ Enns, Paul P. (1997) *Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology*. USA, Chicago: Moody Press. p102

The two words most often used in the New Testament to refer to demons are “devils” and “spirits”. “The English word *devil*⁹⁶ is actually derived from the Greek word “*diabolos*, which means “slanderer” and has no direct relationship with “*daimonion*”. The word for demons⁹⁷ in the Greek language is “*daimon*”⁹⁸. The Greek word “*pneuma*” is translated “*spirit*” and is used of the Holy Spirit, the human spirit or of evil spirits. There are only one devil and many demons of like nature and character and they these wicked spirits are all under Satan’s control., but they are under authority to Jesus and His disciples.⁹⁹

4.5.1 Beëlzebub – Lord Of The Flies

He is the Great General in Satan’s kingdom; he is the prince of the demons and sends the forces of darkness to humans to confuse them.

He screams in a devilish language/rage.

It is enough for the disciple that he be as his master, and the servant as his lord. If they have called the master of the house Beelzebub, how much more shall they call them of his household?

Matthew 10:25 (KJV)

But when the Pharisees heard it, they said, This fellow doth not cast out devils, but by Beelzebub the prince of the devils.

Matthew 12:24 (KJV)

⁹⁶ Devil is actually derived from the Greek word “*diabolos*, which means “slanderer”

⁹⁷ Strong’s Concordance - 1140. daimonion (<http://biblehub.com/greek/1140.htm>)

⁹⁸ Prince, Derek (1998) They shall expel demons. UK: Derek Prince Ministries.

⁹⁹ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p109

He will not command to the NORTH, the SOUTH, the EAST and the WEST.

He controls everything that flies in the spirit world and is head of all the witches and wizards that fly at night in the spiritual realm. He is seen as one of the bodyguards of Satan (especially meetings) and is very wicked.

He is in control of the collection for the blood banks of Satan and like other high orders he lives only on blood. When a witch or wizard kills someone by witchcraft or occult methods, the blood gets taken to a spiritual witch coven where it gets transported to the Higher Witches of Level III, known as the ALPHA and OMEGA Order. When they have taken blood for their own use, the balance is given to Beëlzebub who gives it to Satan as a blood offer.

An important fact is that all human and spiritual beings from Level III Witchery and above do not eat human flesh, they only drink human blood. The lower witches and human Agents drink blood and also eat human flesh. According to a red-witch and wizard who were active in the Darkness for 48 years, said they drink blood to satisfy a craving. According to this converted red-witch, there are big blood banks in heaven where the blood gets transported to and stored in reservoirs. Similar information is received from converted Dark workers (Agents) all over the world.

Beëlzebub, as head demon of Satan in the collection of blood, is a specialist in destruction and loss of life. He uses his 'agents' to cause 'accidents' like bumper bashing, aeroplane disasters, explosions where there is massive loss of life.

In appearance Beëlzebub is half-man and half-horse similar to the mythological Centaur. Like Pegasus the winged horse, he also has wings but they are spider web-like and small. The human Agents who work with him claim that he can move through the air like lightning. He also gets seen with smoke and fire coming out his mouth like a dragon. His wings are also like those of a dragon (in place of the big white wings of a bird on Pegasus).

A very important fact is that Beëlzebub is the most destructive, cruel and frightening of all the powers. Because of this he is feared by all the other members of the Darkness (is this why he is appointed as Chief Commander of the Dark Powers?)

He sends the Powers of darkness to people and confuses them.

The best defence against Beëlzebub is to CUT HIS forces of command POWERS OFF!

4.6 Demon Possession

Charles Ryrie defines demon possession as “a demon residing in a person, exerting direct control and influence over that person, with certain derangement of mind and/or body.”¹⁰⁰ Clarence Larkin states that once demons have control over a human body, they can come and go at will.¹⁰¹

¹⁰⁰ Ryrie, Charles C. (1999) Basic Theology. USA, Chicago: Moody Press.

¹⁰¹ Larkin, Clarence (1920) Dispensational Truth. USA, Glenside, Pa: Rev. Clarence Larkin Est. p101

When the unclean spirit is gone out of a man, he walketh through dry places, seeking rest; and finding none, he saith, I will return unto my house whence I came out. And when he cometh, he findeth it swept and garnished. Then goeth he, and taketh to him seven other spirits more wicked than himself; and they enter in, and dwell there: and the last state of that man is worse than the first.

Luke 11:24-26 (KJV)

One needs to distinguish demon possession from demon influence or demon activity in relation to a person. In demon activity, the demon work from the outside and in demon possession it is from within. According to Ryrie, as per the definition above, a Christian cannot be possessed by a demon since he is indwelt by the Holy Spirit. However, a believer can be the target of demonic activity to such an extent that he may give the appearance of demon possession.”¹⁰²

According to the Bible, there was a great outbreak of demon activity and demon possession during Christ’s time on earth, no doubt in opposition to His Messiahship. The gospels abound with accounts of demon possessed people (Matthew 4:24; 8:16, 28, 33; 12:22; 15:22; Mark 1:32; 5:15, 16, 18; Luke 8:36; John 10:21). Leaders in the early church such as Justin Martyr and Tertullian make reference to demon possession as does the *Shepherd of Hermas*¹⁰³.

In his book, *Dispensational Truth*, Larkin further states that demons use demon possessed people as “instruments of unrighteousness” (Romans 6:13), for the proclamation of the “Doctrines of Devils,” (1 Timothy 4:1), and the teaching of

¹⁰² Ryrie, Charles C. (1999) Basic Theology. USA, Chicago: Moody Press.

¹⁰³ “The Shepherd of Hermas” was a religious literary work of the second and third centuries and was considered a valuable book by many early Christians. What is the Shepherd of Hermas and should it be in the Bible? (<https://gotquestions.org/Shepherd-of-Hermas.html>)

“Damnable Heresies.” (2 Peter 2:1). The effect of such use of the victim is not only unmoral, it is immoral.¹⁰⁴

Demon possession is evident in the change in nature, moral character and spiritual disposition of the possessed person. Frequently a different voice, a different educational level, or even a foreign language will reflect a difference in the affected person’s personality. The demon speaking through the man immediately recognized who Christ was.

And there was in their synagogue a man with an unclean spirit; and he cried out, Saying, Let us alone; what have we to do with thee, thou Jesus of Nazareth? art thou come to destroy us? I know thee who thou art, the Holy One of God.

Mark 1:23–24 (KJV)

This meant he had supernatural knowledge and intellectual power. Another symptom of demon possession was exhibited by the man in the country of the Gerasenes with his supernatural physical strength and ability to break shackles and chains.¹⁰⁵

Who had his dwelling among the tombs; and no man could bind him, no, not with chains: Because that he had been often bound with fetters and chains, and the chains had been plucked asunder by him, and the fetters broken in pieces: neither could any man tame him.

Mark 5:3–4 (KJV)

Eight aspects of demon-domination in children may be clearly seen in the story of the epileptic boy in Matthew 17:14-21.

¹⁰⁴ Larkin, Clarence (1920) Dispensational Truth. USA, Glenside, Pa: Rev. Clarence Larkin Est. p101

¹⁰⁵ Enns, Paul P. (1997) Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology. USA, Chicago: Moody Press. p102

- Demons may afflict children with physical sicknesses – the father told Jesus his son was epileptic.
- Demons can prevent children from being able to control their own actions – the father said the demon has robbed his son of speech.
- Demons may physically harm children – the father told Jesus that the demon had often thrown the boy into the fire or water trying to kill the boy.
- Demons may defy the person trying to free a child from their control – the disciples were unable to release the boy, they and the father learned that *“Everything is possible for him who believes” (Mark 9:23)*
- Demons defile children by satisfying their own evil natures through them – the demon was a death and dumb spirit and did not speak to Jesus, therefore the boy was unable to speak.
- Demons can also make children perform, or show off – When the boy was brought to Jesus the demon put on a show, and the crows came running.
- Demons may continue to control a child until someone with discernment and faith in the authority of Christ drives them out – the evil spirit resisted no longer when Jesus commanded him to leave and never re-enter.
- Demons may induce symptoms of death when forced to leave¹⁰⁶ - *And the spirit cried, and rent him sore, and came out of him: and he was as one dead; insomuch that many said, He is dead. But Jesus took him by the hand, and lifted him up; and he arose. Mark 9:26-27 (KJV)*

¹⁰⁶ Gibson, Noel & Phyl (1992) Deliver our children from the evil one. Tonbridge Kent, England: Sovereign World. p133-134

4.6.1 The Nature of Demons

Demons are under the control of Satan and their names signify their evil work, which is the same as their leader. Demons are totally and morally depraved in character though there seems to be degrees of wickedness in them (Matthew 12:22-30).

Biblical references to evil spirits and their nature:¹⁰⁷

Devils - evil spirits, or servants of the Devil	Leviticus 17; Deuteronomy 32:17; Mark 1:34; 16:17
Evil Spirits	Judges 9:23; 1 Samuel 16:14, 23; Luke 7:21; 8:2; Acts 19:12-13; Matthew 15:22; Acts 5:16; Deuteronomy 32:17
Unclean Spirits - this title is used about twenty-one times to describe their impure nature	Zechariah 13:2; Matthew 10:1; 12:43; Mark 1:23-27; Acts 8:7; Revelation 16:13
Dumb Spirits	Luke 11:14; Mark 9:17; Matthew 9:32-34
Blind and Dumb Spirits	Matthew 12:22
Deaf and Dumb Spirits - dumbness, madness, epilepsy, seizures	Mark 9:25
Foul Spirits	Revelation 18:2; Mark 9:25
Lying Spirits – lies, flattery, profanity, insinuations, exaggeration	1 Kings 22:22-23; 2 Thessalonians 2:9-12
Spirit of Infirmary - colds, sinus, fungus, asthma, virus infections, arthritis	Luke 13:11

¹⁰⁷ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p110

Spirit of Divination - Spirit of Python, or Fortune telling enchanter, hypnotist	Acts 16:16; Acts 8:9
Seducing Spirits - Religious spirits which bring false doctrines, doctrines of devils. They sear the conscience, entice, allure, attract, tempt.	2 Timothy 4:1
Antichrist Spirits – imitates Christ, utters blasphemy, suppress ministry, bringing division in gatherings	1 John 4:3
Lunatic Spirits - Epileptic and suicidal spirits	Matthew 17:15-18; Mark 9:14-29
Spirit of Whoredom – love of the body, love of the world, love of money, idolatry	Hosea 4:12
Spirit of the World	1 Corinthians 2:12
Spirit of Error	1 John 4:6
Spirit of Fear - fear, fright, torment, horror, dread, faithless, terror	2 Timothy 1:7
Perverse Spirit – lust, error, fool, pervert the Gospel, snare, hate, despised	Isaiah 19:14
Familiar Spirit – diviner, enchanter (magician), witch or wizard, clairvoyant	1 Samuel 28:7-8
Spirit of bondage – they oppress, bruise	

TABLE 3: BIBLICAL REFERENCES TO EVIL SPIRITS AND THEIR NATURE

4.6.2 Characteristic Activities

“Demons cannot be seen by man but their presence can be recognized by certain characteristic actions. They are servants of Satan and their activities, is best described in John 10:10, “*The thief comes to steal...to kill and to destroy*”. The three main purposes assigned to them by Satan are, to torment and afflict mankind; secondly to keep them from knowing Christ as Saviour; and thirdly to keep mankind from serving Christ effectively. These spirits attack mankind spiritually, morally, mentally, physically; and emotionally. The following is a list of the things demons do under Satan’s control.

1. They **oppose** God's ministers (Matthew 13:19; 2 Corinthians 4:4).
2. They **pervert** the Word of God and seek to hinder the Gospel (1 Thessalonians 2:18).
3. They **enslave** their captives – when a person commits e.g. sexual sin, confesses it, but still have this intense desire to do it, even though he hated the sin – means he is enslaved (2 Timothy 2:26; 1 Timothy 3:7).
4. They **blind** the minds of unbelievers (2 Corinthians 4:4). Satan and his demons continue to influence the thinking of people through blinding their minds – he inhibits the ability to think or reason. This Scripture refers to unbelievers, but Satan can also influence the minds of believers. (2 Corinthians 11:3), by leading believers away from “the simplicity and purity of devotion to Christ.”¹⁰⁸
5. They **sow tares** among wheat (Matthew 13:39).
6. They **seduce** people. The Greek word “*pianos*”, translated “seduce” means that they rove (as tramps) and by implication they are imposters and misleads people. They persuade people to do evil, and seek to draw mankind aside from the (path; to lead astray, allure, tempt, corrupt, defraud and entice (1 Timothy 4:1; Mark 13:22; 1 John 2:26). A seducing spirit can cause people to be obsessed with a false idea, or doctrinal imbalance.
7. They **trouble** people (1 Samuel 16:14). The Hebrew word for “trouble” means “to make fearful afraid, to terrify” It speaks of agitation of mind and a person being perplexed, uneasy molested (1 Chronicles 10:13-14).

¹⁰⁸ Enns, Paul P. (1997) Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology. USA, Chicago: Moody Press. p103

8. They **oppress** people (Acts 10:38). ¹⁰⁹The Greek word “*katadunasteuo*” means “to exercise dominion against, oppress, and overburden in body or mind”.
9. They **vex** people. The Greek word “*pascho*” involves a person experiencing sensations or impressions (usually painful), feelings, passions and sufferings. The word “vex” also means “to mob, to harass, molest” or “to suffer at the hands of another, to suffer or experience pain”¹¹⁰, according to Connor. (Matthew 15:22; 17:15; Luke 6:18; Acts 5:16).
10. They **bind** people (Luke 13:16). ¹¹¹The Greek word “*deo*” means “to tie up, confine, and fasten (especially by binding cords around)”. The woman in Luke 13 was bound with arthritis and had to be loosed in her physical body. They can also cause tiredness, causing the believer to be too tired to pray, too tired to read the Bible. Demons can also cause an unnatural sleepiness (Isaiah 29:10).
11. They **deceive** people. They will always try to conceal or distort who Jesus is. Another form of demonic deception manifestation is by causing Christians to mimic the behaviour of animals, they are called “animal spirits” (Revelation 12:9; Matthew 24:4, 5, 11, 24).
12. “**Demons deceive nations.** Demons will eventually gather the nations of the world together in rebellion against Christ. Demons deceive the nations through performing signs in order to incite them in warfare against the returning Messiah (Revelation 16:14)”¹¹²

¹⁰⁹ Strong's Concordance - 2669. *kataponeó* (<http://biblehub.com/greek/2669.htm>)

¹¹⁰ Conner, Kevin J (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing p111

¹¹¹ Strong's Concordance - 1210. *deo* (<http://biblehub.com/greek/1210.htm>)

- 13.They **possess** people. ¹¹³The Greek word “*daimonizoma*” means “to be exercised by a demon (to be vexed or possessed with)”. Possession is indwelling control - meaning both the occupancy and ownership of a person by an evil spirit. A person that is demon possessed is under the power and control of a demon and can control their faculties at will. Lunacy, palsy, dumbness, blindness, and enabled fortune-telling is cases caused by possession. Demons hate to be unclothed or disembodied spirits therefore seek to possess human or animal bodies. (Matthew 4:24; 8:16,28-34; Mark 5:1-20; Luke 8:26-40; Matthew 9:32,33; 12:22; 15:21-28; Mark 7:24-30; Mark 1:32; 9:14-29; Luke 4:33-35; Acts 8:7; 16:16). A born-again believer cannot be possessed by demons, because the Holy Spirit dwells within the believer’s spirit.
- 14.Demons impart **supernatural strength** (Luke 8:29)¹¹⁴
- 15.They **torment** people (Revelation 9:1-11; 16:13-14). Their torment is like the tormenting sting of a locust. There are various forms of torture for example, arthritis, twisting, crippling, and binding. There is also mental torment for example the fear of going insane and then there is an inner accusation that says “one have committed the unforgivable sin.”
- 16.They **buffet** people (2 Corinthians 12:7). To buffet means “to hit with blow after blow; to punch, to slap and to fight against”.
- 17.They **resist** people (Zechariah 3:1-3). That is, they oppose, stand up against, and act as an adversary against someone.
- 18.They **harass** – they study humankind, follow their movements, observe their weak moments, detects their weak places and then they engineer

¹¹² Enns, Paul P. (1997) Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology. USA, Chicago: Moody Press. p103

¹¹³ Strong's Concordance -1139. daimonizomai (<http://biblehub.com/greek/1139.htm>)

¹¹⁴ Larkin, Clarence (1920) Dispensational Truth. USA, Glenside. Pa: Rev. Clarence Larkin Est.

situations that will open the way for them to slip in.

19. **Demons defile** – the Bible calls them unclean spirits. The main area that demons defile is our mental lives – our thoughts and imaginations. They will try to oppose the believer in his time of communion with God, during worship or Bible reading. This can take the form of fantasies, impure images or lustful images that project themselves unbidden into our minds.
20. **Demons cause addictions** – a scriptural definition of addiction” *a person is addicted when he or she has been brought under the power of anything that is not helpful.*
21. **Demons drive and compel** – compulsive eating or drinking can be demonic. It starts with the loss of self-control, then on a day gluttony slips in.
22. **Demons entice** - Demons persuade people to do evil. Enticement often comes verbally. Anything that has a voice is a person, and that voice belongs to a demon that is enticing man. If one yield, Satan will have begun to break down the defences. A person will no longer have a clear conscience. The person will know they are guilty. That prepares the way for Satan’s next assault. When a person fails to crucify the flesh and allow unclean or wrong desires to tempt him, he open the door to demonic power and can be enticed by demons into deeper sin.
23. **Demons fight** – According to Bill Subritzky ¹¹⁵“they fight against our personal harmony, our peace of mind and physical well-being, causing disruptiveness with other people, especially those closest to us. Their great distinctive mark is restlessness. They can affect us in our emotions, attitudes and relationships, for example they cause resentment, hatred,

¹¹⁵ Subritzky Bill (1991) How to Cast out Demons and Break Curses NZ Blockhouse Bay, Auckland: Dove Ministries. p11

fear or rebellion. In addition, they can affect the thoughts of the mind, causing doubt, unbelief, indecision and procrastination. In the area of the tongue, they can cause lying, cursing, gossip and blasphemy and in the sexual area, perversion, homosexuality and masturbation. Further, they can affect us in the area of alcohol, nicotine, gluttony and anorexia and in physical infirmities they often cause tumours, heart attacks, arthritis, allergies and cramps. Most addictions come out of frustration. The demon of lying needs a tongue to lie through, a demon of doubt needs a mind to doubt through and a demon of lust needs sexual organs to lust through. If a person has recurrent evil, disruptive, emotional attitudes which dominate one against one's will, for example resentment, hatred, fear, envy, jealousy and pride or extreme moodiness with changes from being extremely talkative to unnaturally quiet, or if there is an unnatural restlessness and talkativeness, these can be the signs of demonic activity."

24. Demons Attack the Physical Body - There is, for instance a demon of tiredness. Another physical effect that demons can produce is unnatural sleepiness. Isaiah speaks about "the spirit of deep sleep" (Isa 29:10). Unnatural sleep can also be a means of escaping unpleasant life situations. If one goes beyond specific symptoms of demonic activity, such as those listed here, one can discern one general characteristic of most people who are demonized: restlessness. A person who can maintain an attitude of serene composure in all the troubled circumstances of life is probably demon-free. But there are not many such people!

25. Demons cause addictions - Addiction is often like a branch growing out of another, larger branch. To help people, one might have to go beneath the addiction and discover the larger branch out of which it grows. Two common examples are continuing personal frustration and a deep

emotional need that is not being fulfilled. Almost anything that is both compulsive and enslaving is an addiction, and there is no limit to the forms that addictions may take.

In 1 Corinthians 6:12 Paul said, “All things are lawful for me, but all things are not helpful. All things are lawful for me, but I will not be brought under the power of any.” This provides us with a scriptural definition of addiction: *A person is addicted when he or she has been brought under the power of anything that is not helpful.* In attempting to solve their problems, people sometimes trade one addiction for another. Pornography is a tragic example of an addiction. Television is a largely unrecognized addiction. More recently the World Wide Web is spawning addictions. People have been classified as “addicts” because of social withdrawal and loss of control.

4.7 How Do Demons Come In?

In moments or places of weakness demons habitually gain access to human personalities. A few examples are:

4.7.1 Through Our Own Sin

Such things as idolatry, rebellion against God, un-forgiveness, anger, rejection, hatred, bitterness, oral sex, sodomy, homosexuality, lust, shoplifting, cheating on exams, premeditated lies and similar sins can provide a platform through which demons can enter. Habitual exaggeration in conversation opens a door for a lying spirit to enter. A single decisive act may open the way to a demon.

By repeating the sinful act, the demon of that act will enter - sooner or later. The following is a most interesting Scripture:

And thou shalt have goats' milk enough for thy food, for the food of thy household, and for the maintenance for thy maidens.

Proverbs 27:27 (KJV)

The marginal note in the New King James Version says that the literal translation of the word 'heart' is 'the rooms of the belly'. Thus, one could say that our heart spiritually contains rooms. If sin resides in any one of these rooms, then it can provide a platform for demonic activity. This is one of the reasons why Christians can be troubled with demons."¹¹⁶ "When Judas Iscariot betrayed Jesus, he opened a door that could not afterward close."¹¹⁷

Then entered Satan into Judas surnamed Iscariot, being of the number of the twelve.

Luke 22:3 (KJV)

4.7.2 A Family Background In The Occult Or False Religions

Scripture clearly warns the believer of the evil consequences when people become involved in idolatry or false religion:

¹¹⁶ Subritzky Bill (1991) How to Cast out Demons and Break Curses NZ Blockhouse Bay, Auckland: Dove Ministries. p11

¹¹⁷ Prince, Derek (1998) They shall expel demons. UK: Derek Prince Ministries. p 117

Thou shalt have no other gods before me. Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth: Thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them: for I the LORD thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me;

Exodus 20:3-5 (KJV)

In the Ten Commandments God warns His followers against all forms of idolatry or other involvement with false “gods”. The evil consequences of these particular sins can extend to four generations, which gives us four levels of ancestors:

Parents	2
Grandparents	4
Great-grandparents	8
Great-great-grandparents	16
Total	30

TABLE 4 FOUR LEVELS OF ANCESTORS

Parents with occult background expose their babies to the same spiritual influences that are at work in their own lives.”¹¹⁸ The occult influence can begin while the baby is still in the womb – who is entirely dependent on its parents for protection. Protection is gained through righteous, God-fearing parents.

Some effects of hereditary sin:

¹¹⁸ Prince, Derek (1998) They shall expel demons. UK: Derek Prince Ministries. p113

Rejection	Witchcraft and occultism
Abnormal fears	Curses
Sexual lust	Cultural problems
Addictions	Schizophrenia
Rebellion	Anger

TABLE 5 SOME EFFECTS OF HEREDITARY SIN

4.7.3 Other Negative Prenatal Influences

Many babies are born with demons in them and it happened because of something the mother did or did not do and the greatest single problem that exposes children and unborn babies to demons are the involvement in the occult. Man cannot get involved in the occult in any form without being exposed to demons. There is a proverb that says: *he who slept with the devil needs a spoon with a long handle*. Un-fortunately there is no spoon made long enough to make it safe to sleep with the devil.

And it shall come to pass, that whosoever will not hearken unto my words which he shall speak in my name, I will require it of him.

Deuteronomy 18:19 (KJV)

What God says about the occult – children sacrifice but all the other that follow are in the same category of offering an infant to the demonic. What is wrong with the occult – when involved in the occult a person is making friends with God's enemy and God takes note of that and one have to repent and have to cancel any involvement if help is wanted from God. One cannot fool around with the occult in any form or shape. Common demon that enters is the spirit of rejection. Any baby that enters into the world needs love, but if the mother has

already financial difficulties and she regrets it – she does not have to say anything she can just think it, the baby can be born with rejection.¹¹⁹

4.7.4 Pressures In Early Childhood

For where envying and strife is, there is confusion and every evil work.

James 3:16 (KJV)

Child born in an unhappy strife tone divided house is exposed to demons. Most children do not have strong enough defences to keep the demons out. Parents are responsible to maintain an atmosphere in their homes where children can grow up free from demonic manifestations.

4.7.5 Emotional Shock Or Sustained Emotional Pressure

There are many kinds of emotional shock or pressure to which people may be subjected for example; women have weaker emotional defences than men. They are especially subject to fear – a sexual assault, break in or accident can open a door for the demonic to enter. As a result of shock or trauma, the devil often attacks and the spirit of shock and trauma will have to be expelled.

Even as Sara obeyed Abraham, calling him lord: whose daughters ye are, as long as ye do well, and are not afraid with any amazement.

1 Peter 3:6 (KJV)

¹¹⁹ Prince, Derek (1998) They shall expel demons. UK: Derek Prince Ministries. p114

One should not give way to sudden emotional shock but if it happens it is very possible that a demon will enter then.¹²⁰

4.7.6 Through Touching Dead Bodies

When the body of a dead person is touched the spirits (not of the dead person) but which have been around or within the dead person, will seek another “house” to occupy and when one touch a person in ones grief or kiss them, Satan often enters.

4.7.7 Laying On Of Hands

It can be a powerful spiritual experience and may either good or evil. It is a temporary interaction between two spirits through which supernatural power is released and may emanate from the Holy Spirit or from a demon, depending on the one from whom it flows. In Scripture Paul established certain safeguards when he wrote:

Lay hands suddenly on no man, neither be partaker of other men's sins: keep thyself pure.

1 Timothy 5:22 (KJV)

The laying on of hands should be done reverently and prayerfully and any person participating should make sure he or she is not thereby, in Paul's word, sharing in another person's sins.¹²¹

¹²⁰ Prince, Derek (1998) They shall expel demons. UK: Derek Prince Ministries.p116

¹²¹ Prince, Derek (1998) They shall expel demons. UK: Derek Prince Ministries. p116

4.7.8 Marriage Breakdowns

The anger and resentment and hatred that results from marriage breakdowns is a primary entry point of demonic power.¹²²

4.7.9 Grief

A spirit of grief can enter as a result of prolonged grief and with it can bring all sorts of diseases.¹²³

4.7.10 Ungodly Soul Ties

Ungodly relationship between people create these emotional ties e.g. adultery or persons with whom another has fornicated. Also, if there has been molestation on the part of the parent to the child.¹²⁴

4.7.11 Idle Words

What is an idle word? People say *“I did not really mean it”*, that is an idle word. One need to account for them or - on the day of judgement man will be judged. A word a person said when he was depressed or discouraged – a word which he did not mean – like “I my just as well be dead, or what’s the use living” the

¹²² Subritzky Bill (1991) *How to Cast out Demons and Break Curses* NZ Blockhouse Bay, Auckland: Dove Ministries. p17

¹²³ Subritzky Bill (1991) *How to Cast out Demons and Break Curses* NZ Blockhouse Bay, Auckland: Dove Ministries. p17

¹²⁴ Subritzky Bill (1991) *How to Cast out Demons and Break Curses* NZ Blockhouse Bay, Auckland: Dove Ministries. p17

spirit of death will enter because it has been invited in for demons of death is right there.

A good man out of the good treasure of the heart bringeth forth good things: and an evil man out of the evil treasure bringeth forth evil things.

Matthew 12:35 (KJV)

4.7.12 Transference¹²⁵

- By submitting to people who are not Christians
- Through the watching of movies, television, music and magazines full of violence.
- Through pornography and lust.
- Through alcoholism.
- Transference of spirits within a church.
- Through sexual intercourse, e.g. homosexuals often begin their problems having been molested as a child.
- Spirits of witchcraft can often enter through the feet while the child is in the womb.
- Un-forgiveness. Matthew 18 makes it clear that if one does not forgive, God will deliver one to the torturers, i.e. the demons.

¹²⁵ Subritzky Bill (1991) *How to Cast out Demons and Break Curses* NZ Blockhouse Bay, Auckland: Dove Ministries. p17

And his lord was wroth, and delivered him to the tormentors, till he should pay all that was due unto him. So likewise shall my heavenly Father do also unto you, if ye from your hearts forgive not every one his brother their trespasses.

Matthew 18:34-35 (KJV)

- Through rejection.
- Ungodly traditions, pride, prejudice and religion e.g. Denominationalism, Doctrinal obsession, Legalism, conservatism and intolerance, Reliance on church doctrine to provide false security, Bondage to specific forms of worship and rejection of others. Personal prejudices and the occult. One is forbidden by Scripture to have spiritual contact with the occult.
- Ethnic traditions, culture and environment, e.g. Japanese, ancestor worship, religious spirits.
- False religions. Any religion that denies
 - * That access to God the Father is only through Jesus;

I am the door: by me if any man enter in, he shall be saved, and shall go in and out, and find pasture.

John 10:9 (KJV)

Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

John 14:6 (KJV)

- * That there is only one Spirit of God, namely the Holy Spirit, giving access to God;

For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God:

Ephesians 2:8 (KJV)

- * Any spirit which denies Jesus Christ has come in the flesh; is the Son of God; lived a sinless life; died on the Cross and rose on the third day, contains the spirit of Antichrist. This is very frequent in the church today.

Little children, it is the last time: and as ye have heard that antichrist shall come, even now are there many antichrists; whereby we know that it is the last time. They went out from us, but they were not of us; for if they had been of us, they would no doubt have continued with us: but they went out, that they might be made manifest that they were not all of us.

1 John 2:18-19 (KJV)

Hereby know ye the Spirit of God: Every spirit that confesseth that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is of God:

1 John 4:2 (KJV)

- * Heresies, i.e. departures from the Christian faith.

Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils; Speaking lies in hypocrisy; having their conscience seared with a hot iron;

1 Timothy 4:1-2 (KJV)

At this time, seducing spirits will draw away believers into error.

But there were false prophets also among the people, even as there shall be false teachers among you, who privily shall bring in damnable heresies, even denying the Lord that bought them, and bring upon themselves swift destruction.

2 Peter 2:1 (KJV)

False teachers by underhand means will introduce damnable heresies.

Beloved, do not believe every spirit, but test the spirits, whether they are of God; because many false prophets have gone out into the world. By this you know the Spirit of God: Every spirit that confesses that Jesus Christ has come in the flesh is of God, and every spirit that does not confess that Jesus Christ has come in the flesh is not of God. And this is the spirit of the Antichrist, which you have heard was coming, and is now already in the world.

1 John 4:1-3 (NKJV)

And increased activity of Antichrist and spirits of Antichrist.

4.8 Curses Can Be A Prime Entry Point

According to the Mystical, on-line encyclopaedia of the “occult, mysticism, magic, paranormal”:

“Curses are Magic spells which are placed upon people with the intention of harming them. The misfortune intended by curses can range from illness, and harm, to even death. Curses are declared to be the most dreaded form of magic, often called black magic, and are believed to be universally used. Curses can become effective immediately or may be dormant for years. Curses laid on families have been known to have plagued them for generations. The word hex is sometimes used synonymously with curse. In neo-Pagan Witchcraft, some Witches use the term hex to designate a binding spell, which is different from a curse. A curse is the expression of desire of harm to come to a particular person. Anyone can lay a curse on another person, but it is believed that the authority of the person who lays the curse on increases its potency and makes it more dangerous. Such persons are believed to be priests, priestesses or royalty; persons possessing magical skill, such as Witches, sorcerers and magicians; and persons who have no other recourse to justice, such as women in many societies,

the poor, the destitute and the dying. Deathbed curses are the most potent, since all the curser's vital energy goes into the curse."¹²⁶

Marilyn Hickey defines a generational curse as:

*"An unclean iniquity that increases in strength from one generation to the next, affecting the members of that family and all who come into relationship with that family."*¹²⁷

***As the bird by wandering, as the swallow by flying, so the curse
causeless shall not come.***

Proverbs 26:2 (KJV)

"In order for a curse to alight, requires a cause."¹²⁸ "God will not allow a curse to land without cause. Un-confessed sin is a landing strip in a person's soul upon which a curse alights."¹²⁹

4.8.1 Symptoms Of Probable Curses

- Mental, emotional and physical breakdowns.
 - Constant sickness, especially hereditary sickness.
 - Marriage breakdowns and family splits.
 - Continuous poverty.
 - Being accident prone.
-

¹²⁶ Bloodlines. Spiritual Roots of Physical Illness and Disease By Morne Fouche (<http://www.bloodlines.co.za/articles/spiritual-roots-of-physical-illnesses-and-diseases.html>)

¹²⁷ Bloodlines. Spiritual Roots of Physical Illness and Disease By Morne Fouche (<http://www.bloodlines.co.za/articles/spiritual-roots-of-physical-illnesses-and-diseases.html>)

¹²⁸ Subritzky Bill (1991) How to Cast out Demons and Break Curses NZ Blockhouse Bay, Auckland: Dove Ministries. p22

¹²⁹ Frangipane, Francis (1994) The Divine Antidote. USA: Arrow Publications. p 61-65

- Barrenness and miscarriages.
- Constant deaths in families.

4.8.2 Entry Points Of Curses

- Persons with relational authority, e.g. husband over wife or parents over children. *Examples:* “You can’t cook”; “You’re no good”; “You’re useless”; “You’re a failure”; “You will never be any good”
- Self-imposed curses: “I will never be any good”; “I will never forgive myself”; “God doesn’t love me” etc.
- Curses brought on by unscriptural covenants, e.g. being unequally yoked together with unbelievers:

Be ye not unequally yoked together with unbelievers: for what fellowship hath righteousness with unrighteousness? and what communion hath light with darkness?

2 Corinthians 6:14 (KJV)

- Curses brought on by the servants of Satan, e.g. witchdoctors, medicine men, tohungas.
- Curses from Satan and/or his servants *without* the legal right to curse - for the purpose of causing injury, loss, destruction and often death.
- Curses from Satan and/or his servants *with* the legal right to curse - for the purpose of causing injury, loss, destruction and often death.
- Curses from man – man either speaks life or death. Man can curse himself or another party
- Curses brought on by disobedience to God’s commandments as follows: Having false gods. (*Exodus 20:3-4; Deuteronomy 27:15*) Disrespect for

parents. (*Deuteronomy 27:16*), Treachery against a neighbour. (*Deuteronomy 27:17*), Injustice to the weak. (*Deuteronomy 27:18-19*), Illicit sex. (*Deuteronomy 27:20-23*) (Effect of wrong sexual relationships, particularly those outside of marriage or with members of one's family). Perjury (*Deuteronomy 27:25*), Stealing. (*Zechariah 5:1-4*), Stinginess towards God. (*Malachi 3:9*), Perverting the gospel. (*Galatians 1:8-9*), Depending on the flesh. (*Jeremiah 17:5*), Anti-semitism. (*Genesis 12:3; Genesis 28:3,14*)”

4.8.3 Their Judgement

According to Scripture the evil spirits judgement will be associated with that of Satan. It is progressive, as is his, and culminates at the same time. Christ conquered Satan, the demons and their power at the cross and made a public display of them. (*Colossians 2:15; 1 Peter 3:22*); The evil spirits will not be spared, but cast down to hell; delivered into chains of darkness, reserved unto judgement (*2 Peter 2:4*); reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgement of the great day (*Jude 6*); cast out into the earth with Satan (*Revelation 12:9*); and will end up in the lake of fire (*Matthew 25:41*).¹³⁰

The rise of the occult, spiritism and Satanism are evidences of a tremendous increase of activity in the Satanic realm in every nation today. Paul warned us that in the last day's people would depart from the faith and give heed to seducing spirits and to doctrines of devils.¹³¹

¹³⁰ Enns, Paul P. (1997) *Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology*. USA, Chicago: Moody Press. p104

Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils; Speaking lies in hypocrisy; having their conscience seared with a hot iron; Forbidding to marry, and commanding to abstain from meats, which God hath created to be received with thanksgiving of them which believe and know the truth.

1 Timothy 4:1-3 (KJV)

Satan's existence is often ignored or over-emphasized by believers and therefore a Biblical balance is much needed in these last days. It is only through the Scriptures that a proper understanding of this subject can be gained.¹³² Occult practices are controlled by demons, who offer just enough information to keep their victims intrigued, while exerting more and more control over gullible hearts and minds.¹³³

5 THE OCCULT

5.1 What Is The Occult?

"The occult – the word comes from the Latin word for **"hidden"** or **"secret"** represents the spiritual realm where people seek either –

¹³¹ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p103

¹³² Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p103

¹³³ What is the Occult? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/occult.html>)

- **Knowledge or**
- **Power**

From any other source other than God, when the knowledge or power sought can come only from God.

Some people seek **knowledge** and are often hooked by curiosity. The Ouija board, for instance, spells out answers to one's questions about one's future (the kind of knowledge that can come only from God) or about the fate of dead loved ones (again, known only by God).

Parents may want to know if their son who committed suicide is happy in the afterlife – a very human question. Their desire not to connect with Satan; it is to connect with their son;

But in seeking this forbidden knowledge, they open themselves to demonic influence. Evil spirits take over the Ouija board and mix fascinating bits of truth with one or two major falsehoods.

Other people seek **power**. They may go to a devotee of voodoo, for example, to put a spell on someone they want to influence to fall in love; or to put a curse on someone they hate.

Most people seeking illicit knowledge or power do not know they are entering Satan's kingdom where they can become permanently oppressed, even though both Scripture and Christian tradition have always forbidden these activities.

Many Christian pastors regard these practices as silly and superstitious and refuse to preach about them.

In the Bible the word “abomination” is a spiritual term associated with idolatry. God condemned Israel for the “idols” of thy abominations,

Thus saith the Lord GOD; Because thy filthiness was poured out, and thy nakedness discovered through thy whoredoms with thy lovers, and with all the idols of thy abominations, and by the blood of thy children, which thou didst give unto them;

Ezekiel 16:36 (KJV)

Occult practices are also called abominations, along with illicit and perverted sex.

The Biblical prohibition against making images for religious purposes and bowing down before them is clearly set forth in the second of the Ten Commandments and in numerous other passages of Scripture.

Ye shall make you no idols nor graven image, neither rear you up a standing image, neither shall ye set up any image of stone in your land, to bow down unto it: for I am the LORD your God.

Leviticus 26:1 (KJV)

Cursed be the man that maketh any graven or molten image, an abomination unto the LORD, the work of the hands of the craftsman, and putteth it in a secret place. And all the people shall answer and say, Amen.

Deuteronomy 27:15 (KJV)

5.2 Practices Of The Occult

Though usually oblivious to the fact, man often becomes aware that there is much activity in the spirit realm and have a deep longing to make contact with the un-known – with some “higher power”, something greater or wiser or more powerful than ourselves. It was God who placed this longing within humankind, and Satan has provided contact with the spirit realm through numerous avenues in the world of Spiritism and the occult. All occultic practices are Satan’s counterfeit forms of communication, evil systems that bring humans into bondage.¹³⁴

Turning away from the one true God to false gods is called “spiritual adultery” in Scripture. The Bible’s strong warnings against immorality and adultery also apply to all forms of involvement with the occult. In Proverbs believers are warned against studying the ways of the “strange – immoral or adulterous – woman” who vividly depicts the lure of the occult through her “moveable (KJV), “unstable” (NKJV) and “crooked” (NIV) ways.¹³⁵

Let not thine heart decline to her ways, go not astray in her paths. For she hath cast down many wounded: yea, many strong men have been slain by her. Her house is the way to hell, going down to the chambers of death.

Proverbs 7:25-27 (KJV)

As there is an increased activity of the Spirit of God, Satan will also increase his activity by demon spirits, to counterfeit and resist the workings of the Holy Spirit.

¹³⁴ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p111

¹³⁵ Prince, Derek (1998) They shall expel demons. UK: Derek Prince Ministries. p124

5.3 Occult Activities

Occult activities have been divided into two sections: those that are specifically mentioned in the Bible, and others which are modern day designations.

Magicians	Horoscopists (drawing magical lines or circles), Enchanters, Diviners, Astrologers	Genesis 41:8; Exodus 7:11
Wise Men	Claimed to have supernatural wisdom from the unseen realm.	Exodus 7:11
Divination	To divine to determine by lot or magical scroll.	Deuteronomy 18:10; Acts 16:16
Observer of Times	To cloud over, act covertly, practise magic, to augur from the appearance of clouds.	Deuteronomy 18:10
Passing through the fire	Children consecrated to Molech by fire-death.	Deuteronomy 18:10; Leviticus 18:21
Enchanter	A hisser, whisperer, mutterer of enchantments and magic spells.	Deuteronomy 18:10
Witch	Witchcraft. To whisper a spell, practise magic.	Deuteronomy 18:10; Galatians 5:20; Exodus 22:18; Leviticus 22:18; Leviticus 20:27; 2 Chronicles 33:6
Charmer	To fascinate, cast a spell.	Deuteronomy 18:10
Consulter of	One who has direct fellowship and	Deuteronomy

familiar spirits. Consulter of demons. Soothsaying	communication with demons, impersonating spirits who are familiar with a deceased person's life and deceive the living.	18:10; Leviticus 20:27; Deuteronomy 18:11; 1 Chronicles 10:13; Isaiah 8:19-20; Isaiah 19:3; 29:4
Wizard	A knowing one, a conjurer, a prognosticator. Able to supply information by means of the spirits contacted.	Deuteronomy 18:11; Leviticus 19:31; 20:6,27; 1 Samuel 28:3,9; 2 Kings 21:6; 23:24
Necromancer	Seeker unto the dead, consults the dead for advice and information.	Deuteronomy 18:11
Astrologers, Stargazers, Monthly Prognosticators.	Horoscopists, studying the stars to predict events on earth.	Isaiah 47:13
Soothsayers	Foretelling future events by the appearance of the clouds.	Isaiah 2:6; Daniel 2:27
Sorcerers	Old Testament. Practicer of hidden arts, magician. To whisper a spell, enchant. New Testament (Greek "pharmakeus" from which one get the word pharmacy). Enchanter with drugs, maker and user of drugs." ¹³⁶	Exodus 7:11; Daniel 2:2; Revelation 9:21; 18:23; 22:15; 21:8

TABLE 6: OCCULT ACTIVITIES

¹³⁶ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p112

5.4 Warnings Against The Occult

The Bible takes a clear position on this subject and is explicit in its warnings and judgements to all who get involved in the occult world. When man does not respond to the Holy Spirit by whom he can be brought into contact with God, he responds to evil spirits by which he contacts the god of this world, Satan. All believers who does not obey the Word of God will come under divine judgement (Leviticus 19:31; 20:6; Deuteronomy 18:10). Many of the elements of the occult are Satanic and part of Satan's strategy of evil tricks and deception, designed to lead the Christians astray, for they counterfeit the operations and manifestations of the Holy Spirit. As God moves by His Spirit in the supernatural realm, so Satan counterfeits by moving through his evil spirits. God's miracles wrought by the Spirit are designed to cause people to believe, where Satan's are designed to cause people to be deceived (Exodus 7:8-25; 8:1-19).

Believers do not have to be deceived for God has given certain means by which the source of a supernatural manifestation may be tested. In 1 John 4:1 Scripture tells us clearly not to believe every spirit, but to try, prove and test them.

Beloved, believe not every spirit, but try the spirits whether they are of God: because many false prophets are gone out into the world.

1 John 4:1 (KJV)

Divine means of how to prove a spirit:

- Test the spirits by the Word of God, for the Spirit of God always speaks in accordance to God's word *"To the Law and to the testimony: if they (the spirits) speak not according to this Word, it is because there is no light in them"* (Isaiah 8:19-20).

- The spirit's utterance must be proven by fulfilment (Deuteronomy 18:21-22).
- How do they view the son of God? The spirit must be tested by the acknowledgement of the historical incarnation of Jesus; the truth of Christ's coming in the flesh, both by His incarnation and in the Church, which is His body. (1 John 4:2-3).
- The spirits can be tested by the fruit they bring forth (Matthew 7:19-23).
- The spirits can be discerned by the gift of the Holy Spirit in the discerning of spirits, which will expose what spirit is at work (1 Corinthians 12:7-10; Acts 16:16-18).

What is contact with the spirit world through the occult according to God: offering "strange fire" (Leviticus 10:1); burning "strange incense" (Exodus 30:9); worshipping "strange gods" (Psalm 81:9); a person's involvement in the occult seeking after demonic powers that opened a way for demon possession.¹³⁷

If a person did participate in any of the occult activities, he should confess the specific activity before God as a sin and ask for His forgiveness. He should renounce the activity before God and repent from it. Any occult object, book or item associated with the activity should be destroyed. The person should directly engage with the demon by speaking out to it, that it no longer has any legal right to stay attached to him since the occult activity has been fully confessed and fully renounced before God the Father. If the person is demonised he should then command them to leave in the name of Jesus Christ

¹³⁷ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p114

and tell them to never come back.¹³⁸ They will then be cast into the Lake of Fire for all eternity, with the Devil and the evil spirits they have served in this life (Matthew 25:4; Revelation 21:8; 22:15).

5.5 List Of Modern Day Occult Practices

Isaiah 2:6 speaks of Israel being replenished from the East with Eastern religious philosophies and occult practices, so one can see the same happening today.

Therefore thou hast forsaken thy people the house of Jacob, because they be replenished from the east, and are soothsayers like the Philistines, and they please themselves in the children of strangers.

Isaiah 2:6 (KJV)

Below is a list of all areas of demonic activity thou the methods may vary; the same ends are in view (there may be others as well that is not included in this list). That is, communication by supernatural means with the spirit world – they all profess to gain knowledge for man which is not available by mere natural means.¹³⁹

¹³⁸ Dangers of the Occults (<http://www.bible-knowledge.com/dangers-of-the-occult/>)

¹³⁹ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p114

Abstract art (under hallucinogenic stimulus)	Acupuncture	Agnostic
Ahab	Alchemy	All books, literature, music, etc. dealing with occultism
Amulets (tigers claw, sharks tooth, horseshoe over door, mascots, talisman (magic picture)	Ankh (a cross with a ring top used in satanic rites) / crux ansata	Anything that predicts ones future or advises one's life
Apparitions – occultic	Apport	Astral projection and travel
Astrology	Augury (interpreting omens)	Auras
Automatic writing	Baptism in Witchcraft	Birth signs
Birth stones	Black arts	Black magic (involving hidden powers for bad ends)
Black mass	Blood subscriptions (pacts)	Calling Evil Spirits
Cards	Cartomancy (using playing cards)	Cat
Chain letters	Channelling	Charming or enchanting (attempts to use spirit power)
Charms and charming for wart removal	Chinese astrology	Christian Science healing
Clairaudience (ability to hear voices and sounds super-normally – spirited voices alleging to be those of dead people giving advice or warnings)	Clairsentience (supernormal sense perception)	Clairvoyance (ability to see objects or events spontaneously or supernormally above their normal range of vision – second sight)
Cobra	Coloradans psychic powers	Colour therapy

Communicating with the dead	Concept therapy	Conjuration (summoning up a spirit by incantation)
Cosmology	Coven (a community of witches)	Crystal ball gazing
Crystals	Curses	Cursing Parents
Death by hypnosis	Death magic (where the name of the sickness plus a written spell is cast into coffin or grave)	Demon worship
Devil's Foot	Disembodied spirits	Divination
Divining rod or twig or pendulum (Hosea 4:12)	Dowsing or witching for water, minerals, underground cables, finding out the sex of unborn child using divining rod, pendulum, twig or planchette	Dream interpretation (as with Edgar Cayce books)
Dungeons and Dragons	E.S.P. (extra sensory perception)	E.S.T. (The Forum)
Eastern meditation/religious – Gurus, Mantras, Yoga, Temples etc	Ectoplasm (unknown substance from body of a medium)	Enchanting
Enckankar	Epistemology	Evil Eye
Exorcism	Female Dominance	Fetishes
Findhorn Community	Floating trumpets	Fortune telling or Divination
Foundation	Ghosts	Gnostic
God's Eye	Good luck charms	Good luck items
Gothic rock music	Great Seal	Gurdjieff
Gurus	Gypsy curses	Hallucinogenic drugs (cocaine, heroin, marijuana, sniffing glue etc)

Handwriting analysis (for fortune telling)	Hard rock music – Kiss, Led Zeppelin, Rolling Stones	Hearing Noises
Hepatoscopy (examination of liver for interpretation)	Hex signs (hexagrams)	Homeopathy
Homosexuality	Horoscopes	Hydromancy (divination by viewing images in water)
Hypnosis	Idols	Incantations
Indian Kachina	Incubus (sexual spirit)	Iridology (eye diagnosis)
Japanese flower arranging (sun worship)	Jezebel	Jonathan Livingstone Seagull (Reincarnation, Hinduism)
Judo	Kabbalah (Occult Lore)	Karma
Kung Fu	Levitation	Lucky charms or signs of the Zodiac or birthstones
Lust for Dominance	Lust for Power	Luv Knot
Macabre	Magi	Magic (not sleight of hand but use of supernatural power)
Magic healing through wart or burn charming	Manifestation	Mantras
Martial arts (Aikido, Judo, Karate, Kung fu, Tae Kwan Do, Tai Chi etc)	Mascots	Materialization or apport
Matthew Manning	Medals	Meditation (Evil)
Mediums	Mental science	Mental suggestion
Mental telepathy	Mental therapy	Mesmerism (Hypnotism)
Metaphysics (study of spirit world)	Mind Awareness (Dynamics)	Mind control

Mind mediumship	Mind reading	Mongoose
Moon-mancy	Most non-Christian Heavy metal and hard rock music – Slayer, Behemoth, AC/DC, Guns and Roses	Motorskopua (mechanical pendulum for diagnosing illness)
Multiplied Curses	Mysticism	Necromancy (conjuring up spirits of the dead)
Neutral (or gray) magic	New Age	Numerical symbolism
Numerology	Occult Fears	Occult letters of protection
Occult Symbols	Occult literature, eg The Greater World, The 6th & 7th Book of Moses, The Other side, The book of Venus, Pseudo- Christian works of Jacob Lorber, works by Edgar Cayce, Aleister Crowley, Jean Dixon, Levi Dowling, thur Ford (The Overt Worship of Spirit Beings), Johann Greber, Andrew Jackson Davis, Anton Le Vay, Ruth Montgomery, John Newborough, Eric Von Daniken, Dennis Wheatley. * Such books should be burned, regardless of cost.	Occultic games
Omens	Ontology	Open Doors
Oracle	Ouija Boards	Pacts with Satan

Pagan fetishes	Pagan religious objects, artifacts and relics	Pagan rites (Voodoo, Sing sings, Corroborees, Fire walking, Umbahda, Macumba)
Palmistry or Chiromancy	Parapsychology (PS) – especially study of demonic activity	Pass The Fire
Pendulum diagnosis	Phenomenon	Phrenology (divining/analysis from the skull)
Pk (parakineses – control of objects by the power of the mind and will)	PK (psychokinesis)	Planchette (divining)
Poltergeists	Pornography	Potions
Powwow	Precognition (foreknowledge of the occurrence of events)	Prognostication
Psychic Surgery or healing	Psychic Portraits	Psychic sight
Psychic spirit or metaphysical healing	Psychoanalysis, Phychic	Psychography (use of heart shaped board)
Psychokinesis	Psychometry (telling fortunes by lifting or holding object belonging to the enquirer)	Punk rock music
Pyramidology (mystic powers associated with models of pyramids)	Rebellion	Rebirthing
Reincarnation	Remote influence of the subconscious mind of others	Rhabdomancy (casting sticks into the air for interpreting omens)
Rod or pendulum diagnosis	Rosicrucians	Ruler of Witchcraft

Runes	Sado-Masochism	Satanism
Seances	Second sight	Self hypnosis
Self realization	Serpent Charmer	Significant pagan days
Silva Mind Control (SMC – Psychorientology)	Snake	Sorcery
Spells	Spider	Spirit guides
Spirit knockings or rappings on walls	Spiritism	Spiritualism
Star gazing	Star signs	Stichomancy (fortune telling from random reference to books)
Stigmata – ie occultic types	Stubbornness	Succubus (sexual spirit)
Superstitions (self or parents or grandparents)	Swan	Swedenborg
Table tipping	Talismans	Taoism
Tarot cards (22 picture cards for fortune telling)	Tea-leaf reading	Telepathy
Third Eye	Thought transference	Tk (telekineses – objects move around room, instruments play, engines start...)
TM (Transcendental Meditation)	Trance diagnosis	Trances
Transference	Transmigration	Travel of the soul
UFO fixation	Uri Geller	Visions
Voodoo (or Santeria, Cambole, Palo Mayombe)	Water witching (dowsing with forked sticks or other objects for water, oil, minerals, underground sewer and water lines, etc.)	Warlock

White magic (invoking hid-den powers for 'good ends')	Witch	Witchcraft
Wizard	Yielding Male	Yin and Yang
Yoga (involves Eastern demon worship)	Zodiac signs, charms, birthdates	

TABLE 7: LIST OF MODERN DAY OCCULT PRACTICES

5.6 Keys To Understanding Occult Spirituality

“The definitions of terms like subconscious intuition, higher self and subconscious intuition, is an important key to unlocking the essence of an occult world-view. Occultists confuse their reference to the subconscious with Biblical indications that man’s conscience helps guide moral decisions.

- **Intuition:** “a natural ability or power that makes it possible to know something without any proof or evidence : a feeling that guides a person to act a certain way without fully understanding why: something that is known or understood without proof or evidence”¹⁴⁰
- **Higher self** - “is a term associated with multiple belief systems, but its basic premise describes an eternal, omnipotent, conscious, and intelligent being, who is one's real self. Blavatsky formally defined the higher self as "Atma the inseparable ray of the Universe and one self “¹⁴¹
- **Subconscious** – “existing in the part of the mind that a person is not aware of : existing in the mind but not...subconscious in a sentence.”¹⁴²

¹⁴⁰ Merriam-Webster's Learner's Dictionary: Simple Definition of Intuition (<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/intuition>)

¹⁴¹ Higher Self (https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Higher_self)

- **Quantitative** – “of, relating to, or expressible in terms of quantity. 2 : of, relating to, or involving the measurement of quantity or amount.”¹⁴³

The metaphysical concept of the subconscious and the Christian concept of the conscience are incompatible. The subconscious is the collective repository of personal and sensory experiences - it is an informational “computer bank”. It is spiritually neutral and an inappropriate guide to virtuous behaviour and it has no capacity to interpret that data in a morally qualitative sense. God’s moral law and the indwelling Holy Spirit is referred to one of two inner voices when the Christian speaks of conscience he conscience. *Romans 2:15 speaks of God’s law being written on man’s heart, his “conscience also bearing witness” to the moral message of divine directive.* The Holy Spirit, speaking through conscience, will “convict the world of sin, and of righteousness and of judgement.”¹⁴⁴

A strong feeling about something without conscious reasoning is what one commonly call intuition, which is derived from an intellectual component, as well as various life experiences. The truthfulness and accuracy is only as good as the person’s powers of judgement and reasoning. According to Larson¹⁴⁵ “assigning to intuition infallible attributes of deity is idolatry. Replacing the role of a transcendent supreme being with ego is arrogance of the worst sort. It

¹⁴² Merriam-Webster's Learner's Dictionary: Simple Definition of Subconscious (www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/subconscious)

¹⁴³ Merriam-Webster's Learner's Dictionary: Simple Definition of Quantitative (www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/quantitative)

¹⁴⁴ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson’s Book of Spiritual Warfare*. USA, Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers p288

¹⁴⁵ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson’s Book of Spiritual Warfare*. USA, Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers p289

also leaves the evaluation of each action up to the individual instead of an external (Biblical) moral code. The idea that the soul represents a supra-consciousness of ultimate reality is derived from the notion of self-deification. If the “higher-self” or soul, is a spark of the divine, it must be the embodiment of supreme truth. In contrast, Christianity teaches that God is the ultimate reality, for only He has existed from eternity past, Scripture instructs that only the character of God is unchangeable.” The Word of God will endure forever even the cosmos as one know it will disappear, and only the Word of God will endure forever.¹⁴⁶ To liken the attributes of God to the soul is to indulge in idolatry by exalting man’s mind to the status of sacredness.¹⁴⁷

Many people who turn to occult spirituality, come from Christian background and cannot totally deny their beliefs in Christ, therefore they seek systems that ignore such cardinal doctrines as hell, guilt over sin, and the blood atonement of Christ while maintaining reverence for Jesus the Man. They ignore Satan as a personal source of evil and the need of divine redemption while maybe being attracted to teachings like A Course in Miracles, with its platitudes about love and forgiveness that sound somewhat Christian.¹⁴⁸

Groups like the The Church Universal of Nichiren Soshu which practice chanting and repetitive decreeing may attract normal Christians with liturgical background. They may end up uttering affirmations such as the “I am that I am” decree whereby one claims for himself the title of God, which are blasphemous.

¹⁴⁶ Isaiah 40:8 “The grass withereth, the flower fadeth: but the word of our God shall stand for ever.”

¹⁴⁷ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson’s Book of Spiritual Warfare*. USA, Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers p289

¹⁴⁸ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson’s Book of Spiritual Warfare*. USA, Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. p289

5.7 Marketing Occult Folk Religions

Not all devotees of the devil are self-styled occultists. The masses has been enthralled with a long history of folk religions centuries but today the fascination lies with Satanism. In America, Sanatism is just one facet of the many-sided jewel of evil.

A twenty-eight-year-old priestess known as Mama Alice are being followed by some millitary troops in Uganda. Her followers think they can ward off enemy bullets by coating themselves with the oil of a local tree and rocks will explode magically, as if they are grenades by lobbing it under her influence. Alice is not very fluent in English but claims to be under the influence of a holy spirit called lekwenā which allows her spirit to communicate in seventy-four languages. After some of her troops were killed in battle, Mama Alice offered to resurrect them from the dead.¹⁴⁹

In America folk religious beliefs are more pervasive. Normally sane citizens adopt ridiculous superstitions for example flowers on an airplane are bad luck, never talk about past accidents in an automobile or if one must be admitted to the hospital, do it on a Wednesday, whilst other Americans are obsessed with triskaidekaphobia – fear of the number thirteen. Folklore experts say it developed from Christian symbolism (Judas, the thirteenth person to arrive at the Last Supper, betrayed Jesus).

¹⁴⁹ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. USA, Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. p173

In Japan, a teenage girl wearing a Band-Aid on her arm hasn't necessarily sarily cut herself but may suffer a broken heart. Enlisting supernatural powers for the sake of love schoolgirl writes the name of her heart-throb on the inside of her left arm and covers it with a Band-Aid for it be granted. Another Japanese superstition involves writing the name of a love object on a pencil eraser and if that fails, a small white star are painted on the nail of their left pinkie.

The three categories of witchcraft, spells, and magic are included in the occult supernaturalism. Witchcraft induce evil spells, sometimes through round hex signs with colorful geometric motifs. Hex signs are painted on barns to protect animals from disease and other misfortune in eastern Pennsylvania. Curses cause harm or misfortune. Spoken spells supposedly have magic powers and these spells can be on oath, contract or treaty directed against oneself or another person. Magic uses charms or spells to acquire power over natural forces and involves rituals or incantations.

A highly developed form of indigenous occultism were uprooted when slave traders transported West African slaves to the Americas. The African's world was inhabited by pantheon of beneficent and malevolent deities, which were appesed and cajoled through elaborate ceremonies. Religion and magic were integral parts of daily life To them, and not casual considerations. West Africans looked to their gods for direction when doubt, fear, or decision was pending.

5.7.1 Black Magic

The conscious use of supernatural powers for the exercise of evil, the perversion of white magic.¹⁵⁰ The ancestor of today's Satanism - magic that draws on evil and malevolent powers - the most violent and cruel of all pagan practices, is black magic. Black magic is the selfish and squalid perversion of magical arts to destroy others, or for personal gain and it believes each person's desires for sex, revenge, anger, and power must be ritualized and released. Black magicians are persons who want power for themselves and they usually make a pact with the Devil.¹⁵¹ Some of the spirits they consort with are "lords of darkness" and must be approached cautiously, for such an entity can be dangerous. Occult lore abounds with tales of alchemists and spiritists who conducted rituals improperly and invoked dark forces that drove the summoner to suicide or insanity.¹⁵²

Lewis Spence wrote, in his *An Encyclopedia of Occultism*:

*"In Black Magic human perversity found the means of ministering to its most terrible demands and the possible attainment of its darkest imaginings. To gain limitless power over god, demon and man; for personal aggrandizement and glorification; to cheat, trick and mock, to gratify base appetites; to aid religious bigotry and jealousies; to satisfy public and private enmities; to further political intrigue; to encompass disease, calamity and death - these were the ends and aims of Black Magic and its followers."*¹⁵³

¹⁵⁰ Black Magic (http://www.occultopedia.com/b/black_magic.htm)

¹⁵¹ Black Magic (http://www.occultopedia.com/b/black_magic.htm)

¹⁵² Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. USA, Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. p175

¹⁵³ Spence, Lewis (1993) *Encyclopedia of Occultism & Parashycology*. U S: Carol Publishing Group

Larson writes that, ¹⁵⁴ black magicians claim there are several means of protection against such pernicious forces. One is constructing a magic circle of security before arousing discarnate beings. Fetishes and charms are also employed to ward off evil. Anthropologists who have studied endemic ceremonial magic in primitive cultures say that curses and spells can work if the persons to whom they are directed believe in their power. Followers of the black arts are always trying to counter the malicious intent of their enemies.”

5.7.2 Westernized Folk Religions

As seen from the above, folk religion is native beliefs from all around the world particularly in parts of South America, Africa, China, and Southeast Asia.¹⁵⁵ For this purpose of this document the focus will be on Voodoo with Santeria and Macumbe as offshoots. Voodoo, was brought to the West Indies by African slaves and is the most widely practiced black art in the Western Hemisphere.¹⁵⁶

5.7.2.1 Voodoo

Definition of voodoo: a religion that is derived from African polytheism and ancestor worship and is practiced chiefly in Haiti.¹⁵⁷

¹⁵⁴ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. USA, Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. p175

¹⁵⁵ What is Folk Religion? (<https://gotquestions.org/folk-religion.html>)

¹⁵⁶ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. USA, Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. p176

¹⁵⁷ Merriam-Webster's Learner's Dictionary: Simple Definition of Voodoo (<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/voodoo>)

Characteristics: This spiritual expression is a blend of African animism, spiritism, and indigenous religion, and in some circumstances contains elements of shamanism, black magic, and witchcraft. Other names and pronunciations: vodou, vodun, vodoun, vudun.¹⁵⁸ Voodoo (known to anthropologists as *vodoun* from the Dahomey West African word for “protective spirit”) is more than a folk religion.¹⁵⁹

Gris-gris (pronounced gree-gree) which are religious amulets are used by some practitioners of voodoo to ward off evil spirits and gris-gris bags are prepared by voodoo priestesses (mambos) and priest (hougans) to attract love and prosperity. Voodoo dolls do exist and are mostly associated with a form of African folk magic called “Hoodoo,” which is a mixture of animism, Spiritism, and a combination of other religious beliefs and practices originating in Africa. In Hoodoo dolls have traditionally been made to represent an individual who the practitioner is attempting to put a spell or curse upon during a religious ceremony.¹⁶⁰

Most voodoo priests do not admit to practicing black magic. All houngans must first learn black magic to fully understand white magic. Since birth each voodoo believer is assigned a spirit, which identity is revealed through a ritual performed by a voodoo priest. The spirit is his own guardian god who supposedly protects and guides him and will ensure the voodoo believer a good life if treated well. The ongoing relationship with the god is intensely personal. Most adherents set aside a part of their house for a small altar which is

¹⁵⁸ Voodoo (<http://www.religionfacts.com/voodoo>)

¹⁵⁹ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson’s Book of Spiritual Warfare*. USA, Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. p176

¹⁶⁰ Voodoo (<http://www.religionfacts.com/voodoo>)

elaborately decorated with candles and pictures of Christian saints. To gain the favour of the spirit, animals sacrifices and gifts are placed on the altar.¹⁶¹

Voodoo rites are used to summon the *loa*, or voodoo spirits, which then possess one or more of the congregants. Loa may be gentle if the *rada* rite is used, or bloody if the petro ceremony is employed. “Human and Loa depend upon each other; humans provide food and other materials; the Loa provide health, protection from evil spirits and good fortune. Rituals are held to celebrate lucky events, to attempt to escape a run of bad fortune, to celebrate a seasonal day of celebration associated with a Loa, for healing, at birth, marriage and death.”¹⁶² Damballa, a grand master spirit, is said to preside over all loa. Pentagrams are considered appropriate symbols for women and the Star of David for men.

5.7.2.2 Santeria

Defintion: An African bases religion similar to voodoo, originating in Cuba, which combines the worship of traditional Yoruban deities with the worship of Roman Catholic saints.¹⁶³

Santeria, originated among black slaves in colonial Spanish territories, especially Cuba and is an offshoot of voodoo. One of the Santeria's main

¹⁶¹ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. USA, Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. p178

¹⁶² Religions of the World: Vodun (a.k.a. Voodoo) and related religions By B.A. Robinson (<http://www.religioustolerance.org/voodoo.htm>)

¹⁶³ American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language, Fifth Edition. Definition of Santeria (<http://www.thefreedictionary.com/Santeria>)

doctrines teaches that the saintgods must be appeased with blood sacrifices - so Santeria priests, regularly slaughter animals.¹⁶⁴

5.7.2.3 Macumba

Definition: A Brazilian cult incorporating the use of fetishes and sorcerer and deriving largely from African practices.¹⁶⁵

In Brazil, voodoo is known as macumba and were imported by the Portuguese to work the sugar plantations. In the sixteenth century African slaves were imported and they brought an advanced system of witchcraft with them. As with voodoo, devout disciples may attempt supernatural feats such as walking on coals, swallowing razors, eating lightbulbs, or pushing nails and pins through their cheeks.¹⁶⁶

Satanists borrow rituals from voodoo, Santeria, Macumba, umbanda, candomble and other Westernized folk religions. Elaborate ceremonies, bloodletting sacrifices, psychic powers, and secret initiations are used by self-styled satanists and inculcated by voodoo cults as a model for their rituals. These satanic folk religions often introduce those already to the occult to darker, more powerful forms of evil.¹⁶⁷

¹⁶⁴ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. USA, Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. p179

¹⁶⁵ Dictionary.com Unabridged. Random House, Inc. Definition of Macumba. (<http://www.dictionary.com/browse/macumba>)

¹⁶⁶ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. USA, Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. p182

6 MANIFESTATIONS OF INVOLVEMENT IN DEMONIC ACTIVITY

6.1 Demons Of Greed¹⁶⁸

- Who has not watched a loved one fall to the temptation of greed? It is not always for money or possessions or power. One can covet other things, like praise. Satan scours the earth looking for anyone to worship him – which is what he wanted when he offered Jesus the kingdoms of the world.
- One lust after people to honour one, to give us accolades, to crown us with praises.
- Anything and everything a person do is encompassed by ones human need and greed for honour and reward.
- This nearly universal human weakness gives demons a playfield in our hearts. For this reason, Jesus offered this counsel in *Luke 14:8-11 (NKJV)* *“When you are invited by anyone to a wedding feast, do not sit down in the best place, lest one more honourable than you be invited by him; and he who invited you and him come and say to you, ‘Give place to this man,’ and then you begin with shame to take the lowest place. But when you are invited, go and sit down in the lowest place, so that when he who invited you comes he may say to you, ‘Friend, go up higher.’ Then you will have glory in the presence of those who sit at the table with you. For whoever exalts himself will be humbled, and he who humbles himself will be exalted.”*
- Jesus was not speaking of mere table graces or teaching us to be clever guests. He was striking at the root need in all of us to be honoured and

¹⁶⁷ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson’s Book of Spiritual Warfare*. USA, Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. p182

¹⁶⁸ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2007) *The Sin War*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

praised. All man must haul to the cross our longings for the plaudits of others, else one will be free from Satan's specialists in greed.

- Who has not seen wealthy people dissatisfied with all they have and striving to earn more? They have been gripped by greed, along with its stepchildren, envy and jealousy.
- The antidote?
 - Allow brothers and sisters in Christ to point out what they see in us.
 - Let the Holy Spirit convict us.
 - Ask God for a humble mind and heart that can not only receive rebuke but seek it avidly in order to be whole.
- How can one discern whether the greed one see in operation is not just unredeemed flesh but is demonic empowered?
 - A first sign is when it begins to go out of control, when the demands and actions of greed can no longer be halted.
 - Sometimes that can be explained by some tragic flaw in the flesh, so one need the Holy Spirit's discernment.
 - When one see inordinate needs driving a person, one are alerted to seek the Lord's wisdom and gifts.
- Deliverance is a matter of both overcoming the flesh and casting away the demonic.
- The roots of excessive greed for money and power seldom have to do with money or the lack of it. Most often they have to do with feelings of not being chosen and cherished in infant and pre-school years and with the lack of affection and appropriate affirmation for accomplishment in early years.
- The adult is still trying subconsciously to do of accumulate enough to satisfy the needs of his or her inner child for parental acceptance and

approval. Demons have taken hold of those subconscious needs and driven the person out of balance.

- Merely shouting at a demon of greed will bring at best only temporary relief.
- There must be two kinds of discernment: of spiritual entities and of human nature.
- To see all as demonic is myopic. To see all as defects in the old nature may be blind and equally ineffective.

6.2 Sexual Demons¹⁶⁹

- Sexual seduction is, next to mental seduction, Satan's highest priority.
- He knows that our bodies are the temple of the Holy Spirit (1 Corinthians 3:16) and wants above all to destroy that temple.
- He knows sexual sin is the only sin within our body (1 Corinthians 6:18) and the one who commits adultery destroys his or her own soul (Proverbs 6:32).
- Surely a *rhema* meaning of Revelation 12:15 is that Satan is spewing out of his mount a veritable Niagara of sexual smut every day through every possible medium – movies, TV, novels, magazines, etc. – to try to sweep away the woman who is the Church.
- The spectre of AIDS haunts our world primarily because of rampant sexual sin.

¹⁶⁹ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2007) *The Sin War*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

6.2.1 Incubus And Succuba Demons¹⁷⁰

- Within the class of sexual tempters are several specific demons.
- First there are incubus and succuba spirits. An incubus poses as the lord or as a benign and loving spirit in order to seduce women sexually.
- An incubus may come to a Christian woman and tell her that it is her right and joy as bride of Christ to please Him by making love to Him physically!
- The demon then manifests itself to her so fully, disguised as a beautiful and desirable man, that it actually can make her feel its touch. It can arouse her and take her completely through to climax. She thinks she has enjoyed intercourse with the Lord Himself!
- With the less gullible, the incubus may realize it cannot fool a woman into thinking it is the Lord, so it claims to be her guardian angel with whom it, of course, all right to enjoy the ministrations of his love. After all, God has sent him, and God has only the best of intentions for her. She has been so lonely. He will always be the one friend she can count on. His love will never fail her. He will always be there for her, understanding her when no one else can or want to. She begins to look forward to these times of privacy in which his delicious touch is such a comfort to her. She may even be so deluded as to thank God fervently for sending her guarding angel to love her.
- Sometimes one had to argue, scold and plead with an incubus victim for hours to convince her that its true intentions were to take her to hell if it could! One could not cast it away and keep it away so long as she longed for its “love”. When her eyes were finally opened, she would cringe in

¹⁷⁰ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2007) *The Sin War*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

revulsion, rage at the deception and repent. Then one could pronounce forgiveness, cleanse her spirit and soul in water and blood of Jesus, and set her free.

- Whenever couples enter into sexual union, Paul tells us they become one flesh (1 Corinthians 6:16).
- God has built us for covenant, a spirit-to-spirit bonding through sexual intimacy.
- God has so created a woman that her spirit fastens onto the first man who enters her and she never forgets that union. From then on, though her mind may forget him, her spirit seeks to find and fulfil him, to comfort him and bear his children. If she sleeps with first one and then another, she is horribly scattered and confused, her spirit drawn here and there.
- A man is likewise built to bond to the first woman he enters, to care for her, protect her and provide for her all his days. His spirit also cannot forget each successive union.
- Some think that the scriptural concept of “one flesh” means simply “one in spirit or attitude.” One has to disagree. That interpretation seems to stem from a platonic and possibly Docetic view of human nature. (Platonism idealized the spiritual rather than physical world, while Docetism claimed that Christ only appeared to have a human body). No, God makes couples who unite sexually one flesh.
- Whenever one hear a confession of fornication or adultery, therefore, one need not only to pronounce forgiveness for the penitent one, but also to take up our authority in the Lord Jesus Christ and lose their spirits from one another (Matthew 18:18 and 16:19).
- One speaks directly to the person’s spirit and commands it to forget the union(s).

- Then one addresses the person's soul, telling the mind to release responsibility for the other and the emotions to let go and forget.
- The mind is not to forget the sin; the remembrance will yield gratitude, humility and the ability to minister to others.
- The spirit and emotions will be free to unite in sexual wholeness and bond properly with the spouse.
- The same kind of bonding happens with incubus spirits. The demon uses that attachment and sense of belonging to further secure its hold on a woman.
- So the healer must not only convince the woman to reject the demon; he must also use his authority to break the attachment and set her free to bond properly where and when she should.
- It is also necessary to ferret out the causes in childhood that left the woman lonely and vulnerable. The most common childhood wounding behind adultery with incubus spirits is undealt-with feelings of rejection, usually by the father, sometimes well-hidden and repressed.
- A succuba is a demon posing as a lovely woman. Counsellors have ministered to men who have awakened in the middle of the night to find themselves already aroused and erect, stimulated almost to the point of ejaculation by a spirit that might also "see" in the dim light as a beautiful woman, touching them lovingly. These demons cannot pose as the Lord, of course, who is the husband. Perhaps this is why they often come to a man in his sleep, bypassing his mind so they can arouse him until he cannot or does not want to stop.
- Afterward he may so come to enjoy "her" visit that, though his mind and conscience nag at him that something is wrong, he does not want to deny

“her”, or he cannot muster the willpower. The succuba uses the natural bonding of his spirit to strengthen its hold.

- Rejection by or frustration with mother figures in childhood, feelings of not being chosen and touched by the mother. Sometimes lack of breastfeeding or being weaned too soon may be part of a man’s vulnerability to succuba.
- Counsellors have ministered deliverance repeatedly to a bachelor whose unsatisfied sexual needs constantly reopen the door to succuba. Though one has tracked his entire history to heal everything one can see, he seems unable to receive the gift of celibacy. To date they have been unable to find the key to enable him to close his door irrevocably.
- Although it is often easy to cast succuba away, the greater responsibility and more difficult task may be to find how to prevent their returning.¹⁷¹

6.2.2 Unclean Spirits, Sexual Abuse, Molestation And Incest¹⁷²

- As our society turns from God and toward “degrading passions” and “a depraved mind” (Romans 1:26, 28), molestation and incest are just two examples of sexual sins that are on the rise at an alarming rate.
- The result: broken homes, dysfunctional families, parents driven by powerful subconscious urges, children fractured by their parents’ actions, etc.
- There is nothing more harmful than sexual abuse or incest on a child by a parent. These two sexual sins fracture children’s trust of authority, destroy self-esteem, trash their glory, defile them and admit spirits of uncleanness.

¹⁷¹ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2007) *The Sin War*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

¹⁷² Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2007) *The Sin War*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

- Such children often become promiscuous in teenage and adult years, and usually cannot enjoy the true blessedness and joy of Christian marital sex.
- Spirits of uncleanness not only tempt parents and others to molest and commit incest; they actually enter the victim through those activities.
- It is necessary to deliver adults from spirits of uncleanness that entered and begun to defile and subdue them when they were molested or taken incestuously as children. From then on they may have had to fight lustful feelings, especially pornographic imaginings, tendencies to addiction to masturbation, lust of the eyes for pornography, voyeurism, burlesque shows, “adult” and X-rated movies, etc.
- Unclean spirits urge men to ask or demand more from their wives than wholesome cherishing allows. They often use a common deception that some Christians have taught – that whatever happens in the marriage bed is holy. If that were true, Paul would not have written (1 Thessalonians 4:3-5): *“For this is the will of God, even your sanctification, that ye should abstain from fornication: That every one of you should know how to possess his vessel in sanctification and honour; Not in the lust of concupiscence, even as the Gentiles which know not God.”*
- Let no one be deceived: A man can commit lust with own wife! Demons of uncleanness prompt him to demand anal sex or oral sex, so also fellatio. Whatever enhances the meeting bonding and cherishing of a married couple for one another is holy and clean. Whatever uses the other solely for self-gratification is, by definition, lust.
- Demons push the normal desires for fulfilment in sexual union into unclean desires for degrading acts. When passions and sexual titillations grow beyond feelings of holy cherishing and meeting, no longer does a man “possess his own vessel in sanctification and honor.” He is acting in lustful passion.

- There should be a joyous sharing of touch and excitement.
- The marital act should be overshadowed by a sense of holiness, of wholesome refreshment and fulfilment.
- Degrading passions destroy that sense – even though in the heat of the moment the couple is excited by the stimulation of it – and leave them feeling let down.
- Unclean spirits try to expand whatever homosexual and lesbian tendencies may have been created by early woundings. They hook into the strongholds of homosexuality and invite principalities of delusion to help justify and secure their hold upon their “gay” victims.
- Counsellors counselled a woman who felt defiled every time her husband made love to her. They could not find in her childhood neither molestation nor sufficient wounding to account for her negative feelings. Then she discovered that her husband was a “closet queen”. He had taken young boys regularly to their summer cabin for homosexual orgies. No wonder she felt unclean.
- Unclean spirits use hidden hatred of women to cause men to become promiscuous or to commit rape. No man who seeks illicit unions is a lover of women, no matter what he thinks. He hates women and loves to defile them. His emotions are ruled by spirits of uncleanness.
- “For there is no good tree which produces good fruit” (Luke 6:43). Love, being good, cannot produce evil. Fornication and adultery are evil. Love cannot produce fornication and adultery. Evil produces evil. Hate and demons of lust, and nothing else, produce illicit sex.
- The same is true for women. Only hatred for men, not love, produces promiscuity. Demons use women’s need for romance, and their desire to feel chosen and beautiful, to make them vulnerable to lecherous men.

- Demons and principalities of uncleanness today are having a heyday as “world rulers of this present darkness” manipulate the media to croon Satan’s siren song of sex and destruction over a gullible world.
- How to set free the entrapped?
 - Become aware.
 - Minister the fullness of healing.
 - Bind and cast away.
 - Find out what fractured and wounded in childhood, especially sexually, giving the demons access.
 - Heal the heart through the grace and cross and resurrection of Christ. Pray wholesome life into the person.
 - If molestation or incest created the vulnerability, cherish the child rejected by being used uncleanly.
 - Help to rebuilt inner heart and character.
 - Long-term counselling that may require becoming as a father or mother in Christ so that the other can drink wholesomeness from Him through the person as His instrument for healing.

6.3 Addictions By Mouth

The night is far spent, the day is at hand: let us therefore cast off the works of darkness, and let us put on the armour of light. Let us walk honestly, as in the day; not in rioting and drunkenness, not in chambering and wantonness, not in strife and envying. But put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh, to fulfil the lusts thereof.

Romans 13:12-14 (KJV)

The connection between sorcery and present-day drug abuse is clear. One reason God so hates sorcery, black magic, drunkenness, and drug abuse is that

it gives control of our spirits to a power besides Him. When one relinquishes control of oneself to a power that is not the Holy Spirit, one are corrupting our minds and bodies and welcoming demonic influence. Man who are created in the image of God (Genesis 1:27) willingly become vessels of evil. Man were designed to be the Holy Spirit's temple (1 Corinthians 6:19), but one cannot be filled with the Spirit and with mind-altering substances at the same time (Ephesians 5:18). To choose sorcery or drugs is to reject the control of God and invite judgment (John 12:48).¹⁷³

6.3.1 Alcoholism

Dr. Anderson Spickard, medical director at the Vanderbilt Institute for Treatment of Alcoholism, writes, "It can happen in any church, but it is the rare congregation that knows the extent of its drinking problem. Because the church members often fail to distinguish between drunkenness and addiction, and because alcoholics are viewed in a judgmental and moralistic light, many Christians mistakenly believe that their fellow believers are immune from the danger of addiction. This conviction allows them to overlook even the most obvious symptoms of alcoholism, particularly if they appear in a Sunday school teacher, a deacon or a minister."¹⁷⁴ The symptoms of alcoholism are usually passed off as backsliding when actually the alcoholic is in relapse.

¹⁷³ What Does The Bible Say About Black Magic? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/black-magic.html>)

¹⁷⁴ Spickard, MD Anderson Jr. (2005) *Dying for a Drink: What You and Your Family Should Know About Alcoholism*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc, p54

6.3.1.1 Symptoms Of Alcoholism

- Drunk driving, previously broken marriage, judgmental attitude, compulsive decision-making, frequent job-changing are all symptoms of addictive behaviour. Unless the pattern is observed, the alcoholism remains undiagnosed and untreated. What are other symptoms of alcoholism? Stephen Arterburn, in *Growing Up Addicted*¹⁷⁵, quotes an article by F. Lemere in the *American Journal of Psychiatry* entitled “The Nature and Significance of Brain Damage from Alcoholism:” “In working with thousands of alcoholics, I’ve seen only one characteristic that they all had in common: the ability to consume large quantities of alcohol”
- High tolerance, the ability to “drink ‘em under the table”, is actually a symptom of alcoholism.
- The alcoholic has developed an increased need of the depressant to produce the same effects.
- Other symptoms include memory losses, blackouts, and withdrawal pains such as D.T.s.
- Secondary diseases such as cirrhosis of the liver.
- Pancreatitis and arthritis.
- Poor job performance, loss of work time.
- Inability to stop drinking permanently.
- Dr Arterburn also points out that recent medical discoveries indicate that alcoholics metabolize alcohol differently from other drinkers. When an alcoholic ingests alcohol, part of the acetaldehyde is retained in his brain tissue where it undergoes chemical changes and transforms into a

¹⁷⁵ Arterburn, Stephen, (April 12, 1987 - 1st Edition) *Growing Up Addicted*, USA: Ballantine Books

chemical abbreviated THIQ. This substance is eight times more addictive than morphine and is known to remain in the brain seven years after the last drink. It is responsible for the return of the craving to drink.

- This piece of information alone is enough to relieve the Christian alcoholic who all along has thought, in spite of his spiritual discipline, that his craving to drink was only the result of sin or moral failure.
- Some 95 percent of all alcoholics are not skid-row bums but respectable people who hold jobs and have families.
- They are functional alcoholics whose alcoholism has not yet progressed to the point of complete debilitation.
- Not all alcoholics get drunk every day either.
- Binge alcoholism, one of the more prominent forms of alcoholics, gives the alcoholic the illusion of control.
- The binge alcoholic may go for ten days, six weeks or 25 years without getting drunk, only to snap back to it in time of stress for no other explained reason.
- Not all alcoholics drink enough to get drunk but find themselves dependent on low-dosage alcohol. One A.A. member reports the rise in attendance among men and women who have discovered they cannot top the daily habit of a “social” drink at a business lunch.
- It is important for every church to wake up to the presence of alcoholism in its members.
- It is a powerful physical addiction with disease-like symptoms that run a fatal course.
- As much as a diabetic must avoid overeating, the alcoholic must avoid anything – even medications – that contains alcohol.

- It is also imperative that the Church be aware of the symptoms a “dry” alcoholic manifests before he is about to relapse.

6.3.2 Drug Addiction¹⁷⁶

Drug abuse has become a huge problem in today's society under youth and adults alike. It has become more socially acceptable at parties and even in sport circles. Even Christians faces temptations in this regards. As stated above, God hates drug abuse as it alters the mind of the user and prohibits the user to distinguish right from wrong. Satan main aim is to kill and destroy. While using drugs a person loses the power to resist Satan and the ability to think clearly and have control over their body.

6.3.2.1 Different Kinds Of Drugs¹⁷⁷:

- Stimulants - These stimulate the nervous system, including the brain. This mainly includes amphetamines ("speed," "uppers," "dexies," "bennies," etc.). Some people classify cocaine here, but others view it as a narcotic.
- Sedatives/Hypnotics - Opposite to stimulants, these depress the nervous system, including the brain. Includes barbiturates ("barbs," "downers"). Heroin, other opiates, and marijuana are sometimes classified here.

¹⁷⁶ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2010) Methodology of Spiritual Warfare. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

¹⁷⁷ Drug Abuse and the Bible by David E Pratte (http://www.gospelway.com/morality/drug_abuse.php) 25 September 2016

- Hallucinogens (Psychedelics) - These affect the brain causing one to lose touch with reality, seeing and hearing things not present (hallucinations). Includes LSD, mescaline, PCP, etc.
- Narcotics - This includes derivatives of the opium plant: opium, morphine, codeine, and heroin. Some are used medically as pain relievers. Some authorities include cocaine in this category.
- Marijuana - Similar in effect to several of the groups above, this is listed separately because it is the most commonly used drug, and some have denied it is dangerous. Also called "grass", "pot", "weed", "Mary Jane", etc., its most active ingredient is THC. Modern marijuana is ten times stronger than that of the early 70's.
- Tranquilizers and other over-the-counter prescriptions – It is one of the most common forms of drug addiction among Christians.
- Addiction to prescription drugs.

According to Professor Brand¹⁷⁸, the problem of drug addiction in the Church will inevitably increase as new believers are harvested from an addictive society and if the revival many predict occurs soon, our churches will be loaded with drug addicts and alcoholics in fragile states of recovery, and one must be ready. But in order to be ready, the Church must learn to deal with other debilitating addictions, subtler because of their social acceptance. These addictions are food, nicotine and caffeine.

¹⁷⁸ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2010) *Methodology of Spiritual Warfare*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

6.3.3 Food Addiction

Food addiction follows the same progression as any other substance addiction, and it is the most common addiction in the Church. Social pressure, stress, changes in circumstances and modern day role models can have a huge impact on people and can also create change in behaviour.

In an article by the Heath Foundation of South Africa it is noted that¹⁷⁹ “South Africa has the highest overweight and obesity rate in sub-Saharan Africa, with up to 70% of women and a third of men being classified as overweight or obese. A staggering 40% of women in our country are obese, which means they have a body mass index greater than 30 kg/m².” The top two killers, cancer and heart disease, are linked to food addiction.

Professor Brand explains food addiction by way of the story of Agnes¹⁸⁰. Agnes has always been a faithful member of her church. She never considered taking alcohol or drugs as it was not something “nice girls” do. She however had a constant battle with her weight. By the time she left school, she was overweight and wearing clothes from plus-size shops and never went out on a date. Agnes have tried to stop overeating. She realized early in her Christian life that food controlled a large part of her thought life and was determined to use her strong willpower on her appetite. Agnes tried every new diet she heard of but time and again, after a few weeks, she always regained the weight she lost. Agnes confessed the sin of idolatry about food whenever the minister preached about

¹⁷⁹ National Obesity Week: South Africa’s Weighty Problem (<http://www.heartfoundation.co.za/media-releases/national-obesity-week-south-africa%E2%80%99s-weighty-problem>)

¹⁸⁰ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2010) *Methodology of Spiritual Warfare*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

self-control, but once out of the church doors, she found it hard to resist the smell of French fries. As Agnes approached her mid-forties, she became depressed, losing almost all interest in her appearance and withdrawing into a shell. She withdrawn from her friends and they didn't see her frequently anymore. She drove to work and to church and hardly anywhere else. Because of her withdrawing herself she became very lonely and got absorbed in a fantasy world of romance novels, TV and comfort food. She went to restaurants alone and assured herself that the Lord wanted her to have some pleasure in life. On these occasions she over-eaten on high calorie foods, each meal amounted to approximately 3,000 calories. Sometimes Agnes knew exactly what she was eating, but at other times she just ate to be eating – to pass the lonely hours. Her taste buds demanded and got whatever morsel they wanted. After each binge session, she felt remorseful and guilty.

Food addiction has several different manifestations. Compulsive overeating is not the only form of food addiction. Another form of food addiction is anorexia nervosa, an emotional eating disorder effecting men and women of all ages. It is characterized by an obsessive desire to lose weight by refusing to eat and cause loss of appetite. This is sometime a way to take control over something in a situation of chaos. Several well-known models, singers and other famous people struggle with this eating disorder and have died due to consequences of it, slowly starving to death as family and friends watched in horror.

Bulimia nervosa is the opposite of anorexia nervosa. Suffers binge or overeat and force themselves to vomit (purge) or take laxatives to get rid of the excess food consumed.

In *Overcoming Overeating*,¹⁸¹ Jane R. Hirschmann and Carol H. Munter make the following observation: The dual preoccupation with food and body shape is the hallmark of compulsive eating.

Some compulsive eaters submit to their need for food and eat while others control their desire for food and diet. In either case, the compulsive eater's life is ruled by the addiction.

"Wrong eating" is another food addiction that drives its victims to eat foods that cause and aggravate existing medical problems is another form of compulsive eating.

Sugar addiction (a common problem for recovering alcoholics) and chocolate addiction (which combines two chemical addictions, caffeine and sugar) tempt the Christian probably more frequently than any other kind.

In their book, *The Hidden Addiction and How to Get Free*¹⁸², two medical doctors, Janice Keller Phelps and Alan E. Nourse, theorize that sugar addiction – or carbohydrate dysmetabolism – is the key factor present in all other substance addictions. In their opinion, the person whose system dysmetabolize carbohydrates, is most likely to develop alcoholism and other addictions. Dr. Phelps defines addiction as the "compulsive and out-of-control use of any chemical substance that can produce withdrawal symptoms" and includes caffeine, nicotine, and sugar.

¹⁸¹ Hirschman, Jane R. and Munter, Carol H., *Overcoming Overeating* (2008) USA, Da Capo Press, Incorporated

¹⁸² Phelps, Janice and Nourse, Alan, *The Hidden Addiction and How to Get Free* (1986) Boston, Little, Brown

The Church, which often adopts a self-righteous attitude toward alcoholism and drug addiction, looks the other way at food addiction. Yet these addicts centre church activities on the presence of their drug of choice – food – and eat themselves to death. Food addiction is as fatal as alcoholism. It is another way of destroying the temple of the Holy Spirit.

What? know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own? For ye are bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God's.

1 Corinthians 6:19-20

And even though it is frequently exposed in Scripture along with drunkenness as leading to destruction, it is viewed, sadly, in some churches as just a more acceptable way of hiding emotional pain.¹⁸³

6.3.3.1 Factors That Might Lead To Eating Disorders?¹⁸⁴

- Low self-esteem
- Inability to express emotions productively
- Feelings of inadequacy
- Anxiety
- Defining oneself in terms of appearance
- Helplessness and a need for control

¹⁸³ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2010) Methodology of Spiritual Warfare. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

¹⁸⁴ The Truth About Eating Disorders(<http://www.focusonthefamily.com/parenting/teens/truth-about-eating-disorders>)

- Difficulty in managing emotions
- Social anxiety and problems with social skills
- A tendency toward perfectionism
- Obsessive compulsive behaviour
- Trauma
- Stress
- Media
- Unhealthy relationships

6.3.4 Nicotine

Freda a long time smoker said: “It is hard to imagine Jesus smoking a cigarette, but to me, cigarettes were harder to give up than marijuana and alcohol.” She was not addicted to marijuana and alcohol, but was addicted to nicotine and like any other addictions, this one will kill. Nicotine is just one of 4000 chemicals and additives in cigarettes and is one of the deadliest poisons available. Its toxicity is comparable to that of cyanide. The only reason why it is not more deadly is that is diluted on tobacco products and that much of it is excreted in the urine.¹⁸⁵

Aside from the overwhelming risk of developing lung cancer, a smoker is four times more likely to have a heart attack than a non-smoker. Despite of these facts, many Christians continue to smoke because they cannot quit with willpower alone. Another long-time Christian smoker told me, “I haven’t smoked

¹⁸⁵ The Truth Behind Nicotine and Christianity (<http://propheciesoftheendtimes.com/?p=3176>)

in twenty years, but sometimes the craving is so strong, I have the urge to pick up old cigarette butts off the parking lot and light up!”¹⁸⁶

6.3.5 Caffeine

Caffeine is one of the more “acceptable” additions for Christians. Caffeine has not been discovered to cause any major illnesses yet, but has been linked to increased instance of fibrocystic disease in women and aggravates heart disease and gastrointestinal difficulties. Limited amounts of caffeine are known to help improve stamina and energy but in larger quantities it can cause addiction that can lead to headaches, and even contribute to heart problems.¹⁸⁷ It is a substitute high for many recovering addicts and it subtly ruins their ability to be drug-free. It is also considered a trigger for the use of stronger drugs. Many drug and alcohol treatment centres are banning caffeine for addicts in treatment for they need to learn to live life and experience their emotions without artificial inducement. This includes not only coffee but also high power energy drinks. Withdrawing from caffeine is not easy. Caffeine it is not considered a serious addiction and tapering off is generally recommended because those who try to go “cold turkey” usually return to it. Withdrawal symptoms include nausea, headaches, runny nose, depression and fatigue. In the words of one minister, “God has only put so many beats in my heart. Why use them up with caffeine?”¹⁸⁸

¹⁸⁶ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2010) *Methodology of Spiritual Warfare*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

¹⁸⁷ Caffeine Addiction – Is it a Sin? (<https://compellingtruth.org/caffeine-addiction.html>)

¹⁸⁸ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2010) *Methodology of Spiritual Warfare*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

7 FREEDOM FROM THE GRIP OF THE ENEMY IN FIVE STEPS

And you, being dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of your flesh, hath he quickened together with him, having forgiven you all trespasses; Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross; And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it.

Colossians 2:13-15 (KJV)

To get free from satanic power is not just a once-for-all act but a lifestyle. When the believer's eyes are fixed on Christ he will not be intimidated, for Satan has much power as God lets him have and not one bit more. The believers fight is not from the standpoint of weakness or doubt; but from the solid rock of victory and faith in a triumphant Christ.

Depending on the level and kind of involvement, the steps listed below might have to be repeated; one act of renunciation, one decisive moment of repentance, is not sufficient. Counselling will also help the person in bondage to break the bonds that holds him to the dark side of the spirit world.

7.1 Repent The Involvement With False Occult Religion”¹⁸⁹

Make a list of the different kinds of occult involvement one were involved in - check a list of occult techniques and practices. Many people who think they have participated in only one form of occultism upon reflection remember involvement in other related sins.

¹⁸⁹ Lutzer, Erwin W. Christian Art Publishers (2002) Seven Snares of the Enemy Breaking Free From The Devil's Grip p140

Repent of this involvement, asking God to break the ties that still bind. For example, a prayer might be, *“Father, I thank You that I belong to You; You have ‘delivered me from the power of darkness and translated me into the kingdom of Your dear Son’ (see Colossians 1:13 KJV), and I claim that transfer of authority and privilege. I renounce my involvement in _____ and break all ties to this evil. I affirm that I am ‘in Christ’ and therefore am no longer subject to Satan and his kingdom. Today I thank You for the victory Christ purchased for me. I affirm the power of the Cross and the Resurrection as belonging to me.”*

7.2 Identify The Lie That Led The Person Into Satan’s Trap”¹⁹⁰

What was the reason for the person’s involvement, how did it take God’s place? Was it for the occult power, knowledge, or an experience that promised to give meaning to their life? Or did the person believe the lie that God can be approached in many different ways; or did the person think that God was simply whatever they wanted Him to be.

Read and memorize passages of Scripture that contradict the false teachings that rectify the lies of the enemy, Scriptures that speak of our glorious position of being “in Christ”.

The thief cometh not, but for to steal, and to kill, and to destroy: I am come that they might have life, and that they might have it more abundantly.

John 10:10 (KJV)

¹⁹⁰ Lutzer, Erwin W. Christian Art Publishers (2002) Seven Snares of the Enemy Breaking Free From The Devil’s Grip p140

If ye then be risen with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God. Set your affection on things above, not on things on the earth. For ye are dead, and your life is hid with Christ in God.

Colossians 3:1-3 (KJV)

7.3 Burn All Bridges – All Of The Entry Points To The Occult Must Be Left Behind”¹⁹¹

All artefacts and articles whether they be Ouija boards, horoscope books, or violent games must be destroyed. A person should stay away from all people and places that led them into occult sin. Scripture gives the believer a promise that there is great power in the name of Christ, but only for those who are submissive to His authority:

Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.

James 4:7 (KJV)

7.4 As Far As Possible Have Relationships With Others “Above Reproach.”¹⁹²

A person should forgive everybody that has wronged them, and lay down all bitterness, giving it over to God, entrusting one’s wounded sense of justice to Him. The only comment Jesus made on the Lord’s Prayer was – to receive

¹⁹¹ Lutzer, Erwin W. Christian Art Publishers (2002) Seven Snares of the Enemy Breaking Free From The Devil’s Grip p141

¹⁹² Lutzer, Erwin W. Christian Art Publishers (2002) Seven Snares of the Enemy Breaking Free From The Devil’s Grip p141

God's forgiveness one should forgive those that has wronged against the person.

To whom ye forgive any thing, I forgive also: for if I forgave any thing, to whom I forgave it, for your sakes forgave I it in the person of Christ; Lest Satan should get an advantage of us: for we are not ignorant of his devices. Furthermore, when I came to Troas to preach Christ's gospel, and a door was opened unto me of the Lord,

2 Corinthians 2:10-12 (KJV)

7.5 Submit To Human Authority Within The Body Of Christ, That Is, The Church.”¹⁹³

“When the disciples could not cast out a demon Jesus told them: “*This kind does not go out except by prayer and fasting*” (Matthew 17:21, margin; cf. Mark 9:29). There is strength in numbers and strongholds given over to Satan are sometimes not easily evoked.

One need the strength of the body of Christ for mutual help and accountability, for battles cannot be won on one's own. Paul lists various pieces of Armor needed in our fight against spiritual powers in Ephesians 6.”¹⁹⁴

¹⁹³ Lutzer, Erwin W. Christian Art Publishers (2002) Seven Snares of the Enemy Breaking Free From The Devil's Grip p142

¹⁹⁴ Lutzer, Erwin W. Christian Art Publishers (2002) Seven Snares of the Enemy Breaking Free From The Devil's Grip p142

Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand. Stand therefore, having your loins girt about with truth, and having on the breastplate of righteousness; And your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace; Above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked. And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God:

Ephesians 6:13-17 (KJV)

“In ancient times shields were bevelled, so that they could be interlocked. As the army marched, they formed a moving wall that opposing soldiers found difficult to penetrate. By locking arms with other believers, the person who is in Satan’s grip will discover that there is a way out of the traps the Enemy has set.

By standing on the promise in Scripture, the believer can make sure that the destructive plan Satan has for his lives is not fulfilled.”¹⁹⁵

Ye are of God, little children, and have overcome them: because greater is he that is in you, than he that is in the world.

1 John 4:4 (KJV)

“A PRAYER TO BEGIN THE JOURNEY

Father, I thank You today that Satan was defeated by Christ on the cross. I thank You that the serpent’s head was crushed in the dust, as You predicted. Today I affirm that I can live differently; I thank You that victory was purchased for me by Christ’s resurrection and ascension into heaven, where He is seated “far above all rule and

¹⁹⁵Lutzer, Erwin W. Christian Art Publishers (2002) Seven Snares of the Enemy Breaking Free From The Devil’s Grip p142

authority, power and dominion, and every title that can be given, not only in the present age but also in the one to come" (Ephesians 1:20-21), and I thank You that I am seated there with Him. Grant me the grace to apply His promises against Satan and his hordes. I hereby serve Satan notice that his days over me have come to an end. Help me to take the steps needed to walk before You in freedom and fellowship.

*I pray this in the worthy and powerful name of Jesus, my conquering Lord. Amen."*¹⁹⁶

8 CULTS

8.1 Definition Of The Word Cult:

The word *cult* comes from the French *culte*, and is rooted in the Latin *cultus*, which means "care" and "adoration." That idea comes from the Latin *cultus* - the past participle of *colere*, which means "to cultivate."¹⁹⁷

The word was used in the sense of "to worship or give reference to a deity."¹⁹⁸

Nowadays the term 'cult' has a variety of meanings:

1. formal religious veneration: worship
2. a system of religious beliefs and ritual and its body of adherents
3. a religion regarded as unorthodox or spurious, also its body of adherents

¹⁹⁶ Lutzer, Erwin W. Christian Art Publishers (2002) Seven Snares of the Enemy Breaking Free From The Devil's Grip p142

¹⁹⁷ Cults (<http://www.apologeticsindex.org/c09.html>)

¹⁹⁸ Charlton T Lewis and Charles Short, A Latin Dictionary (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1879, impression of 1984), p370

4. a system for the cure of disease based on dogma set forth by its promulgator (health *cults*)
5. a) great devotion to a person, idea, object, movement, or work (as a film or book); *especially*: such devotion regarded as a literary or intellectual fad
b) a usually small group of people characterized by such devotion

The modern definition of a mind control cult is any group which employs mind control and deceptive recruiting techniques.¹⁹⁹ In other words they trick people into joining and coerce them into staying.²⁰⁰ This is the definition that most people would agree with, except the cults themselves of course!

8.2 Types Of Cults

8.2.1 Religious

"The dictionary defines cult as "a system of religious worship or ritual"; "devoted attachment to, or extravagant admiration for, a person, principle, etc." According to this definition, any believer in any god is a member of a cult. In the popular media, a cult is typically defined as a religious sect whose members are "controlled" by a manipulative organization or individual. This kind of cult is usually portrayed as deceptive, requiring absolute loyalty from its followers. Members are often removed from their prior lives altogether, including their jobs, homes and families. The Hare Krishnas, Sun Myung Moon's Unification

¹⁹⁹ How Cults Work (<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>)

²⁰⁰ How Cults Work (<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>)

Church, and Moses David Berg's Family of Love are some popular examples of this type of cults.²⁰¹

8.2.2 Commercial

Cults that use commercial gain as their base are called "cults of greed". They will promise richness when joining them and follow their special programme. Their leader will be used as an example and they will explain that if done what he or she says, success will be achieved too. "Commercial cults use mind control to get people to work for them for free, and to make them pay for an endless stream of motivational tapes, videos, books and seminars all of which are supposedly designed to help them succeed, but in reality are designed to enhance the cult's mind control environment and keep people believing in their almost impossible dream of success. They do not mention that the primary way the leaders make money are by selling these motivation materials to their group."²⁰²

8.2.3 Self Help And Counselling

Cults that use "self-help" or counselling or self-improvement as their base often target business people and corporations. They claim by doing their courses and seminars corporations and their staff will become more successful. Business people locked away in hotel rooms are subjected to quasi-religious²⁰³ indoctrination as they play strange games, join in group activities, and share

²⁰¹ Religious Cults By Bobby Conway (<http://www.allaboutcults.org/religious-cults.htm>)

²⁰² How Cults Work (<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>)

²⁰³ Definition - quasi-religious. (<http://www.thefreedictionary.com/quasi-religious>). Meaning it resemble something that is religious.

their innermost thoughts with the group. Once they have completed one course they are told that they need to do the more advanced course, which naturally costs more than the last. These cults will sometimes request volunteer work and that people help recruit friends, family and work mates. These groups specialize in creating powerful emotional experiences which are then used to validate the involvement in the cult. The religious overtones are couched in terms which don't sound religious. They usually come to the surface once they near the end of a seminar. Many people have been bankrupted by involvement with these cults.²⁰⁴

8.2.4 Political

Cults that use political ideals as their base are well known throughout history. Hitler's Nazi Germany and Stalin's Communist USSR were classic examples of mind control on a very large scale. On smaller scales white and black supremacists, terrorists, and rebel groups commonly use forms of mind control to recruit and dominate their members.²⁰⁵

Cults, wonderful on the outside but on the inside are very manipulating. Cult leaders are desperate to trick people into joining. They are after obedience, time and money.

Cults use sophisticated mind control and recruitment techniques that have been refined over time.

²⁰⁴ How Cults Work (<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>)

²⁰⁵ How Cults Work (<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>)

8.2.5 Religious Cults

Many religions were considered cults before they became religions. Today anti-Christian religions are still considered to be cults, for example:

- ❖ **Hare Krishna mantra**, also referred to reverentially as the Maha Mantra (“Great Mantra”), is a sixteen – word Vaishnava mantra made well known outside of India by the International Society for Krishna Consciousness (commonly known as the Hare Krishnas)
- ❖ **Jehovah’s witnesses** – their theology denies every cardinal belief of historic Christianity, including the Trinity, the Divinity of Jesus, His Bodily resurrection, and salvation by grace through faith, and eternal punishment of the wicked;
- ❖ **Mormonism** – is a term used to describe the religious, ideological, and cultural elements of certain branches of the Latter Day Saint movement, and specifically, The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints;
- ❖ **Trancendental meditation** – or TM, is the trademarked name of a meditation technique, introduced in 1958 by Maharishi Yogi (1917-2008). The technique, practiced for twenty minutes twice a day while sitting with one’s eyes closed;
- ❖ **Theosophy** – is a doctrine of religious philosophy and metaphysics originating with Helena Petrovna Blavatsky. It literally means “wisdom of God”;
- ❖ **Moonies** – is derogatory term for members of the Unification Church, based on the name of church founder Sun Myung Moon. It was first used as a derisive label by the news media in the 1970’s in the United States;

- ❖ **Christian Science** – is a religious teaching regarding the efficacy of spiritual healing according to the interpretation of the Bible by Mary Baker Eddy, in her book *Science and Health with Key to the scriptures* (first published in 1875);
- ❖ **Unity** – also known officially as Unity School of Christianity and informally as Unity Church;
- ❖ **New Age** – is a western subculture that combines aspects of spirituality, philosophy and religious practices from many cultures across the world. Other terms used to describe the movement include Self-spirituality, New spirituality and Mind-body-spirit.²⁰⁶

8.3 Characteristics Of A Cult

Some common characteristics of cults are: they teach what is described as a new truth; they teach new interpretation of Scripture; they teach from a non-Biblical source of authority; they teach another Jesus; they reject orthodox Christianity; they say one thing but believe another; they teach non-Biblically on the nature of God (Trinity); they change their theology periodically; they have strong personable leadership; they teach salvation by works; and they teach false prophecy.

²⁰⁶ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2007) *Teaching Manual Volume 4 - Spiritual Warfare (Advance) An Exposition of World Views*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

8.4 Misconceptions About Cults

8.4.1 Are Cults Easy To Spot, Do They Wear Strange Clothes And Live In Communes?

Cults are everywhere. Some are mainstream and widely accepted, whilst others are isolationist and hide from examination at great expense. They are growing and flourishing.²⁰⁷ They are normal everyday people who live in houses and wear the same clothes and eat the same food. "Cult leaders don't want a person to know that one is being recruited into a cult and so they order their recruiters to dress, talk and act in a way that will put one at ease."²⁰⁸ One cult has even invented a phrase to describe this - they call it "being relatable".

8.4.2 Are Cults Full Of The Weak, Weird And Emotionally Unstable?

No, many cult members are very intelligent, attractive and skilled. Rich, poor, educated, non-educated, old, young, previously religious, atheistic, etc. people are involved in cults. One of the few common denominators is that they were often recruited at a low point in their life.²⁰⁹

8.4.3 Are Cults Just A Bunch Of Religious Nut Cases?

This is a mistake people make thinking that cults are purely religious groups. The modern definition of a mind control cult refers to all groups that use mind

²⁰⁷ Cults! An Outline Analysis By Matt Slick (<https://carm.org/cults-outline-analysis>)

²⁰⁸ How Cults Work (<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>)

²⁰⁹ Cults! An Outline Analysis By Matt Slick (<https://carm.org/cults-outline-analysis>)

control and devious recruiting techniques. “The belief system of a religion is often warped to become a container for these techniques, but it is the techniques themselves that make it a cult.”²¹⁰

In a free society people can believe what they want, but most people would agree that it is wrong for anyone to try and trick and control people.” Basically Christians have said that if a group claims to be Christian and yet teaches something fundamentally different from what the Bible teaches then they are a cult, for example a Buddhist group that claims to be Buddhist is not a cult, but a Buddhist group that pretends to be Christian is.²¹¹

8.5 How Does Cults Work?

Cults usually seek to do good works, otherwise no one would join them and they are usually moral and possess a good standard of ethical teaching.²¹² To spot a cult one need to know how they work and understand the techniques they use.

Cult leaders attempt to control their members with mind control. Mind control is not some kind of magical device which can take away peoples' free will; in other words, it does not turn people into some sort of remote control robot. Mind control is seen as a dishonest influence placed covertly on cult members by the cult. “So instead of mind control being some sort of irresistible force like the aliens in the movies that take over people’s minds, it is more like a gun. The

²¹⁰ How Cults Work (<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>)

²¹¹ How Cults Work (<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>)

²¹² Cults! An Outline Analysis By Matt Slick (<https://carm.org/cults-outline-analysis>)

cult leader points the mind control "gun" at a member and says, "if you leave us then you will lose all of your friends and family", "if you don't conform then you will go to Hell", "if you don't give us money then you will fail in business"²¹³.

Mind Control consists of a series of techniques that cults use.

8.6 Deception

If people knew their true practices and beliefs beforehand they would not join, therefore cults use deception to recruit and operate. A cult needs to hide the truth from a person until they think he is ready to accept it.

"For example, imagine if the leader of Heavens Gate cult was open and honest about the group and had said to new recruits, "Join us, wear strange clothes, get castrated and then drink poison!" he would not have had many takers."²¹⁴

Cults mislead new recruits/members as to the true expectations and activities of the group. A cult will have a slick well-rehearsed Public Relations front which hides what the group is really like and they may hide any signs of illegal, immoral or hyper-controlling practices until the recruit has fully immersed himself in the group.²¹⁵ They will tell how they help the poor, or support research, or peace, or the environment, or they will tell the person how happy he will be in their group. Everyone in the cult will always seem very happy and enthusiastic, mainly because they have been told to act happy and will get in

²¹³ How Cults Work (<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>) 1 October 2016

²¹⁴ How Cults Work (<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>) 1 October 2016

²¹⁵ How Cults Work (<http://people.howstuffworks.com/cult4.htm>)

trouble if they don't. One will not be told what life is really like in the group, nor what they really believe. These things will be introduced to man slowly, one at a time, so he will not notice the gradual change, until eventually he is practicing and believing things which at the start would have caused him to run a mile.²¹⁶

8.7 Exclusivism

A normal religious organization would not have any trouble with a person moving to another similar organization as long as the person stayed in that same religion, for it is the belief system that matters, not membership in an organization. For example, if a person were a Christian then one could move from one church to another and still be a Christian.

Cult leaders will tell that one can only be "saved" (or can only be successful) in their organization alone, that no other organization has the truth and all others miss the mark. So it is not the belief system that decides ones future, it is the belief system AND ones membership with that particular group.²¹⁷

The cult leaders need to make a person believe that there is nowhere else he can go and still be saved, and if he ever leaves the "one true church" then he is going to hell. Through fear the cult leaders will try to keep one in the cult and this also gives them tremendous power over a person. If one really believe that leaving the group equals leaving God (or means one are leaving the only chance to succeed in life), then one will obey the cult leaders even when one

²¹⁶ How Cults Work (<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>) 1 October 2016

²¹⁷ How Cults Work (<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>) 1 October 2016

disagree with them instead of risking being kicked out of the group. Exclusivism is used as a threat; and a person's behaviour is controlled through fear.²¹⁸

One should be very suspicious of any group that claims to be better than all the others. When a religious group say that other groups following the same religion are ok, but they are the ones who have a better grasp of the truth and they are superior to the rest - is a subtle version of exclusivism. This is one of the practices that cults are often very deceptive about. For example, first off they may give one the impression that they think the person are a true Christian, Buddhist or Muslim and it's not until later that their true position is revealed.²¹⁹

8.8 Fear And Intimidation

Cult leadership is feared. To disagree with leadership is the same as disagreeing with God. The cult leaders will claim to have direct authority from God to control almost all aspects of one's life. When the cult is not a religious group the questioning of the leaders or program will be seen as a sign of rebellion and stupidity.

Guilt, Character Assassination and Breaking Sessions:

Guilt will be used - the person is told that to leave is to betray the leader, God, the group, etc. The person is told that to leave would mean to reject the love and help the group has given. They will tell the person that the reason he is not making money is because he is not "with the programme", or that he is not able

²¹⁸ How Cults Work (<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>) 1 October 2016

²¹⁹ How Cults Work (<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>) 1 October 2016

to convert new recruits because "his heart is prideful and full of sin". Their programme will never get the blame – thus it is always one's fault, - therefore one needs to try harder. They will also make one feel very guilty for disobeying any of the cult's written or unwritten rules.

Character Assassination is used to help create the guilt in a person and is a type of false reasoning used by people and groups who have no real argument.

Two or more cult members and leaders will attack the character of another person, until such person breaks, and he is crying uncontrollably.²²⁰

8.9 Love Bombing And Relationship Control

Cults know that if they can control a person's relationships then they can control the person. Whether one like it or not people are all profoundly affected by those around us. When one first go to a cult they will practice "*love bombing*", where they arrange instant friends for a person. Sometimes there is a lot of physical contact like hugging, pats on the back, touching and cult group members will lend emotional support to someone in need. It will seem wonderful; how could such a loving group be wrong! But one soon learns that if one ever disagree with them, or ever leave the cult then one will lose all ones new "friends". This unspoken threat influences ones actions in the cult. Things that normally would have made one complain will pass by silently because one doesn't want to be ostracized. Like in an unhealthy relationship love is turned on and off to control.²²¹

²²⁰ How Cults Work (<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>) 1 October 2016

²²¹ Cults! An Outline Analysis By Matt Slick (<https://carm.org/cults-outline-analysis>)

A mind control cult will seek to manoeuvre a person's life so as to maximize ones contact with cult members and reduce outside contacts. By isolating a person from friends and family, they can easily control and shape the member.²²²

8.10 Information Control

In a mind control cult any information from outside the cult is considered evil, especially if it is opposing the cult, thus those who control the information control the person. Members are told not to read it or believe it. Only information supplied by the cult is true. One will be expelled from the group if caught with another cult's information. One cult labels any information against it as "persecution" or "spiritual pornography", another cult calls it "apostate literature." Cults train their members to instantly destroy any critical information given to them, and to not even entertain the thought that the information could be true.²²³

Common sense tells us that a person who does not consider all information may make an unbalanced decision. Filtering the information available or trying to discredit it not on the basis of how true it is, but rather on the basis of how it supports the party line, is a common control method used throughout history.

²²² Cults! An Outline Analysis By Matt Slick (<https://carm.org/cults-outline-analysis>)

²²³ How Cults Work (<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>) 1 October 2016

8.11 Reporting Structure

Cults have a pyramid reporting structure with one leader at the top. This leader demand subservience from cult members and all decisions must be discussed with the leader of the cult. In doing this, subordinates are encouraged to watch out for "struggling" brothers and sisters. Any improper behaviour, however minor, is reported back to the cult leadership. The leader will then preach a sermon directly aimed at what a particular member is currently struggling with and this can result in a "Voice of God" sermon. This information that was given in the deepest confidence is then automatically used to convince their members that they have a supernatural link. The trusting member does not suspect the very natural mechanism behind the supernatural revelations they are given.²²⁴

“People in a mind control cult will also hide their true thoughts and feelings, and instead wear a mask which presents them as a perfect cult member. This mask is a defence against being reported to leadership and being punished for not measuring up (cult members never feel like they measure up to the cult's ideals, and yet often believe the other members around them do, when in reality the others feel the same as them). Hence cult members are trained not only to deceive outsiders, but also to deceive their fellow cult members. Rarely can close friendships form in cults, and if they do the cult's leaders may see them as a threat and move those people away from each other. Nothing is allowed that can be more powerful than the cult members' allegiance to the group and its leaders.”²²⁵

²²⁴ Techniques of mind control: (<http://cults.co.nz/cultfaq/mindcontrol.php>)

²²⁵ How Cults Work (<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>) 1 October 2016

8.12 Time Control

The leader typically controls every minute of a member's waking time and there is no free time to think or analyse. Members are told what to eat, what to wear, how to feed their children, when to sleep - the member is removed from all decision-making. Members are being kept busy with meetings and activities that they become too tired to think about their involvement. By controlling the member's time, the members are kept immersed in the manufactured cult environment. And time control helps keep cult members away from friends and family.²²⁶

8.13 Mind Control Techniques

Mind control is a way of manipulating cult members' minds. It is not the same as brainwashing people. All the above mentioned points are techniques that together create mind control. Cults use these techniques to manage the members and even punish them, the cult leaders make them understand it is for their own good. Remember, people are not perfect, but if they employ them constantly one are most likely dealing with a cult.

8.14 Pressure Selling

"One of the most common forms of commercial cults is the pressure selling organization. These groups ostensibly make money by selling goods via their sales organization, but in reality they make their money by selling goods and

²²⁶ How Cults Work (<http://people.howstuffworks.com/cult4.htm>)

motivational materials to their sales organization. Using mind control, they seek to enlarge and maintain their sales force, and hence their profits."²²⁷

Some names along with the bad reputations of these groups are well known to the general public, so their recruiters need to be very deceptive. When they call to set up a meeting to discuss a "business opportunity" or new "eCommerce venture", the organization behind it will not be mentioned. A completely different name might be mentioned when asked. Long intense presentations are done, designed to convince a possible member that he could make a lot of money when following their plan. The real organization behind it will only be mentioned near the end of the meeting.

A few hints one can recognize a cult by:

- Deception and lies are present from the word go in the recruitment process. No valid business needs to use deception.
- Super hyped meetings, books, tapes, videos, leaflets, products.²²⁸

8.15 Cult Recruiting Techniques

Here are some key warning signs that may indicate a cult is trying to recruit a person.

- ***Hyped Meetings***

They invite a person to a group meeting rather than explain to him what the group believes or what their programme is all about. At the meeting

²²⁷ How Cults Work (<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>) 1 October 2016

²²⁸ How Cults Work (<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>) 1 October 2016

everyone around will seem so enthusiastic that one will start to think there is something wrong with oneself. They create an environment where one will feel uncomfortable and the only way to become comfortable is to join them. This is an application of controlled peer pressure.²²⁹

- **Smooth talkers**

One should think that cults use harassment and arguments to pressure people into joining. Nothing could be further from the truth. The mind control techniques used by cults nowadays have evolved and frequently soft talk, charm and appealing topics are used to flatter, entice and even seduce people into making commitments.²³⁰

- **Intense Unrelenting Pressure**

They keep the pressure on by calling repeatedly, meeting a person on campus or outside one's work and trick one into coming for only an hour and then lead one into a long study, meeting or talk. By this they make sure a person doesn't snap out of the mind control environment they are trying to immerse one in.

- **They tell people that they are not a cult.**

Some cults go as far to tell a person that Satan will try and dissuade one by sending family members and friends to tell one it is a cult. This is a pre-emptive strike against the warnings from friends and family members whom they know will come. When this happens the recruit in his mind thinks that the "agents of Satan" do exist as predicted by the cult members and therefore the warning of the group must be true.²³¹

²²⁹ How Cults Work (<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>) 1 October 2016

²³⁰ Mind Control Techniques In Cult Recruiting (<http://www.decision-making-confidence.com/mind-control-techniques.html>)

²³¹ How Cults Work (<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>) 1 October 2016

8.16 Warning Signs

- Single charismatic leader and inappropriate loyalty to their leaders.
- People always seeming constantly happy and enthusiastic.
- Instant friends.
- Dishonouring the family unit.
- To facilitate control over the members physically, intellectually, financially, and emotionally.
- Often an individual or small but powerful leadership group holds control of the group's teachings and practices and they hide what they teach.
- Often considers traditional religious systems to be apostate and it alone possesses the complete truth.
- Hyped meetings get a person going to meetings rather than to share with him.
- Experiential rather than logical.
- Often requires tithing and/or property transfer to the religious system and asking for money for the next level.
- Some cults travel door to door during times when women are home alone. They, and this is rather sexist, think that women are easier to recruit and once they have the woman then it will be easier to snare the husband or partner.²³²

Beware of thinking that one are immune from cult involvement; the cults have millions of members around the world who once thought they were immune, and still don't know they are in a cult.

²³² Cults! An Outline Analysis By Matt Slick (<https://carm.org/cults-outline-analysis>)

In general, the remarkable sign of a cult is that they all ultimately deny the fact that Jesus Christ is the only begotten Son, they deny His second personality of Trinity, and renounce that He is mankind's only hope. All cults are anti-Christ. Commonly, it is nearly always a group of people following one man's false interpretation of the Bible. Conceptually, an organization or group of people is regarded as cult if they deny, pervert, and/or misinterprets basic Biblical doctrine.

9 WITCHCRAFT

9.1 Definition Of Witchcraft

- Witchcraft is a spiritual force released against an individual, family, marriage, health, finances, a church, or even a nation. It is the power of Satan and is released by words of doubt, unbelief and rebellion"²³³
- Witchcraft can be divided into two main groups: (1) Witchcraft through evil power and (2) Witchcraft as a work of the flesh (Galatians 5:19-20). Witchcraft as a product of the works of the flesh is much more complex than general witchcraft. Leviticus 20:27 says that a wizard shall be stoned to death. A stubborn or rebellious person is also a wizard or witch (1 Samuel 15:23). Either one is a witch by regular definition or a witch as a result of rebellion, the sentence remains unchanged – death!

²³³ Brand, Prof Connie (2004) Spiritual Warfare Conference, University of Pretoria. pp 1-6

9.2 The Way Witchcraft Works

“Balak, the Midianite king, sought to use witchcraft to stop Israel, before they entered Canaan. However, every time the sorcerer Balaam opened his mouth to curse Israel, blessings poured forth instead. Balaam asserted,

How shall I curse, whom God hath not cursed? or how shall I defy, whom the LORD hath not defied?

Numbers 23:8 (KJV)

One can find a basic understanding of witchcraft and how the transfer of curses occurs by just studying this text.

In the Gospel of John, one read that all things came into being through God, and apart from Him nothing exists. There is no power in the universe, except that which comes from God for God is the sole Creator, He is the prime mover of all creation. In Scripture John tells us that all things came into being through Him, and apart from Him nothing exists. In the book of Hebrews one read that, even now, the Lord is “*upholding and maintaining and guiding and propelling the universe by His mighty word of power*” (Hebrews 1:3 Amp).

Through spontaneous and biological creation and through the natural laws of physics God’s “**mighty ...**

power” is revealed in the universe, it is also unveiled through spiritual and moral laws of physics and through spiritual and moral laws which govern our relationships.

In every aspect of ones live, one are governed by the interconnected, congruous expressions of God’s power, for every breath, each thought and

movement one make has its existence in the continuum of God's energy. Scripture states:

For in him we live, and move, and have our being; as certain also of your own poets have said, For we are also his offspring.

Acts 17:28 (KJV)

The followers of Christ have free will choice to be “plugged” in to the power of God where they can obey Him, and their lives move forward along the stream of His blessings. Here, He orchestrates all things to work for their good - or they can choose to be “unplugged”, where they turn away from Him, and eventually position themselves under the weight of His judgment. “Unplugged” the believer, will leave himself indefensible against evil.

The four most common ways a person can leave himself indefensible against evil is:

- **Unforgiveness** - God forgives us, and He asks us to do the same for others - By forgiving others the believer can increase his power in the Spirit
- **Taking the credit** - Be humble and give God the credit for what He has done in one's life - protect God's power in one's life by giving credit where it's due.
- **Self-pity** – One can be pitiful or one can be powerful, but one can't be both.” When one is stuck in self-pity, spend time in the Word of God and ask God to renew one's mind.
- **Complaining** – magnify all the wonderful things God has done for one – don't focus on the negative, and maintain a thankful spirit.²³⁴

²³⁴ Plugging into God's Unlimited Power By Joyce Meyer (<http://www.charismamag.com/blogs/straight-talk/17077-plugging-in-to-god-s-unlimited-power>)

By walking in obedience to the will of God a person becomes a blessing. If a person rebel against Him, his existence is under God's wrath, and his life is accursed. Scripture describes the believer's freedom is the choice between God's blessing or His curse – and every soul has this choice. Frances writes,²³⁵ "an individual could be rich and famous, but inwardly accursed and wretched; or one could be materially poor but inwardly blessed and full of life's truest joys. God's blessings are manifested in the quality of our *lives*, not the quality of our *possessions*."²³⁶

Let not mercy and truth forsake thee: bind them about thy neck; write them upon the table of thine heart:

Proverbs 3:3 (KJV)

It is hard to imagine that God will curse anything – though God's love for humankind motivates His judgment to nudge the wicked towards righteousness and peace.

God's "wrath," His "judgment" or "sentence against sin" and His "curse" are all interchangeable terms. Scripture read - His wrath abides on "*all ungodliness and unrighteousness*" (*Romans 1:18*) and before man was saved, we "*walked ... according to the prince of the power of the air, of the spirit that is now working in the sons of disobedience ... by nature [we were] children of wrath, even as the rest*" (*Ephesians 2:2-3*).

²³⁵ Frangipane, Francis (1994) *The Divine Antidote*. USA: Arrow Publications. p61–65

²³⁶ Frangipane, Francis (1994) *The Divine Antidote*. USA: Arrow Publications. p61–65

9.2.1 Satan: Master Manipulator

It is important to know how witchcraft functions in order to apply God's antidote to the effects of witchcraft. Firstly, the devil has no power to originate anything and can only manipulate what already is under the judgement or wrath of God and secondly, all sin is under God's curse, and whatever is under God's curse is accessible to evil spirits.²³⁷

The spirit of God is against any form of witchcraft, from divination to magic to rebellion to word curses, and to works of the flesh and Christians are not exempt from this. Paul explains that the flesh lusts against the Spirit and the Spirit against the flesh and what one sows to the flesh, he will reap corruption. Galatians 5:19-21 explains the works of the flesh.²³⁸

Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are these; Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, Idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies, Envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told you in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God.

Galatians 5:19-21 (KJV)

In Colossians 3:25 Paul says, *"For he who does wrong will receive the consequences of the wrong which he has done, and that without partiality."* What was the consequence for the man who refused to show mercy to others after receiving mercy himself, in the parable Jesus told?

²³⁷ Frangipane, Francis (1994) *The Divine Antidote*. USA: Arrow Publications. p61–65

²³⁸ Why Are So Many Christians Practicing Witchcraft? By Jennifer Leclaire (<http://www.charismamag.com/blogs/the-plumb-line/17355-why-are-so-many-christians-practicing-witchcraft>)

And his lord was wroth, and delivered him to the tormentors, till he should pay all that was due unto him. So likewise shall my heavenly Father do also unto you, if ye from your hearts forgive not every one his brother their trespasses.

Matthew 18:34-35 (KJV)

The sin in a Christian's heart will eventually reap corruption and make him vulnerable to evil spirits if he fails to repent and walk humbly with his God. Sin carries its own punishment and the Lord does not have to personally "hand" someone over to "torturers."

"The good news is that God's greatest blessing abides upon the nature of Christ and if a person walks in the Spirit he will not fulfil the lusts of the flesh but will draw the Father's blessing. How do one know if one is walking in the Spirit? The fruit of the Spirit is **love, joy, peace, longsuffering, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, gentleness and self-control**. This fruit manifests when one walks in the Spirit."²³⁹

9.2.2 Heaven's Fence

In Numbers 23:8 Balaam's statement, "*How shall I curse, whom God has not cursed? And how can I denounce, whom the Lord has not denounced?*" shows us that God has limited Satan's power – meaning only those areas of man's heart which are already under divine judgment because of persistent sin are openly vulnerable to curses and the effects of witchcraft.

²³⁹ Why Are So Many Christians Practicing Witchcraft? By Jennifer LeClaire (<http://www.charismamag.com/blogs/the-plumb-line/17355-why-are-so-many-christians-practicing-witchcraft>)

9.2.3 Satan And Job

The book of Job throws positive light upon God's reason for permitting Satan freedom to tempt the human race. The first chapters of Job are important as these chapters show how Satan carried on his warfare against God after being cast out of heaven and reveals the character of this war which has now shifted its theatre of action to the earth. In understanding Satan's strategy in his age-long conflict with God the believer's knowledge of this is important.

The reason why God has permitted the devil freedom to continue his temptations of the human race will become evident as one consider this.

9.2.3.1 The Challenge Of Satan

In the passages of Job 1:6-7 it is clear that Satan still has access to the presence of God in Heaven after his initial rebellion and casting down out of heaven.

Now there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the LORD, and Satan came also among them. And the LORD said unto Satan, Whence comest thou? Then Satan answered the LORD, and said, From going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it.

Job 1:6-7 (KJV)

In the second chapter of Job the same incident is recorded again.

Again there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the LORD, and Satan came also among them to present himself before the LORD. And the LORD said unto Satan, From whence comest thou? And Satan answered the LORD, and said, From going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it.

Job 2:1-2 (KJV)

When God's angels presented themselves and came to report to the Lord, Satan was among them – thus the passage indicate that the other angels did not recognized him. Paul said:

And no marvel; for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light.
2 Corinthians 11:14 (KJV)

Apparently Satan could appear in the presence of God mingling with the other angels and only be identified by God. God did not immediately banish Satan from heaven but actually had a conversation with him – therefore in the time of Job, Satan still had access to the presence of God in heaven.

The purpose for his visit was to call God's attention to how thoroughly evil had triumphed on the earth, thus supporting his contention that man would not serve God if the temptation was sufficiently strong to do otherwise.

9.2.3.2 Job Becomes The Centre Of Conflict

Job was a prosperous man who had a large family, wealth and blessings of every kind imaginable. Satan came to God, and God answered Satan by reminding him of His servant, Job, saying,

And the LORD said unto Satan, Hast thou considered my servant Job, that there is none like him in the earth, a perfect and an upright man, one that feareth God, and escheweth evil?

Job 1:8 (KJV)

Satan had his answer ready and said that Job feared God only because of what he could get out of it and that God had protected him, made a hedge about him, gave him wealth and prosperity. Satan contended that once this prosperity was taken away from Job, he would curse God to his face, but God accepts the challenge to prove to Satan that Job is not righteous just because he is being blessed.

And the LORD said unto Satan, Behold, all that he hath is in thy power; only upon himself put not forth thine hand. So Satan went forth from the presence of the LORD.

Job 1:12 (KJV)

With permission granted, Satan went forth to bring disaster upon Job - Job lost just about everything; his sheep, his oxen, his camels, his servants, and all of his sons and daughters, except his wife but Job did not lose his faith in God but tore his robe, shaved his head, and fell to the ground and worshipped God.

And said, Naked came I out of my mother's womb, and naked shall I return thither: the LORD gave, and the LORD hath taken away; blessed be the name of the LORD.

Job 1:21 (KJV)

Job did not know the reason for his suffering, he could not know, and for reasons that can be understood, God could not reveal to him the true nature of

the events that were taking place. All that Job had was given to him by the Lord, but Satan came and took it all away. Job did not know but he was the centre of attention of two worlds – hell and heaven. Job was being watched by God and His angels, and by the devil and his angels, and with intense interest they waited on the outcome of the test Job was going through - but though Job was humbled and broken, he stood true to God.

The devil came before God again, and seeks God permission again to test Job's faith and loyalty. God grants him permission, only with certain boundaries.²⁴⁰ God called his attention to Job, who had faithfully maintained his integrity, despite the fiery trials and the cruel sorrows he had endured in the loss of his property and children. But Satan was not yet silenced. His impudent answer was:

And Satan answered the LORD, and said, Skin for skin, yea, all that a man hath will he give for his life. But put forth thine hand now, and touch his bone and his flesh, and he will curse thee to thy face.

Job 2:4-5 (KJV)

It is evident that God, in granting permission to Satan to put boils upon the flesh of Job, had an important purpose in view. With God, a most vital principle was at stake, a principle which Satan had challenged. God's contention was that regardless of how great the temptation Satan might present, there would always be those who would serve God at all costs.²⁴¹

²⁴⁰ Book of Job (<https://www.gotquestions.org/Book-of-Job.html>)

²⁴¹ Lindsay, Gordon. *The Fall of Lucifer - Satan Fallen Angels and Demons*. Dallas, Texas p20

9.2.3.3 God Wins A Battle Through Jobs's Faithfulness

Satan went out from the presence of God, and afflicted Job with sore boils from head to foot. Job's wife, advised him to "curse God and die," but Job also blessed the name of the Lord. His friends came and tried to console him, but they soon started to blame him for his own troubles inferring that he must have sinned in order for all these trials to come upon him.²⁴² Job, too, could not account for his misery, and believed that God had smitten him for inscrutable and mysterious reasons. Job was unaware that it was Satan who had placed the boils upon him for he did not know anything of the dramatic character of the conflict that was going on. Nor did he realize that his lowly bed among the ashes where he scraped himself was the centre of attention of two worlds, heaven and hell.

Nevertheless, Job rose to sublime heights of faith when he said; *"Though he slay me, yet will I trust him"* (Job 13:15). Satan's indictment that a man would not serve God beyond a certain point was proven false by these words of Job. Job, by his faithfulness, had justified God's confidence in him as well as having vindicated the integrity and soundness of the plan of God. The test over, God heals Job and rewards him for his faithfulness and his endurance through such suffering.²⁴³

²⁴² Job Bible Story Summary with Lesson By Jack Wellman (<http://www.whatchristianswanttoknow.com/job-bible-story-summary-with-lesson/>)

²⁴³ Lindsay, Gordon. *The Fall of Lucifer - Satan Fallen Angels and Demons*. Dallas, Texas p20

So the LORD blessed the latter end of Job more than his beginning: for he had fourteen thousand sheep, and six thousand camels, and a thousand yoke of oxen, and a thousand she asses. He had also seven sons and three daughters. And he called the name of the first, Jemima; and the name of the second, Kezia; and the name of the third, Kerenhappuch. And in all the land were no women found so fair as the daughters of Job: and their father gave them inheritance among their brethren. After this lived Job an hundred and forty years, and saw his sons, and his sons' sons, even four generations. So Job died, being old and full of days.

Job 42:12-17 (KJV)

God sometimes grant Satan permission to sift one of His servants as with Job and Peter (Job 1-2; Luke 22:31-32), for *His* purpose, and the outcome of the attack would serve God's higher purposes - character and humility will be built in His servant. However, the devil has to appeal to God before a spiritual attack can be made - so unless otherwise allowed by God, satanic activity is limited to what is already under the judgment of God.

Another example is portrayed in Moses' confrontation with Pharaoh, where Moses brought God's decree of judgment – His curse – on the Egyptians and their "gods." As seen in Scripture, the Egyptian diviners were able to duplicate a number of God's judgments, e.g. turning the Nile to blood and sending the plague of frogs (Exodus 7:22, 8:7), thus they could only duplicate what was already under the judgment of God.

An important fact was: *Although they could duplicate God's judgments, they could not stop them.*

Francis writes ²⁴⁴“this is the basis of how most witchcraft and occult power works: Satan is limited to that which is under God’s judgment and therefore cannot revoke what God has cursed; and he cannot harm what God has blessed. Proverbs 26:2 tells us, *“Like a sparrow in its flitting like a swallow in its flying, so a curse without cause does not alight.”*”

God will not allow a curse without reason, as sin is the landing strip in a person’s soul upon which a curse alights.

Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned:
Romans 5:12 (KJV)

9.3 How Do People Get Involved In Witchcraft²⁴⁵

People become witches and wizards in so many ways - the four most common ways are:

- * People become witches or wizards by **inheritance**. It can be passed on through their parents. They just wake up one day to discover they have been initiated into the witchcraft society. For such people witchcraft has become a family affair.
- * Others become witches or wizards through **personal choice**.
- * There are those who are **forced** into witchcraft by other people. They are forced into the association against their will.
- * It is also possible to be a blind witch. They are unconscious witches who are not aware of their involvement in the witchcraft society. This could

²⁴⁴ Frangipane, Francis (1994) The Divine Antidote. USA: Arrow Publications. p61–65

²⁴⁵ Olukoya, Dr D K (1999) Overpowering Witchcraft. Lagos, Nigeria: MFM Press, p142

be typical of many Christians. Scripture describes the occult in three words (Leviticus 20:6, Deuteronomy 18:10-12, Acts 16:16-18).

9.3.1 Witchcraft

Witchcraft is a dominant realm in the spiritual world. It operates through disobedience and opens up the doors to intimidation, manipulation and domination. In society today it operates in churches and from the pulpits.

9.3.2 Divination

The simple definition for divination is: the practice of using signs (such as an arrangement of tea leaves or cards) or special powers to predict the future.²⁴⁶

The contemporary terms for this are fortune-telling, psychic predicting and extrasensory perception (ESP).²⁴⁷ It is to uncover hidden knowledge by supernatural means.²⁴⁸ Christians should avoid any practice related to divination, including fortune-telling, astrology, witchcraft, tarot cards, necromancy, and spell-casting.

9.3.2.1 Rebellion

For rebellion is the sin of divination, and insubordinations are as iniquity and idolatry.” This is a severe comparison but one must realize that rebellion

²⁴⁶ Merriam-Webster's Learner's Dictionary: Simple definition of Divination (<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/divination>) 12 September 2016

²⁴⁷ Prince, Derek (1998) They shall expel demons. UK: Derek Prince Ministries. p125

²⁴⁸ What does the Bible (<http://www.gotquestions.org/Bible-divination.html>) 12 September 2016

destroys the walls. If the walls are broken down, Satan can and will rule. He can infiltrate where there is no authority or submission. Where there is no authority of submission to authority, where there is chaos and rebellion, Satan rules.

Rebellion is a heart attitude that says: “I don’t need rules. I don’t need leaders or anyone telling me what to do,” and the desire for freedom from anything imposed upon us. Rebellion is the rejection of authority. It is like witchcraft and accomplishes the same thing in governmental structures and in individual lives – the both do business directly with the powers of darkness.

Let every person be in subjection to the governing authorities. For there is no authority except from God, and those which exist are established by God. Therefore, he who resists authority has opposed the ordinance of God, and they who have opposed will receive condemnation upon themselves. For rulers is not a cause of fear for good behaviour, but for evil. Does one want to have no fear of authority? Do what is good, and one will have praise from the same.

Let every soul be subject unto the higher powers. For there is no power but of God: the powers that be are ordained of God. Whosoever therefore resisteth the power, resisteth the ordinance of God: and they that resist shall receive to themselves damnation. For rulers are not a terror to good works, but to the evil. Wilt thou then not be afraid of the power? do that which is good, and thou shalt have praise of the same:

Romans 13:1-3

Romans 13:1 do not say that every authority is godly for not all are. In every city there are corrupt policemen, judges, presidents, pastors, and parents. The office of authority is established by God and it is His will that there be structures

of authority, and that all be in submission to those who hold positions of leadership. The leaders themselves may be evil, but the offices they hold exist as a wall of protection. Authority in and of itself effectively hinders or slows down evil, according to Romans 13:3. It is a cause of fear for evildoers. Where there are strong authority structures, evil will be limited, even though it is not Christian. In a family where there are family principles, evil will be hindered and restricted. Walls of authority that surrounds institutions holds the devil back. This is a universal principle of God and it affects everyone.

9.3.2.2 Disobeying

The question one should ask is: Are man to choose obedience to worldly authorities above obedience to God? **NO**. In Acts 4, Peter was brought before the priests for preaching the Gospel. Their orders were in direct conflict with God's commands. Peter refused to obey them. He obeyed God rather than man, yet he did not attack the priests' authority. He didn't respond in rebellion. There is a difference between rebellion and civil obedience. Submission to authority doesn't mean that one become "yes people" without opinions of ones own. One can still stand against unrighteousness and falsehood. One can disagree, confront, and rebuke in the Spirit of Christ when one need to.

One must never tear down the structures or oppose leaders simply because they are in authority. Satan is targeting families as families, trade unions as trade unions, and countries as countries. When one harbour rebellion, when one try to break down authority, one become his ally. It is one thing to recognize Satan's attempts to break down walls. But what must one do about it? Ezekiel 22:30 says, *"And I searched for a man among them who should build up the wall and stand in the gap..."* God is looking for people who will

rebuild walls through intercessory prayer. Now one knows where the walls and the gaps are. They are all around us... the structures of society are crumbling. Man is to fill these gaps as one intercede before God, and shut out the enemy on behalf of cities, families, schools, and individuals.

Ezekiel 13:4-5 is even more exacting in its challenge to take up our prophetic and intercessory responsibilities in society. *"Your prophets have been like foxes around ruins. You have not gone up into the breaches, nor did you build the wall around the house of Israel to stand in the battle."* A fox makes himself a comfortable den in the ruins of a wall. This is often what Christians do while society disintegrates around them. Believers are called to rise up and repair the damage in the walls of society through warfare, prayer and involvement.

9.3.3 Sorcery

According to the Merriam-Webster's Learner's Dictionary, a simple definition of sorcery is: the use of magical powers that ore obtained through evil spirits.²⁴⁹ "Sorcery is the other channel through which the occult operates and can be considered the twin sister of divination, but it has its own special sphere of activity. Some of its tools are drugs, potions, charms, amulets, magic, spells, incantations, and various forms of music, and clearly is condemned in the Bible."²⁵⁰

²⁴⁹ Merriam-Webster's Learner's Dictionary: Simple definition of Sorcery (<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/sorcery>) 12/09/2016

²⁵⁰ Prince, Derek (1998) They shall expel demons. UK: Derek Prince Ministries. p130

9.4 Forms And Levels Of Witchcraft”²⁵¹

9.4.1 Red Witchcraft

To kill the power of God through unbelief, besetting sins religion, ignorance, sleeping in Churches, spiritual blindness, sectarianism, familiar spirits, heresies, visions and dreams, pride rejection, tent of the witches, etc.

It is a Spiritual tent that covers roof of homes, churches etc. Where there is sin the hedge of God’s protection is broken and the witches cover the building, because the glory of the Lord has lifted. It can cause a ribbon over our minds too. Repent and blow off “witches’ tent” with power and fire of the Holy Spirit

9.4.2 White Witchcraft

White witch and good witch are qualifying terms in English used to distinguish practitioners of folk magic for benevolent purposes with related terms such as “witch doctor” and “seer-healers”. Guarding spirits, fear, freemasonry, horoscopes, debts, cult practices, poverty, sickness, rock music, curses, rebellion, queen of the coast, mermaid, Feminism, discord, gossip, sex, religion, marriage breaking, etc. is forms of witchcraft.

²⁵¹ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2007) Teaching Manual Volume 4 - Spiritual Warfare (Advance) An Exposition of World Views. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

9.4.3 General Witchcraft

Examples of general witchcraft are Roots, leaves, water, burning stuff, holy water, etc.

9.4.4 Black Witchcraft

To bring death before salvation – sickness, plagues, all kinds of problems, infirmity, fear, rejection, suicide, curses, idolatry, cults, besetting sins, and binding words are the result of black witchcraft.

9.4.5 Kali Witchcraft

Kali witchcraft worship Kali, the Hindu goddess associated with power, Shakti. She is also known as Kālikā. The name Kali comes from **kāla**, which means black, time, death, lord of death, Shiva. Kali also means “the black one” and his consort, also means “time” or “death”, hence Kāli is considered the goddess of time and change. She is also revered as Bhavatārini - literally “redeemer of the universe”.²⁵²

9.4.6 Abra Melin Witchcraft

The most advanced form of witchcraft is Abra Melin witchcraft.

²⁵² The Goddess Kali (<https://witchesofthecraft.com/2012/01/23/today-we-honor-the-goddess-kali/>)

The force and power of darkness work blindly to bring the kingdom of the Antichrist and Satan to a position of power. They use people as their associates and agents and through their angry intentions influence the souls of men and women to spiritual blindness.

Blind witchcraft is the lowest form of witchcraft. Blind Witches” are people in the “witchcraft prison”- who received the mark of destruction. Such a person does not even know he/she is a witch or even know they unintentionally practise witchcraft. This person is a slave of witchcraft under demonic control.

To get this mark, a person must go through a “blind initiation”. This is a process of manipulation of the following: eating fruit, bread, non-alcoholic drink (especially Coke and Fanta), biscuits, etc. and also includes the following: Sexual relations with a demon (succubus, incubus) in a dream or actual relations with a prostitute; eating meat, fish, fried rice, “Kola-nut”, smoking, drinking alcohol (actual and in a dream); visiting a fortune teller, healing by occult forces, reading occult books, occults objects and symbols.

Lessons from deliverance sessions teach that a Christian should never eat or drink before praying over food.

Example of a prayer:

Father, I thank you for the food which I am about to eat and what I am about to drink. I am grateful. Purify and sanctify everything in the Name of Jesus and let the food and drink build up my body. Destroy and curses and witchcraft which may be on this food and drink. In the name of Jesus. Amen.

9.4.6.1 Possible Symptoms of Blind Witchcraft

When a person finds it very hard to live as he/she wants to here on earth. The person will participate in evil behaviour, for example – uncontrolled stealing. The person's personality will fluctuate between happiness and sadness on a daily basis, and the person tends to be severely depressed. The person will often have thoughts of suicide and violence.

Such a person will eat constantly, even when not hungry. The person will be addicted to drugs, alcohol or smoking and will be inclined to sexual perversions, inadmissible sex, (within and out of marriage). Sleep walking and when a person talks to himself excessively are indications of blind witchcraft.

9.4.7 How Does A Christian Become Influenced Towards Witchcraft?

The time when the biggest attack is made on a person is when the person sleeps, especially when the person is in "zero point". Zero Point is the lowest level of faith a Christian can be in and it is caused by SIN. Sin opens the 7 divine openings in the human body for the demons.

The 7 divine openings are: the anus, the sexual organs, the navel, the heart, the throat, the forehead and the area between the eyes. When a Christian goes to sleep and there are sins in his life, he is like an open door for the demons and witchcraft has easy entry.

There are also 10 opening where spirits can move out of a person's body: the two eyes, the two nostrils, the two ears, the mouth, the navel, the sexual organ and the anus.

Manipulation includes the following: sexual manipulation, dreams, marriage i.e. barrenness, rage, food.

9.5 The Weapons Of Witchcraft

- The spirit of witchcraft wants to enslave a person and bind the person to itself (2 Corinthians 4:4). But Christ sets us free.

Stand fast therefore in the liberty wherewith Christ hath made us free, and be not entangled again with the yoke of bondage.

Galatians 5:1 (KJV)

- Witchcraft releases chaos, confusion and turmoil wherever it goes. Chush being the spirit of chaos, his other name is Jan-Wier. God is not a God of confusion but of peace.

For God is not the author of confusion, but of peace, as in all churches of the saints.

1 Corinthians 14:33 (KJV)

- Witchcraft enters the room like a whirlwind as a cloud of confusion releasing chaos. There are sorcerers that use a form of witchcraft called chaotic magic. Chaotic magic is a form of sorcery that releases witchcraft and creates havoc. Its purpose is to control those it is released at. Psalm 51.

- Emotional manipulation is a form of witchcraft. The spirit of witchcraft works best by pulling on a person's emotions. When God deals with a person it is from Spirit to spirit; not Spirit to soul. The spirit of witchcraft will probe a person's emotions looking for an entry point.
- Spiritual discernment operates in our hearts, not our emotions, nor through the soulish realm. Ephesians 1:18 refers to enlightened eyes of our spiritual understanding and knowing. Our minds wonder, but our spirits know. Spiritual discernment can be blocked by soulish manipulation through the operation of witchcraft in our emotions. If they can hook one's emotions, then they can get a soul tie with a person. This can happen through emotional bonding. Soul ties have to be broken by the power of God's anointing. Sexual relations also create soul ties. If one uses soul ties to control someone, it is witchcraft.
- Witchcraft tries to isolate a person from friends, family, church or anyone assumingly that can speak truth into a person's life. Isolation is a weapon of witchcraft.
- Fear and intimidation are forms of witchcraft.

For God hath not given us the spirit of fear; but of power, and of love, and of a sound mind.

2 Timothy 1:7 (KJV)

But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death.

Revelation 21:8 (KJV)

- When a person is battling this spirit, the person might start getting severe headaches or feel like the person are choking and can't breathe (think of

asthma). Witchcraft drains the life right out of a person. One feel tired, depressed, oppressed and fatigued all the time – a spirit of death is being released.

But they that wait upon the LORD shall renew their strength; they shall mount up with wings as eagles; they shall run, and not be weary; and they shall walk, and not faint.

Isaiah 40:31 (KJV)

9.6 Witchcraft Through Divination

- Witchcraft wants to destroy the prophet's ministry through divination. The purpose: destruction.
- There are people who are open to speaking false prophecies for the purpose of control. To them prophecy is only a tool to manipulate. False prophecy takes place through a familiar spirit of divination and is nothing but curses spoken over a person. The spirit of witchcraft hates true prophetic ministry and can prophesy correctly. Spiritual Witchcraft takes the place of the Holy Spirit.
- The spirit of divination is Baäl. In the Baäl temples one found sexual prostitution – worship through sex. Sex being the highest form of worship. Those who operate in witchcraft have trouble with sexual sin and perversion somewhere in their lives. Two other spirits that team up with Baäl is the spirit of Mammon and Baälim, a spirit of the world (loves material things and forces a person to work hard to get more money, etc.).
- Divination also walks through the medical profession. The doctor could speak nothing more than curses.

9.7 Witchcraft In The Church

- Churches across the world are being controlled by men who are afraid to allow the Holy Spirit Himself to do what He would in church services. Why? Because people cannot control the Holy Spirit.
- Fear of man or fear of public opinion is a sure sign of being infected by spiritual witchcraft - Kundalini is the spirit of fear.
- Congregations are many times full of people with hidden agendas. Hidden agenda is the root to division within the church. Whenever someone tries to manipulate for the purpose of advancing a hidden selfish agenda or vision – that is witchcraft.
- Jezebel is a controlling manipulating spirit of witchcraft. A religious person who is self-centred and prideful is a target for the type of witchcraft that Jezebel releases, which make people, feel used. Jezebel wants to kill the anointing.

9.8 Road To Deception

What is the progression of events that can cause one to enter the road of deception?

- Talking about one self (boasting).
- Not waiting on God.
- Getting out of one's place and trying to walk in an office of ministry that one is not ordained to walk in.
- When one enters into a place he is not called to be in, he has stepped out of his place of authority and protection and stepped into the realm of

deception, where spiritual witchcraft operates. An example: man and woman roles being swapped.

- If a person is resisting, rebelling, confronting or coming against God's ministry gifts – the person is entering the path to witchcraft. Rebellion always opens the door for witchcraft. Rebellion and stubbornness are the sin of witchcraft (1 Samuel 15:23). Rebellion is un-teachable, doubt and unbelief.
- Never submit to false authority, but resisting submission to true authority will force a person to the path of witchcraft. True humility understands that apart from Jesus Christ one can do nothing (John 15:5; 1 Peter 5:6).
- Religious activity takes one into doing one's own thing. That's called self-will. It's the road to witchcraft. Good works may only be religious activity.
- Blatant disobedience leads to deception. Witchcraft hates the voice and the anointing of God.
- At the very root of deception is spiritual pride and rebellion. The end result of witchcraft is death. Witchcraft likes to kill what it can't control.
- A good example of the full extent of witchcraft is that of King Saul (1 Samuel 13-31).

9.9 The Weapon Of Domination

- This is an age of moral decadence. Among other things there are seductions, worldliness and backsliding. Witchcraft has taken over many congregations.
- Witchcraft is public enemy number one.
- Witchcraft is extremely bad because it makes people to do Satan's will. It makes people do what they do not like to do ordinarily.

- It has been made abundantly clear that witchcraft operations are used to subdue people through demonic influences. It uses satanic weapons to subdue people's prospects. It is used to perpetrate evil and effect a change using powers which are different from the power of God.

And Samuel said, Hath the LORD as great delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of the LORD? Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to hearken than the fat of rams. For rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft, and stubbornness is as iniquity and idolatry. Because thou hasst rejected the word of the LORD, he hath also rejected thee from being king.

1 Samuel 15:22-23 (KJV)

- The key word in this verse is "obedience." The LORD delights in obedience.
- There are many categories of witches. There are witches who possess evil powers to torment other human beings. They fly to attend witchcraft meetings in the night.
- A second type of witchcraft is the works of the flesh.

Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are these; Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, Idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies, envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told you in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God.

Galatians 5:19-21 (KJV)

- When a person uses manipulations, domination and intimidation to have his way, it is witchcraft. The Holy Spirit does not manipulate people. He does not dominate or intimidate people. If prayer fasting and confession

of the word of God cannot be used to solve a problem, any other method used is witchcraft.

- If someone uses influence position, money, beauty, etc. to have his way, it is witchcraft. This is a demonic manipulation.
- Somebody could pretend to be sick so as to have his way.
- Many children have grown up to be master manipulators.
- Husbands who intimidate their wives through rage and violence are exercising witchcraft.
- Women can manipulate their husbands by shedding tears and making them feel very guilty.
- The use of prophecies, visions, and trances to control and manipulate people in any form is witchcraft.
- The spirit of Jezebel. The character trait of this spirit includes domination, control and manipulation of people. This spirit seeks to operate in the house of God through seduction, fornication and adultery. It is very religious and loves to operate in the church. It wants to kill of the true prophets of God.
- This spirit has destroyed families.
- When so called Christians disobey the word of God, they go into witchcraft.
- God called man to have dominion (Genesis 1:28). ²⁵³Râdâh is the Hebrew word for dominion in Genesis 1:28. This dominion includes dominion over sin, a person's selfish desires, dominion over the enemy, etc. Witchcraft is directly from Satan and is used on various levels and in many different ways to put a person and especially the Christian in bondage. His main

²⁵³ Strong's Concordance - #7287: radah (<http://www.bibletools.org/index.cfm/fuseaction/Lexicon.show/ID/H7287/radah.htm>)

aim is to abort the Christian from his purpose and destiny in the Kingdom of Jesus Christ.

9.10 Breaking The Influence Of Witchcraft

- The voice of witchcraft releases thoughts of doubt and unbelief into a person's mind. It releases confusion at a person, a person's house, community and church. Confusion is a sure sign of one of two things: either idolatry or witchcraft working against one's life. Wondering feeds confusion.
- Anytime a person steps out of the righteous authority of God, he steps into rebellion which loosed witchcraft into person, family or church.
- Pride, stubbornness, control, manipulation and hidden agendas are at the centre of witchcraft. Witchcraft seldom wants to confront, but wishes to control by manipulation behind the scenes.
- Witchcraft does not work alone. There must be a carrier, a person that will allow this spirit to work. Victims are those who are being abused, manipulated, and controlled or those under the general influence of witchcraft.
- The victim is easier to help; they can simply start by getting out of from under the influence of the carrier. The only hope for the carrier of spiritual witchcraft is humility and submission. How was the carrier enticed or seduced to be vessels of witchcraft? Was it pride, self-centeredness, idolatry, imaginations, rebellion, lust, rejection or deceitfulness of riches?
- The carrier will always project his or her own mistakes or blame onto the victim – blame –shifting.

- People that are carrying vessels of witchcraft have at the root of their lives spiritual pride, probably the fruit of rejection. Carriers are typically those that are not stable in some areas of their Christianity.

9.11 Practical Points In Breaking The Influence Of Witchcraft

- Get out of the intellectual realm and step into the realm of faith. Get out of the mind and bind and cast imaginations down the weapons of witchcraft (2 Corinthians 10:3-5).
- Do not conform to this world but be transformed by the renewing of the minds (Romans 12:2).
- Possess ones promises and stand on the Word.
- Get in the flow of what God is doing today and allow God to position one.
- Verbally plead the Blood of Jesus over one self.
- Declare the works of the Lord.
- Revelation 12:11 – And one overcome the enemy by the Blood of the Lamb, the word of our testimonies and that one do not love ones lives unto death.

A flawless life is of great necessity for the Christian to keep the fiery darts of witchcraft away. The Christian has to walk in a spirit of repentance, humility and submission (Psalm 51). As a carrier of eternal life, a person have to be aware of the fact that God is a jealous God and one have to keep up one's reputation and defend it. Fear no confrontation with Darkness. The Devil is a defeated foe. Frances Frangipane writes,²⁵⁴ Christians are enriched and

²⁵⁴ Frangipane, Francis (1994) *The Divine Antidote*. USA: Arrow Publications. p61-65

protected by God's blessing wherever they are walking as Jesus walked, in love and purity of heart. Even the *desire* to walk like Christ draws the Father's blessing, for such a soul is quick to repent; and its humility draws grace from God."

10 THE FOUR SOUL-KILLING EMOTIONS

"Feelings do not necessarily speak truth for example, if a person feel guilty, it does not mean that a person is guilty. Most of the times, feelings merely tell a person what is going on in their thought life - or what they believe. It is important to be balanced when dealing with one's feelings. It's not healthy to completely ignore one's feelings, thus it is not healthy to go by one's feelings either. The key is to learn how to discern what one's feelings is telling one self, and then get to the root of the problem."²⁵⁵ Feelings of shame, guilt, fear and low self-esteem have one thing in common, namely they are rooted in a belief or imagination that has risen itself against the knowledge of God - what is spoken clearly in His Word.

(For the weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strong holds;) Casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ;

2 Corinthians 10:4-5 (KJV)

²⁵⁵ What to do with our feelings (<http://www.greatbiblestudy.com/feelings.php>)

10.1 Shame

Definition of shame: the painful feeling arising from the consciousness of something dishonourable, improper, ridiculous, etc., done by oneself or another”²⁵⁶

Many words in our vocabulary describe forms of shame but they often differ in the intensity of the shame they express. The basic archetype is the same. Here is a partial list, in approximate order from the mildest to the most intense: uncomfortable, uneasy, embarrassment, chagrin, inadequate, self-blame, feeling guilty, humiliation, dishonoured, feeling ridiculous, mortified, self-condemnation, self-reproach, mortified and “toxic shame”. Honour is the absence of shame.²⁵⁷

According to Floyd McClung,²⁵⁸ shame is a feeling of hopelessness that one cannot change – that there is no alternative for him/her. It's connected to one's personhood and is related directly to their self-esteem. It causes one to think, ***“That's the way I am. I can't change. I'll always be like this.”***

Shame-based behaviour can be recognized through the following feelings a person has. The person will have feelings of passivity, self-pity, destructive behaviour, inferiority, withdrawal, anger toward others, loss of creativity, and unhealthy dependence on certain people. Those people who experience

²⁵⁶ The Difference Between Guilt and Shame By Joseph Burgo Ph.D. (<https://www.psychologytoday.com/blog/shame/201305/the-difference-between-guilt-and-shame>)

²⁵⁷ Shame - We feel badly about ourselves By Leland R. Beaumont (<http://www.emotionalcompetency.com/shame.htm>)

²⁵⁸ Mc Clung, Floyd (1996) The Healing Power of Love. Kingsway Publishing p37-48

shame struggle with hopelessness; they feel that they are worthless and that they are a failure. They are often driven with a desire to punish others because of how bad they feel about themselves and wrestle with feelings of condemnation and abandonment. Shame affects a person's behaviour and can lead the person to become manipulative, he will do to others what has been done to him, he will make demands and manipulate people in an attempt to control their behaviour.

Condemnation robs us of conviction and leaves us with - a feeling of shame and worthlessness. When convicted by the Holy Spirit the intention is to lead the person to a profound repentance that motivates a positive change in his behaviour and not a vague feeling of personal worthlessness.²⁵⁹ Paul wrote,

For godly sorrow worketh repentance to salvation not to be repented of: but the sorrow of the world worketh death.

2 Corinthians 7:10 (KJV)

According to the Bible sin can cause shame. Shame prompted by real guilt for real sin, is a healthy emotion. When shame is a constant nagging feeling of failure – a cloud hanging over a person that makes a person think *I'm no good* – it can produce a terrible pattern of denial about a person's responsibility for ones sin against others. This can leave a person feeling responsible for what in reality is the consequence of someone else's sin against the person. Don't blame one's person self disproportionately for what one do to hurt people in response to their sin against the person, and thus one perpetuate the vicious cycle that started with a parent or close authority figure doing the same to us. Shame is usually rooted in what others have done to us, thus the power of

²⁵⁹ Mc Clung, Floyd (1996) *The Healing Power of Love*. Kingsway Publishing p37-48

shame will be brotation of our own fleshly manipulation of the people in our life ... and a revelation of His great love and acceptance of us as His dear children.²⁶⁰

Most people with shame-based personalities are dominated by a sense of rejection from their parents and when thinking of the past they have feeling as if they have failed. By recalling their past, they experience strong, painful emotions. They feel certain experiences have come close to ruining them and that they have lost opportunities to experience a complete life.

Shame is closely related to, but distinct from guilt and only when one recognizes the power of shame as a motivating emotion one can begin to deal with real guilt without feeling compromised. Only when a person can confess his guilt to God, he will be able to receive forgiveness from God. The singer Michael Card said much the same thing in one of his most poignant lyrics: “We look into our Judge’s eyes and find a Saviour there.”

God’s answer to shame can be found in the Romans 8:16

The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God:

Romans 8:16 (KJV)

The Spirit of God bears witness with ones spirit that one are loved and wanted and the painful emotion of shame is lifted off of us.

²⁶⁰ Mc Clung, Floyd (1996) *The Healing Power of Love*. Kingsway Publishing p37-48

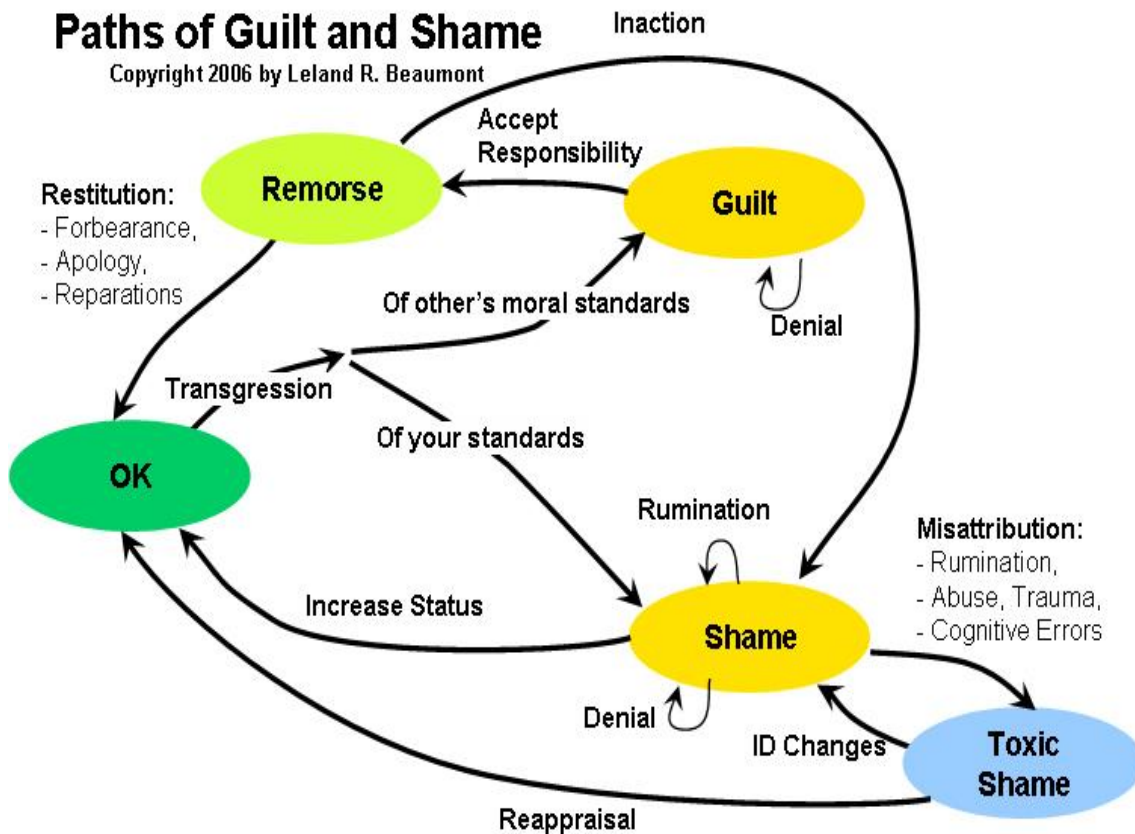


FIGURE 4: PATHS OF GUILT AND SHAME²⁶¹

10.2 Guilt

While shame is a failure to meet a person's own standards of behaviour, guilt is a failure to meet other's standards of behaviour. Shame tell us "one have not done ones best" guilt tell us "one have harmed another, one have not been compassionate, one have ignored the golden rule." Shame is personal, while

²⁶¹ Shame - We feel badly about ourselves By Leland R. Beaumont (<http://www.emotionalcompetency.com/shame.htm>)

guilt is public. Shame is “I am bad” while guilt is “I did something bad”. Shame reflects on the “human being”, and guilt reflects on the “human doing”. Shame results in internal sanctions—I feel badly—while guilt results in external sanctions—I will be punished.²⁶² The power of this emotion is usually either mainly or entirely destructive and the unresolved emotion of guilt can result in tremendous fear, alienation, and confusion. Others deal with guilt through what Robert McGee calls the “numbering effects of denial.”

Guilt can be true or false, where true guilt is when a person has done something wrong, and false guilt is to be innocent of something and still feel guilty about it. When a person has broken one of God’s laws, he will be convicted by the Holy Spirit - is true guilt. Guilt that comes from people around a person who impose standards or rules on a person that have nothing to do with sin – is false guilt. Mark I. Bubeck²⁶³ highlights that false guilt is one of the most common maladies affecting believers today. Freedom from such guilt is exciting and liberating. False guilt is the feeling of fear of losing the love of others. These forced rules and social restraints have nothing to do with how God has designed for us to live or what God designed us to avoid.²⁶⁴

Guilt is that feeling that hits one in the pit of one’s stomach, when one knows one has done wrong. One will almost do anything to get rid of it – and then comes the cover up. Man will play the blame game and try to justify or rationalize his actions, and to feel less guilty will blame someone else.²⁶⁵

²⁶² Shame - We feel badly about ourselves By Leland R. Beaumont (<http://www.emotionalcompetency.com/shame.htm>)

²⁶³ Bubeck, Mark I. (1984) *Overcoming the Adversary*. USA: The Moody Bible Institute of Chicago. p51

²⁶⁴ Mc Clung, Floyd (1996) *The Healing Power of Love*. Kingsway Publishing p64-72

False guilt has at least two possible points of origin: man and the devil. In Revelation 12:10 one read that Satan is the “accuser” – a fitting name as he can and does accuse believers to their own minds and consciences. Satan will bring to mind one’s most horrible sins and cause one to focus on them rather than on God’s forgiveness. False guilt can result in depression and spiritual paralysis and destruction. It causes a loss of self-respect, it undermines confidence, it causes the human spirit to wither and die, and it eats away at our self-worth.²⁶⁶

Before coming to Christ, God was the one mankind offended when he sinned, and only God can provide a remedy for mankind’s sin and guilt. After coming to Christ, if one continues to feel that sense of guilt even though God has accepted him, he is suffering from false guilt - which leads to shame or condemnation. It is a vague sense of failure without any specific knowledge of what wrong he has done.²⁶⁷

God’s only remedy for sin and guilt is Jesus who has taken the guilt of our sin upon Himself and carried it to the cross. He took man’s punishment on Him so that they can be forgiven and made right with God.²⁶⁸

How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?

Hebrews 9:14 (KJV)

²⁶⁵ Lesson 4: The Burden of Guilt By Vickie Kraft (<https://bible.org/seriespage/lesson-4the-burden-guilt>)

²⁶⁶ What is false guilt, and how can I avoid it? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/false-guilt.html>)

²⁶⁷ Mc Clung, Floyd (1996) The Healing Power of Love. Kingsway Publishing p64-72

²⁶⁸ Mc Clung, Floyd (1996) The Healing Power of Love. Kingsway Publishing p64-72

God's immense, infinite love and never-ending mercy was the reason He did it. Humankind was created for relationship with God and even though they sinned against Him, He responded to them with love by sending His Son Jesus to die for them. According to Floyd McClung what God did could be summarize in this way: ²⁶⁹“The Creator created humankind for a relationship, and they rebelled against His loving and reasonable laws. His Son was sent in the form of man to reach out to humankind, but they crucified the Creator's Son on the cross, rejecting the Creator's offer of pardon and friendship. Then the Creator used this ultimate act of selfishness – crucifying His Son – to be the source of their forgiveness. He turned the act of their ultimate rejection into one more offer of pardon and reconciliation!

But after that the kindness and love of God our Saviour toward man appeared, Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost; Which he shed on us abundantly through Jesus Christ our Saviour;

Titus 3:4-6 (KJV)

What does a person do with such love? Either a person acknowledges ones guilt and accepts the offer of pardon, or a person denies ones sin and continue in ones guilt-producing ways.

“The cure for true guilt is not just a commitment to “do better” As C. J. Mahaney says in his excellent little book, *The Cross-Centered Life*²⁷⁰, “It's impossible to

²⁶⁹ Mc Clung, Floyd (1996) *The Healing Power of Love*. Kingsway Publishing p64-72

²⁷⁰ Mahaney, C.J. with Meath, Kevin (2002) *The Cross-Centered Life: Keeping the Gospel the Main Thing*. USA, Colorado Springs: Multnomad Books

resolve issues of yesterday by doing better tomorrow.” No, getting rid of true guilt requires godly sorrow leading to repentance (2 Corinthians 7:10). Once the sin has been repented of, the result is a rejoicing in the grace of God.

The very same offer of pardon for true guilt is the same solution for false guilt. As a believer one should confess any known sin for the promise in Scripture for believers are *“If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness. 1 John 1:9 (KJV),* and once a sin has been forgiven, it’s forgiven for good.

As far as the east is from the west, so far hath he removed our transgressions from us.

Psalms 103:12 (KJV)

As a believer, one should focus on the grace of God, for God’s grace is free, it’s based on Christ’s work on the cross, on the man’s behalf, and it is greater than his sin. “It is clear in God’s Word that He will remove man’s real guilt and He also offers to remove the vague sense of condemnation and false guilt.”²⁷¹

There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit. For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.

Romans 8:1-2 (KJV)

²⁷¹ What is false guilt, and how can I avoid it? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/false-guilt.html>)

10.3 Anger

According to Joyce Meyer ²⁷² “anger is an emotion often characterized by feelings of great displeasure, indignation, hostility, wrath and vengeance. One’s dissatisfaction with life is many times expressed in anger”²⁷³. It’s defined in the Greek language as the strongest of all passions. Anger begins with a feeling that’s often expressed in words or actions and usually includes a desire to get even.” Anger is often unconscious and can explode unexpectedly and is caused by an inner sense of bitterness, hatred, or hostility toward a person for the wrong he or she has done to us.

Roots of anger include:

- Injustice - when a person is mistreated and there is nothing he can do about it anger comes in. As much as one would like to change the situation or the person who’s treating one badly, one can’t. Anger comes because a person has not understood how deeply he feels about rejection, abandonment, or being misunderstood.
- Unmet needs - When expectations of another can’t be met the person feels that he will be punished as a result; he may try to defend himself by lashing out toward others. Anger leads to self-induced punishment, bitterness, revenge and hatred.
- Strife - which is hidden, repressed anger, begins with judgment, gossip, backbiting and thinking too highly of one self. Strife is often exhibited in arguing, bickering, heated disagreements and angry undercurrents.

²⁷² Dealing with Anger...God’s Way By Joyce Meyer (http://www.joycemeyer.org/articles/ea.aspx?article=dealing_with_anger_gods_way)

²⁷³ Balleck, Cammi Ph.D. CMT (2011) Making Happy Happen . Mustang, Oklahoma: Tate Publishing, LLC. p164

- Abuse of any kind - sexual, physical, verbal, emotional or mental abuse are all injustices, which eventually leave the abused feeling helpless and angry. Abuse of any kind can't be ignored. One must deal with it and process it before one can get free of it.
- Jealousy – anger caused by jealousy was one of the first negative emotions mentioned in the Bible in Genesis 4²⁷⁴

Jesus dealt with anger by taking our fears, punishment, abandonment, and rejection on the cross. He took upon His own person all that is evil and unclean and unrighteous so that one could be free - it is a gift of God. God can take all the anger away – by expressing ones anger to Him in private without fear of rejection or retribution. With a new heart from God the fear of punishment is gone and the certainty that one are loved and wanted is accepted as the rule of the day.²⁷⁵

Be honest with God and tell Him exactly how one feel, or how one feel about someone. In 2 Timothy 4:5 Paul told Timothy to be calm, cool and collected and to keep performing the duties of his ministry.

But watch thou in all things, endure afflictions, do the work of an evangelist, make full proof of thy ministry.

2 Timothy 4:5 (KJV)

To be free from anger – one need to start doing what God wants one to do. Ask God to help one to forgive the person that has hurt or disappointed one.

²⁷⁴ Dealing with Anger...God's Way By Joyce Meyer (http://www.joycemeyer.org/articles/ea.aspx?article=dealing_with_anger_gods_way)

²⁷⁵ Mc Clung, Floyd (1996) The Healing Power of Love. Kingsway Publishing p64-72

Remember that when one is battling with anger – one are not wrestling against flesh and blood,²⁷⁶ *but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places (Ephesians 6:12)*

10.4 Fear

Fear is conceived in the human heart in many ways and can come through rejection, abandonment, abuse, legalism, or non-communication. Fear can result from conflict, health problems, dangerous situations, death, unmet needs, spiritual problems, false beliefs, fear of the unknown, the fear of heights, the fear of fire etc. An accident or traumatic event in one's life can also open the door for fear. Fear can also come through sexual or verbal abuse and an exposure to authoritarian leadership can cause one to lose his confidence and feel fear.²⁷⁷

These are normal fears, but then there is an extreme kind of fear: the fear that cripples a person, the fear that robs him of his ability to function with confidence and joy. Then there is the fear of phobias, - some people have unusual fears like arachnophobia (fear of spiders) or agoraphobia (fear of open spaces) or a thousand other fears with unpronounceable names.

All men are prone to disappointment and feelings of fear of rejection. Fear of rejection will lead a person to do anything. Inner vows will be made to find value and love, vows like, "I'm not going to let anyone get close enough to hurt me" No way am I going to get close to people who criticize me. Forget that.

²⁷⁶ Mc Clung, Floyd (1996) *The Healing Power of Love*. Kingsway Publishing p64-72

²⁷⁷ Mc Clung, Floyd (1996) *The Healing Power of Love*. Kingsway Publishing p64-72

According to Floyd McClung,²⁷⁸ “pain and fear go hand in hand, whether we’re talking about emotional or relational pain. People are afraid of the unknown. They are afraid of what they might be asked to do or forced to do if they confront their pain or the person who caused that pain. They are afraid of suffering and continuing to suffer.”

Fear of rejection is one of the greatest fears of all, but as born-again believers a person have a resource in God’s word that can bring comfort and clarity to the situation. To be rejected by one person does not mean that a person is not loveable and therefore as believer a person can allow that one rejection to determine how he feel and allow that feeling to colour his idea of whom he are, or a person can choose to put that behind them and move forward on the basis of something that is far more lasting.²⁷⁹

Fear is the spirit Satan uses to try to rule God's people and keep them from coming under the leadership of the true Master, Jesus Christ. Satan uses fear to keep people from enjoying life. According to one John 4:18²⁸⁰ fear brings torment - and no one can enjoy life and be tormented at the same time.²⁸¹

Believers are defined as children of God and accepted in Jesus Christ and are not defined by past failures or disappointments.

²⁷⁸ Mc Clung, Floyd (1996) *The Healing Power of Love*. Kingsway Publishing p64-72

²⁷⁹ How can I overcome feelings of rejection? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/overcome-rejection.html>)

²⁸⁰ 1 John 4:18 (KJV) “*There is no fear in love; but perfect love casteth out fear: because fear hath torment. He that feareth is not made perfect in love.*”

²⁸¹ Facing Fear and Finding Freedom By Joyce Meyer (http://www.joycemeyer.org/articles/ea.aspx?article=overcoming_fear)

Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who hath blessed us with all spiritual blessings in heavenly places in Christ: According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love: Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will, To the praise of the glory of his grace, wherein he hath made us accepted in the beloved.

Ephesians 1:3-6 (KJV)

Every person in life will suffer disappointment at some stage, but as a child of God, a person need to remember this rejection is a momentary hurdle in the road and one have a choice to either allow that hurdle to derail a person and walk wounded, or one can choose to claim the heritage of a child of God and move forward in grace.²⁸²

And be ye kind one to another, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, even as God for Christ's sake hath forgiven you.

Ephesians 4:32 (KJV)

To overcome the spirit of fear a person need to trust in and love God completely and believe what the Word says: "There is no fear in love. But perfect love drives out fear, because fear has to do with punishment. The one who fears is not made perfect in love" (1 John 4:18). Unique opportunities to walk through the "all things" have been prepared by God for every believer. As a believer, a person can choose to either walk in one's own strength and what the Apostle Paul calls a person's "flesh," or one can walk in the power of the provision God has made for a person through the Holy Spirit. It is a person's choice. In

²⁸² How can I overcome feelings of rejection? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/overcome-rejection.html>)

Ephesians 6:11-18 God has provided his Children with Armor, but it is up to them to put it on by faith.²⁸³

11 GOD'S EMOTIONS

“In theological circles, *personhood* is often defined as “the state of being an individual with intellect, emotion, and volition.” God, then, is a “person” in that He is a personal God with a mind, emotions, and a will of His own. People forget God has feelings, real feelings, deep feelings and feelings that leave no doubt about His emotional nature and only think about God as the omnipotent, immutable, holy, and righteous Lord of the universe. To deny God’s emotions is to deny that He possesses personality.”²⁸⁴

Just consider a handful of the emotions Scripture attributes to God:

God loves	For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life. (John 3:16 KJV)
Anger, wrath	Then Moses heard the people weep throughout their families, every man in the door of his tent: and the anger of the LORD was kindled greatly; Moses also was displeased. (Numbers 11:10 KJV)
God hates	“The LORD tests the righteous and the wicked, and the one who loves violence His soul hates,” (Psalm 11:5)

²⁸³ What does the Bible say about fear? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/Bible-fear.html>)

²⁸⁴ Does God have emotions? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/does-God-have-emotions.html>)

God has compassion	"But he hesitated. So the men seized his hand and the hand of his wife and the hands of his two daughters, for the compassion of the LORD was upon him; and they brought him out, and put him outside the city," (Genesis 19:16).
God grieves	"And the LORD was sorry that He had made man on the earth, and He was grieved in His heart," (Genesis 6:6).
God expresses joy	"...Do not be grieved, for the joy of the LORD is your strength," (Nehemiah 8:10)
God rejoices	"For as a young man marries a virgin, so your sons will marry you. And as the bridegroom rejoices over the bride, so your God will rejoice over you," (Isaiah 62:5).
Happiness	Behold my servant, whom I uphold; mine elect, in whom my soul delighteth; I have put my spirit upon him: he shall bring forth judgment to the Gentiles. (Isaiah 42:1 KJV)
Jealousy	Do we provoke the Lord to jealousy? are we stronger than he? (1 Corinthians 10:22 KJV)
Satisfaction	He shall see of the travail of his soul, <i>and</i> shall be satisfied: by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities. (Isaiah 53:11 KJV)
Disgust	Thou shalt not lie with mankind, as with womankind: it is abomination. (Leviticus 18:22 KJV)
Compassion	How shall I give thee up, Ephraim? <i>how</i> shall I deliver thee, Israel? how shall I make thee as Admah? <i>how</i> shall I set thee as Zeboim? mine heart is turned within me, my repentings are kindled together. (Hosea 11:8 KJV)

TABLE 8: EMOTIONS ATTRIBUTED TO GOD BY SCRIPTURE

Floyd Mucclung writes ²⁸⁵"it doesn't take a Bible scholar to see that the God of the Scriptures is no pale, anemic, dreary deity who dispassionately fiddles with

²⁸⁵ Mc Clung, Floyd (1996) The Healing Power of Love. Kingsway Publishing p64-72

the universe throughout an apathetic and indifferent eternity. According to Scripture, God the Creator is a God who is bursting with emotion - a God longing for the day when He can belt out an unrestrained song of pure delight in His redeemed people.

The LORD thy God in the midst of thee is mighty; he will save, he will rejoice over thee with joy; he will rest in his love, he will joy over thee with singing.

Zephaniah 3:17 (KJV)

God's anger is rooted in divine justice, is perfectly righteous and predictable, never capricious or malicious and God never sins.²⁸⁶

The Bible insists that God has and expresses emotions just like mankind and He has refused to remain aloof from them and distant from them, but has entered into their world and has taken it upon Himself to become a man just like them.²⁸⁷ God has compassion for sinners and is steadfast and genuine (2 Peter 3:9; Ecclesiastes 8:11; Isaiah 30:18). His works reveal His mercy and unending grace, and His love for His children is endless (Jeremiah 31:3) and unshakable (Romans 8:35, 38–39).²⁸⁸

The Gospels tell all believers that Jesus “felt compassion”, He was angry, indignant and consumed with zeal, He was troubled, greatly distressed, very sorrowful, depressed, deeply moved, and grieved, He sighed, He wept and

²⁸⁶ Does God have emotions? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/does-God-have-emotions.html>)

²⁸⁷ Mc Clung, Floyd (1996) *The Healing Power of Love*. Kingsway Publishing p64-72

²⁸⁸ Does God have emotions? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/does-God-have-emotions.html>)

sobbed, He groaned, He was in agony, He was surprised and amazed, He rejoiced very greatly and was full of joy, He greatly desired and He loved.”²⁸⁹

The image of God is reflected in the emotions of Jesus without any deficiency or distortion and He reveals what it means to be fully human and made in the image of God. “Jesus fell to His face, and, in agony, asked God to find another way. His sweat fell like drops of blood and His Father sent an angel to comfort Him. Jesus wept in anguish and asked His Father to spare Him the agony of the cross.”²⁹⁰

Jesus was unflinchingly honest with His own feelings and with how He related to His friends – and He expects no less from His children.”²⁹¹

12 CHRIST’S VICTORY

All who entrust themselves to Christ has complete victory through the Lord Jesus Christ who conquered Satan and all his hosts. When Christ died for all, Satan and all his principalities and powers were disarmed and defeated. Jesus Christ is the “Strong Man” who has overcome and Satan has been stripped of his authority and Christ is dividing His spoil with the Church (Luke 11:20-22; Psalm 19:5; Isaiah 53:12).

²⁸⁹ The Emotions of Jesus By G. Walter Hansen (<http://www.christianitytoday.com/ct/1997/february3/7t2042.html>)

²⁹⁰ What is the story of the Garden of Gethsemane the night Jesus was arrested? (<http://www.compellingtruth.org/Garden-of-Gethsemane.html>)

²⁹¹ Mc Clung, Floyd (1996) *The Healing Power of Love*. Kingsway Publishing p64-72

The victory of Christ is seen in three parts: in His life, His death and His resurrection.²⁹²

13 IN JESUS' PERFECT LIFE

The fact that the Lord Jesus Christ overcame and conquered Satan and his evil hosts in two major realms is one of the greatest doctrines of the Christian faith. Satan, and all his pain, serves in the end to magnify the power and wisdom and love and grace and mercy and patience and wrath of Jesus Christ. If Jesus did not defeated Satan the way He did, Christians would not have known Him in the fullness of His glory.²⁹³ Jesus Christ conquered Satan personally, in the three major temptations in the wilderness, and representatively, for us, at Calvary in His death, burial, resurrection and ascension.

Jesus' temptations in the wilderness follow three patterns of sin that are common to all men:

- **Body** - the lust of the flesh (Luke 4:2-4).
- **Soul** - the lust of the eyes (Luke 4:5-8).
- **Spirit** - the pride of life (Luke 4:9-12).

As the last Adam and the second man, Jesus did three vital things: destroy the devil's power and free those who were held in slavery by their fear of death (Hebrews 2:15); 2) become a merciful and faithful High Priest in service to God

²⁹² Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p115

²⁹³ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p115

and atone for our sins (Hebrews 2:17); and 3) be the One who is able to sympathize with us in all our weaknesses and infirmities (Hebrews 4:15). Jesus was submitted to the attack and temptations of Satan and proved His complete mastery over the adversary. When Satan tempted the First Adam in these same areas (Genesis 3:1-6) the First Adam fell, thus bringing all of his unborn race under Satanic control and into the kingdom of sorrow, darkness, sin, sickness and death.²⁹⁴

From the beginning of His ministry Jesus was tempted in all points like mankind are, yet He did not sin or compromise (Hebrews 2:18; 4:15). Though the First Adam was defeated, the Last Adam – Jesus Christ was victorious, for He overcame by the Word of God. Through His victory over Satan, Jesus gain a representative victory on behalf of all believers. Christ's power during His earthly ministry over sin, sickness, death and demons was founded upon this threefold victory over temptation.

“The temptation of Christ was as real as that of Adam. It was in Christ's human nature (Philippians 2:7 Philippians 2:8), that he was tempted, but his divinity insured his victory over temptation.”²⁹⁵ By conquering Satan He has become the Head of the new creation race. Having conquered the devil for Himself, He became the believers High Priest who is able to intercede on their behalf and provide the grace of forgiveness. Christ has not just defeated Satan but every demon spirit and they cannot resist His perfect life and power.”²⁹⁶

²⁹⁴ What was the meaning and purpose of Jesus' temptations? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/Jesus-temptations.html>)

²⁹⁵ Jesus Tempted in the Wilderness (<http://www.biblestudytools.com/commentaries/the-fourfold-gospel/by-sections/jesus-tempted-in-the-wilderness.html>)

14 IN JESUS' SUBSTITUTIONARY DEATH

"The victory over the temptations in the wilderness was in Christ's own behalf. The sacrifice He made at the cross was "vicarious". The word "vicarious" means substitute, - Christ was a substitute for others in that He took their place and suffered the punishment on behalf of them. Scripture stated that He *"became sin on our behalf, that he was delivered because of our transgressions, that he bore our griefs, carried our sorrows, was pierced for our transgressions, and was crushed for our iniquities."*²⁹⁷ "This victory was actually begun in Gethsemane (Luke 22:53) and brought to fulfilment on the Cross (Colossians 2:14-15; John 12:31; 16:11) where He overcome the principalities and powers, and made a show of them, triumphing over them in it.

Colossians 2:14-15 - Weymouth's translation - *"And the hostile princes and rulers He stripped off from Himself, and boldly displayed them as His conquests, when, by the cross, He had triumphed over them".*

Colossians 2:14-15 - Amplified New Testament - *"God disarmed the principalities and powers ranged against us and He made a bold display and public example of them, triumphing over them in Him and in the Cross."*²⁹⁸

Conner writes,²⁹⁹ "thus Christ utterly conquered all Satan's hosts and exposed them as defeated foes, captives over whom He had gloriously triumphed in His

²⁹⁶ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p116

²⁹⁷ Substitutionary Atonement of Jesus Christ By Matt Slick (<https://carm.org/substitutionary-atonement-jesus-christ>)

²⁹⁸ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) The Foundations of Christian Doctrine. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p116

death on Calvary. In His death and resurrection Jesus defeated Satan in five realms.

Firstly Jesus conquered Satan as the author of sin (1 John 3:8; 2 Corinthians 5:19-21), secondly Jesus conquered Satan as the author of sickness (Isaiah 53:4; Matthew 8: 16-17; 1 Corinthians 6:19-20; Acts 10:38), thirdly Jesus conquered Satan as the author of death (Hebrews 2:13-14; Revelation 1:18), fourthly Jesus conquered Satan as the ruler of the kingdoms of this world (Matthew 4:8-10; Revelation 11:15) and lastly Jesus conquered Satan in the realm of the heavenlies, over principalities and powers in heaven and earth (Ephesians 4:8-10; Philippians 2:9-11; Ephesians 1:19-23).

Jesus became Lord over all after His victory on the cross and (1 Peter 3:22) all things are now under His feet (Ephesians 1:22-23). He overcame Satan and is indeed the “Strong Man” who stripped Satan of his armour and the Church, “His Body”, share in His victory and became victors themselves.”

15 IN JESUS’ RESURRECTION AND ASCENSION

The Old Testament prophecies that foretold of Jesus’ suffering and resurrection (see Acts 17:2–3) was validated through the resurrection of Jesus Christ. The resurrection of Christ is also a supreme validation of His Deity and it authenticated His own claims that He would be raised on the third day (Mark 8:31; 9:31; 10:34) and if Jesus Christ was not resurrected, then the believer

²⁹⁹ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p116

have no hope that they will be, either. Apart from Christ's resurrection, the believer will have no Saviour, no salvation, and no hope of eternal life. As Paul said, our faith would be "useless," the gospel would be altogether powerless, and our sins would remain unforgiven.³⁰⁰

And if Christ be not risen, then is our preaching vain, and your faith is also vain. Yea, and we are found false witnesses of God; because we have testified of God that he raised up Christ: whom he raised not up, if so be that the dead rise not. For if the dead rise not, then is not Christ raised: And if Christ be not raised, your faith is vain; ye are yet in your sins. Then they also which are fallen asleep in Christ are perished. If in this life only we have hope in Christ, we are of all men most miserable.

1 Corinthians 15:14-19 (KJV)

Christ personal victory over Satan in the wilderness and His representative victory at Calvary, ultimately includes that victory which is to be manifested in the heavenly realms (Luke 10:18; Job 1:6-12; 2:1-7; Revelation 12:9-12; Colossians 2:10; Ephesians 1:19-23; 2:2; Hebrews 4:12-14).³⁰¹

"There are many benefits for the ascension of Jesus Christ:

- The resurrection of Jesus confirmed that the final payment for sin had been made and when Jesus ascended and sat down at the Father's right hand, the Father verified the accomplishment of the life, death, (Hebrews 10:11-14).
- Jesus became the intercessor on behalf of His people when he ascended. Believers have a perfect man, the conqueror of Satan and

³⁰⁰ Why is the resurrection of Jesus Christ important? (<http://www.gotquestions.org/resurrection-Christ-important.html>)

³⁰¹ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. p116

his demonic hosts, representing them in heaven and they have the assurance that they will forever have access to the Father (1 John 2:1).

- Jesus' eternal reign over all enemies began when He ascended. He has all power both in heaven and earth and the believer can rejoice in Christ's full and complete victory over Satan and his entourage. As Peter wrote, *"Now that He has gone into heaven, He is at God's right hand with angels, authorities, and powers subject to Him"* (1 Peter 3:22). He must reign until all enemies are put under His feet, all are conquered, all are defeated, and all are subject to Him.
- Finally, the church was empowered to accomplish its mission when Jesus ascended. In Ephesians 1:22-23, writing about Jesus' resurrection and ascension, Paul said, *"[God the Father] put everything under His feet and appointed Him as head over everything for the church, which is His body, the fullness of the One who fills all things in every way."*³⁰²

16 CONCLUSION

The Word of God clearly state that Satan has a kingdom in which there are various areas and levels of authority. The headquarters of this kingdom are in the heavenly regions. Satan's kingdom is not divided but highly organized; it stands and has not yet been overthrown. The primary goal of Satan is to enslave the world, and he won't be satisfied until all of humanity comes to worship him and him alone.

³⁰² Four Reasons Jesus' Ascension Matters Excerpt from The Gospel Project By Keith Whitfield (<http://www.christianitytoday.com/edstetzer/2013/august/why-ascension-matters.html>)

Believing in Satan and demons may play a significant role in preserving belief in the goodness of God. Satan and his angels may not be at the centre of Biblical revelation, but they represent an important aspect of the portrayal of the fallenness of creation and its need for redemption. Of special interest is the prominence of the demonic in the New Testament teachings concerning the mission of Jesus Christ. The reality of Satan and demons are supported by the authority of Scripture and of Jesus Christ Himself. Those who regard the Bible as divine revelation, and who believe that Jesus was infallible, cannot simply disregard what they both teach with regards to evil spirits.

For the time being, Satan is god of this world, but his time and various abilities are limited. He is not worthy of our worship, but through lies and deception he continues to deceive much of the world into following after him.

Satan's strategy is simple, he *"does not here fill us with hatred of God,"* Dietrich Bonhoeffer has helpfully pointed out, *"but with forgetfulness of God."* If man can be made to forget who God is, or who His children are, Satan can have his way with people.

As seen in Ephesians 6:11, Satan is strong – but the un-forgetful Christian is even stronger. *"Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil."* With the armour of the Lord as his strength, a child of God can fend off the devil.

Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.

James 4:7 (KJV)

Through Scripture one learn - the enemy is powerful, but the mind full Christian, through the strength of the Holy Spirit, is stronger still. *“Ye are of God, little children, and have overcome them: because greater is he that is in you, than he that is in the world.” 1 John 4:4 (KJV).* A brother of Norway once said: *“He [the Lord] said not: Thou shall not be troubled – thou shalt not be tempted – thou shalt not be distressed. But He said: Thou shalt not be overcome.”*

As one has gleaned these truths, one should also be reminded what Jesus said, *“Nevertheless do not rejoice in this, that the spirits are subject to you, but rather rejoice because your names are written in heaven.” Luke 10:20 (NKJV)*

Jesus concluded with this explanation.

In that hour Jesus rejoiced in the Spirit and said, “I praise You, Father, Lord of heaven and earth, that You have hidden these things from the wise and prudent and revealed them to babes. Even so, Father, for so it seemed good in Your sight. All things have been delivered to Me by My Father, and no one knows who the Son is but the Father, and who the Father is but the Son, and the one to whom the Son wills to reveal Him.”

Luke 10:21-22 (NKJ)

Not everyone knows the things a person knows or has had the truths revealed that a person has received. Perhaps this chapter is part of God's design to educate people so that they can help to free others. That is why Jesus turned to his disciples, those to whom He had given authority, those who had been privileged to exercise authority like no others had before them, and said to them privately...

Blessed are the eyes which see the things you see; for I tell you that many prophets and kings have desired to see what you see, and have not seen it, and to hear what you hear, and have not heard it.

Luke 10:23-24 (NKJV)

Rejoice, not because evil spirits are subject to believers, but rather that the Lord has chosen believers to learn these things, and especially that believers can do something for Him with what they know. Praise the Lord! Yes, believer's names are written in heaven, and they can help others have their names written there too, as they exercise their spiritual authority over principalities, powers and demons.

Victory assumes an opponent. A person is victorious *over* or *against* someone or something. Victorious living is accomplished in the face of temptation, confrontation, or antagonism. In the Bible, that temper is Satan, the enemy (Matthew 13:25, 28, 39), and deceiver (Revelation 20:10), who is the prince of this world (John 12:31; 14:30; 16:11) but Christians can have victory over Satan and his forces in the name of Jesus, but they must be constantly on their guard, for as Peter says, “*Your adversary, the devil, prowls around like a roaring lion, seeking someone to devour*” 1 Peter 5:8 (NASB).

--oOo--



*Chapter Four - Restoring the Image of Christ in Mankind through
Apostolic Equipping of Every Believer*

With the rise of bishops came the theft of the believers' rights to follow the leading of the Holy Spirit in regards to ministry. The priesthood of all believers has been relinquished to Professionals (the clergy).

Jonas Clark

1 INTRODUCTION/BACKGROUND

This chapter enter into the quest to apostolically equip every ordinary Christian believer to understand their position of authority and to do the work of ministry. It will explore the complexities of an effective avid prayer life and the revelation that our God is the God of effective strategies. God is restoring the apostle's ministry to the church. In order to understand apostles one need to take a strong look at their function and the impact that their ministry will have on the church.

One cannot really separate the title from the function. In the days ahead many will take on apostolic titles but it will be the function that will separate, define and confirm the ministry of an apostle. Keep the above in mind when exploring the interesting world of the apostolic equipping dimension

So what exactly are some of the truths that are being restored today that are bringing us back to a normal condition? To begin with, there is¹ ...

- a fresh focus on evangelism
- Discipleship (not just conversions) as the goal of evangelism
- the importance of a local church where everyone is committed to being a builder rather than a receiver of knowledge only to advance one's personal interest
- the restoration of apostolic teams rather than the one-man-only paradigm, lone ranger, or individualist concept

¹ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p4

- an apostolic structure where every willing and available believer can function and minister outside the four walls of the local church
- the royal priesthood of all believers
- territories of spiritual jurisdiction

Jesus said “Go ye into all the world” (Mark 16:15). This chapter will look at the apostolic context in what Jesus meant. One may wonder if this was a commandment or simply a divine suggestion from Jesus to those who might be able to find a few minutes of spare time. Are there people that actually believe that this is a personal word for their life? The fruit of a passionate love and relationship with Jesus will always be demonstrated by a heart to spread the good news.

Apostles are agents of change and they are persistent and they never give up. Have one taken hold of ones responsibility as a believer to be a builder of God’s house?

2 APOSTOLIC REFORMATION AND RESTORATION

The main stronghold in Western churches is the loss of the truth of the priesthood of every believer. The word declares...

But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light:

1 Peter 2:9 (KJV)

Approximately 400 years ago, the church underwent a partial reformation as men of God attempted to return Christianity to the authority of Scripture. Their struggle was...

- To prove the Holy Bible as the inerrant and infallible rule of faith and practice for the Christian
- To break people free from the assumption that ordinary Christians were not good enough to approach God
- To abolish the teaching that salvation was mediated and maintained through a priest via sacraments.²

In effect, to place all of Christianity under the authority of God's word. These bishops were the new popes of territories and with their rise came:

- disappearing of the priesthood of all believers
- a separation of responsibilities and duties
- a different orientation towards ministry
- new words like clergy and laity religious structure of ministry
- control and religious tyranny

Some were ordained and anointed to do and others were called only to listen and to watch. The mystery of a spectator-only, bless-me-only, one-man-only lies in this paradigm of Christianity. In the contemporary Protestant churches, the influence of this bishop paradigm can still be seen today. Some examples are:

² Clark J (2001) *Apostolic Equipping Dimension*. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p13

- Loved ones are brought to the pastor/priest – so he can lead them to Jesus.
- Prayer request are delivered to the pastor/priest when someone is sick – one does not pray for them.
- Believers think that church attendance is the end of their service to God and that evangelism or ministry should be left to the clergy.
- Pastors/priests are called to visit the sick, care for the widows and orphans, etc.
- Believers have been reduced to spectators only.

In order to reach this world with the gospel, there must be a restoration of the priesthood of all believers. Why? Because it requires all of us to be involved. This is the natural order that the Holy Spirit is restoring. So in short, the royal priesthood of all believers are³:

- man can approach God directly and has no need of a mediating priest other than Jesus Christ.
- every born again believer is called into ministry.
- man is to speak to each other about God while calling each other to repentance and faith.
- believers are earthly representatives of God and called to intercede before God for one another.
- believers are all ambassadors of Jesus Christ.
- believers are all our brother's keeper.

³ Clark J (2001) *Apostolic Equipping Dimension*. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p20

The believer's orientation is changing as they are entering into a new apostolic reformation. This reformation will introduce a framework that will enable *every* believer to become involved in ministry and it will usher in the restoration of the priesthood of all believers.

This brings us into the governing aspect of the local apostolic church where *all of God's people are ministers!* The apostolic governing dynamic of a local church is unknown to many people as they don't understand it. Many believers have isolated themselves and don't think of reaching beyond their own immediate families and into the harvest fields around them. Church has been reduced to a Sunday morning only routine and some people use it to hide from the cares of this world whilst others think it is the right thing to do and others only to receive something. Church attendance became a spectator, consumer, bless-me-only event void of builders. The general religious mindset is that one church seems to be as good as another., but this is not the case in apostolic churches which understand their unique purpose. To them it is not **about having church but being the church.**

To apostolically govern means...

- to rule by right of authority
- to exercise a directing or restraining influence
- to hold in check
- to regulate the speed of
- to exercise the function of government

As one restores the priesthood of all believers a different orientation of ministry within apostolic centres are discovered. Believers see themselves as vital

agents in the advancement of the gospel and are no longer passive spectators only. *We are ascertaining that all believers are enabled to act and have a ministry and a responsibility to advance the gospel and be builders of the local church.*

Again, the responsibility of the priesthood of all believers have been transferred into the hands of a one-man-only paradigm – the gifted evangelist. Getting a person to accept Jesus as his Saviour is important but the responsibility of reaching the lost belongs to all believers, not one person. This pattern of ministry is quickly becoming ineffective for reaching the lost and building churches.

In a million surveys done by a minister an overwhelmingly 95 percent state that they came to Jesus through the personal witness of a friend or relative! This is a very important point of the restoration of the priesthood of all believers who are sent out (*apo-stello*) into the harvest fields from a strong local apostolic governing church. It has been well said, “As it goes with the local church, so goes it with the city.”

And I say also unto thee, That thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.

Matthew 16:18 (KJV)

Jesus prophesied that he was going to build His church and that the gates of hell would not prevail. There is a church that Jesus is building. His church is a stronghold of righteousness, a lighthouse of His presence and a beacon of hope to a lost world with an apostolic equipping dimension.

There are many places in our cities that are known to be demonic strongholds. Because of the potential danger of being harmed many avoid even entering these areas. An area prevalent with drugs, prostitution, decadence, violence, poverty, and gangs are usually labelled as being demonic strongholds. Jesus is also building strongholds, except His are righteous strongholds, apostolic centres that can be seen in every city and territory throughout the world. A stronghold is ...

- a fortified place (Proverbs 18:10)
- a place with a concentration of spiritual warriors (1 Chronicles 12)
- a house of prayer and intimacy with our Lord (Isaiah 56:7)
- a gathering place of sent ones (Luke 10:2)

Sadly, the local church is seen by the some as being owned by people who only hire a priest or minister to minister to them. A place where the supernatural apostolic dimension has been replaced by ...

- dead religious programs
- lifeless traditions
- vain opinions of men

But now the Spirit of God is changing the believer's orientation so that they recognize the local church as God's...

- place of gathered authority

It is the home base for every ministry. Jesus has given every believer authority.

Jesus is building his victorious church.

That he might present it to himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing; but that it should be holy and without blemish.

Ephesians 5:27 (KJV)

3 PRIESTHOOD FOR ALL BELIEVERS

By focusing on drawing people to the church the church has lost their ability to mobilize and deploy the believers into the work of ministry, because unknowingly they have presented a bless-me-only structure to the people. The only thing people think they are called to do is show up to the building and watch.

To hear the Word of God is important but there is more - there is an apostolic equipping dimension to ministry. There is the mobilization of the troops, the deployment of the believers and the raising up of the sons of God.

The demand of the Holy Spirit to grow up spiritually needs to be adhered to by the believers. The scripture is very clear therefore it is the church's duty to equip every believer for the work of the ministry. To deploy every believer into the priesthood.

And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers; For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ:

Ephesians 4:11-12 (KJV)

Ministers of the gospel are God's gifts to the church and their task is to equip and to deploy them into active works of service and ministry (Ephesians 4:11, 12). They are not to dominate the people of God (1 Peter 5:3).

The success in ministry in the 21st Century will no longer be determined by how many are sitting in a building, but rather by how many have been deployed.

According to Scripture all believers are a holy priesthood called by God to offer up spiritual sacrifices as priests (1 Peter 2:5). They are in essence a royal priesthood (1 Peter 2:9) and the sons of God (1 Peter 1:3, 23; Galatians 3:26) through faith in Christ Jesus. They are all priests and kings (1 Peter 2:9). All born again believers have received the call as ambassadors of Christ (2 Corinthians 5:20).⁴

Every reborn believer is qualified to be spiritually equipped and deployed for works of service. The word, in speaking about all believers declares, *"we have different gifts, according to the grace given us. If a man's gift is prophesying, let him use it in proportion to his faith"* Romans 12:6 (KJV).

Every believer has been given something that will help advance the gospel.

- *"But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man to profit withal" 1 Corinthians 12:7*

⁴ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p35

- *“But unto every one of us is given grace according to the measure of the gift of Christ” Ephesians 4:7*
- *“As every man hath received the gift, even so minister the same one of another, as good stewards of the manifold grace of God” 1 Peter 4:10 (KJV)*

The doctrine of the priesthood of the believer does not usurp the responsibility of an apostolic set man in the local church. The set man (Numbers 27:16)⁵ of the local church is called of God to lead that local church. *“Take heed therefore unto yourselves, and to all the flock, over the which the Holy Ghost hath made you overseers, to feed the church of God, which he hath purchased with his own blood” Acts 20:28 (KJV).*

If the saints come not to minister, but to be ministered to only the restoration of the church as a royal priesthood of all believers will never be completed.

It will also not be completed with a believer’s mindset that thinks it is more convenient to hire someone to visit the sick, comfort the afflicted, restore the erring, care for the widows and orphans, proclaim the glad tidings, and minister unto the believers; than it is to do these things personally. The royal priesthood (all believers) must be made to realize that ...

- their rights as sons must never be surrendered to another

⁵ Let the LORD, the God of the spirits of all flesh, set a man over the congregation, Numbers 27:16 (KJV)

- the task of bring the world to Jesus belongs to every believer
- to be born again means to be in the ministry

4 MINISTRY ASSIGNMENTS

God actually assigns local churches places of spiritual jurisdiction and influence thus apostolic churches are not just in the city by chance but they have been set there by the wisdom of God. One can take on a different orientation to ministry, and more fully discern the overall scope of the local church when believers begin to understand their responsibility of reaching the territory of their ministry.

Apostolic churches are given assigned places of spiritual jurisdiction known as *metrons* and authority and grace are given by God to occupy those territories. As the believers occupy these territories it is important that they understand the metrons. Every believer that is sent to invade and occupy these metrons are empowered by the apostolic dimension of a local governing church. Let's examine an important scripture and some key Greek words:

For we dare not make ourselves of the number, or compare ourselves with some that commend themselves: but they measuring (judging) themselves by themselves, and comparing themselves among themselves, are not wise, But we will not boast of things without our measure, but according to the measure (metron) of the rule (kanon) which God hath distributed to us, a measure (metron) to reach even unto you.

2 Corinthians 10:12-13 (KJV)

The Greek word *metron* means...

- a portioned off measure
- a determined extent
- a measure or limit

The Greek word *kanon* as seen above means ...

- a rule or line
- a fixed space within limits
- where one's power of influence is confined
- an assigned province
- one's sphere of activity⁶

But we will not boast of things without our measure, but according to the measure of the rule which God hath distributed to us, a measure to reach even unto you.

2 Corinthians 10:13 (KJV)

Ministry identity, style, and motives all rest on the understanding of the ministry metron – the sphere God has drawn for you.

A metron is a portioned off measure, a boundary that has been set and one should stay within the boundaries that has been set. It is the idea that God destines a person to a particular measure, to a particular gift of grace and ministry influence. Every leader should strive to achieve this ideal perfect measure that is assigned to him or her. The measure of the rule is defined by

⁶ Clark J (2001) *Apostolic Equipping Dimension*. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p41

the line which God has drawn and when man stay within the metron domain that God has drawn, they will thrive.⁷

In the same way a surveyor surveys the land and determines the proper lines to be assigned, so God draws ministry lines for each of His followers.⁸

This same area would also be known as a place of spiritual jurisdiction and influence assigned to a local church, person, ministry, apostolic team, etc., by the Holy Spirit. A *metron* is a target area, a place where one has an assigned scope of ministry and spiritual influence, a marked off territory, a place of focused spiritual and natural activity, a place with marked off boundaries, a territory with specific limits of assignment and responsibilities that are known as *kanons*, a place of spiritual jurisdiction.⁹

There are five specific “metron domains” that leaders need to know so that they can stay within the God boundaries that will bring fruit in ministry and life. They are:

1. **Grace metron:** A place where man can be successful and experience the favour that God assigned to him.
2. **Leadership metron:** God grants a measure of influence and man accepts that level with no competition or complaining.
3. **Church metron:** The identifiable God-given authority and anointing upon the church for specific, strategic influence is accepted

⁷ Your metron By Frank Damazio (<http://www.frankdamazio.com/2012/10/your-metron/>)

⁸ Your metron By Frank Damazio (<http://www.frankdamazio.com/2012/10/your-metron/>)

⁹ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p 41

4. Apostolic metron: Leaders are activated and empowered to occupy their assigned places of spiritual authority and ministry by this dimension. The apostolic metron gathers, teaches, equips, assigns, targets, builds, shapes, raises spiritual sons and daughters, and deploys teams.

5. Movements metron: This is what happens when leaders and churches strategically network the God-deposit and God-DNA that multiplies Kingdom effectiveness generationally. Everybody has their own metro and does not compete, compare, or copy.¹⁰

Definition for metron simply stated is, one's place of ministry assignment.

4.1 Grace For Ministry

The Holy Spirit assign *metrons* (ministry assignments) in specific territories for churches and believers (sent ones) to occupy, but also gives ample grace to back up those assignments.

But unto every one of us is given grace according to the measure (metron) of the gift of Christ

Ephesians 4:7 (KJV)

According to this Scripture one learns that God gives grace amply sufficient for the territory or place of one's assignment.

So we learn that: Grace, favour and everything one need to be successful in ministry are given to accomplish one's task when one is within one's metrons.

¹⁰ Your metron By Frank Damazio (<http://www.frankdamazio.com/2012/10/your-metron/>)

When God assigns a ministry task or a ministry territory He will provide everything necessary to be successful in accomplishing the mission in one's assigned metron.

Thus one can say that grace is given according to the metron one's assigned to. God will grant sufficient grace sufficient when one draws near to Him. Much difficulty, much grace. Much hardship, much grace. Much sin, much grace.

What is grace? *Grace is the power to advance beyond one's own abilities.*¹¹

Grace can be obtained through faith and prayer. The scripture declares, *"Let us therefore come boldly unto the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy, and find grace to help in time of need"* Hebrews 4:16 (KJV).

4.2 Apostolic Paradigm

At least four specific paradigm changes will take place within the local church as the 21st Century apostolic churches emerge:

1. Perhaps one of the most profound will be a breaking free from the one-man-only paradigm. This paradigm requires all of the church's marketing efforts and resources to be used in drawing people to a building to be taught by one gift.
2. The second will powerfully affect the goal of evangelism and take it from just getting a decision for Christ into raising a disciple of Christ.

¹¹ Clark J (2001) *Apostolic Equipping Dimension*. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p43

3. The church will shift the focus of the ministry from an inward focus to an outward focus of ministry. The church will be the place where apostolic strategies and goals are set, as believers are activated and released into ministry. Church will not only be a place where people can gather together to worship and be refreshed.
4. Various apostolic teams will be built, activated and sent out into the surrounding city and into the nations of the world.

Lyle Schaller, church growth visionary, says, "The old pattern of individuals working alone in their own isolated empires is being replaced by teams."¹²

Apostle John Eckhardt commenting on the rise of teams says, "There are apostolic teams, prophetic teams, evangelistic teams, deliverance teams, prayer teams, praise and worship teams, teaching teams, and pastoral teams."¹³

4.3 Grace Is The Power To Advance Beyond Ones Own Abilities

A true apostolic paradigm is one that gathers, teaches, equips, assigns, targets, builds, shapes, deploys teams and disciples.

A lot of churches don't have the structure to send the believers into the harvest field after they completed the teaching and pastoring training. This is changing

¹² Mc Neal, Reggie (1998) *Revolution in Leadership*. Nashville, TN: Abingdon Press. p12

¹³ Mc Neal, Reggie (1998) *Revolution in Leadership*. Nashville, TN: Abingdon Press. p34

now in the 21st Century's apostolic reformation as the emerging apostolic leaders are embracing these mighty truths, as they get ready to fulfill the Great Commission.

Just as John the Baptist declared in his generation that he ax was being laid to the root, so it is in our generation.

And now also the ax is laid unto the root of the trees: therefore every tree which bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire

Matthew 3:10 (KJV)

5 APOSTOLIC BELIEVERS – BELIEVERS AUTHORITY

When discussing the restoration of the priesthood of all believers one should also include the capturing of the apostolic spirit of the end time priesthood. Well known apostles in Scripture that was quite different was Joshua and Caleb. They both have a different spirit and a different orientation - in a positive sense they are radicals, extremist and nonconformist when it comes to obstacles that buffet the advancement of the gospel.

But my servant Caleb, because he had another spirit with him, and hath followed me fully, him will I bring into the land where into he went; and his seed shall possess it

Numbers 14:24 (KJV).

There are three words that many have dropped from their vocabulary because of religious perception and opinions. Yet these three words help capture and express the apostolic dimension, radical, extremist and nonconformist.

5.1 Radical

Definition: Being radical simply means that one desire extreme change in one's current situation. An example of radical is – when one is sick and desires to be completely well and is looking for extreme change. That is radical thinking and there is nothing wrong with it.

But my servant Caleb, because he had another spirit with him, and hath followed me fully, him will I bring into the land whereinto he went; and his seed shall possess it.

Numbers 14:24 (KJV)

Apostolic believers are radical thinkers who demonstrate radical actions.

Some radical actions that got the attention of our Lord Jesus Christ in Scripture was the friends of a man with a crippling palsy (Mark 2) – his friends were radical and had radical actions. When the friends of the crippled man could not get their friend to Jesus through the front door of the house, they climbed up on the roof and broke it to pieces so that they could lower him to Jesus.

Apostolic believers find solutions to problems and are not afraid of doing things that have never been done. That was a radical action by these radical believers. Jesus honoured this radical team's act of faith and demonstrated love by healing the man of palsy and forgiving his sin.

When Jesus saw their faith, he said unto the sick of the palsy, son, thy sins be forgiven thee

Mark 2:5 (KJV)

According to Clark ¹⁴“apostolic believers are true friends who take action. Their faith is visible. They move beyond well wishing prayers and take hold of the situation at hand. They are solution minded and results-orientated. Often accused of being unloving their love is demonstrated with a take-charge perseverance. This apostolic team got the job done! They got their friend to Jesus.”

5.2 Extremist

Definition: An extremist is one who holds to a view that is far away from the main stream.

Apostolic believers are extremist and are completely sold out to God. An extremist is known as the ultimate pioneering adventurer and is one who will go to the cutting edge. This doesn't mean that they are not sober minded and balanced. Evan Roberts,¹⁵ Charles Parham,¹⁶ and John.G Lake¹⁷ are Christians who would be labelled as extremists if they lived in our generation. They were in fact God's revolutionary agents of change.

Even today Reinhard Bonnke boldly declares, “All of Africa shall be saved!” His efforts to mail the gospel to every home using the world's postal system is definitely far from the main stream of typical evangelism methods.

¹⁴ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p49

¹⁵ of the great Welsh Revival saw himself as “the Lord's special messenger who would arouse the churches for their task of saving the nation.”

¹⁶ known as the Father of Pentecost proclaimed, “Speaking in tongues was the evidence of the baptism of the Holy Spirit.”

¹⁷ missionary to Africa declared, “You can fill my hand with them (germs) and I will keep it under the microscope, and instead of these germs remaining alive, they will die instantly

All of these people had extreme ideas and the fear of not being understood did not stop them - they were apostolic believers who had entered an apostolic dimension.

Every believer who is highly committed to his walk with God is an extremist as a result of the cutting edge of his walk with God, which is the most exciting adventure that he will ever have. Some might say “if one are not living on the cutting edge then one are taking up too much room.”

The Apostle Peter was an extremist. He saw Jesus and said, *“Lord, if it be thou, bid me come unto thee on the water.”* That was an extreme request, Peter’s orientation was different. This type of extreme request was as far away from the main stream of thinking as one could get. Who would ever consider asking Jesus such a thing?¹⁸

5.3 Extreme Believers Ask God For Extreme Things

They are risk takers who enter realms of uncharted territories of faith and will ask God extreme things. But at the response of Jesus to come, Peter boldly stepped out of the boat and walked on the water at the utter amazement of the other apostles¹⁹. The one willing to step onto the cutting edge of one’s boat to see one’s needs met and to fulfil one’s destiny is an apostolic believer

Apostolic equipping dimension will break one away from the main stream of dead traditional religious thinking and empower one to respond to Jesus in an

¹⁸ Clark J (2001) *Apostolic Equipping Dimension*. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p53

¹⁹ Matthew 14

extreme way to receive an extreme victory. Apostolic believers are risk takers - they walk on the water of their metrons.²⁰

5.4 Nonconformist

Definition: A nonconformist is one who refuses to make himself similar to the main stream of public opinion. In short, a nonconformist does not blend. It is possible to be a nonconformist and not be in rebellion.²¹

Blind Bartimaeus wanted to see again and when He heard Jesus was passing his way he cried out to him with a loud voice. “*Jesus, thou son of David, have mercy on me!*”²² He refused to conform to the charges of the crowd around him for he needed healing and wasn’t going to let the voices of the religious crowd stop him. He shouted all the more! - blind Bartimaeus is a great example of a nonconformist. Apostolic believers are perseverant and don’t let obstacles, difficulties, or discouragement stop them. - they keep pressing in.

Bartimaeus received his healing for he did not blend in. He was a nonconformist in the positive sense. When the religious spirit demanded his conformity, he resisted with such volume that it got ‘Jesus’ attention, Jesus approved his faith and gave him eyesight.

Bartimaeus was a master overcomer.²³ To overcome means to win the struggle and carry off the victory, thus he made a decision and took action.

²⁰ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p54

²¹ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p54

²² Mark 10:46

Apostolic believers don't let lifeless religion rob them from receiving God's best, for it is all right to be radical. They desire extreme change from their current situation. They will go to the cutting edge of commitment and dedication to the advancement of the gospel of Jesus Christ. It is OK to be a nonconformist – they refuse to conform themselves to a dead religious image or public opinions of men.²⁴

6 THE CHRISTIANS AUTHORITY

Christians can live victorious lives once they understand that Jesus backs them up when they speak His word and act on His word. One can demonstrate that they are believers with authority.

Not only will the apostolic dimension bring a restoration of the priesthood of every believer (all Christians are ministers) it will also usher in an apostolic understanding and impartation of spiritual authority to every believer.

God gives every believer spiritual authority.

Behold, I give unto you power (exousia) to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power (dunamis) of the enemy: and nothing shall by any means hurt you.

Luke 10:19 (KJV)

²³ Revelation 12:11

²⁴ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p54-56

In the Scripture above the word *power*²⁵ is actually two different Greek words. One word for power is *exousia*, meaning authority. The other word for power is *dunamis*, meaning mighty power. Unfortunately, the Bible translators did not help us understand this verse by translating both words as power.

In this Scripture Jesus is literally saying, “*behold, I give unto you authority to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy: and nothing shall by any means hurt you.*” So what is authority?

- Authority is the power or right to give a command!

Serpents and scorpions are symbols of evil spirits of wickedness and demonic powers and are identified by Jesus as enemies of believers. An enemy is one who hates a person and desires to hurt such person. The Apostle Paul teaches us, too that we have spiritual enemies that we wrestle against and if believers wrestle against these demonic powers in the strength of the Lord they will always win.

Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord, and in the power (kratos) of his might. Put on the whole armor of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers (exousia), against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places. Wherefore take unto you the whole armor of God, that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand.

Ephesians 6:10-13 (KJV)

²⁵ One word for power is *exousia*, meaning authority. The other word for power is *dunamis*, meaning mighty power

In this Scripture two different words are used for the word *power*. *Kratos* in the above verse means strength. Paul is saying, “... *be strong in the Lord and in the strength (kratos) of his might.*” The believer must learn not to rely on his own natural strength but to draw on spiritual strength that comes from the Lord.

6.1 Authority Is The Power Or Right To Give A Command!

The believer cannot fight demonic powers in the flesh and win. Jesus is the power behind the written word. Jesus stands behind the believer when he speaks the Word and acts on the Word. One can then live a victorious Christian life and demonstrates that believers have authority.

The ability to exercise ones right to command (*exousia*) is activated when a person understands that it is Christ who is living in him. *A person is not alone!* When a person is born again the Holy Spirit, the same spirit that raised Christ from the dead lives in such a person. If a person does not understand his authority (*exousia*) as a believer, then the priesthood of all believers will mean little to man. One can exercise the authority given to him whilst living one's daily life by:

- soul winning
- believing God's Word
- acting out what we believe
- doing the Word
- speaking the Word
- praying for ourselves and others
- binding and loosing through prayer

- casting out demons
- praying for the sick

As children of God we have His mighty power and have the authority of His word against all our enemies. Jesus said, *Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater works than these shall he do; because I go unto my Father*” John 14:12 (KJV).

The believer’s authority is not just to give him some temporary relief but to launch him into an exciting active ministry.

7 APOSTOLIC MINISTRY

Definition of ministry: The Greek word for ministry is *diakonia* meaning to:

- promote
- proclaim
- execute the will of another
- It also means to meet the needs of others as a servant.

One will be equipped to minister through the apostolic anointing. Ministry is not preaching the gospel in a glamorized and confined church with four walls, but ministry is really in the trenches, on the streets, out where the people live, at work and in the marketplace. One may never preach the gospel inside a church building but that does not mean that one is not called to play an active and vital role in ministry for everyone is equipped for the work of ministry according to Ephesians 4:12.

7.1 Ministry Of Reconciliation

The believer's first responsibility as ministers is to mediate Christ's love into a dark and troubled world, lead people to Jesus Christ and share their faith as ministers of reconciliation.

And all things are of God, who hath reconciled us to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation; To wit, that God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and hath committed unto us the word of reconciliation.

2 Corinthians 5:18-19 (KJV)

Reconciliation is the Greek word *katallage* meaning to restore the sinner back to favour with God. The word says that, "God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, the whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life" *John 3:16 (KJV)*. God is the one who initiates the process of reconciliation²⁶

William Temple wrote, "All is of God; the only thing of my very own which I contribute to my redemption is the sin from which I need to be redeemed."²⁷ *Christ is the one who carries out the task of reconciliation. We are reconciled "through Christ" and "in Christ."*²⁸ Thus all believers who are active in promoting, proclaiming and executing God's will is the one's entrusted with the "message of reconciliation;" they are "ambassadors for Christ" with the new message, "be

²⁶ And all things *are* of God, who hath reconciled us to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation; 2 Corinthians 5:18 (KJV)

²⁷ William Temple, quoted in John Stott, *The Cross of Christ* (Downers Grove, Ill.: InterVarsity Press, 1986), 197.

²⁸ 2 Corinthians 5:18-19 (KJV)

reconciled to God.²⁹ The believers has now a ministry of reconciliation because of what God as done in Christ

*Evangelism is telling someone the good news that Jesus Christ died for our sins, was raised from the dead and is now extending forgiveness of sins to all who would believe.*³⁰

The word says, “How then shall they call on him in whom they have not believed? And how shall they believe in him of whom they have not heard? And how shall they hear without a preacher? And how shall they preach, except they be sent? As it is written, How beautiful are the feet of them that preach the gospel of peace, and bring glad tidings of good things! Romans 10:14-15 (KJV).

All believers have a new title as “ambassador” or “priest” so that they might have the status to preach the gospel, share the good news and carry the message!³¹ Paul is teaching us that one cannot get to know Jesus unless the ordinary believer shares the news.

The priesthood of all believers is based on the clear teaching of Scripture – thus believers represent a royal priesthood of ambassadors of Jesus. By sharing their faith, good news, the Word of God and personal testimonies, believers are used by the Holy Spirit to soften even the hardest of hearts. As believers share the truth of the gospel they can win souls for the Kingdom of Light or plant a seed in a person for a later harvest. God calls each of His followers to do a

²⁹ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p64

³⁰ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p64

³¹ The priesthood of all believers By Art Lindsay Ph.D (<https://tifwe.org/resource/the-priesthood-of-all-believers/>)

task, each according to their gifts.³² *“If the Church teaches that working in business, communications, politics, or any other profession is just as impactful as working directly in the ministry, it allows Christians to connect their beliefs to their everyday actions, giving them purpose in their jobs and equipping to them to serve others and improve society through their daily work.”*³³

7.2 Intercession

There may be various definitions or meanings of the word, but we want to discuss two Latin words which are translated into “INTERCESSION”.

‘intra’ – between or amidst

‘cedere’ – to stand.

A combination of the two is: intra-*cedere*, which means ‘*standing in between or standing in the gap.*’

Another word for intercession is the Greek word ‘*pagar*’, which means ‘*to collide with*’, ‘*to have a head-on collision*’³⁴ or the act of interceding, prayer, petition, or entreaty in favour of another.³⁵

This signifies that in intercession you stand in-between and have a Head-in-collision with something. To intercede is to meet with God and to meet with the

³² Clark J (2001) *Apostolic Equipping Dimension*. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p66

³³The priesthood of all believers By Art Lindsay Ph.D (<https://tifwe.org/resource/the-priesthood-of-all-believers/>)

³⁴ Kanaan Ministries – Bible Study Notes

³⁵ Merriam-Webster Learner’s Dictionary: Simple Definition – Intercession (<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/intercession>)

power of darkness enforcing the victory Christ accomplished when He met them in His word of intercession. The intercessor meets with God, asking Him to meet with someone else. The intercessor becomes the go-between. Intercession will involve one or both of these facets: reconciliation or breaking, uniting or disuniting.³⁶

Those who do the work of ministry intercede (pray) for others. The power of intercession is understood by ministers because it is part of the very nature of God.

And I sought for a man among them, that should make up the hedge, and stand in the gap before me for the land, that I should not destroy it: but I found none.

Ezekiel 22:30 (KJV)

To pray with the Holy Spirit to get prayer answers for others is the means to intercede. The Apostle Paul said that he travailed in prayer again for the Galation believers.³⁷

My little children, of whom I travail in birth again until Christ be formed in you.

Galations 4:19 (KJV)

According to this Scripture one can see the burden Paul had for the people in this church. He prayed that Christ (the anointed one) would be formed (*morphoo*) in them.

³⁶ Kanaan Ministries – Bible Study Notes

³⁷ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p66

Paul had an intense time of prayer and he felt the pains of child birth. His intercession was so powerful that, coupled with the Holy Spirit, it gave birth to new things, unlocked mysteries of God, destiny and purpose over the people.

Thus ministers must follow the leading of the Holy Spirit when interceding for others.³⁸ *"I exhort therefore, that, first of all, supplications, prayers, intercessions, and giving of thanks, be made for all men" 1 Timothy 2:1 (KJV).*

7.3 Laying On Of Hands

"Laying on of hands" is a Biblical action; however, there is no Biblical mandate requiring the physical laying on of hands for a particular spiritual ministry.³⁹ Jesus healed many of those He laid hands on but there were times when He was nowhere in the vicinity of those He healed.⁴⁰ The laying on of hands in the early church was a means of connecting the message with the messenger.

Of the doctrine of baptisms, and of laying on of hands, and of resurrection of the dead, and of eternal judgment.

Hebrews 6:2 (KJV)

There are a few instances where ministers laid their hands on others in the Scriptures. One of the last things that Jesus said when speaking to believers was that they *"shall lay hands on the sick and they shall recover"*⁴¹ The pattern

³⁸ Clark J (2001) *Apostolic Equipping Dimension*. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p66-67

³⁹ Laying on hands – what does the bible say (<https://gotquestions.org/laying-on-of-hands.html>)

⁴⁰ The centurion answered and said, Lord, I am not worthy that thou shouldst come under my roof: but speak the word only, and my servant shall be healed. Matthew 8:8 (KJV)

⁴¹ Mark 16:18

of the laying on of hands as a ministry function is also demonstrated in the lives of the apostles.

And by the hands of the apostles were many signs and wonders wrought among the people.

Acts 5:12 (KJV)

When Moses laid his hands on Joshua one can see a transference of the anointing. God also commanded Moses to do it before the whole congregation.

And the LORD said unto Moses, Take thee Joshua the son of Nun, a man in whom is the spirit, and lay thine hand upon him ... And he laid his hands upon him, and gave him a charge, as the LORD commanded by the hand of Moses.

Numbers 27:18, 23 (KJV)

The laying on of hands released God's mighty power when Barnabas and Paul were sent out of the church in Antioch.

As they ministered to the Lord, and fasted, the Holy Ghost said, Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them. And when they had fasten and prayed, and laid their hands on them, they sent them away.

Acts 13:2-3 (KJV)

When men were chosen as deacons in the early church hands were laid on them to set them apart for service.

Whom they set before the apostles: and when they had prayed, they laid their hands on them

Acts 6:6 (KJV)

Jesus ministered to the sick by the laying on of his hands.

And when the sabbath day was come, he began to teach in the synagogue: and many hearing him were astonished, saying, From whence hath this man these things? And what wisdom is this which is given unto him, that even such mighty works are wrought by his hands? Is not this the carpenter, the son of Mary, the brother of James, and Joses, and of Juda, and Simon? And are not his sisters here with us? And they were offended at him. But Jesus said unto them, A prophet is not without honour, but in his own country, and among his own kin, and in his own house. And he could there do no mighty work, save that he laid his hands upon a few sick folk, and healed them.

Mark 6:2-5 (KJV)

The virtue (power) of flowing through Jesus' hands can be seen when Jesus was asked to place his hands on a deaf man

And they brought unto him one that was deaf, and had an impediment in his speech; and they beseech him to put his hand upon him.

Mark 7:32 (KJV)

Even the Apostle Paul experienced the personal ministry of having hands laid on him.

And Ananias went his way, and entered into the house; and putting his hands on him said, Brother Saul, the Lord, even Jesus, that appeared unto thee in the way as thou camest, hath sent me, that thou mightiest receive thy sight, and be filled with the Holy Ghost.

Acts 9:17 (KJV)

One should never fear the laying on of hands. According to Scripture it's the way to release God's mighty power - signs and wonders are awaiting when you

obey the Scriptures to lay your hands on others.⁴² The laying on of hands is an important act of a minister.

7.4 Pray For The Sick

It is God's desire to heal the sick and he will use one to pray for others who need healing. Praying for those who are sick is an important aspect of a minister. When teaching his disciples how to be ministers he said, *"Heal the sick, cleanse the lepers, raise the dead, cast out devils: freely ye have received, freely give: Matthew 10:8 (KJV).* Jesus is the same yesterday, today and forever. When praying for the sick one is offering intercessory prayer to God. God is still the Master Healer and the Great Physician and He will or will not heal those whom He will or will not heal.⁴³ Acts 28:8 *"And it came to pass, that the father of Publius lay sick of a fever and of a bloody flux: to whom Paul entered in, and prayed, and laid his hands on him, and healed him."* He is still healing the sick and requiring his ministers (those who execute his will) to take an active role.⁴⁴

And Jesus went about all Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and healing all manner of sickness and all manner of disease among the people.

Matthew 4:23 (KJV)

That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying, Himself took our infirmities, and bare our sicknesses.

Matthew 8:17 (KJV)

⁴² Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p67-68

⁴³ Bible versus for the sick: 20 comforting scripture quotes (<http://www.whatchristianswanttoknow.com/bible-verses-for-the-sick-20-comforting-scripture-quotes/>)

⁴⁴ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p72

Then Peter said, Silver and gold have I none; but such as I have give I thee: In the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth rise up and walk.

Acts 3:6 (KJV)

How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power: who went about doing good, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for God was with him.

Act 10:38 (KJV)

7.5 Casting Out Demons

“This world [in Jesus’ view] was a demon-infested world in need of liberation, and the advance of God’s sovereignty was in direct proportion to the rout of the demons. Exorcism of demons was the central thrust of the message and activity of Jesus.”⁴⁵

In today’s society people are in desperate need of deliverance ministers. Jesus gave every one of his minister’s power to cast out demons. The *same* anointing that heals the sick, opens blind eyes and deaf ears, will also cast out demons.

Whenever Darkness is confronted with the bright Light of the Presence Love, Truth and Power of our Lord Jesus Christ through the Anointing of the Holy Spirit in a one to one confrontation as well as in a powerful preaching of the Word, “**demons**” are inclined to come to the fore and be exposed.⁴⁶

⁴⁵ Kallas, James (1961) *The Significance of the Synoptic Miracles*. Greenwich Conn, Seabury p. 66.

⁴⁶ Brand, Prof Dr Connie MJ (2005) *Spiritual Warfare Four An Analysis of the Methodology of Spiritual Warfare* Self Published SA p16

The Greek word for cast out is *ekballo* meaning to...

- violently drive out
- expel by force
- command to depart

Who can cast out demons? All of those who believe and walk in God's authority. The apostolic dimension will not tolerate nor ignore demonic spirits and all believers are authorized to use the name of Jesus and cast out devils.

Deliverance is one of the most important ministries today but - one of the most neglected in the church today. The reason being, to really love people means that one wants the very best for them. If there are demonic strongholds in the lives of people, there is no way to help the people get free outside of an effective deliverance ministry. Due to these demonic strongholds, many people continue to fall into the same old sins.⁴⁷

And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature. He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned. And these signs shall follow them that believe; In my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; They shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover.

Mark 16:15-18 (KJV)

Reaching the world with the gospel is ministry:

⁴⁷ Clark J (2001) *Apostolic Equipping Dimension*. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p73-

Behold, I give unto you power to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy: and nothing shall by any means hurt you. Notwithstanding in this rejoice not, that the spirits are subject unto you; but rather rejoice, because your names are written in heaven.

Luke 10:19-20 (KJV)

According to this verse one can learn that evil spirits are in fact subject unto every believer who ministers the gospel. The reason - because the believer's name is written in the Lamb's book of life and he has the authority to cast out demons. That's worth rejoicing about, so let's help loved ones by exercising our rights to cast out demonic powers.⁴⁸

7.6 Filled With The Holy Spirit

But ye shall receive power (dynamis), after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

Acts 1:8 (KJV)

The Greek word for witness⁴⁹ is *martus*. This is where the English word martyr comes from. A martyr is one willing to suffer and die for their faith. According to this Scripture, after the Holy Ghost comes upon the believer he would receive such an infilling of the Holy Spirit that he would be willing to even die for the advancement of the cause of Christ. An important verse in understanding the filling of the Holy Spirit is John 14:16,⁵⁰ where Jesus promised the Spirit would

⁴⁸ Clark J (2001) *Apostolic Equipping Dimension*. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p75

⁴⁹ The Greek word is *martus*

⁵⁰ And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever; John 14:16 (KJV)

indwell believers and that the indwelling would be permanent.⁵¹ This really captures the spirit in the scripture that declares, “*And they overcame him (Satan and demonic powers) by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto the death*” Revelation 12:11 (KJV).

Those who are born again may not be filled with the Holy Spirit. This can be seen clearly as the Apostle Paul meets with believers who had never even heard about the baptism of the Holy Ghost.

He (Paul) said unto them, Have ye received the Holy Ghost since ye believed? And they said unto him, We have not so much as heard whether there be any Holy Ghost. And he said unto them, Unto what then were ye baptized? And they said, Unto John’s baptism. Then said Paul, John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus. When they heard this, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus. And when Paul had laid his hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them; and they spake with tongues, and prophesied.

Acts 19:2-6 (KJV)

One should yield to the Holy Spirit completely to be possessed one fully and, in that sense, fills one. Scripture states that He dwells⁵² within every believer, but He can be grieved,⁵³ and His activity within us can be quenched⁵⁴. Allowing this to happen one will not experience the fullness of the Spirit working in and through one. Being filled with the Spirit implies freedom for Him to occupy

⁵¹ How can I be filled with the Holy Spirit (<https://gotquestions.org/Spirit-filled.html>)

⁵² But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his. Romans 8:9 (KJV)

⁵³ And grieve not the holy Spirit of God, whereby ye are sealed unto the day of redemption. Ephesians 4:30 (KJV)

⁵⁴ Quench not the Spirit. 1 Thessalonians 5:19 (KJV)

every part of one's life. The Holy Spirit will guide and control the believer and His power will be exerted through the believer so that what he does is fruitful to God.⁵⁵ One can be prompted by the Holy Spirit of God to lay hands on others to be filled with the Holy Spirit, too. Other functions of a minister are:

- pointing people to Jesus the author and finisher of their faith (Hebrews 12:2)
- being a good listener
- showing mercy and compassion (1 Peter 3:8)
- visiting and calling those whom God lays on your heart
- encouraging and building others up in faith (Deuteronomy 3:2)
- and finally serving others (Romans 12:10)

This scripture really captures the spirit of a minister.⁵⁶

And whosoever will be chief (protos) among you, let him be your servant: Even as the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

Matthew 20:27-28 (KJV)

The minister should never lose sight of the basic operations of the anointing provided. Jesus boldly declare, *"The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to be blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised, To preach the acceptable year of the Lord"* Luke 4:18-19 (KJV).

⁵⁵ How to be filled with the Holy Spirit? (<https://gotquestions.org/Spirit-filled.html>)

⁵⁶ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p77-78

According to this scripture the anointing has a definite purpose namely.

1. Preach the gospel to the poor
2. Healing of the brokenhearted
3. Deliverance to captives
4. Sight to the blind
5. Liberty to those who are bruised (hurts and wounds)
6. God's favour (ministry of reconciliation)

8 FERVENT PRAYER

Entering into the apostolic equipping dimension one can expect that one's prayer life will be strongly affected. Prayer is the breeding ground for apostolic assignments and the realm of intimate communication and fellowship toward God. In the apostolic dimension prayer is not something that one does but rather a lifestyle of the righteous.

Prayer is a tremendous privilege, yet it is so easy for believers to neglect it - prayer and its power are taken for granted. J.C. Ryle says in his classic chapter on prayer in *Practical Religion*,

Nothing seems to be too great, too hard, or too difficult for prayer to do. It has obtained things that seemed impossible and out of reach. It has won victories over fire, air, earth, and water. Prayer opened the Red Sea. Prayer brought water from the rock and bread from heaven. Prayer made the sun stand still. Prayer brought fire from the sky on Elijah's sacrifice. Prayer turned the counsel of Ahitophel into foolishness. Prayer overthrew the army of Sennacherib. Well

might Mary, Queen of Scots say, "I fear John Knox's prayer more than an army of ten thousand men." Prayer has healed the sick. Prayer has raised the dead. Prayer has procured the conversion of souls. "The child of many prayers," said an old Christian to Augustine's mother, "shall never perish." Prayers, pains, and faith can do anything⁵⁷

When one fails to utilize this privilege, the consequence is spiritual decline.

Again Ryle articulates it well:

Bibles read without prayer, sermons heard without prayer, marriages contracted without prayer, the daily act of private prayer itself hurried over or gone through without heart, these are the kind of downward steps by which many a Christian descends into a condition of spiritual palsy, or reaches a point where God allows him (or her) to have a tremendous fall...We may be sure that many fall in private long before they fall in public.⁵⁸

A prayer lifestyle is a consistent, integrated way of living. Guided by the Holy Spirit the apostolic dimension will lead one into a realm of effective fervent targeted prayers. The word teaches us that, *"The effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much"*⁵⁹ From this scripture we learn that there is a way that the righteous should pray in order to have great success.

The following verse in the Amplified Bible teaches one that there is tremendous power available for the righteous who pray fervently.

⁵⁷ J. C. Ryle, *Practical Religion* (Darlington: Evangelical, 2001), 73.

⁵⁸ J. C. Ryle, *Practical Religion* (Darlington: Evangelical, 2001), 73.

⁵⁹ James 5:16

The earnest (heartfelt, continued) prayer of a righteous man makes tremendous power available [dynamic in its working].

James 5:16 (AMP)

What is fervent prayer? This scripture gives us a mighty key that unlocks a realm that few enter. By knowing how to pray, one gets answers and releases tremendous power into one's life. Jesus was asked by the disciples to teach them how to pray.

To pray with fervency means to pray with an emotional intensity. A fervent prayer is hot, burning, glowing, aggressive, strong, forceful, and targeted.

Jesus himself prayed fervently. The word teaches us,

Who in the days of his flesh, when he had offered up prayers and supplications with strong crying and tears unto him that was able to save him from death, and was heard in that he feared.

Hebrews 5:7 (KJV)

While on the earth Jesus prayed with strong crying mixed with tears.

The word strong is the Greek word *ischuros* meaning to be loud, powerful, violent, militant, forcible and strong. This is the way Jesus prayed.

Clark writes that ⁶⁰there is a time to pray quietly and privately, but there is also a time to pray fervently and corporately. The apostolic equipping dimension will

⁶⁰ Clark J (2001) *Apostolic Equipping Dimension*. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p81-84

release a spirit of prayer into your life. Teaching out of her wonderful book, *Effective Fervent Prayer*, Mary Alice Isleib says,⁶¹

“Jesus is coming soon. If we don’t pray, who will? There is still much work to do, more ground to break and prepare, more enemies to defeat, battles to win, strongholds to pull down, and more of the plan of God to be birthed in the earth. ‘Your will be done on earth as it is in heaven.’

Prayer is the breeding ground for apostolic assignments

We are living in a time that is special; it’s also a time where the Church will be required to pray as never before. When you understand what prayer is and how it works, you can see great changes in your life and in your city and nation. You can pray! Jesus in you is a great Prayer Warrior – He knows how and what to pray to bring result. He has given you His Word and His Spirit. You are mighty in Him! The Church holds the keys to God’s plan in the earth. Prayer unlocks the door to God’s power in you personal life and to deliverance for the nations.”

David Yonggi Cho, pastor of the largest church in the world, the Yoida Full Gospel Church in Seoul Korea, which has over a million members, gives his opinion regarding prayer. *“You could remove the powerful preaching from our church and it would still continue. You could remove the administration of*

⁶¹ Isleib, Mary Alice (1991) *Effective Fervent Prayer*. Minneapolis, MI: Mary Alice Ileib Ministries. Preface.

*pastoral care through the cell group system and the church would still continue. But if you removed the prayer life of our church, it would collapse.*⁶²

Clark writes “⁶³the apostolic dimension will release you into times of loud, strong, fervent, targeted, effective prayer. One needs to remember that fervent heartfelt prayer is the key to an effective prayer life and makes much of God’s tremendous power available. It is the power in prayer that will shake the nations.

9 APOSTOLIC METHODS AND STRATEGIES

God is giving us effective strategies tailored for specific regions, territories and nations. He is the God of strategies and we can expect him to teach us how to succeed.

In a time of transition and change one may find that yesterday’s methods for effective ministry are quickly failing and the apostolic leaders are quickly discovering that what brought ministry success in the past is no longer working. With the restoration of apostolic ministry is the restoration of apostolic methods and strategies. He is the God of strategies, giving the apostolic ministry tailored strategies for specific regions, territories and nations, that will teach them how to succeed.

⁶² Jim Williams, “Seoul Secrets, June 1989, p8

⁶³ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p86

God gives various strategies to reach various regions as different territories may require different methods, tactics and strategies. For example - China, compare to the West. As known, 1/3 of the world population is in China (estimate 1,380,904,000⁶⁴) In China there are no...

- Christian television programs
- Christian radio programs
- Churches painted white with big steeples
- City wide gospel crusades
- Church meeting as we have in the West?

Judaism and Christianity are strictly forbidden and against the law in China. There is an active aggression against Christianity – especially the house church leaders who have refused to register with the Chinese government. When they were found guilty for the sole offense of carrying out peaceful religious activities they were sentenced to three years “re-education” in labour camps.

These Christians are also heavily fined by Bureau officials who refruses to release them until they pay the fine. They are often beaten in front of their families to force their relatives to pay the fines even though most are poor farmers with few or no resources.

By law all Christian churches in China needs to register with the government and once registered they are subjected to a string of restrictions affecting the selection and training of pastors, where they meet, what they can publish, their

⁶⁴ China Population Clock (<http://countrymeters.info/en/China>) 14 October 2016

finances and their relations with believers overseas. Certain preaching topics such as the second coming of Jesus, Judgment day, the gifts of the Holy Spirit Creation and abortion have been declared illegal.

The restriction of people joining the Christian churches is the age of eighteen and by not adhering hereto these Christians are forced to go underground. Their meetings are broken up, their property confiscated and their churches pulled down. Those who are arrested face fines, detention and torture. Believers are beaten, hanged by the limbs, bound in excruciatingly painful positions, tormented with electric batons, and subjected to relentless interrogation. Many have even died under the beatings.⁶⁵

In the Heilongjiang Province six religious rules were set:

1. Those under age 18 cannot be evangelized.
2. No government staff can embrace a faith.
3. No military staff can embrace a faith.
4. No students or teachers can embrace a faith.
5. All religious activity must be carried out in an approved venue.
6. No foreigners can preach without government approval.

Yet in spite of all these persecutions the house church in China is currently estimated to be between 30 and 100 million strong.⁶⁶

⁶⁵ Clark J (2001) *Apostolic Equipping Dimension*. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p90

⁶⁶ Clark J (2001) *Apostolic Equipping Dimension*. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p90

Another example is Iran, currently one of the fastest growing countries for Christianity. It is one of the most dangerous countries in the world for followers of Jesus Christ.⁶⁷ *Almost all of the above-ground, Farsi-speaking churches have been closed and house churches are raided routinely, with their leaders and members arrested, according to a report by SAT-7.*

Despite Iran's leader's strenuous efforts to bring the furies of hell against believers, the church in Iran is growing rapidly! Iran has the fastest-growing evangelical population in the world, according to statistics compiled by Operation World.

9.1 God Of Strategies

In China, the Western paradigm of drawing people to a building would not be an effective strategy to reach the lost. The Chinese church would need some different strategies. Remember, *"But unto every one of us is given grace according to the measure (metron) of the gift of Christ" Ephesians 4:7 (KJV)*

Because it is illegal to freely assemble in worship and have church in China God would have given them a different strategy. One of these strategies deal with *families* take the responsibility to promote the gospel upon them.

When a family becomes born again in China they immediately seek the baptism of the Holy Spirit, the spirit of prayer and evangelism comes over them and it is said that one can see a visible passion on the people. The family appoints one

⁶⁷Iran has fastest evangelical population in the world (<http://blog.godreports.com/2016/03/iran-has-fastest-growing-evangelical-population-in-the-world/>)

family member as an evangelist, anoints him and sends him out in full time evangelistic service. He has no other job outside of reaching the lost whilst the other family members then take the responsibility of financially supporting the family evangelist. One can just stand in awe by this unique strategy.⁶⁸

9.2 Migration Evangelism

Throughout China some underground churches are beginning to network with one another and are quickly training preachers to start their own churches in other villages - this is known as migration evangelism. Couples are being assigned to live in remote provinces as business people while at the same time trying to influence their neighbours.

By changing the hearts of the people in the nation these radical evangelists hope they can change China. Their belief is that once the nation is full of Christian lawyers, teachers, postal workers, etc., the true change will take place.

All the opposition against the church in China made the believers carry such a zeal for God that they not only want a person to come to Christ, but entire cities and finally their country. The Western church could benefit extremely from such a passionate view of ministry.

The most important fact is that God will give the church three things to succeed in their *metrons* regardless of where their ministries are located. They are...

⁶⁸ Clark J (2001) *Apostolic Equipping Dimension*. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p91

- Wisdom
- Grace
- Effective strategies

Regardless of what city or nation one are in, God will give various methods and strategies to the apostolic dimension, to accomplish ones calling.⁶⁹

9.3 The Harvest Strategy

More than any other structure, apostolic teams and small groups give every person a way to minister their gifts. Apostolic teams take the church out of the building and into the city.⁷⁰

In today's society it is impossible for one pastor to meet the complex needs of every individual in a church, therefore, teams and small groups are the future of apostolic churches. God's answer to ministering to one another is through the restoration of the truth of the priesthood of every believer.

Through the structure of apostolic teams and small groups every person has a way to minister his gifts. These teams take the church out of the building and into the city and multiply the number of ministers in a given church. They also close the back door of the church as precious people fall through the cracks never to be seen again.

⁶⁹ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p93

⁷⁰ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p95

According to One John 3:11⁷¹ operating in the priesthood of a believer will manifest itself in a love for and ministry to one another .

The calling of the Apostolic ministry is to not confine to a building but to invade and occupy our cities with the gospel of Jesus Christ and to be disciple makers of disciple makers.

The power and effectiveness of apostolic teams and small groups in the emerging apostolic churches of the 21st century will be seen just as one saw the effectiveness of small groups in China.⁷²

The structure of the local church from a one-man-only paradigm needs to be changed into a fully mobilized army of believers. This can be done by changing the structure of the local church and create a pattern whereby everyone who is available can minister.⁷³

9.4 The Structure

⁷⁴*Clark writes “One day while in prayer for strategies and wisdom to be effective in ministry I received a vision of a net that I saw stretched out across the world and in our city. I also heard the Holy Spirit say, “I am building a great net for a great catch.” Along with the vision of this net the Holy Spirit gave me a strategy of apostolic teams and small groups invading and occupying – metrons. Again, the Greek word metron means an assigned place of spiritual jurisdiction*

⁷¹ For this is the message that ye heard from the beginning, that we should love one another. (1Jn 3:11)

⁷² Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p98

⁷³ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p96

⁷⁴ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p97

But we will not boast of things without our measure, but according to the measure of the rule which God hath distributed to us, a measure to reach even unto you.

2 Corinthians 10:13 (KJV)

9.5 Apostolic Teams

Basically an apostolic team...

Is a group of sons and daughters of the ministry who work together and are sent forth out of the local church with a specific assignment and a common cause. They are an invading task force.

Apostolic teams benefit from the apostolic dynamic of being sent forth (*apostello*) out of the local church (Acts 13:3). The apostolic team consists of people who are willing and available to go onto the streets to evangelize.

Apostolic street teams are used to reach the lost, the unchurched, and start metron groups (cells) throughout the city.

According to Clark ⁷⁵“metron groups represent the knots in the net. To be part of the apostolic team, one must be part of the church’s apostolic dimension. Through training in leadership, evangelism and how to work with others one can advanced and become a Metron Leader.

⁷⁵ Clark J (2001) *Apostolic Equipping Dimension*. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p97

9.6 Metron Leaders

Metron Leaders leads cell groups of at least three people but not more than ten with a goal to raise up leaders in a small group setting outside the church. Metron leaders are in effect *Disciple makers of disciple makers*.

Metron Leader's end time goal is to train 12 other Metron Leaders and help them pioneer and plant 12 other cell groups. Weekly and monthly meetings are scheduled by a Metron Leader. They themselves must become Master Builders by multiplying their groups every twelve months it not they get absorbed into other metron groups. Metron groups must be mobilized to evangelize.⁷⁶

9.7 Metron Groups

Metron groups (cells) meet weekly and their goal is to multiply. A metron group meeting consist of personal and corporate prayer, worship, lesson, offering, etc. The aim of the metron group is to:

- evangelism
- discipleship
- multiplication
- leadership training

Metron members need to understand and repeat these three parts of the metrons vision when asked. Metron groups assume responsibility in reaching

⁷⁶ Clark J (2001) *Apostolic Equipping Dimension*. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p99

their family, friends and neighbourhoods whilst the role of the Metron Leader is that of a nurturing care giver who attends more closely to the group's needs and personal ministry.

Apostolic street teams coupled with various evangelistic events is the invasion strategy of an apostolic ministry into the city. Whereas metron groups (cells) is the occupying strategy of an apostolic ministry into the city.⁷⁷

9.8 The Invasion Council

Only Metron Leader is allowed a seat on the city's Invasion Council and the council's focus is leadership training, growth, and evangelism. Monthly meetings are being held where goals are evaluated and strategies are being set. The Invasion Council is under the direction of the set man and the oversight of the church's apostolic presbytery.⁷⁸

10 EQUIPPING AND TRAINING LEADERS FOR GOD'S KINGDOM

Jesus is our pattern for the greatest of all apostolic leaders. He took twelve ordinary men with various personalities, weaknesses, flaws and strengths and transformed them into a dynamic, world changing revolutionary team.⁷⁹

⁷⁷ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p100

⁷⁸ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p100

⁷⁹ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p115

The apostolic equipping dimension together with the priesthood of all believers paints a bright future for the 21st Century church. To accomplish this great strategy and enter the apostolic equipping dimension will require a focus on leadership training and will be an exciting challenge to the emerging apostolic ministries. As a church implement an apostolic structure they will promptly find out that the harvest is big but the workers are few.

To build strong apostolic governing churches believers need to take leadership seriously. To become an apostolic leader requires a lot of hard work. It takes time and practise to mould and shape leadership skills and it does not come overnight. It is the responsibility of the church to train new apostolic leaders within their churches. Apostolic leadership is:

“Leadership in its simplest form is the ability to accomplish a purpose by recruiting and motivating others to join a common cause. Apostolic leadership in particular recognizes the importance of a strong governing local church, embraces the apostolic sent one dynamics, is a team player, spiritually equips and deploys every believer.”

To become an apostolic leader a strong desire is essential - one must learn and practice the skills necessary to obtain success.

10.1 Apostolic Leaders Are:⁸⁰

- **VISIONARIES** – They identify and set the direction and the course of the things but without the ability to see there can be no action. Vision is like a compass..
- **COMMITTED** – Leaders are dedicated and devoted to a long term course of action and involvement.
- **EFFECTIVE COMMUNICATORS** – To transmit information in a clear and concise way is the act of communication. Apostolic leaders are masters of building faith for action through effective communication.
- **GOAL SETTERS** – Goals are targets and are defined as the line or place at which a race or trip is ended. Goals breakdown a leader's vision into small attainable steps.
- **RISK TAKERS** – Faith in action is when all apostolic leaders enter the realm of uncharted territories of risk. They are willing to try what has never been tried before.
- **RESULTS ORIENTED** – Apostolic leaders are committed and get the job done!
- **AGENTS OF CHANGE** – They act as the stimulus in bringing about and hastening results and to them sin is to simply talk about necessary changes without an active plan of reform.
- **INITIATORS** – they step forward, take charge, and are willing to act while coming up with solutions and ideas on their own – they are the instigators and activist of action.

⁸⁰ Clark J (2001) *Apostolic Equipping Dimension*. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p105-107

- **PERSEVERANT** – They have perseverance and overcome difficulties, obstacles or discouragement. To overcome means to win the struggle and carry off the victory.
- **LIFE LONG LEARNERS** – They are well educated and avid readers who learn from their mistakes, failures and successes. They read and have a lot of books and cd's in their personal libraries. One becomes what they pursue.
- **ADULTS** – They are mature and take leadership responsibility seriously.
- **FLEXIBLE AND FLUID** – they are quite flexible and do not wither under pressure. They experiment with new and unproven ways of achieving results and have the ability to adapt to the situation they are currently in.
- **DECISIVE** – They are decisive and have the ability to speedily examine a situation, settle a question or dispute, and make rapid and accurate decisions.
- **TEAM PLAYERS** – they operate as teams as they know they cannot accomplish great visions by themselves.

Remember this thought – ‘every reader is not a leader, but every leader is a reader.’

Herewith an advertisement that British Antarctic explorer Sir Ernest Shackleton (1874-1922) placed in the London newspapers in 1900 in preparation for the National Antarctic Expedition (which subsequently failed to reach the South Pole). This ad so captures the adventurous spirit of apostolic leadership that it is a fitting conclusion to this chapter.

MEN WANTED FOR HAZARDOUS JOURNEY. Small wages, bitter cold, long months of complete darkness, constant danger, safe return doubtful. Honor and recognition in case of success.

*Ernest Shackleton*⁸¹

*Schackleton later said that after placing this ad for volunteers, "it seemed as though all of Great Britain were determined to accompany me, the response was so overwhelming."*⁸²

One could say: *APOSTOLIC LEADERS ARE THE INSTIGATORS AND ACTIVIST OF ACTION*⁸³

11 APOSTOLIC WORSHIP

Every fresh move of God has its own music and songs. One can expect to see continual change take place in the presentation, function, flow and sound of music in apostolic churches around the world as the apostolic anointing is foundational. It is not easy to explain what apostolic worship is all about because of the subjective nature of worship music and style. I am sure that there are many others who can articulate the subject much better so I will only list some of my observations on the subject.

⁸¹ Bennett, William J. (1996) *The Book of Virtues*. New York, NY: Simon & Schuster

⁸² Bennett, William J. (1996) *The Book of Virtues*. New York, NY: Simon & Schuster

⁸³ Clark J (2001) *Apostolic Equipping Dimension*. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p108

11.1 Fervent Lifestyle Of Worship

When apostolic believers gather together in a corporate celebration something powerful takes place and there is an entrance into another realm. One can feel the spiritual climate beckoning one to move out of being a passive spectator into a vibrant participant.

The spiritual realm that one is taken to by the music has more 'punch in the praise' and more 'depth in the worship' that differentiate apostolic worship from other forms of worship.⁸⁴

11.2 Musics' Influence

Music itself was created for one central purpose, to celebrate and worship God. When music is filled with spiritual substance and purpose it has an incredible influence on people. Music is a powerful medium of the Holy Spirit and God created mankind as beings of worship.

*Musical worship at its core is simply an expression of our love, adoration, and intimate devotion of God through the music and songs. Whereas songs are the spoken declaration of that devotion, music is the vehicle of that expression.*⁸⁵

⁸⁴ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p112

⁸⁵ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p113

11.3 New Songs

Apostolic worship is the breeding ground of new songs that address the specific needs of one's church or the body of Christ. New songs given by the Holy Spirit as prophetic instruction take the worshipper another step closer in his walk with the Lord.

11.4 Apostolic Music Prepares The Spiritual Climate

Sometimes songs birthed in a local church in an apostolic atmosphere have a universal application in the broad body of Christ. Because of the governing authority in apostolic churches the songs are relevant to many other churches as well. New songs will be birthed appropriate and relevant to ones churches current situation by the apostolic dimension. Singing songs to the Lord is the most powerful way to worship our Lord - not only are one building something powerful in the realm of the spirit, but releasing something powerful in the lives of the people too.⁸⁶

11.5 Cultural Influences

Music style is progressive and often determined by one's culture but the apostolic dimension moves all people into a realm of effectiveness in worship in regards to:

- intimate worship

⁸⁶ Clark J (2001) *Apostolic Equipping Dimension*. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p115

- high praises
- prophetic decrees
- spiritual warfare

The difference is not the cultural sound, but the apostolic dimension flowing in that sound.

11.6 Humanism In Worship

One will be challenged to come up higher in every way and to stop worshipping God out of a spirit of humanism, self-promotion or even self-centeredness - Apostolic worship is not about bless-me-only.⁸⁷

11.7 Worship Leaders

In apostolic worship the Holy Spirit, not the worship leader who yields himself to the moving of the Holy Spirit is in control of the service. The Spirit himself administers the worship service, whether it be times of quiet reverence, high praises or of militant spiritual warfare.

11.8 Unpredictable

The Holy Spirit has the freedom to change the time of worship making apostolic worship unpredictable. To extend or even to shorten the worship part of a service is up to the Holy Spirit.⁸⁸

⁸⁷ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p117

11.9 Healing And Deliverance

In music there is a realm that sets the stage for healing and deliverance according to Scripture. David played music when King Saul was being tormented by evil spirits and Saul was freed, healed and refreshed.

Let our lord now command thy servants, which are before thee, to seek out a man, who is a cunning player on an harp: and it shall come to pass, when the evil spirit from God is upon thee, that he shall play with his hand, and thou shalt be well.

1 Samuel 16:16.

And it came to pass, when the evil spirit from God was upon Saul, that David took an harp, and played with his hand: so Saul was refreshed, and was well, and the evil spirit departed from him.

1 Samuel 16:23

11.10 What Apostolic Worship Does

Apostolic worship is a place for one to be refreshed, equipped, released, and sent out and not just a place of restoration and refreshing or a place where one can feel good and hide out. Apostolic worship will minister to the Lord, release prophetic decrees, bring refreshing and healing and takes one into the presence of God and prepares one's heart for the release of the word of God. Some of the things that apostolic worship does.⁸⁹

⁸⁸ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p118

⁸⁹ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p121-122

11.10.1 Moves The Glory

And David danced before the LORD with all his might; and David was girded with a linen ephod. {15} So David and all the house of Israel brought up the ark of the LORD with shouting, and with the sound of the trumpet.

2 Samuel 6:14-15 (KJV)

Clark writes that ⁹⁰*“Apostolic worship moves the glory of God from one place to another. We can look at the life of King David as a type of apostolic restoration in worship. King David entered an apostolic dimension when he took off his kingly robes of position and status, and danced before the Lord. This expression of his love and dedication literally moved the glory of God from Obedom’s house to Jerusalem. We can do the same as we humble ourselves and flow with what the Lord is doing in this apostolic hour in the church.”*

11.10.2 Warring In Worship

In the apostolic dimension of worship there’s a strong warring spirit. The song “teach us to war in our worship’ was teaching the body of Christ to learn that the Holy Spirit could use music as a spiritual weapon to war against spiritual forces who were attacking the church. Scripture is clear that as believers worship their God he sets ambushes against their enemies.

⁹⁰ Clark J (2001) *Apostolic Equipping Dimension*. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p122

Jehoshaphat appointed holy singers to praise the Lord when they were under attack and while they were praising God, God set ambushes against their enemies. The apostolic dimension releases us into this realm.

And Jehoshaphat bowed his head with his face to the ground: and all Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem fell before the LORD, worshipping the LORD. And the Levites, of the children of the Kohathites, and of children of the Korhites, stood up to praise the LORD God of Israel with a loud voice of high. And they rose early in the morning, and went forth into the wilderness of Tekoa: and as they went forth, Jehoshaphat stood and said, Hear me, O Judah, and ye inhabitants of Jerusalem; Believe in the LORD your God, so shall ye be established; believe his prophets, so shall ye prosper. And when he had consulted with the people, he appointed singers unto the LORD, and that should praise the beauty of holiness, as they went out before the army, and to say, Praise the LORD; for his mercy endureth for ever. And when they began to sing and to praise, the LORD set ambushments against the children of Ammon, Moab, and mount Seir, which were come against Judah; and they were smitten.

2 Chronicles 20:18-22 (KJV)

11.10.3 Separates, Equips And Sends

Now there were in the church that was at Antioch certain prophets and teachers; as Barnabas, and Simeon that was called Niger, and Lucius of Cyrene, and Manaen, which had been brought up with Herod the tetrarch, and Saul. As they ministered to the Lord, and fasted, the Holy Ghost said, Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them.

Acts 13:1-2 (KJV)

The Holy Spirit was moved to speak and give the church instructions and assignments in that atmosphere of worship.

For the church today, the Lord has assignments of sound and as one flow in the apostolic dimension of what the Lord is restoring today and become equipped as 'governing people' one will begin to experience the excitement of genuine powerful ongoing change by the Holy Spirit that will bear much fruit in the lives of people.⁹¹

12 REACING THE NATIONS

But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

Acts 1:8 (KJV)

According to Scripture all nations shall come and worship Him (Revelation 15:4). All races, cultures, tribes, and nations are gathered together to worship their God under the realm of the apostolic dimension. It causes one to look upon the fields that are white and ready for harvest and will cause a compelling earnest desire to reach the nations of the world with the saving gospel of Jesus Christ .

12.1 The Nations Are The Apostolic

Ask of me, and I shall give thee the heathen for thine inheritance, and the uttermost parts of the earth for thy possession.

Psalms 2:8 (KJV)

⁹¹ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p125

The apostolic anointing will produce a heart for the nations. The word tells us that after the power of the Holy Spirit is come upon us that we will be witnesses of Jesus both in our hometowns and even unto the uttermost parts of the earth.⁹² As previously mentioned, the Greek word for witness is *martus*⁹³, meaning – to make known the record and to bear the testimony.

The English word Martyred comes from the word *martus* and speaks of one with such a powerful testimony that they are willing to die for its advancement.

The Holy Spirit is currently networking together emerging apostolic centres around the world. The sending dimension of that anointing will be released in its midst when a church embraces the ministry of apostles. One can expect real structural changes to take place

- a challenge of religious structures that have focused primarily on nurturing the existing church members
- apostolic function and name will begin to match up
- targeting of territories and nations for the release of apostolic teams
- prophetic insight and decrees
- a transition from a one-man-only ministry structure to the formation of apostolic teams
- an upgrade in spiritual authority
- activation of spiritual government
- an alignment of prayer with the apostolic structure

⁹² Acts 1:8

⁹³ to make known the record and to bear the testimony

- a panoramic view of the church rather than a local view only
- a focus on planting and building strong apostolic centres worldwide.

A poem by Jonas Clark.

APOSTLES' ONE⁹⁴

*To Christ the nations beckon come,
the revolution now begun.*

*Who will hearken His mighty call,
to see a world to him be drawn?*

*Rise up ye mighty apostles' one,
for Jesus Christ himself will come.*

*From days of old to now we've come,
have seen great blessings now begun.*

*Will strength prevail this too unveil?
Will hope rise up this hour avail?*

*Me thinkest His Word of truth prevail,
Rise up ye mighty apostles' one.*

*His church be built without question one,
Stand strong this hour His victory won!*

⁹⁴ Clark J (2001) Apostolic Equipping Dimension. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing. p131

13 HOLY SPIRIT⁹⁵

It's time to rediscover the role of the Holy Spirit as many Christian counsellors are guilty of ignoring the divine Counsellor.

But the wisdom that is from above is first pure, then peaceable, gentle, and easy to be intreated, full of mercy and good fruits, without partiality, and without hypocrisy.

James 3:17 (KJV)

When Christian counsellors follow the Lords prescribed ways He releases within them the gift of wisdom.

The question is - have integrationist counsellors affected any real change among evangelical Christians? Are people really fixed? The opinion of John MacArthur and Wayne Mack is that ⁹⁶*“they think it’s no exaggeration to say that the Christian counselling scene today is in total shambles. I’m not talking about true Christian counselling—that which trusts the Bible and the power of the Holy Spirit to conform a person to Christ—that kind of counselling has been successfully changing sinners since the apostolic age. I’m talking about pseudo-counselling—the attempt to fix people with a blend of secular psychological theory and the Bible. But have integrationist counsellors affected any real change among evangelical Christians?”*

⁹⁵ The Spirit in counselling (<http://www.gty.org/resources/articles/A307/the-spirit-in-counseling>)

⁹⁶ The Spirit in counselling (<http://www.gty.org/resources/articles/A307/the-spirit-in-counseling>)

Many Christians today seek counsel from Christian psychotherapists who fumble around with theories developed by Sigmund Freud, Carl Rogers and B. F. Skinner. Psychology and talk therapy are so bankrupt that many are abandoning them to embrace biological psychiatry and psychotropic medicine is the new saviour. Chemical imbalances and disorders are now to blame for problems. Previously the dysfunctional families and Id/Superego were blamed.

Yesterday's psychology and today's psychiatry share the same fatal errors—they treat the symptoms instead of the heart and reject the total depravity of man due to sin. They aim for change that is not true sanctification.

Despite of proof that it is the Holy Spirit who sanctifies it is still the belief of churches that psychotherapy and psychiatry are more effective agents of change — particularly in dealing with the most difficult cases. One needs to ask if psychotherapy or psychiatry can possibly accomplish something the Holy Spirit cannot? Can an earthly therapist achieve more than a heavenly Comforter? Is behaviour modification more helpful than sanctification? And the answer is - of course not.

As Jesus' crucifixion was drawing near, He spoke to his disciples about going away and they were fearful and confused. Their hearts were troubled (John 14:1-2)⁹⁷ and they feared being left alone but Jesus assured them that He would not leave them to fend for themselves. He comforted them with the promise of the coming Holy Spirit.

⁹⁷ Let not your heart be troubled: ye believe in God, believe also in me. In my Father's house are many mansions: if *it were* not so, I would have told you. I go to prepare a place for you. John 14:1-2 (KJV)

***And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter,
that he may abide with you for ever;***

John 14:16 (KJV)

13.1 The Divine Helper

“Helper”⁹⁸ is the Greek word ***parakletos*** that we transliterate as a word one might be familiar with—paraclete. It describes a spiritual attendant whose role is to offer assistance, support, relief, advocacy, and guidance. Isn’t it interesting that the divine Counselor’s ministry to believers is to provide the very things so many people vainly seek in therapy?

Jesus called Him “***another*** Helper.” There are two Greek words that can be translated “another.” One is ***heteros***⁹⁹, which means “a different one, a different kind” as in, “If that style is not what you want, try another.” The other word is ***allos***. It is translated “another” in English, but it means “another of the same kind,” as in, “That cookie was delicious; may I have another?”

Jesus used ***allos*** to describe the Holy Spirit—He is “another [***allos***]¹⁰⁰ Helper [of the same kind].” The same kind as what? Jesus was promising to send His disciples a Helper exactly like Himself—a compassionate, loving, and totally sufficient Paraclete, just like Himself. In fact, Jesus is called our Paraclete in One John 2:1: “*If anyone sins, we have an Advocate [Paraclete] with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous.*”

⁹⁸ Greek word parakletos

⁹⁹ which means “a different one

¹⁰⁰ Helper [of the same kind].

One would not question Jesus' capabilities in the counselling office, would one? And look at the fruit of His counsel – the apostles were transformed to the point that they turned the world upside down. The Holy Spirit was sent by The Father as another Helper, co-equal with Jesus Christ, to be the Counsellor.

13.2 The Permanent Dweller

And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever; Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you.

John 14:16-17 (KJV)

Another promise from the Father was that the Helper would take up permanent, uninterrupted residence within His disciples. That was a New Covenant promise foretold in Ezekiel 37:14: *“And I will put My Spirit within you, and you will come to life.”* Thus the Holy Spirit wouldn't only be present **with** them; but He would be **resident within** them permanently.

Romans 8:9, states that the permanent indwelling of the Holy Spirit is the mark of all who are truly born again: *“You are not in the flesh but in the Spirit, if indeed the Spirit of God dwells in you. But if anyone does not have the Spirit of Christ, he does not belong to Him.”* Thus as a believer one enjoy the permanent, continuing presence of the Holy Spirit living within, with all the resources of God Himself always available.

13.3 The Truth Teacher

Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you.

John 14:17 (KJV)

Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as “the Spirit of truth” and as God, He is the essence of truth; as a Paraclete, He is the One who guides us into truth. That’s why it is impossible for sinful human beings to know or understand **any** spiritual truth without the Holy Spirit. Paul wrote,

But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God.

1 Corinthians 2:10 (KJV)

Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God.

1 Corinthians 2:12 (KJV)

But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned.

1 Corinthians 2:14 (KJV)

The unbelievers have no facility for spiritual perception for they cannot comprehend spiritual truth because they are spiritually dead (Ephesians 2:1), and only respond to their own sinful passions. Spiritual truth are taught to believers, by God Himself (John 6:45) and much of the Holy Spirit’s ministry to believers involves teaching them (John 14:26; 1 Corinthians 2:13; 1 John 2:20, 27); guiding them into the truth of Christ (John 16:13-14); and illuminating the truth for them.

Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God.

1 Corinthians 2:12 (KJV)

The disciples were helped by the Holy Spirit to understand many things that perplexed them before the resurrection (cf. John 2:22; 12:16), and Holy Spirit also gave them perfect recall of every word Jesus had spoken. His ministry to the apostles assured the infallibility of the New Testament record and guaranteed the purity of the apostolic testimony.

These things have I spoken unto you, being yet present with you. But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

John 14:25-26 (KJV)

As a believer, one also benefit from the Holy Spirit's ministry as He guides one to the truth of Scripture, teaches one, affirms the truth in one's heart, and convicts one of sin. He even enables one to walk in obedience to the revealed Word of God.

But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you.

Romans 8:11 (KJV)

McArthur writes "the Spirit of Truth performs a function no human counsellor can ever approach. He is constantly there, pointing the way to the truth, applying the truth directly to one's heart, prompting man to conform to the truth—in short, He sanctifies one in the truth (John 17:17). Don't sin against the Holy Spirit by looking to sinful humans to accomplish spiritual transformation. Instead, *"if we live by the Spirit, let us also walk by the Spirit"* (Galatians 5:25).

As one needs the guidance and help of the Holy Spirit to do deliverance it is important to understand the function of the Holy Spirit in deliverance.¹⁰¹

14 HEALING OF THE SPIRIT, SOUL AND BODY

The healing ministries of many Christians are patterned after imperfect copies of imperfect copies of Jesus' healing ministry, and thus have deviated more and more from the original. Possibly because of these deviations, they do not get immediate physical healings as Jesus did in His healing ministry. They may need to un-learn much of what they have carelessly imitated, and then learn carefully what the Bible reveals about Jesus' healing ministry. Healing should not be based on spiritual experiences or psychological theories, but must be based on God's Word.¹⁰²

14.1 Healed By The Word

The Hebrew word for heal is “*raphe*”, which means to make thoroughly whole and the Greek word “*sozo*” has the same connotation. It is used interchangeably throughout the Greek New Testament to mean to “*save*” and to “*heal*”. God intends for His body to be made whole. His people, being those individual members of His body, need His wholeness to be able to perform the tasks commissioned to them as the church. One recent move of the Holy Spirit

¹⁰¹ Adapted from "The Work of the Spirit and Biblical Counseling" in Introduction to Biblical Counseling, © 1994 by John MacArthur and Wayne Mack, editors.

¹⁰² Healing: The Imitation of Christ (<http://www.presentationministries.com/publications/Healing.asp?printMode=tru>)

has been the restoration of the gifts of the Spirit to the church bringing deliverance and healing. Since Jesus is coming back for a church without spot or blemish, a glorious church, we can look for her to be cleansed and healed before that moment. This healing involves the total man: spirit, soul and body.¹⁰³

That he might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word, That he might present it to himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing; but that it should be holy and without blemish.

Ephesians 5:26-27 (KJV)

One need to be free of “...the sin which doth so easily beset us...” (Hebrews 12:1), the sickness in our bodies, the fears of the soul, and all that keeps one from being the overcoming sons of God. This is what the Bible calls sanctification; the process of cleansing that needs to take place within one’s spirit, soul, and body.

14.2 Trinity Of God And Man

Man is a trichotomy made up of spirit, soul and body. God designed man as a functioning unit with his reborn spirit to be in charge of the soul (mind, will, and emotions), and with the body in subjection to the soul and spirit. Man was created in the image of God.

¹⁰³ Healing of the soul spirit and body (<http://www.abundantharvest.info/study-center/everyday-issues/healing-of-the-spirit-soul-body/>)

And God said, “*Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth. So God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them*” (Genesis 1:26-27).

Being created in the image of God, we are caught in the middle of a spiritual battle where Satan is described as a roaring lion who is seeking whom he may devour. 1 Peter 5:8 says, “*Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about seeking whom he may devour.*” Satan will devour mankind with disease and sickness if man allow him to do so. Mankind’s great advantage is that God sent His Son to destroy the works of the devil. “*He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil*” (1 John 3:8).

It is not God’s will that anyone should live in sickness or emotional distress but His will is that all be healed. Jesus healed all that came to Him; and refused no one. His death and atonement not only healed us of the sin problem, but was also our physical problems.

When the even was come, they brought unto him many that were possessed with devils: and he cast out the spirits with his word, and healed all that were sick: That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying, Himself took our infirmities, and bare our sicknesses.

Matthew 8:16-17

If Jesus took sickness on Him, mankind is not to take those sicknesses.

Healing of the spirit, soul and body always begins with the choice to follow Jesus and the subsequent choices to continue to walk with Him. To receive complete wholeness, we must make a complete commitment, even as our Lord spoke the greatest commandment of God. *“Jesus said unto him, Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind. This is the first and great commandment. And the second is like unto it, Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself. On these two commandments hang all the law and the prophets” (Matthew 22:37-40).*

14.3 Healing In God's Plan

The counsellor should first seek God's vision for the ministry because "without vision, the people perish"¹⁰⁴ before beginning any ministry. They must see the bigger picture to know how they fit in. The following seven truths are part of the Father's plan for the healing ministry:

1. Healing is to accompany the proclamation of God's Word and lead people to accept Jesus as Lord and Savior (Mark 16:17-18). What shall it profit a man to gain perfect physical health, but lose his soul? (see Luke 9:25). What good is it to be the healthiest person in hell? One of the Greek words for "*healing*" means "*salvation*." Jeremiah prays:

***“Heal me, Lord, that I may be healed; save me, that I may be saved”
Jerimiah 17:14***

2. Healing is a sign of God's kingdom (Matthew 10:7-8). It rallies, restores and empowers believers to build the kingdom.

¹⁰⁴ Proverbs 29:18 (KJV)

3. Our heavenly Father's principal motivation for healing is love - God loves His children and wants them healed.

4. Healers are to raise up and disciple other healers. Building the Kingdom of Light..

5. Jesus heals the whole person. He wants us healed in every way — physically, mentally, psychologically, sexually and spiritually.

And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.

1 Thessalonians 5:23 (KJV)

6. Jesus heals by families (see Exodus 20:5-6), for He does not only see the individual but the community. "If one member suffers, all the members suffer with it" (1 Corinthians 12:26).

7. God the Father has authorized only one healing ministry, that of His Son. Jesus continues to heal today through us, His body. "Jesus Christ is the same yesterday, today, and forever" (Hebrews 13:8). One should not start one's own healing ministry but join the healing ministry of Jesus.¹⁰⁵

¹⁰⁵ Healing: The Imitation of Christ (<http://www.presentationministries.com/publications/Healing.asp?printMode=tru>)

15 DELIVERANCE THROUGH THE BLOOD OF JESUS CHRIST

15.1 Definition Of Deliverance:

Deliverance is defined as “a rescue from bondage or danger.” Scripture reveals deliverance as the acts of God where He rescues His people from peril. In the Old Testament, deliverance is focused primarily on God’s removal of those who are in the midst of trouble or danger.¹⁰⁶

According to Derek Prince¹⁰⁷, a well-known author and teacher of the Word of God three things happen when a person are saved by God:

God gives salvation, He saves one’s soul by purifying and forgiving sins, this is a spiritual act. God brings healing of the physical body the flesh - a physical act and He rescues people from their enemies, and from the hand of the wicked.

For the wages of sin is death; but the gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.

Romans 6:23

When a man focuses on the Lord’s Word without distraction, God becomes the Healer of the spiritual and physical man. One needs to allow God to be the Teacher of His Word too open one’s spiritual ears. Whilst man’s eyes are focused on God and His works, he must keep his heart clean and pure, for deceit and every evil thought sprouts from the heart.

¹⁰⁶ What does the Bible say about deliverance (<https://gotquestions.org/deliverance.html>)

¹⁰⁷ Derek Prince Ministries, Radio program, Impact Radio, South Africa (March 2012)

My son, attend to my words; incline thine ear unto my sayings. Let them not depart from thine eyes; keep them in the midst of thine heart. For they are life unto those that find them, and health to all their flesh. Keep thy heart with all diligence; for out of it are the issues of life.

Proverbs 4:20-23

The above Scripture promises when a person attends and meditates¹⁰⁸ upon the Word of God, He will bring healing both spiritual and physical.

Satan's aim is to deceive and draw humankind away from the path of simple faith in Christ therefore, God gave Christians His Holy Spirit, to guide, correct and comfort them. The believer should firstly know The Word of God (Bible), secondly know His voice (the small, still voice of the Holy Spirit) and learn to discern it from the enemy's voice and thirdly have a close personal relationship with Jesus Christ of Nazareth.¹⁰⁹ God wants to pour out His Holy Spirit on the people and Scripture teaches that when man humbly asks - God will give them what they ask.

If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children: how much more shall your heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him?

Luke 11:13

God wants to give every person the chance to repent and choose Jesus as their redeemer and saviour, Satan on the other hand is hasty and does not want to give anyone a chance to think things over and be patient to hear God's voice.

¹⁰⁸ Not meditating as a Worldly fashion or as done in other religions by blanking one's mind. Rather studying the Word of God with an acting participating mind heeding to the Word of the Lord.

¹⁰⁹ Destruction of Christians (www.bloodlines.co.za/Articles-DestructionOfChristians.htm)

He pushes and causes one to rush into a decision, which is usually the wrong one.

The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.

2 Peter 3:9

Rest in the LORD, and wait patiently for him: fret not thyself because of him who prospereth in his way, because of the man who bringeth wicked devices to pass. Cease from anger, and forsake wrath: fret not thyself in any wise to do evil. For evildoers shall be cut off: but those that wait upon the LORD, they shall inherit the earth. For yet a little while, and the wicked shall not be: yea, thou shalt diligently consider his place, and it shall not be. But the meek shall inherit the earth; and shall delight themselves in the abundance of peace.

Psalms 37:7-11

Dr Black writes, “God wants His Light to be present in every person’s life, the light which is the blood of Jesus, the Life. He wants to establish a marriage covenant with each and every person, thus mankind becoming the Bride of Christ. The different covenants which God established throughout the Bible are discussed in Chapter 2. These covenants with His people are still active today. By polluting people’s minds Satan forces, them to believe that blood equals death and destruction. He perverted the blood sacrifice so that people would believe it is the same practice of the Old Testament. Satanist perform blood sacrifices today and they believe that God instituted it for the same perverted reason Satan uses it - to destroy, kill and honour himself.

According to Dr Black ¹¹⁰“blood sacrifice was not ritualistically preformed, it was done so that God's wrath upon sin would come down on the sacrificed animal and not on the sinner – the animal would stand in as a substitute for the sinner, so the person could receive forgiveness of sin.”¹¹¹ It was also done in preparation and to help people understand that Jesus would be the perfect sacrifice for all humanity, so their sins will be forgiven by His blood, so they could receive life.

Redemption of mankind is discussed in depth in chapter two.

15.2 Why Jesus' Blood Is Plead

The blood of Jesus is the greatest weapon of victory for the believer.

The Bible says *“And they overcame him by the blood of the lamb and by the word of their testimonies and they loved not their lives unto death” (Revelation 12:11).* The blood of Jesus gives us the seal of victory over Satan and all his hosts. It is crystal clear that Satan can't withstand the power in the blood of Jesus. Victory is sure when the blood of Jesus as weapon is used in prayer.¹¹²

¹¹⁰ Black, Dr L. (2014) Section A: Jesus The Epitome of Freedom and Restoration. Pretoria, RSA. p

¹¹¹ Why did God require animal sacrifice in the Old Testament?. (www.gotquestions.org/animal-sacrifices.html)

¹¹² Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2004) Woman! Thou Art Loosed. Yaba, Lagos: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries. p215-220

The blood of Jesus:¹¹³

- Gives **SALVATION**. Births us into His kingdom and keeps us from eternal damnation (see Mark 16:16; John 3:3,17).
- Makes **ATONEMENT** for us, blotting out sins (see Lev. 17:11; Rom. 5:11).
- **REDEEMS** us. Our life is paid for in full, bought back from the power of sin and death (see Ps. 107:2; Eph. 1:7; Heb. 9:12; Rev. 5:9).
- **JUSTIFIES** us. Acquits us of sin and guilt (see Acts 13:38, 39; Rom. 5:9).
- Makes us **RIGHTEOUS**. Puts us back into right standing with God (see Isa. 59:2; Rom. 3:22,23,25; 1 John 1:9).
- Gives **SANCTIFICATION**. Sets us apart unto God at the time of salvation as well as each day thereafter through the blood of Jesus (see 1 Cor. 1:30; Heb. 10:10,14).
- Allows **REMISSION** of sins. Sin was canceled (see Rom. 3:24,25; Heb. 9:22).
- **RECONCILES** us. Accepting God's provision, we can now fellowship with Him in love (see Rom. 5:10; Col. 1:20).
- Gives **OVERCOMING POWER** as we receive and use what has been delegated to us (see Luke 10:19; Rev. 12:11).
- Provides **DELIVERANCE**. Releases us from powers of darkness and sets us free (see 2 Cor. 2:14; Col. 1:13).
- Releases **FORGIVENESS**. Pardons sins (see Col. 1:14; 1 John 1:9).

¹¹³ Alves, Elizabeth (2000) *Becoming A Prayer Warrior*. California, USA: Regal Books. p137

- Establishes a **NEW COVENANT** Replaces old covenant of sacrifices; perfect sacrifice now has been made through Jesus Christ (see Heb. 7:22; 8:13; 9:15; 10:9; 12:24).
- **CLEANSSES** us from all sin (see 1 John 1:7).

The blood of Jesus gives us victory in battles, healing in sickness, success in life endeavour, power over stubborn pursuers and victory in the human court. If one have tried other prayer points without achieving ones desired goal, one can pray the blood of Jesus and one record outstanding success.

15.3 Deliverance Through Jesus Christ¹¹⁴

Currently there is a desperate necessitate for Christians to bring the holiness of Christ into their lives. Christians have settled down into a gospel of compromises with the world, people live by doctrines of prosperity and satisfaction of fleshly desires, very few wants to pay the price for living a truly separated and holy life in Christ.

Scripture very clearly states that man should purge and cleanse themselves from all the filth of the world on a fleshly and spiritual level:

Having therefore these promises, dearly beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God.

2 Corinthians 7:1

¹¹⁴ Black, Dr L (2013) Teaching Manual Volume 5 Self Published SA used with permission

Jesus paid the price for all mankind's sin, but it is mankind's responsibility to take up the authority which is given to them through Christ, when He is accepted as their Saviour, to cleanse His dwelling place, His temple. Not only should man stop sinning but the temple should be cleansed of all filth.

Once a doorway was opened the person must be cleansed from the demonic forces who gained access and legal right to infiltrate his life, by the help of the Holy Spirit and the cleansing power of the precious blood of Jesus Christ.

Rebecca Browns¹¹⁵ states an interesting point, she mentions that a lot of deliverance workers would ask the person being delivered to relax and let the demon speak through them. She states that this has two negative results, firstly the person is asked to sin – to act as a medium for the demonic spirit to talk through (as seen in Volume One). Secondly the deliverer consults a familiar spirit; the spirit is asked why he entered the person or what gave him the legal right to be there - instead of consulting the Holy Spirit. She also states that all demons are liars, Satan himself accuses man falsely before God and so his demons would do nothing less. Jesus always commanded the demons to be quiet and leave. God's Kingdom of Light is based on love and order, God is not the author of confusion.

True deliverance is based on God's Word and faith, which is the absolute acceptance that God will always perform His Word!

¹¹⁵ Brown, R MD (1990) *Becoming a Vessel of Honour*. New Kensington: Whitaker House, pp. 180-188.

Deliverance is done by Jesus Christ alone, therefore one must follow His direct instructions, there is no recipe or ritual for deliverance which can be followed, each person is unique and the Lord treats them as such.

These are only guidelines to get a better understanding of the concept of deliverance. The deliverer must be open to the Holy Spirit and be totally reliant upon Jesus.¹¹⁶

Scripture teaches that Jesus did nothing out of Himself, He did as His Father had done (John 5:19), Jesus has set the example to follow, the power and authority in the name of Jesus should be used as the Father directs, it cannot be used as some phrase to get an effect, an example of this is found in Acts, the sons of Sceva tried to deliver people by trying to use the name of Jesus as a magical phrase, as they heard Paul do, it did not carry the authority of Jesus as they weren't anointed and directed by God to be able to carry out deliverance, the end effect was that the demons overpowered them:

Then certain of the vagabond Jews, exorcists, took upon them to call over them which had evil spirits the name of the Lord Jesus, saying, We adjure you by Jesus whom Paul preacheth. And there were seven sons of one Sceva, a Jew, and chief of the priests, which did so. And the evil spirit answered and said, Jesus I know, and Paul I know; but who are ye? And the man in whom the evil spirit was leaped on them, and overcame them, and prevailed against them, so that they fled out of that house naked and wounded.

Acts 19:13-16

This verse shows that deliverance can be dangerous if Jesus isn't leading the proceedings, it is therefore of the utmost importance that demons are not

¹¹⁶ Brown, R MD (1897) Prepare for War. New Kensington: Whitaker House, pp. 307-308.

challenged in one's personal capacity as man alone cannot overcome the demons, only by the power in Jesus that would be possible as He is the only One who has the power to send demonic spirits to the place He has prepared for them.

The only basis for deliverance is true repentance of one's sins, true repentance means to feel sorrow or have an attitude of regret, to turn away from sin towards a new life.¹¹⁷

Satan will let man believe that the demons are not gone, he will attack man's faith in God and therefore it is important to understand that demonic spirits can gain access to a person's body, soul and spirit thus these areas should be addressed, so man is aware of Satan's weapons used to keep man in bondage.

15.4 Deeper Meaning And Knowledge Of Salvation

Salvation is defined in the encyclopaedia of Christianity as the act of God's grace in delivering His people from bondage to sin and condemnation, transferring them to the Kingdom of His Beloved Son and giving them eternal life, all on the basis of what Christ accomplished in His atoning sacrifice. The Bible teaches that being saved or receiving salvation is by an act of grace and nothing out of oneself as it is a gift of God.

In theology, the study of salvation is called **soteriology**, from the Greek *soteria* meaning "salvation". Salvation, virtually synonymous with the overall concept of

¹¹⁷ An Encyclopaedia for Christianity: Repentance (www.theopedia.com/Repentance)

redemption, includes a past, present, and future sense. As Christians, man was saved from the penalty of sin when God brought them to faith in Christ. As the Holy Spirit sanctifies each Christian they are presently being saved from the power of sin and they will someday be saved from the presence of sin when Christ is met face to face in all His glory.

This idea is presented below in terms of initial, progressive, and final salvation.¹¹⁸

All of mankind have sinned and came short of the glory of God. Sin separates man from His creator and the penalty for sin is eternal death by God's judgement upon Sin.¹¹⁹

The following is the basic knowledge of salvation:

Black writes that ¹²⁰*“initial salvation refers to the event of a person's conversion from the kingdom of darkness to the Kingdom of Light by repentance of sin and turning in faith to Jesus Christ. In return Jesus washes man clean from His sins and saves man from eternal death.*

Progressive salvation refers to the journey of a believer between conversion and death (physical death). The only path that leads to eternal life, walked in faith and not by sight. It's marked by growth in love for others and for God, a strive for peace and holiness.

¹¹⁸ Salvation (www.theopedia.com/Salvation)

¹¹⁹ Salvation (www.saved.com/)

¹²⁰ Black, Dr L. (2014) Section A: Jesus The Epitome of Freedom and Restoration. Pretoria, RSA. p

Final salvation refers to the event of God saving His people at the final judgement, the great divide between sheep and goats, wherein sheep are identified by their work of faith and labour of love and steadfastness of hope in the Lord Jesus Christ and accepted on the ground of their union with Christ, the Righteous substitute.”

One can ask how do we receive salvation? One is saved by faith and faith comes by hearing the gospel – the good news of Jesus’ death and resurrection.

In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise,

Ephesians 1:13 (KJV)

The next step is to believe – fully trust the Lord Jesus and involves repentance, a changing of one’s mind about sin and Christ and calling on the name of the Lord.¹²¹

For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ: for it is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.

Romans 1:16 (KJV)

Repent ye therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out, when the times of refreshing shall come from the presence of the Lord;

Acts 3:19 (KJV)

¹²¹ What is salvation? What is the Christian doctrine of salvation? (<https://gotquestions.org/Christian-doctrine-salvation.html>)

That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved. For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.

Romans 10:9-10 (KJV)

Taylor¹²² points out that there is yet a deeper knowledge of salvation to be known and that has a lot to do with man's attitude, as sin was already dealt with. Man's attitude could either keep him on course or cause him to be led out of the way.

He warns people who have already been saved that there is no such thing as once saved, always saved as seen in Chapter Three of Revelations

He that overcometh, the same shall be clothed in white raiment; and I will not blot out his name out of the book of life, but I will confess his name before my Father, and before his angels.

Revelation 3:5

15.5 Demonic Access Points To Address In Deliverance

As Scripture reveals in the book of Luke chapter eight and in Mark chapter five Jesus casted out a demon called Legion, because of the many demons that entered the man, this serves as proof that many demons can be present in a person. Brown states¹²³ that the demon Legion may have up to four thousand subordinate demons with him.

¹²² Taylor, David E (2011) My Trip to Heaven Face to Face with Jesus. USA: Destiny Image Publishers, p. 41.

¹²³ Brown, R MD (1986) He came to set the Captives free. New Kensington: Whitaker House, p. 133.

According to Brown the first area is the **spirit of man**, the head demon in this area is usually called the **Guiding Spirit**. Within the spirit of man there are three areas and each area has a head demon with many lesser demons under his command. These areas are:

The first area is the **conscience**, where man determines right from wrong, **worship** the area through which man worships God in the spirit and the **intuition** where man received the ability to discern God and sense His presence.

The next area is the **soul**, in this area the head demon is referred to as the **Power Demon (Spirit of Power)**, within the soul there are six areas; three of these have to do with controlling the spirit: the conscious, sub-conscious and unconscious. The other three areas are the will, mind and emotions. Again each area would have a head demon with subordinates.

The last area is the **physical body**, the head demon over the body is usually a **Death Demon (Spirit of Death)**. These demons are very powerful and capable and can cause physical death. Areas within the body is the brain, the physical organ and the sexual area, the head demon in this area hold the doorway open which gives demonic spirits the right to have sexual relations with the person.¹²⁴ As already mentioned, there is no ritual or recipe for deliverance these are the basic steps for deliverance. For more information regarding how demons enter refer to Chapter Two.

¹²⁴ Ibid, p. 131-134.

15.6 Why People Are Not Delivered¹²⁵

The following problem areas keeps a person from receiving deliverance.

1. They do not repent

Failure to repent from all sin is the basic cause of not getting deliverance.

2. Failure to repent from adultery and abortion

It is clearly stated in Scripture that abortion is murder:

Ye have condemned and killed the just; and he doth not resist you.
James 5:6 (KJV)

3. Failure to forgive

Forgives of others is essential to receive forgiveness from God

And when ye stand praying, forgive, if ye have ought against any: that your Father also which is in heaven may forgive you your trespasses. But if ye do not forgive, neither will your Father which is in heaven forgive your trespasses.

Mark 11:25-26 (KJV)

4. Failure to break with the occult

And God wrought special miracles by the hands of Paul: So that from his body were brought unto the sick handkerchiefs or aprons, and the diseases departed from them, and the evil spirits went out of them. Then certain of the vagabond Jews, exorcists, took upon them to call over them which had evil spirits the name of the Lord Jesus, saying, We adjure you by Jesus whom Paul preacheth. And there were seven

¹²⁵ Jesus' Threefold Office as Prophet, Priest, and King (<http://www.ligonier.org/blog/jesus-threefold-office-prophet-priest-and-king/>)

sons of one Sceva, a Jew, and chief of the priests, which did so. And the evil spirit answered and said, Jesus I know, and Paul I know; but who are ye? And the man in whom the evil spirit was leaped on them, and overcame them, and prevailed against them, so that they fled out of that house naked and wounded. And this was known to all the Jews and Greeks also dwelling at Ephesus; and fear fell on them all, and the name of the Lord Jesus was magnified. And many that believed came, and confessed, and shewed their deeds. Many of them also which used curious arts brought their books together, and burned them before all men: and they counted the price of them, and found it fifty thousand pieces of silver. So mightily grew the word of God and prevailed.

Acts 19:11-20 (KJV)

5. Failure to accept God's forgiveness

When a person turns to Jesus he is accepted and loved by God, and totally forgiven. One must receive the forgiveness from God.

To the praise of the glory of his grace, wherein he hath made us accepted in the beloved.

Ephesians 1:6 (KJV)

Mankind need to submit to God and resist the devil

Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.

James 4:7 (KJV)

15.7 The Basic Steps In Deliverance

How then can one overcome all forms of satanic attacks and what steps must one take in order to experience total deliverance as a woman?

The first step one must take is to surrender ones life to Christ.

The second step is to know ones enemy. A person needs a thorough knowledge of ones adversary. The devil is ones enemy and he is wicked to the core and bad beyond description. Satan needs to be confronted; otherwise he will continue to deceive mankind.

The third thing one must do today is to wage war against the enemy. One shall do this as one utilizes the prayer points below,

The last step one must take is to barricade ones life against the enemy to prevent the hand of the oppressor from being laid upon a person.

15.8 Prayer Points¹²⁶

1. Every plantation of spirit husband in my body, die, in Jesus' name.
2. Every power of spirit husband over my life and my marriage, die by fire, in the name of Jesus.
3. Every pillar of witchcraft and familiar spirit, die, in Jesus' name.
4. Household witchcraft, loose me and let me go, in Jesus' name.
5. Every power pursuing my blood, what are you waiting for? Die, in the name of Jesus.
6. Thou power of strange women and your spiritual consultants die, in the name of Jesus.
7. Satanic embarrassment, backfire, in the name of Jesus.

¹²⁶ Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2004) Woman! Thou Art Loosed. Yaba, Lagos: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries. p26

8. Every mark of satan in my body, go, in the name of Jesus.
9. Every virtue of my life stolen by the enemy, arise, locate me in the name of Jesus.
10. Evil marital pattern, I say bye-bye to you, in the name of Jesus.
11. Any power, any spirit, standing between me and my divine children, somersault and die, in the name of Jesus.
12. Any power that wants me to die a barren woman shall die, in the name of Jesus.
13. Oh God, turn my body into a baby factory, in Jesus' name.
14. From the north, from the south, from the east and from the west, you my marital breakthrough, locate me by fire, in Jesus' name.
15. Every seed of poverty in my foundation, what are you waiting for? Die, in the name of Jesus.
16. Every devil inside me, by fire and by force, come out and die, in the name of Jesus.
17. Inherited bondage, die, in the name of Jesus.
18. Every power of cancer, I command you to die, in Jesus' name.
19. Every wicked power of my father's house, die in Jesus' name.
20. O God, arise and deliver me from the wickedness of unfriendly in-laws, in the name of Jesus.
21. Every stubborn spirit using my children to punish me, what are you waiting for? Die, in the name of Jesus.
22. Satan, hear the word of the Lord. You will not break my marriage anymore, in the name of Jesus.
23. Anti-marriage arrows, go back to your senders, in Jesus' name.
24. I dissolve, by the blood of Jesus and the Holy Ghost fire, every divorce in my family life, in the mighty name of Jesus.

25. You arrow of death and hell fired to kill my husband, my life is not in your bondage, in the name of Jesus.

16 STEPS TO SELF DELIVERANCE¹²⁷

When a person understands self-deliverance, he can keep himself from being demonized. The believer will keep himself healthy, physically and spiritually and free from demonic pollution. Divine health can be enjoyed and one will not be spending money on drugs and hospital bills.

What does a person do when there is no minister who is anointed and knowledgeable about deliverance to help? or when one is being attacked in one's dreams and the next service is a few days away? One should never allow evil spirits to reside in one's life. One should do self-deliverance in the morning, after one's quiet time.

There are many evil spirits moving around and if a person is not regularly cleaning one's house, they may come in and lodge there.

Let's learn a few lessons now before we go into actual practice.

A demon is a spirit, which means it's like a wind or breath and they move through the breathing passage or by any opening in the body.

¹²⁷ Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2004) *Woman! Thou Art Loosed*. Yaba, Lagos: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries. p215-220

When praying for self-deliverance, one should keep quiet after the prayer before ejecting those evil spirits and just breathe in and out. If one is praying or speaking at this time, the spirits will not go out because one has not opened the way for them.

Demons can come out by simple breathing, coughing, choking, yawning, vomiting, etc. The manifestations vary according to the person and the spirit involved and spirits that are not deeply rooted, depart easily. Evil spirits that are deeply entrenched, will require more time and effort to be expelled. The more stubborn ones will require the help of other believers but by wounding them daily, they will eventually be mortally wounded.

Where multiple spirits are responsible for one problem, all of them must be removed before total victory is assured. One thing is certain; once the spirit leaves a person, there will be a change in one's life and one will notice a definite improvement in one's life.

An evil spirit can only stay in a person's life if he has legal ground.

The purpose of all these information is to one to do self-deliverance at home and this process of self-deliverance is carried out in stages

- **Step ONE** – Start with praise and worship. One can sing songs to praise God and to worship Him.
- **Step TWO** – Confess out loud promising deliverance Scripture.

Behold, I give unto you power to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy: and nothing shall by any means hurt you.

Luke 10:19

In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace;

Ephesians 1:7

And the God of peace shall bruise Satan under your feet shortly. The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you. Amen.

Romans 16:20

And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto the death.

Revelations 12:11

Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross;

Colossians 2:14

And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it.

Colossians 2:15

Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree:

Galatians 3:13

That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.

Galatians 3:14

Surely he shall deliver thee from the snare of the fowler, and from the noisome pestilence.

Psalms 91:3

2 Timothy 4:18 has this to say:

“And the Lord shall deliver me from every evil work, and will preserve me unto his heavenly kingdom: to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen.”

2 Timothy 4:18 must at least be memorized.

- **Step THREE** – Break covenants and curses to destroy their legal hold. One should pray simple prayers like this:

“I break any curse working against me or I break any covenant working against me, in the name of Jesus.”

This is a simple prayer point with many results.

- **Step FOUR** – Bind all the spirits associated with those covenants and curses, like this:

“I bind all the spirits attached or connected to the curses and covenants I have just broken, in the name of Jesus.”

- **Step FIVE** – Lay one hand on ones head and the other on ones stomach or navel and begin to pray like this:

“Holy Ghost fire, burn from the top of my head to the sole of my feet, in the name of Jesus.”

Begin to mention every organ of the body: kidney, liver, intestine, blood, etc. One must not rush at this level. Lay ones hands on areas that the Spirit of God leads one to. Do not be afraid if one notices that one are swaying or staggering, etc.

- **Step SIX** – Then begin to saturate oneself with the blood of Jesus. One do this by saying:

“Blood of Jesus, enter into my spirit, soul and body.”

Next one say:

“I drink the blood of Jesus.”

This must continue until one have release in ones spirit to stop.

- **Step SEVEN** – It is now, that one is able to demand firmly, in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ, that any spirit that is not of God should leave. One must demand it forcefully like this:

“In the name of the Lord Jesus Christ, I come against all you hidden spirit and bind your activities in my life. You can no longer hide below the surface because I now recognize what you have been doing; release me.”

If sickness is the problem, address it like this:

“You spirit of infirmity, I speak to you directly, get out of my life now. I am redeemed by the blood of Jesus Christ, come out and go now. Go out with every breath by the power of the Holy Spirit. I prevail over you, in the name of Jesus.”

At this point, stop talking; open the mouth and nose and begin to breath in and out. Take about three to seven deep breaths, and expel them

forcefully through ones mouth and nose. One may be surprised that strange things will begin to happen. Repeat this stage again and again. This will help to flush out any deposit or impurity within ones body. One may notice that one is coughing, yawning, sneezing, sweating or shedding tears, but continue and do not lose concentration.

- **Step EIGHT** – When the expulsion stage is completed, ask for a fresh in-filling of the Holy Spirit and close the session with praises.

When one is attacked in dreams, rise up and go through the stages already mentioned.

Self-deliverance keeps one from getting sick; it removes every evil seed of the enemy; it charges one's body with fire. It uproots evil plantations and builds up one's confidence.

Every night before one goes to bed, one should remember these three important prayer points.

1. Pray that the walls of fire should surround one. The Bible says:

For I, saith the Lord, will be unto her a wall of fire round about, and will be the glory in the midst of her.

Zechariah 2:5

2. Pray for cover with the blood of Jesus.

And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto the death.

Revelations 12:11

3. Also pray that the angels of God should surround one.

The angel of the Lord encampeth round about them that fear him, and delivereth them.

Psalm 34:7

These three prayer points must be prayed every night - no matter how tired one is.

Olukoya writes, ¹²⁸“there is no reason why self-deliverance should not be effective. However, if the person seeking deliverance is under stubborn demonic control or hereditary strongman, and lacks sufficient faith or authority to defeat the oppressors, or is living in any known sin, the evil spirits will defend what they think is their right.”

A final word of importance - for a person to be delivered, he must desire deliverance. One should not do self-deliverance because of pride, shyness, the fear of possible public embarrassment, etc. therefore one's motive for engaging in self-deliverance has to be pure.

Remember, deliverance is a process and the length of time it takes depends on several things:

- The length of time the spirit has stayed inside a person,
- The strength and reinforcement of the spirit,

¹²⁸ Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2004) *Woman! Thou Art Loosed*. Yaba, Lagos: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries. p215-220

- The experience and degree of anointing upon those who are ministering the deliverance,
- The willingness of the person being delivered to be free,
- The knowledge of the word of God and ones level of hatred for sin.

Self-discipline is necessary for self-deliverance to be very effective. The bondage can be weak or strong - thus weak hold can be broken quickly, whereas a stronghold may take a longer time. One will not realize the strength of a bondage until one has faithfully and persistently work on it. Remember, a foothold can graduate to a stronghold if left unaddressed.

After this exercise, one can set aside some days (with fasting) to pray the prayer points.

17 BAPTISM BEING IMMersed IN JESUS CHRIST

17.1 Definition Of Baptism:

The Christian religious rite of sprinkling water on to a person's forehead or immersing them in water, symbolizes purification or regeneration and admission to the Christian Church. In many denominations, baptism is performed on young children and is accompanied by name-giving.¹²⁹

¹²⁹ Baptism definition (<https://www.google.co.za/webhp?sourceid=chromeinstant&ion=1&espv=2&ie=UTF-8#q=baptism>)

Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

Acts 2:38

Jesus instructed baptism after He was chosen as Lord and Saviour and cleansing was done by His Blood. Thus man must repent and be saved to be baptised. In John 1:29-31 we read that Jesus Himself was baptised before He started with His ministry.

In Greek the word baptism means to immerse, submerge and emerge.

Before Jesus's ascension He said:

Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

Matthew 28:19 (KJV)

Baptism is the cut-off point between the past and the new life. In the New Testament passing through the water (baptism) is a separation from the old life and entering into a new one.¹³⁰ The pattern of baptism was illustrated throughout Scripture, the Jews of ancient times would baptize proselytes to signify the converts' "cleansed" nature. John the Baptist used baptism to

¹³⁰ Derek Prince Ministries International (1977) How to become a new creation. (www.google.co.za/url?sa=t&rct=j&q=derek%20prince%20god%20saves&source=web&cd=3&ved=0CEsQFjAC&url=http%3A%2F%2Fwww.derekprince.org%2FPublisher%2FFile.aspx%3FID%3D1000021892&ei=5Nf1T--XGZSHhQe-l4THBg&usg=AFQjCNEExEl-AudNCmxnGWoiM7fkUuGyJVA)

prepare the way of the Lord, requiring everyone, not just Gentiles, to be baptized because everyone needs repentance.¹³¹

A Christian makes a public profession of faith and discipleship by way of Christian baptism. In the waters of baptism, a person says, wordlessly, “I confess faith in Christ; Jesus has cleansed my soul from sin, and I now have a new life of sanctification.” Water baptism is thus an act of obedience that follows conversion to portray the washing away of sin. It is very important to note that **baptism in itself does not bring salvation, but salvation inspires baptism.**¹³²

The death, burial, and resurrection of Christ are illustrated in Christian baptism and at the same time, it also illustrates one’s death to sin and new life in Christ. The act of baptism does not wash away man’s sin. Jesus is the only one that can wash away man’s sin. Through faith in Him one is being cleansed of sin by His precious blood and those who have received Jesus in their hearts should desire to follow Him in this ordinance. Black writes ¹³³*“the Scriptural meaning of water baptism is thus the burial of the old man and his works of death and rising out of the water **into the new life in Christ.** John’s baptism of repentance was to prepare the way for the baptism of the Holy Ghost by Jesus.”*

I indeed baptize you with water unto repentance: but he that cometh after me is mightier than I, whose shoes I am not worthy to bear: he shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost, and with fire:

Matthew 3:11

¹³¹ What is the importance of Christian baptism? (<https://gotquestions.org/Christian-baptism.html>)

¹³² Black, Dr L. (2014) Section A: Jesus The Epitome of Freedom and Restoration. Pretoria, RSA. p

¹³³ Black, Dr L. (2014) Section A: Jesus The Epitome of Freedom and Restoration. Pretoria, RSA. p

And John bare record, saying, I saw the Spirit descending from heaven like a dove, and it abode upon him. And I knew him not: but he that sent me to baptize with water, the same said unto me, Upon whom thou shalt see the Spirit descending, and remaining on him, the same is he which baptizeth with the Holy Ghost. And I saw, and bare record that this is the Son of God.

John 1:32-34

The instruction from the Lord to be baptised typifies what happened spiritually. In the Book of Romans chapter six verses one to eighteen this spiritual act is explained in great detail. Being immersed in the water is in likeness to be buried with Christ in death, all sins are nailed to the cross, man is baptised into Christ's death. Emerging from the water represents the cleansed, holy life that follows salvation. Thus being raised alive within Christ, frees man from all guilt realising that every sin ever committed was washed away. Romans 6:4 puts it this way:

Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

Romans 6:4 (KJV)

Baptism is done in the name of the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit (Matthew 28:18-20) and through this ordinance a person is admitted into the fellowship of the church.

Baptism into the Body of Christ is actually a baptism in the Blood of Christ at the time man is born again. Water baptism is thus the portrayal of that happening

and a witness to the world that one is saved, **baptism thus seals one's covenant with God.**¹³⁴

Scripture teaches that man received the Holy Spirit once Jesus is chosen as Lord and Saviour. It is of great importance that one knows how the Holy Spirit operates in one's life. In chapter two the doctrine of the Holy Spirit, the facets of the Holy Spirit and the workings of the Holy Spirit are discussed.

18 COMMUNION

18.1 Definition Of Communion

A Christian ceremony in which bread is eaten and wine is drunk as a way of showing devotion to Jesus Christ, a close relationship with something, a group of Christian's who have the same beliefs.¹³⁵

Communion is a practice meant to be observed over and over throughout the life of a Christian and not like Baptism, which is a onetime event. It is a holy time of worship when believers corporately come together as one body to remember and celebrate what Christ did for them.¹³⁶

¹³⁴ What does the Bible say about Water Baptism? (www.bible.com/bibleanswers_result.php?id=131)

¹³⁵ Definition of communion (<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/communion>)

¹³⁶ What is communion (<http://christianity.about.com/od/faqhelpdesk/f/whatiscommunion.htm>)

18.2 Names Associated With Christian Communion:

- Holy Communion
- The Sacrament of Communion
- Bread and Wine – the elements
- The Body and Blood of Christ
- The Lord's Supper
- Eucharist¹³⁷

18.3 Why Do Christians Observe Communion?

It is clearly stated in Scripture to observe Communion is firstly to obey the Commands of Jesus Christ and secondly in observing Communion for remembering Christ and all that He has done for humankind in His life, death and resurrection.

And when he had given thanks, he brake it, and said, Take, eat: this is my body, which is broken for you: this do in remembrance of me.

1 Corinthians 11:24 (KJV)

The third reason is that man take time to examine himself. The Apostle Paul tells man to get things right with God, to come to the light in order to be cleansed by His blood. A strong presence of iniquity in man's life causes man to struggle to separate himself from sin. Many times this iniquity is

¹³⁷ Definition of eucharist *Christian Science* spiritual communion with God <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/Eucharist>

strengthened by unclean spirits that make the battle more difficult. To stand in victory one need to repent, and desire with one's whole heart that the power of God will free and transform one. The determination of the heart, and the blood and body of Christ will give the believer total victory. In every true believer the authority of the resurrection is established and they can cast out every tormenting demon.¹³⁸

But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of that bread, and drink of that cup.

1 Corinthians 11:28 (KJV)

When observing Communion Christians are **proclaiming His death until He comes**. It is, then, a statement of faith:

For as often as ye eat this bread, and drink this cup, ye do shew the Lord's death till he come.

1 Corinthians 11:26 (KJV)

When one observes Communion one shows one's **participation in the body of Christ**. Jesus's life becomes the believer's life and the believer become a member of the body of Christ.¹³⁹ Jesus' mission is to establish His Father's Kingdom in every nation, for this He needs His body, which is the Church – composed of each and every one of His children. The Spirit of God unites with man through Communion.

¹³⁸ Black, Dr L. (2014) Section A: Jesus The Epitome of Freedom and Restoration. Pretoria, RSA. p

¹³⁹ What Is Communion? By Mary Fairchild (<http://christianity.about.com/od/faqhelpdesk/f/whatiscommunion.htm>)

The cup of blessing which we bless, is it not the communion of the blood of Christ? The bread which we break, is it not the communion of the body of Christ? For we being many are one bread, and one body: for we are all partakers of that one bread.

1 Corinthians 10:16-17 (KJV)

For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit.

1 Corinthians 12:13 (KJV)

Paul prayed for believers' eyes to be opened to see and understand who they are and what it means to be His body. The reality of being His body does not automatically guarantee a pass to heaven. Being His body is a powerful truth and it means literally being Jesus on earth, with all His authority and virtue.

Cease not to give thanks for you, making mention of you in my prayers; That the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, may give unto you the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him: The eyes of your understanding being enlightened; that ye may know what is the hope of his calling, and what the riches of the glory of his inheritance in the saints, And what is the exceeding greatness of his power to us-ward who believe, according to the working of his mighty power, Which he wrought in Christ, when he raised him from the dead, and set him at his own right hand in the heavenly places, Far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come: And hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church, Which is his body, the fulness of him that filleth all in all.

Ephesians 1:16-23

Believers will keep acting like a churchgoing Christian who has lots of problems if their eyes are not enlightened to life in the power of this truth. The breaking of the bread of Communion that reveals Christ in His glory is the key for the enlightenment of believer's eyes. The disciples walked with Jesus and heard

Him speak on the road to Emmaus but they did not recognise Him. His anointing revived their spirits. (Luke 24:15-16)

This is also true of many Christians today in their walk with Christ for they are next to Him, they hear Him and feel His Spirit, but they do not really understand that they are truly with Him and in Him as His very body.

Upon breaking the bread, Jesus reveals Himself to and within believers.

And it came to pass, as he sat at meat with them, he took bread, and blessed it, and brake, and gave to them. And their eyes were opened, and they knew him; and he vanished out of their sight.

Luke 24:30-31

Eating His flesh will open the eyes of man's understanding to see Him face to face, to know all the riches that He has granted. Seeing the Lord is the believer's heritage and not the privilege of only a few.

Yet a little while, and the world seeth me no more; but ye see me: because I live, ye shall live also. At that day ye shall know that I am in my Father, and ye in me, and I in you.

John 14:19-20

By breaking the bread in Communion, believers should remember what their sins had done to the body of the Lord. To proclaim the Lord's death means talking about His death, to understand it in relation to one's own deeds, that each and every person's sins and iniquities led Jesus to die on the cross.

Believers literally need to eat this knowledge until every deed and thought is saturated with His sacrifice, through this Christ's life will manifest through

believers. It is Jesus' death that conquered death and Satan's empire. To turn Communion into a lifeless ritual would cause judgement, sickness and death upon the church.

Wherefore whosoever shall eat this bread, and drink this cup of the Lord, unworthily, shall be guilty of the body and blood of the Lord. But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of that bread, and drink of that cup. For he that eateth and drinketh unworthily, eateth and drinketh damnation to himself, not discerning the Lord's body. For this cause many are weak and sickly among you, and many sleep. For if we would judge ourselves, we should not be judged. But when we are judged, we are chastened of the Lord, that we should not be condemned with the world.

1 Corinthians 11:27-32

It is therefore essential to ask God to search one's heart before participation in Communion, when this is done daily sin won't be able to separate man from God as man comes into a habit of confessing his sin to God without a day going by, thereby strengthening the relationship one has with the Lord.

The breaking of the bread thus unifies the Body of Christ, the love of God that bonds together all those who are His children, was put into action through the act of breaking the bread. As the bread is broken into pieces, it generates the opposite force; members that are separated will be attached to form the spiritual body. The body (bread) that is divided in the natural realm is united in the spiritual realm.

Through Jesus' death He produced life in man, His wounded body produced health, His humility conquered pride, His true love disarmed hatred, under this principle the breaking of the bread, symbolic of His pierced body – frees a power that supernaturally binds together those who are legitimately His church.

Upon eating the bread, believers are submerged in the spiritual body of Christ throughout the world.

18.4 The Three Main Christian Views of Communion

- the actual body and blood of Christ through the bread and the wine. Communion is much more a spiritual than a physical act. Christ is powerfully present among the participants when the elements of communion are sanctified. In the invisible realm the body and blood of Christ is really there.
- The bread and the wine are unchanged elements, but Christ's presence by faith is made spiritually real in and through them. Man's spirit will literally drink the blood of Christ which is the light and the life and the man will become one with His flesh and His body.
- The bread and the wine are used as symbols, representing Christ's body and blood, in remembrance of his enduring sacrifice and to look for His glorious return in the future.¹⁴⁰

18.5 The Symbols Of Communion

Many religions believe that the symbols of communion, the fruits of the vine and the bread, physically becomes the blood and body of Christ¹⁴¹. One must keep in mind that taking the physical symbols of communion is only a symbol of what happens in the spiritual realm, the physical symbols does not become the blood

¹⁴⁰ What Is Communion? By Mary Fairchild (<http://christianity.about.com/od/faqhelpdesk/f/whatiscommunion.htm>)

¹⁴¹ Anatolion, K and Brown, Stephen F (2009) World Religions. Catholicism & Orthodox Christianity. New York: Chelsea House, p.63.

and body of Christ. In the spirit Jesus ministers His blood and body to the spirit of man which is the light, health, life, power and purification

The blood of Christ contains the love of God, and there is no desire, achievement or goal that contains all that love provides to the spirit and soul of man. Where there is love there is peace, joy and complete satisfaction. Love also brings forth benefits in the body of man, filling it with health and vitality which only **love** brings to life.

18.6 Scriptures Associated With Communion:

While they were eating, Jesus took bread, gave thanks and broke it, and gave it to his disciples, saying, "Take and eat; this is my body." Then he took the cup, gave thanks and offered it to them, saying, "Drink from it, all of you. This is my blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for the forgiveness of sins."

Matthew 26:26-28 (NIV)

While they were eating, Jesus took bread, gave thanks and broke it, and gave it to his disciples, saying, "Take it; this is my body." Then he took the cup, gave thanks and offered it to them, and they all drank from it. "This is my blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many."

Mark 14:22-24 (NIV)

And he took bread, gave thanks and broke it, and gave it to them, saying, "This is my body given for you; do this in remembrance of me." In the same way, after the supper he took the cup, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

Luke 22:19-20 (NIV)

Is not the cup of thanksgiving for which we give thanks a participation in the blood of Christ? And is not the bread that we break a participation in the body of Christ? Because there is one loaf, we, who are many, are one body, for we all partake of the one loaf.

1 Corinthians 10:16-17 (NIV)

And when he had given thanks, he broke it and said, "This is my body, which is for you; do this in remembrance of me." In the same way, after supper he took the cup, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood; do this, whenever you drink it, in remembrance of me." For whenever you eat this bread and drink this cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes.

1 Corinthians 11:24-26 (NIV)

Jesus said to them, "I tell you the truth, unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood, you have no life in you. Whoever eats my flesh and drinks my blood has eternal life, and I will raise him up at the last day."

John 6:53-54 (NIV)

Throughout Scripture Jesus is referred to as the bread of life. Scripture also states that if man eats the bread of life eternal life would be received and when man comes to Jesus he will hunger or thirst no more (John 6:35). Food were created by God to give the body strength and keep it healthy, He therefore also created food for the spirit for that very same reason.¹⁴²

Jesus introduced this principle while He lived as a man on earth and explained receiving eternal life and what is meant thereby.

¹⁴² Black, Dr L. (2014) Section A: Jesus The Epitome of Freedom and Restoration. Pretoria, RSA. p

I am the living bread which came down from heaven: if any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world. The Jews therefore strove among themselves, saying, How can this man give us his flesh to eat? Then Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Except ye eat the flesh of the Son of man, and drink his blood, ye have no life in you. Whoso eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, hath eternal life; and I will raise him up at the last day.

John 6:51-54

Dr Black writes, ¹⁴³“God the Father used the instrument of His blood to unite human and divine nature, through this blood the blood of Jesus was formed. Eternity penetrated time and inhabited a body for the first time at Jesus’ conception – which is **eternal life** - a life that does not die; the very nature of God penetrating mankind’s humanity and uniting man with Himself.”

For man’s spirit to stay strong and to withstand the darts from the unseen satanic kingdom the spirit needs to take in the necessary substance - food for the spirit. Jesus does not refer to communion as a ritual or a memorial but compares communion to eating and drinking, a daily substance, food and water for the body which is essential to stay strong and active.

Jesus’s inheritance for man is that His supernatural life operates in each and every person who chooses Him, and for this man’s spirit needs to abide in Jesus, by eating and drinking everything He is.

He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, dwelleth in me, and I in him.

John 6:56

¹⁴³ Black, Dr L. (2014) Section A: Jesus The Epitome of Freedom and Restoration. Pretoria, RSA. p

The believer's prayers will be powerful and the miraculous power of God will flow through each believer when they abiding in Christ

I am the vine, ye are the branches: He that abideth in me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit: for without me ye can do nothing. If a man abide not in me, he is cast forth as a branch, and is withered; and men gather them, and cast them into the fire, and they are burned. If ye abide in me, and my words abide in you, ye shall ask what ye will, and it shall be done unto you.

John 15:5-7 (KJV)

Man has to fill himself with Christ to move into a stronger spiritual relationship with Him. After Jesus has cleansed a person with His blood man can affect the masses who do not believe in Jesus's abundant love, grace and mercy.

And they continued stedfastly in the apostles' doctrine and fellowship, and in breaking of bread, and in prayers. And fear came upon every soul: and many wonders and signs were done by the apostles. And all that believed were together, and had all things common; And sold their possessions and goods, and parted them to all men, as every man had need. And they, continuing daily with one accord in the temple, and breaking bread from house to house, did eat their meat with gladness and singleness of heart, Praising God, and having favour with all the people. And the Lord added to the church daily such as should be saved.

Acts 2:42-47

To eat the Word of God, the Bread of life purifies man! To eat and drink of the cup of devils corrupts man's very being, his life, body, soul and spirit.

Abominable drinks pertaining to the kingdom of darkness which tries to emulate the Kingdom of God and its principles which Satan is very aware of, are mentioned in the Word of God. One of these drinks is the chalice of fornication of the great harlot of Revelation. Communion of God is perverse by Satan by

the institution of drinking physical blood, which God specifically condemns as the life is the blood of man.¹⁴⁴

According to Scripture the blood of Jesus speaks, it cries out to God for having been shed (Hebrews 12:24). But it is the love contained in His blood which gathers and brings man to Jesus. Jesus' love groans for man for He cannot endure being separated from the object of His love, His creation and therefore He placed His very life on the line.¹⁴⁵ Love is not a feeling, man cannot create it because of its divine origin, Love is Jesus incarnate, He is the teacher and provider of perfect love desiring to life through His created beings, man and to fill the earth with this amazing LOVE.

19 SANCTIFICATION

19.1 Sanctification As Part Of The Equipping Of The Saints

What does it mean to be sanctified? In the spiritual sense of a believer's life, sanctification means "to be set apart for God," or to be made more holy through conforming to the image of His Son."¹⁴⁶ To be sanctified is God's will for every person.

For this is the will of God, even your sanctification, that ye should abstain from fornication:

1 Thessalonians 4:3 (KJV)

¹⁴⁴ Black, Dr L. (2014) Section A: Jesus The Epitome of Freedom and Restoration. Pretoria, RSA. p

¹⁴⁵ Brand, Prof Dr CMJ (18 February 2012) Mini Conference. South Africa: Self Published, pp. 9-21, 32.

¹⁴⁶ What does it mean to be sanctified (<https://www.google.co.za/search?q=sanctificaiton&oq=sanctificaiton&aqs=chrome..69i57j0l5.3829j0j4&sourceid=chrome&ie=UTF-8>)

All believers enter into a state of separation unto God when they are born of God. But of him are ye in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption: 1 Corinthians 1:30 (KJV). The sanctification mentioned in this verse is a once-for-ever separation of believers unto God and a work performed by God.¹⁴⁷ This state of holiness before God are referred to as “positional” sanctification; and is the same as justification.

The Bible refers to sanctification as a practical experience of the believer’s separation unto God because while they are positionally¹⁴⁸ holy they still sin (1 John 1:10). The effect of obedience to the Word of God in one’s life is called “progressive” or “experiential” sanctification, and is the same as growing in the Lord (2 Peter 3:18) or spiritual maturity. In Philipians 1:6 God started the work of making believers like Christ, and He is continuing it. The application of the Word in a believer’s life, effects progressive sanctification. The believer should pursue sanctification earnestly (1 Peter 1:15; Hebrews 12:14) Progressive sanctification has in view the setting apart of believers for the purpose for which they are sent into the world¹⁴⁹ “As you sent me into the world, I have sent them into the world. For them I sanctify myself, that they too may be truly sanctified” (John 17:18–19).

Jesus was the role model for setting Himself apart for God’s purpose and is both the basis and the condition of the believer being set apart (see John 10:36). One is sanctified and sent because Jesus was - sanctifying and the

¹⁴⁷ What is sanctification? What is the definition of Christian sanctification (<https://gotquestions.org/sanctification.html>)

¹⁴⁸ “set free from every sin” by the blood of Christ, Acts 13:39

¹⁴⁹ What is sanctification? What is the definition of Christian sanctification (<https://gotquestions.org/sanctification.html>)

sending are inseparable. On this account believer is called “saints,”¹⁵⁰ or “sanctified ones.” Before salvation, one’s behaviour bore witness to one’s standing in the world in separation from God, but now one’s behaviour should bear witness to one’s standing before God in separation from the world. “Those who are being sanctified (Hebrews 10:14, ESV) are becoming more Christ like

Paul addressed the Galatians believers as follows

My children, for whom I again travail until Christ should be formed in you,

Galatians 4:19 (BSB)

Black writes ¹⁵¹ “in the Systematic Exposition of the Biblical Exegesis of **HOLINESS**, it is important not to take it up lightly, thereby missing the real point of the intrinsic meaning that defines the concept aptly”.

19.2 Holiness Is Seeing Christ Formed In Mankind

“Sanctification” is a translation of the Greek word *hagiasmos*¹⁵², meaning “holiness” or “a separation,” means to be set apart; Biblically it means to be set apart for God. Dr Black writes ¹⁵³ “there is a direct and immediate connection between “**holiness**” and “**sanctification**”, actually it is synonymous to “*sanctification*”. In the sense of being set aside for God, every Christian has been made holy through the new birth.

¹⁵⁰ *hagioi* in the Greek

¹⁵¹ Black, Dr L. (2014) Section A: Jesus The Epitome of Freedom and Restoration. Pretoria, RSA. p

¹⁵² Etymology KyioCj {*hagios*....)

¹⁵³ Black, Dr L. (2014) Section A: Jesus The Epitome of Freedom and Restoration. Pretoria, RSA. p

But you are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for possession, so that you might speak of the praises of Him who has called you out of darkness into His marvelous light;

1 Peter 2:9 (BSB)

in the body of His flesh through death, to present you holy and without blemish, and without charge in His sight,

Colossians 1:22 (BSB)

God granted believers justification, a once-for-all, positional holiness in Christ in the past. Today, the believer is guided by God to maturity, a practical, progressive holiness and in the future, God will give them glorification, a permanent, ultimate holiness. These three phases of sanctification separate the believer from the penalty of sin (justification), the power of sin (maturity), and the presence of sin (glorification).¹⁵⁴

Paul reminds the believers in Corinth accordingly.

And such were some of you. But you are washed, but you are sanctified, but you are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God.

1 Corinthians 6:11 (BSB)

When Christians are engaged in Spiritual Warfare they need to be Spirit filled Christian believers, with the ultimate goal of the “warfare”, to be changed continually to the image of Christ through equipping and sanctification in the ultimate holiness (in the future eternity).

¹⁵⁴ What is sanctification? What is the definition of Christian sanctification
<https://gotquestions.org/sanctification.html>

In a cryptic repique Jay E Adams, Biblical scholar as well as counsellor maintains that sanctification is a dominant if not the dominant view of counselling. *"Sanctification means more than learning what the Bible teaches. It involves personal change"*¹⁵⁵. Sometimes when counselees especially children are cornered and forced to acknowledge that their behaviour is irresponsible, they attempt to dodge the issue by replying: *"Well, I guess that's just the way I am."* They say this is a resigned manner and expect to leave the whole matter right there. They speak as though there were no possibility for genuine personality change. Such a view of man is decidedly unscriptural."¹⁵⁶

Instead of Holiness as separation, Borg notes, *"Jesus offered an economy of mercy that extends to all, especially the outsiders including Israel's enemies. The command - which would have indicated Romans above all - points beyond the exclusiveness of the holiness code to a kindness and compassion which is all-encompassing and unlimited."*¹⁵⁷ Jay E Adams on furthering his argument¹⁵⁸ *"Human beings in one way might be described more accurately as human becomings."*

¹⁵⁵ Here we must differ radically with Christians who think that the pastor's aim in counseling "is not ... to induce any major personality change." Why leave such major change in the hands of psychiatrists whose beliefs and methods are antithetical to Scripture? *Cf Baker's Dictionary, op. cit.*, p. 209. The work of the Holy Spirit is precisely the work of personality change, and the Christian counselor must become involved in this work as an agent whom the Spirit may use.

¹⁵⁶ Adams, Jay E (1970) *Competent To Counsel*, Introduction to Nouthetic Counselling. Grand Rapids Michigan; Zondervan, p. 77.

¹⁵⁷ Borg, M.J (1998) *Conflict, Holiness and Politics*. Trinity Press International, p 51-200.

¹⁵⁸ Adams, Jay E (1970) *Competent To Counsel*, Introduction to Nouthetic Counselling. Grand Rapids Michigan; Zondervan, p. 75

19.3 Sanctification Means Change

Personality can be changed. God, throughout history, has turned Jacobs into Israels, Simons into Peters and Sauls into Pauls. Today's personality is based on yesterday. What one is today is but the composite of his past. At birth, God gave each individual a basic deposit of inherited "*stuff*" which Scripture calls *phusis* (nature). This is a matter of gene makeup.¹⁵⁹

But that is not personality. How one uses the *phusis* in responding to life's problems and life's challenges determines the personality. Those response patterns may become deeply etched over a period of time. At length, they may seem to be, "*second nature*", i.e., almost as "*given*" as the original *phusis*. Though habit patterns are hard to change, **BUT** change is not impossible. Counsellors regularly see patterns of 30-40 years' duration altered, what was learned can be unlearned. An old dog can learn new tricks.

As is absolutely evident in conveying such a view on "*change*" it deems necessary to see the subject in light of a paradigm shift. Jesus, by abrogating the laws of purity, was announcing a new image of God: a God not concerned with cleanliness, who loves precisely the marginalized and rejected. The one

¹⁵⁹ Depending upon whether one is a creationist (God creates each new soul afresh at birth) or a traducianist (the soul is *transmitted from one's parents*) he may wish to include or exclude the human spirit from the inherited *phusis*. I do not wish to discuss this issue here, but it is fair to say that a more-or-less traducianist position has been presupposed. At least, *phusis* as been thought to include the genetic and an other element received at birth. When Christ says "out of the heart" proceeds evil of every description (Luke 6:45; 15-19), he refers to what emanates from man's inherited nature (*phusis*), not what is learned. Man does not learn his responses as a passive, neutral being. Rather, he is an active, committed organism with a nature disposed toward sin because he is at enmity toward God. Sinful response patterns are inevitable, but the particular patterns developed, the particular styles of sinful expression, are not; they are learned.

whose tender womb aches for the uninvited and the unloved: a compassionate parent, of all of mankind.¹⁶⁰

Sometimes people also think that past decisions must be maintained as firmly as the laws of the Medes and Persians. Such people should reread the Biblical account which shows the consequences of those foolish laws. Spiritual warriors must realize that past decisions were based upon yesterday's data and judgments. The former might have been insufficient and the latter poor. If new data have come to light, if one finds his judgment clearer today, he should attempt to rectify yesterday's bad decisions.

My son, do not despise the chastening of Jehovah; nor be weary with His correction;

Proverbs 3:11 (BSB)

God's Word changes people, changes their thinking, changes their decisions, and changes their behaviour, therefore it is important for children to start reading the Bible from a very young age – their parents can start reading Bible to them as a “*bed time story*” even before they are able to read it themselves.

Change is an important matter to counsellors. The Scriptures everywhere anticipate change. The Holy Spirit is the Spirit of change. His activity is

¹⁶⁰ Matt 6:9//Luke 11:2; Matt 7:7-11//Luke 11:9-13; Matt 6:25-34//Luke 12:22-31; Matt 10:29//Luke 12:6-7; Matt 18:19; Luke 15:1-7//Matt 18:12-14; Matt 1:25-27//Luke 10:21-22; Mark 11:25; 14:36 par., Luke 12:32; 23:34; and most references to “father” in John's Gospel. Ezekiel 22:26 amounts to virtually a line-by-line indictment of Jesus: “ [The priests] have done violence to my teaching and have profaned my holy things; they have made no distinction between the holy and the common, neither have they taught the difference between the unclean and the clean, and they have disregarded my Sabbaths, so that I am profaned among them. “ The rendering of the Temple curtain symbolizes the completion among them. “The rending of the Temple curtain symbolizes the completion of this process of profanation, which, according to Ezekiel, even God resists.

everywhere represented as dynamic and power behind the personality changes in God's people. Wherever the Holy Spirit's activity is demonstrated, people are changed. God says: "*Grow in grace and in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ.*" Static living, static decisions, static personality is inconsistent with the Biblical picture of the new life. Where there is life there is growth¹⁶¹ and growth means change. Growth means maturation; it means refining of ideas and ways of doing things. So a Christian counselee must not be allowed to plead that he is what he is and nothing can be done about it.

Man is a weak creature, and no way able to discover Satan's snares, nor to avoid them, unless the Spirit of the Lord gives skill and power; therefore, whoever be grieved, be sure the Spirit be not grieved by ones enormities, nor by ones refusing the cordials and comforts that he sets before a person, nor by slighting and despising his gracious acting in others, nor by calling sincerity hypocrisy, and faith fancy, nor by fathering those things upon the Spirit, that are the brats and fruits of ones own hearts.¹⁶²

The Spirit of the Lord is the Counsellor, Comforter, Upholder, Strengthenener - it is only the Spirit that makes a man too great for Satan to conquer. "¹⁶³

You are of God, little children, and you have overcome them, because He who is in you is greater than he who is in the world.

1 John 4:4 (BSB)

¹⁶¹ All living organisms grow. Growth may sometimes take place in large spurts, and at other times may occur more slowly. In all Christians the potential for growth is significant.

¹⁶² Isaiah 63:10; Ps 73:23; 1 Thessalonians 5:19; Acts 2:13.

¹⁶³ Brooks, Thomas (1984) Precious Remedies Against Satan's Devices. The Banner of Truth Trust, p. 244.

Change for some people is difficult to accept, because it means doing something not done before. It usually means exchanging old habit patterns for new ones. Such change is a threat to people and especially troubled children who already feels uncertain. They are afraid of the unknown, and therefore unwilling to launch out into new adventures. But to a Christian, change should be thrilling rather than threatening.

The Christian life is an adventure into God's newness. Newness need not make the Christian feel insecure because the future is new - only that the Person has not yet experienced it; it is not unknown to God. Christ is the pioneer of the Christian's faith. He is its author and finisher. He knows all about mankind's lives. Christ Himself has experienced the worst this life has to offer, all that death holds, and now stands victorious on the other side of both in eternal glory. So for the Christian the providence of God is a vital reality. The Savior has blazed a trail before him.¹⁶⁴ A Christian commits sin if he becomes a static, sedentary person who fears positive Biblical change and frantically clings to the past, either in personality growth, in life decisions, or in manner of living. To resist sanctifying change is to resist and grieve the Holy Spirit. This is true for parents and children, as receiving counseling for troubled children involves

¹⁶⁴ Gibson Winter was one of the first to sound the note that the modern family is uprooted. He wrote: "We are like gypsies on the move" (*Love and Conflict*, Garden City: Doubleday and Company, 1958, p. 16) Granberg echoes the cry that ours is a rootless society and also sees this as the source of many problems. Cf. *Baker's Dictionary, op. cit.*, p. 194. It must be granted that rootlessness that is due to modern mobility offers many temptations, but Christians may not blame this rootlessness for their problems. Although the problem takes on modern dimensions, it is not a new one. Abraham's life, like ours, was that of a "pilgrim and stranger." Christ spoke of leaving houses and brothers and sisters and father and mother and children and farms for his sake (Matthew 19:29). Such mobility and rootlessness actually affords great opportunity for demonstrating to others that "the world is not our home" and that "we seek a heavenly country" (see Hebrews 11:8-10; 13-16; 1 Peter 1:1; 2:11). The vital importance of the covenant family and the larger covenant community (the Church) is only emphasized by the rootlessness of modern society. One's taproot in God finds nourishment and life through these.

the whole family. Jesus regarded holiness and wholeness as contagious, a transforming power – transforming children and their families into the wholeness and purity which is within Christ, restoring the image of Christ within them.

The Scriptural Doctrine of sanctification necessarily involves growth in holiness. Christians must change in order to become more like Christ. Growth means changing into the fullness of the stature of Christ. In principle if it is true that believers have been declared perfect in Christ, but now they must grow more like Christ in practice.

New truths discovered in the study of the Scriptures must become new practices woven into the fabric of one's daily life. Fundamentally, then, pastoral care, counseling, deliverance, healing, inner healing, teaching and preaching, lots of prayer and intercession would help Christians to become sanctified. Counseling involves helping people to put off old patterns which grew out of rebellion toward God and helping them to put on new practices which grow out of obedience to God. This is the shepherd's challenge, opportunity and duty.

20 SPIRITUAL WARFARE

In the previous chapter we have dealt with the six items of defensive armour listed by Paul in Ephesians 6:14-17: the girdle of truth, the breastplate of righteousness, the shoes of the preparation of the Gospel, the shield of faith, the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit. All these items are essentially for self-protection or self-defense, even the sword cannot reach further than the arm of the person who wields it. In 2 Corinthians 10:4-5 Paul

describes the strongholds of Satan and there is nothing in this list of defensive equipment that will enable the believer to cast down Satan's strongholds or fortresses

The believer now needs to move into the offensive and to move out and actively attack Satan's kingdom. It is a fact of history and experience that no army ever won a war on the defensive.

DEFENSIVE WARFARE - *"Defensive warfare is battle waged to defend territory. It is warfare that waits for the enemy to strike, then pulls its forces together in defensive response. The defender must respond to his opponent and his decisions are forced on him by the attacker. This type of warfare does not advance into enemy territory. It defends territory already claimed. It is important, however, because the spiritual forces of evil are constantly attacking man as a believer. If one does not know how to defend oneself, one will become a victim of these attacks"*¹⁶⁵

OFFENSIVE WARFARE - *"Offensive warfare is aggressive warfare. It is not a warfare of waiting and responding in defense. It is warfare which takes the initiative of attack. The enemy is identified, his strategy recognized, and offensive advances against him are made in the spirit world. In offensive warfare the attacker has the advantage of making decisions first. Offensive warfare gains territory rather than defends it. 128 Offensive advances are the only type of spiritual warfare which will reach the world with the Gospel of Jesus Christ. We cannot remain in our comfortable homes and churches and practice*

¹⁶⁵ Spiritual Strategies A Manual for Spiritual Warfare Harvestime International institute p128

defensive strategies only. The army of God must advance into enemy territory. It must go to the strongholds of Satan with the power of the Gospel message. We must wage aggressive offensive spiritual battle¹⁶⁶.

THE COMMON FACTOR - there is one thing in common about offensive and defensive warfare - both involve personal action by the believer. Unused weapons do not inflict casualties on the enemy nor win wars in natural warfare and the same is true in the spirit world. One's spiritual weapons are affected by one's will to use them. God empowers for battle, but one has a personal responsibility in both defensive and offensive spiritual strategies.¹⁶⁷

Prince writes ¹⁶⁸“in the early part of this century, someone asked a well-known French general, “In a war, which army wins?” The general replied, “The one that advances. That is probably an oversimplification, the Christian will never win a war by retreating or even by merely holding his ground.” Satan's kingdom will never be overthrown as long as he keeps the church on the defensive. Therefore, one needs to move out from the defence and from mere self-protection to a position of attack.

When Jesus first unveiled His plan for the church, He envisioned it being on the offensive and attacking Satan's strongholds. The first time the word *church* is used in the New Testament is in Matthew 16:18. Jesus was here speaking to Peter, and He said, “*You are Peter, a stone; and upon this rock I will build my church; and all the powers of hell shall not prevail against it*” (TLB). An alternative reading is “all the gates of hell shall not be too strong for it.” The

¹⁶⁶ Spiritual Strategies A Manual for Spiritual Warfare Harvestime International institute p128

¹⁶⁷ Spiritual Strategies A Manual for Spiritual Warfare Harvestime International institute p128

¹⁶⁸ Prince, Derek (1987) Spiritual Warfare. DPM, UK: Derek Prince Ministries International. P75

word for hell, in Greek, is the word *hades*. The root meaning of the word *hades* is “invisible, unseen.” So *hades*, or hell, is the unseen world of Satan’s kingdom.

Jesus pictured His church in the light of two primary activities: building and attacking the gates of Satan.

The word *gate* is the place of counsel and rule and has a great deal of meaning in Scripture. For instance, in Proverbs 31:23 (NIV), “*it says of the husband of the ideal wife, the faithful wife.*”

The ruling council of elders sat and ruled and administered the city at the city gates. When attacking a city, the natural place to attack is the gates, because they are weaker than the walls.

And for a spirit of judgment to him that sitteth in judgment, and for strength to them that turn the battle to the gate.

Isaiah 28:6 (KJV)

It is clearly stated in Scripture that the gates of Satan will not prevail against the church - meaning - Satan’s councils will not prevail against the church but will be frustrated and brought too naught.

The promise Jesus gives the Church is that if the Church obey Him as their Commander-in-Chief, they will be able to move out, storm Satan’s citadels, break through his gates, release his captives, and carry away his spoil. The assignment of the church is to keep Satan out and it is essentially offensive, not defensive.

In Colossians 2:15, describes what God accomplished through the death of Christ on the cross on mankind's behalf: *"When He had disarmed the rulers and authorities"* (NAS). The rulers and authorities are the same spiritual forces of Satan that are referred to in Ephesians 6:12 and they have been stripped of their weapons - God, through the cross, disarmed the rulers and authorities. Then it says, *"He made a public display of them, having triumphed over them through Him"* (Colossians 2:15 NAS).

Jesus did not win the victory for Himself on the cross but always had the victory as our representative. He won the victory on our behalf - thus, His victory becomes our victory.

Now thanks be unto God, which always causeth us to triumph in Christ, and maketh manifest the savour of his knowledge by us in every place.

2 Corinthians 2:14 (KJV)

The church of Christ need to represent Christ's victory *"Always"* and *"in every place"* - the victory over Satan's rulers and authorities or principalities and powers. Matthew 28:18-19 reveals the final commission of Jesus, given to His disciples:

And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth. Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

Matthew 28:18-19 (KJV)

Jesus said, *"All authority has [already] been given to Me.'* You go, therefore...", thus, the Church' assignment is to administer the victory, demonstrate the triumph, and exercise the authority that Jesus has won on their behalf. The

church needs to exercise the authority that Jesus has given them, otherwise it remains ineffective.

The world can only see Christ's victory when demonstrated by the church and this can only be done when the church move from the defensive to the offensive.¹⁶⁹

20.1 Prayer As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare

One does not just pray for own personal wants, needs, and problems when one use prayer to wage offensive warfare but intercede for people, leaders, and nations, pulling down strongholds of Satan and his demonic forces.

S.D Gordon is quoted as saying *"Prayer is man giving God a footing on the contested territory of this earth. The man in full touch of purpose with God, praying, insistently praying – that man is God's footing on the enemy's soil. The man wholly Given over to God gives him a new sub-headquarters on the battlefield from which to work out. And the Holy Spirit within that man, on the new spot, will insist on the enemy's retreat in Jesus the Victor's name. That is prayer. Shall we not, every one of us, increase God's footing down upon his prodigal earth?"*¹⁷⁰

Prayer is not a request made to an almighty King who can do anything at any time but when praying as offensive warfare it liberates the origin, goal, and

¹⁶⁹ Prince, Derek (1987) *Spiritual Warfare*. DPM, UK: Derek Prince Ministries-International. p95-103

¹⁷⁰ Direct quotation of S.D Gordon.

process of the universe from all distortions, poisoning, ravaging, mis-directedness, and sheer hatred of being that frustrate the divine purpose.¹⁷¹

God is the intercessor

Martin Luther understood this aspect of prayer well: *“Our Lord God could not but hear me; I threw the sack down before his door. I rubbed God’s ear with all his promises about hearing prayer.”*¹⁷²

All this about our role as intercessors¹⁷³ in creating history is arrogant bravado unless one recognize that it is God’s power, not oneselves that answers to the world’s needs and God who initiates prayer. All Christians are to intercede at times. When one turn to pray, it is already the second step as one join with God in a prayer already going on in one and in the world.

Prayer releases the glory of God and there’s no substitute for heart-to-heart communion with the Father. . Every great spiritual awakening in the history of the church has been preceded by a prayer movement. Prayer has a way of opening the windows of heaven and closing the gates of hell.

The final result of prayer is the release of God’s glory is the destruction of evil .

¹⁷¹Wink, Walter (1992) *Engaging The Powers, Discernment and Resistance in a World of Domination*. Minneapolis; Fortress Press, p.303.

¹⁷² Martin Luther, this time not from a door, but from a lecture by Gordon Rupp years ago.

¹⁷³ Examples of Prayer and Intercession: The Bible makes reference to the saints who prayed as well as many of the prayers uttered. A study of these prayers and the results show the ingredients and power of prayer in the lives of these persons, as well as in the destinies of peoples and nations. A few of the major examples of great warriors in prayer and intercession will suffice, Conner, Kevin, (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*, Portland Oregon, Bible Temple Publishing, p. 268.

History belongs to the intercessors, who believe the future into being. Professor Brand writes,¹⁷⁴“If this is so, then intercession, far from being an escape from action, is a means of focusing for action and of creating action. By means of our intercessions we veritably cast fire upon the earth and trumpet the future into being. It is no accident then that the seven angels of the Apocalypse make ready to announce the scenes that follow as a direct result of prayer.”¹⁷⁵

The Spirit also helps us in our present limitations. For example, we do not know how to pray worthily, but God’s Spirit within us is actually praying for us in those agonizing longings [“groans”] which cannot find words. Those who know the heart’s secrets understand the Spirit’s intention as they pray according to Gods will for those who love God

Romans 26-27 (KJV)

When one does not know how to pray the Holy Spirit helps one in his weakness. This does not mean that we lack the proper techniques, one's ignorance is not that one does not know the right methods, but precisely that one think one know how to pray and think it is something one do.

One should pray with one’s spirit and not to mobilize God, but rather to bring one’s consciousness and commitment to God, to give articulation to the inarticulate groanings within one’s soul, to bring God’s longings to speech.

¹⁷⁴ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2010) Methodology of Spiritual Warfare. SA. Self Published p57

¹⁷⁵ Walter Wink (1992) Engaging the Powers, Discernment and Resistance in a World of Domination. Minneapolis; Fortress Press, p. 304

Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints;

Ephesians 6:18 (KJV)

Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities: for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered. And he that searcheth the hearts knoweth what is the mind of the Spirit, because he maketh intercession for the saints according to the will of God.

Romans 8:26-27 (KJV)

As Richards puts it, “To pray is to build ones own house. To pray is to discover that Someone else is within ones house. To pray is to recognize that it is not ones house at all. To keep praying is to have no house to protect because there is only One House. And that One House is everybody’s Home... That is the politics of prayer. And that is probably why truly spiritual people are always a threat to politicians of any sort. They want our allegiance and we can no longer give it. Our house is too big.”¹⁷⁶

“Exercising our authority in Jesus’ name, our Scepter, may go beyond merely asking our Lord to grant a particular request. It may mean we actually command a situation to change in Jesus’ name simply because Christ has already given us that authority. He said, “Whoever says to this mountain, ‘Be removed’ ... and does not doubt in his heart ... he shall have whatever he says”¹⁷⁷

¹⁷⁶ Rohr, Richard (1989) “Prayer as a Political Activity,” *Radical Grace* 2/2 March-April: p. 2.

¹⁷⁷ Hyford, Jack and Eastman, Dick (1989) *Dick Love on Its Knees*. Old Tappan, NJ; Chosen Books, p. 65.

20.2 Preaching As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare

The “Sword of the Spirit” which is the Word of God, is a weapon that can be used both defensively and offensively. When used to defend against the attacks of Satan the Word is a defensive weapon and it is offensive when used to claim territory for the Lord by sharing the Gospel message and deliverance with others.¹⁷⁸ This weapon of attack is related directly and specifically to God’s Word. It is solely and exclusively the preaching of God’s Word and in no way applies to the preaching of other things, such as human philosophy, political ideologies, or even elaborate theology.¹⁷⁹

I charge thee therefore before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, who shall judge the quick and the dead at his appearing and his kingdom; Preach the word; be instant in season, out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort with all longsuffering and doctrine. For the time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine; but after their own lusts shall they heap to themselves teachers, having itching ears; And they shall turn away their ears from the truth, and shall be turned unto fables.

2 Timothy 4:1-4 (KJV)

The two facts that are eminent in this scripture is the charges that Paul gave to Timothy. The first charge is given in the presence of God and Christ Jesus, in the light of the fact that Christ will judge the living and the dead and in view of His appearing in His kingdom and the second is to preach the Word. The Word of God must be preached and one should not preach to accommodate the desires of self-pleasing rebels who do not want to hear the truth and will look for

¹⁷⁸ Spiritual Strategies A Manual for Spiritual Warfare Harvestime International Institute p149 (<http://harvestime.org/translations/english/SpiritualStrategies-Warfare.pdf>)

¹⁷⁹ Prince, Derek (1987) Spiritual Warfare. DPM, UK: Derek Prince Ministries-International. p93

preachers who will preach the kind of thing they want to hear. The preacher will be accountable for what he preaches. Scripture reveals a lot about the effectiveness of God's Word.

In Isaiah 55:11 God said:

So shall my word be that goeth forth out of my mouth: it shall not return unto me void, but it shall accomplish that which I please, and it shall prosper in the thing whereto I sent it.

Isaiah 55:11 (KJV)

And in Jeremiah 23:29 God said:

Is not my word like as a fire? saith the LORD; and like a hammer that breaketh the rock in pieces?

Jeremiah 23:29 (KJV)

In Acts 19:8-10 is an example of the power of the preached Word of God from the ministry of Paul in Ephesus:

And he went into the synagogue, and spake boldly for the space of three months, disputing and persuading the things concerning the kingdom of God. But when divers were hardened, and believed not, but spake evil of that way before the multitude, he departed from them, and separated the disciples, disputing daily in the school of one Tyrannus. And this continued by the space of two years; so that all they which dwelt in Asia heard the word of the Lord Jesus, both Jews and Greeks.

Acts 19:8-10 (KJV)

Paul's preaching is described as intense, continuous and extensive.

Paul's preaching in Ephesus had three results.

The first result of Paul's preaching was supernatural attestation to his message by miracles, the second result was evil spirits being driven out into the open and the third result of Paul's preaching was that the occult domination over an entire city was broken, as described in Acts 19:17-19

And this was known to all the Jews and Greeks also dwelling at Ephesus; and fear fell on them all, and the name of the Lord Jesus was magnified. And many that believed came, and confessed, and shewed their deeds. Many of them also which used curious arts brought their books together, and burned them before all men: and they counted the price of them, and found it fifty thousand pieces of silver.

Acts 19:17-19 (KJV)

The result of Paul's ministering the Word of God was that Satan's kingdom in that area was rocked to its foundations; his fortresses were overthrown.¹⁸⁰

20.3 The Mind Of Christ As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare

Forasmuch then as Christ hath suffered for us in the flesh, arm yourselves likewise with the same mind: for he that hath suffered in the flesh hath ceased from sin;

1 Peter 4:1 (KJV)

Let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus:

Philippians 2:5 (KJV)

To "let" means to permit or embrace and one needs to be armed with the same mind that Jesus had, a mind set to wage aggressive warfare:

¹⁸⁰ Prince, Derek (1987) Spiritual Warfare. DPM, UK: Derek Prince Ministries-International. p93-99

He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

1 John 3:8 (KJV)

Man must "let" or permit this mind to be developed and one needs to take aggressive action to "arm oneself" with a similar mental attitude:

And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God.

Romans 12:2 (KJV)

To be "transformed" means to experience a complete change which will be expressed in character and conduct thus renewing and arming ones mind with Christlikeness results in such a transformation.¹⁸¹

20.4 Binding And loosing As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare

Man have the power to bind the forces of evil and loose the forces of good

And I will give unto thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth shall be bound in heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven.

Matthew 16:19 (KJV)

Through delegation of power and authority from Jesus, one can bind and loose spiritual forces. In this passage Jesus is speaking directly to the apostle Peter

¹⁸¹ Spiritual Strategies A Manual for Spiritual Warfare Harvestime International Institute p150 (<http://harvestime.org/translations/english/SpiritualStrategies-Warfare.pdf>)

and indirectly to the other apostles. Jesus' words meant that Peter would have the right to enter the kingdom himself. The possession of the keys symbolizes that Peter would have general authority and that preaching the gospel would be the means of opening the kingdom of heaven to all believers and shutting it against unbelievers.¹⁸² Binding and loosing work together as a weapon. Whenever one bind something, one should also loosen something. For example, if one bind the spirit of lying one should loosen the spirit of truth to operate in its place.¹⁸³

20.5 Praise As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare

The Bible has much to say about praise defeating and driving back the powers of darkness. Praise is frequently related to God's awesomeness or fearfulness and calls forth God's supernatural intervention. It is also the appropriate response to that intervention. The song that Moses and Israel sang after their deliverance from Egypt and after Pharaoh's army had been destroyed by the waters of the Red Sea¹⁸⁴ is found in Exodus 15:10-11

And the taskmasters of the people went out, and their officers, and they spake to the people, saying, Thus saith Pharaoh, I will not give you straw. Go ye, get you straw where ye can find it: yet not ought of your work shall be diminished.

Exodus 5:10-11 (KJV)

The reason we are committed to worship and to teach the Word is not to get blessed and filled up, but to execute God's power.

¹⁸² What does the Bible mean by binding and loosing? (<https://gotquestions.org/binding-loosing.html>)

¹⁸³ Spiritual Strategies A Manual for Spiritual Warfare Harvestime International Institute p151 (<http://harvestime.org/translations/english/SpiritualStrategies-Warfare.pdf>)

¹⁸⁴ Prince, Derek (1987) Spiritual Warfare. DPM, UK: Derek Prince Ministries-international. p87

To execute vengeance on the nations, and punishment on the peoples; to bind their kings with chains, and their nobles with fetters of iron; to execute on them the judgment written

Psalms 149:7-9 (KJV)

Jesus said: *Out of the mouth of babes and sucklings hast thou ordained strength because of thine enemies, that thou mightest still the enemy and the avenger .Psalms 8:2 (KJV).* This reveals that the strength of God's people is praise. God provides strength for His people against their enemies - against Satan's entire kingdom. Through worship and the proclamation of the Word of God, forces of light are released into the world and God's Kingdom is established. The believer's praise and worship bring God's judgment on the kings of darkness, binding them with chains.

The reason we exist is not just to have big, happy churches but to live and worship and proclaim the Word of God to the nations and peoples of the earth. This will drive back the powers of darkness and implement every intention of the heart of God.¹⁸⁵

20.6 The Name Of Jesus As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare

The name of Jesus is a powerful offensive weapon. Jesus said that "in My name" a person will cast out demons, heal the sick, and overcome all the power of the enemy.

¹⁸⁵ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2010) Methodology of Spiritual Warfare SA Self Published. P42

And these signs shall follow them that believe; In my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues;

Mark 16:17 (KJV)

The name of Jesus is not some magical phrase with which we conclude our prayers. It is a symbol of the authority and power He has given us. One had better be authorized to use His power an authority before one start using His names to war against Satanic powers. Review the story in Acts 19:13-17 and note what happened to the sons of Sceva.¹⁸⁶

The following is an effective way to pray using Jesus' name and authority¹⁸⁷:

By the authority of Jesus and His precious blood, I bind you , Satan, according to Ephesians 6:12 and break your powers over this situation. I loose (name of person) from your hold and destroy your works and your assignment in Jesus' name.

Father, I ask that Your will now be done, and I thank you.

In Jesus' name and by His authority, I declare it done.

20.7 The Blood Of Jesus As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare

Humankind was loosened from the dominion of sin and the power of the enemy when Jesus died on the cross of Calvary. His blood secures one's access to

¹⁸⁶ Spiritual Strategies A Manual for Spiritual Warfare Harvestime International Institute p151 (<http://harvestime.org/translations/english/SpiritualStrategies-Warfare.pdf>)

¹⁸⁷ Alves, Elizabeth (2000) Becoming A Prayer Warrior. California, USA: Regal Books. p132

God and release from the bondage of Satan. According to Scripture *"they (believers) overcame him (Satan) by the blood of the Lamb (Jesus Christ)"*

And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto the death.

Revelation 12:11 (KJV)

Salvation, healing, and deliverance are all available because of the blood of Jesus and the Blood of Jesus enables one to wage offensive warfare for the souls of men and women and bring deliverance in deliverance and healing in the name of Jesus. One's power to "overcome" the enemy is because of the "blood of the lamb."¹⁸⁸

20.8 Agreement As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare

Agreement means to "harmonize" to live in concord, without "contention". Intercessors come in agreement with the Holy Spirit with that which He has called them to accomplish through spiritual warfare. Agreement or unity can be an offensive and a defensive weapon. Within the company of other believers one find safety by bonding in agreement and staying close to the Shepherd. Agreement begins with a person's heart that is focused on God. God will knit one's heart to Him and then knit it together with another which will allow one to accomplish more than one could ever have accomplished on one's own. In Ecclesiastes 4:12 Solomon wrote about the "threefold cord."¹⁸⁹

¹⁸⁸ Spiritual Strategies A Manual for Spiritual Warfare Harvestime International Institute p151 (<http://harvestime.org/translations/english/SpiritualStrategies-Warfare.pdf>)

¹⁸⁹ Alves, Elizabeth (1998) Becoming a prayer warrior. Ventura, California, USA: Regal Books. P137-139

Two are better than one; because they have a good reward for their labour. For if they fall, the one will lift up his fellow: but woe to him that is alone when he falleth; for he hath not another to help him up. Again, if two lie together, then they have heat: but how can one be warm alone? And if one prevail against him, two shall withstand him; and a threefold cord is not quickly broken.

Ecclesiastes 4:9-12 (KJV)

Partnerships strengthen and protect one's position in the army of God and prayer alliances with others of like spirit can increase one's warfare efforts.

And this is the condemnation, that light is come into the world, and men loved darkness rather than light, because their deeds were evil. For every one that doeth evil hateth the light, neither cometh to the light, lest his deeds should be reproved.

John 3:19-20 (KJV)

One should invite the Holy Spirit to be present even before one starts to pray and one should pray in accord with the Holy Spirit.

20.9 Fasting As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare

Definition of fasting: Fasting is the voluntary and deliberate abstinence from food for the purpose of concentrated prayer.¹⁹⁰ Fasting will make the believer more spiritually sensitive to the Word of God and hearing His voice which will lead to more power in one's life to combat the forces of Satan.

Fasting is the most important discipline for God's warriors to cultivate. Elizabeth Alves writes,¹⁹¹ "when one couples fasting with prayer, one's prayers transcend

¹⁹⁰ Alves, Elizabeth (1998) *Becoming a prayer warrior*. Ventura, California, USA: Regal Books. P146

¹⁹¹ Alves, Elizabeth (1998) *Becoming a prayer warrior*. Ventura, California, USA: Regal Books. P145

earthly understanding and bring about supernatural breakthrough. One should check one's heart attitude and motive before a fast. Fasting is more than just abstaining from food; it is an act of self-denial for higher purposes.

Moreover when ye fast, be not, as the hypocrites, of a sad countenance: for they disfigure their faces, that they may appear unto men to fast. Verily I say unto you, They have their reward. But thou, when thou fastest, anoint thine head, and wash thy face; That thou appear not unto men to fast, but unto thy Father which is in secret: and thy Father, which seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

Matthew 6:16-18 (KJV)

20.10 The Weapon Of Signs And Wonders As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare

Man should seek supernatural manifestations of Gods' Holy Spirit through man's live - particularly the gifts of the Spirit revealed in 1 Corinthians 12 when dealing with demonic forces.

Jesus spoke of the Holy Spirit as a force flowing like rivers from our innermost being in John 7 and didn't give any indication that this kind of power should be rare. Thus it was not only given to a few scattered spiritual heroes here and there but part of the equipping of every Christian for warfare.

Ephesians 6:18 encourages the believer to pray in the Spirit. as the Holy Spirit flows through these prayers has spiritual warfare factors, driving back the powers of darkness.¹⁹²

¹⁹² Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J.(2010) Methodology of Spiritual Warfare. Self Published SA p41

20.11 Acts Of Faith Based On The Rhema Word As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare

Another method of waging spiritual warfare is through steps of faith. Faith is not an emotional pressure that we muster in hopes that God will grant us our wishes but believing in who God is and in what He has said.

The angel of God appeared to Mary and said:

And, behold, thy cousin Elisabeth, she hath also conceived a son in her old age: and this is the sixth month with her, who was called barren. For with God nothing shall be impossible. And Mary said, Behold the handmaid of the Lord; be it unto me according to thy word. And the angel departed from her.

Luke 1:36-38 (KJV)

Mary properly discerned that the angel's words were not idle chatter or ordinary conversation. She heard, believed, submitted, and her life was changed forever.¹⁹³ *Rhema words will become reality.* When God says that something will happen, it will happen.

Thus, faith is based on the Rhema¹⁹⁴ Word of God to one at a particular time; and on the character of God as revealed in the logos, or written Word of God. According to Hebrews 12:2 *Jesus is the author and the finisher of our faith. Whatever God begins, He will finish.*

¹⁹³ Rema at Christmas (<http://holyspiritempowers.com/2013/12/rhema-words/>)

¹⁹⁴ Simeon used rhema to mean 'revelation'. When elderly Simeon took Jesus in his arms in the temple, he blessed God and declared, "Lord, now you are letting your servant depart in peace, according to your word (rhema); for my eyes have seen your salvation ...," Luke 2:29-30, ESV. Rema at Christmas (<http://holyspiritempowers.com/2013/12/rhema-words/>)

However, one still need to do steps of faith – acts of obedience to what He tells us – to drive back the powers of darkness.¹⁹⁵

20.12 Testimony As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare

One needs to distinguish between preaching and testimony. Prince writes¹⁹⁶ “preaching is presenting the truths of God’s Word directly, but testimony is “witnessing” or “being a witness.”

And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto the death.

Revelation 12:11 (KJV)

One will recall that Jesus often commanded people who had been delivered to go and tell others what God had done for them. One wage offensive spiritual warfare as one “testifies” or give evidence to the power of God in one’s life. The testimony must be based upon the testimony of the Word of God, just as a lawyer in a court bases his arguments on the law of the land.¹⁹⁷

20.13 Verbally Resisting The Darkness As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare

Another way to wage spiritual warfare is by directly rebuking the enemy.

¹⁹⁵ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2010) Methodology of Spiritual Warfare SA Self Published.p42.

¹⁹⁶ Prince, Derek (1987) Spiritual Warfare. DPM, UK: Derek Prince Ministries-International. p93-99

¹⁹⁷ Spiritual Strategies A Manual for Spiritual Warfare Harvestime International Institute p151 (<http://harvestime.org/translations/english/SpiritualStrategies-Warfare.pdf>)

Submit therefore to God. Resist the devil and he will flee from you.
James 4:7 (KJV)

One should aggressively deal with the enemy – as Jesus did in the wilderness. Jesus verbally opposed the devil and used the Word of God to counter his attacks. In Matthew 12:29 Jesus told His disciples to bind the strong man, and then they could spoil his goods

Or else how can one enter into a strong man's house, and spoil his goods, except he first bind the strong man? and then he will spoil his house.

Matthew 12:29 (KJV)

The “strong man” is simply the predominating demonic influence in any situation; and one need to eliminate that influence. It can mean the difference between life and death.¹⁹⁸

20.14 Endurance As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare

But he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved.
Matthew 24:13 (KJV)

In your patience possess ye your souls.
Luke 21:19 (KJV)

Brand writes ¹⁹⁹ “We are a generation of quitters. We quit our places of leadership. We quit our marriages. We drop out of church. We get hurt and discouraged and quit. Don’t we realize that this is part of the warfare.

¹⁹⁸ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2010) Methodology of Spiritual Warfare SA Self Published. p43

¹⁹⁹ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2010) Methodology of Spiritual Warfare SA Self Published..p43

For you have need of endurance, so that when you have done the will of God, you may receive what was promised.

Hebrews 10:36 (KJV)

Satan is in constant hope that God's people circumstances, the tasks set before them, and the daily adversities of life will be too much for them to endure and that they will give up. The winner will always be the one who doesn't give up.

Satan will give up if he knows that God's child will endure. Sometimes the only effective weapon, and often the last to be employed, is just saying, "I will not let this thing go" or, to use the words of Scripture,

They overcame him ... they did not live their life even to death

Revelation 12:11 (KJV)

The weapon of longsuffering mentioned in Galatians 5 will finally convince the devil that he has to give up. Too many Christians quit minutes before the victory. There are many ways to do spiritual warfare, and it encompasses the entire Bible message and the whole of Christian life.

Spiritual warfare is a life lived through embracing the truth and living, aware of the enemy and committed to God. It is knowing that God has left it up to us to drive back the powers of darkness. We need to rebuke the enemy and reduce the evil in the world otherwise it will continue to grow.²⁰⁰

²⁰⁰ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2010) Methodology of Spiritual Warfare SA Self Published.p43

Spiritual warfare is the whole of the Christian experience and not just a fragment of Christianity. It encompasses everything we do. Professor Brand writes “²⁰¹to be a Christian is to be a spiritual warrior. To be a spiritual warrior is to walk consistently and victoriously through life, with Christ at our side.”

20.15 Serving As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare

A surprising means of waging spiritual warfare is through loving service. John 10:10 reveals that the devil’s nature is to steal, kill and destroy.

By meeting the needs of those who have lost possessions, health, or home through war, disasters, or other tragedy, one can undo the works of the enemy.

Serving people in physical ways is not just a social gospel but a command from God. It is spiritual warfare. The destroyers that attempt to bring despair and ultimately, death can be driven out with loving service.

One must feed the hungry, house the homeless, visit the refugees, and assist disaster victims. The Church as God’s representatives on earth can dramatically reduce the works of the enemy by meeting the basic needs of humanity and stopping the strategies the enemy has for destruction. This is effective warfare against the enemy, who always tries to take advantage of adversity.²⁰²

²⁰¹ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2010) Methodology of Spiritual Warfare SA Self Published.

²⁰² Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2010) Methodology of Spiritual Warfare SA Self Published p40-41

20.16 Resisting As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare

Professor Brand writes, ²⁰³“one are called to radical self-knowledge in relation to the Gospel of Christ’s grace. One is called to search out all the corruption, deceit and depravity of one’s heart, one’s hands and one’s tongue. Beleivers are called to know God in fellowship with their blood-brought brothers and sisters.”

To fight Satan is to fight both the world and the flesh. To fight Satan is to fight conformity to and friendship with the world. To fight Satan is to fight the dark lies and lusts of the flesh.²⁰⁴

20.17 The Command To “Resist!”

Ephesians chiefly stresses the attacks of deception that darken and harden people. Satan establishes his moral lordship mainly through lies²⁰⁵ which appeal to old cravings: for god-like autonomy, pleasure, power, self-righteousness, knowledge, glory, love, meaning. His lies also awaken fresh cravings.²⁰⁶

The intensity of our moral slavery to the master of the realm of the old self can hardly be overstated.

²⁰³ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2010) Methodology of Spiritual Warfare SA Self Published p46

²⁰⁴ Powlison, David (1995) Power Encounters, Reclaiming Spiritual Warfare. Baker Books. p112.

²⁰⁵ The epistle most commonly describe the devil in his role as liar and deceiver seeking hegemony over our beliefs and practices. See 1 John 4:1-5, Romans 16:17-20, 2 Timothy 2:26, 1 Timothy 4:1-7, 2 Corinthians 11:3-15, and 2 Corinthians 6:14-7:1

²⁰⁶ Powlison, David (1995) Power Encounters, Reclaiming Spiritual Warfare. Baker Books.

Every intention of the thoughts of the heart is only evil continually.²⁰⁷ But in the most famous and extended passage on spiritual warfare, Ephesians 6:10-20, Paul shows those whom God has made alive how to fight. In a word, he says “Resist”.

He then calls us to put on God’s power and armour. Notice first that Ephesians 6:10-20 does not introduce the subject of spiritual warfare in Paul’s letter. Rather it sums up and crystallizes into a vivid image what Paul teaches throughout the entire letter. Satan’s activities and strategies appear throughout Ephesians. And the in-working and protecting power of God, mentioned in Ephesians 6:10, repeats a theme that also weaves through the entire book.

Each piece of God’s armour has already appeared in various forms in Paul’s teaching and example. We are to resist the powers of darkness that scheme against God’s people.²⁰⁸

The armour described in Ephesians 6:10-20 is the armour that God himself wears, just as the power is God’s own power. When Jesus resisted the devil in the desert, he fought spiritual warfare as found in Deuteronomy. In Ephesians spiritual warfare occurs in the Isaiah mode. Each of the pieces of armour is rooted in the Old Testament, mainly Isaiah²⁰⁹ and discussed in chapter two in detail.

²⁰⁷ See Ephesians 2:1-3, 4:17-19, 22 Ecclesiastes 9:3, and Genesis 6:5

²⁰⁸ The word *anhistemi* (*anhistemi*), to resist, literally means to “stand against”. Paul issues a repeated call to “stand”, “stand against,” and “wrestle against” in 6:11-14.

²⁰⁹ Powlison, David (1995) *Power Encounters, Reclaiming Spiritual Warfare*. Baker Books. p114.

20.18 Setting The Captives Free As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare²¹⁰

Spiritual warfare certainly includes direct confrontation with demonized individuals at times. Jesus told His disciples to go into the entire world and preach the Gospel, and to cast out demons in His name.

Because of sin people are in bondage and need to be set free. In the name of Jesus Christ, we have the authority to expel demons. One should not blame every human problem on demons but should ask God for discernment to know if there is a supernatural bondage at work.

Peter summarizes Jesus' ministry by saying:

How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power: who went about doing good and healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for God was with him.

Acts 10:38

When Jesus healed people, he saw himself as setting them free from the power, and the beatings, of the devil.²¹¹

²¹⁰ Brand, Prof Dr Connie M.J. (2007) *Spiritual Warfare Four – An Analysis of the Methodology of Spiritual Warfare*

²¹¹ Against Böcher, neither this passage nor the evidence in the Synoptics as a whole necessarily implies that all sickness and diseases were seen as being the direct result of Satanic activity (though some obviously were; cf Lk 13:16; 2 Cor 12:7). See O Böcher, *Dämonenabwehr* (Stuttgart: Kohlhammer, 1970), pp. 316-17; idem, *Christus Exorcista* (Katholisches Bibelwerk, 1972), pp. 16,70. But it does entail that all disorders were seen as being at least the indirect result of Satan's having taken the world hostage. Hence in coming against them (by healing), Jesus was coming against one crucial aspect of Satan's reign. For two critical and balanced reviews of Böcher's argument, see L Sabourin, "The Miracles of Jesus II: Jesus and the Evil Powers," *BTB4*, no.2 (1974): 115-75, and Yamauchi, "Magic or Miracle?" pp. 92-93. On the discussion between demonization and physical illness, see Ferguson, *Demonology*, pp. 4-5

To understand Jesus, concerning the Kingdom of God, it is crucial that we recognize that Jesus' view about the rule of Satan and the pervasive influence of his army was not simply a marginal piece of first-century apocalyptic thought that he happened to embrace.

It is rather the driving force behind everything Jesus says and does. Indeed, Jesus' concept of "the Kingdom of God" is centered on these views. For Jesus the kingdom of God means overthrowing the kingdom of Satan.

As Kallas argues: *"This world [in Jesus' view] was a demon-infested world in need of liberation, and the advance of God's sovereignty was in direct proportion to the rout of the demons Exorcisms of demons was the central thrust of the message and activity of Jesus."*²¹²

So too Gustaf Wingren writes:

*When Jesus heals the sick and drives out evil spirits, Satan's dominion is departing and God's kingdom is coming (Matthew 12:22-29). All Christ's activity is therefore a conflict with the Devil (Acts 10:38). God's Son became flesh and became man that he might overthrow the power of the Devil and stripped him from his power (Hebrews 2:14f; 1 John 3:8)."*²¹³

The "Kingdom of God, " as Jesus uses the term, refers to nothing other than his ministry and the ministry he gave to his disciples, of setting up God's rule where previously there had been Satan's rule.

²¹² Kallas, James (1961) *The Significance of the Synoptic Miracles*. Greenwich Conn, Seabury p. 66.

²¹³ Wingren, *Living Word*, p. 53; p. 167.

While others look heavenward for divine intervention, Jesus reports that God's reigning has already begun, in the very midst of them (Luke 17:20-21).

Jesus heals the sick and casts out demons, while others were asking when the promised time would come, (“ **But if it is by the finger of God that I cast out the demons, then the kingdom of God has come to you** “ – Luke 11:20 // Matt 12:28.)

If “ the kingdom of God “ was the central concept of Jesus' ministry and teaching, as all scholars recognize, then the “ **kingdom of Satan** “ was, as an corollary concept, central as well.

As increasing number of scholars are also coming to recognize this.²¹⁴

²¹⁴ The centrality of Satan and the cosmic / spiritual warfare motif in the New Testament received an unprecedented amount of attention just prior to, during and after World War II. The classic statement of this position is Gustaf Aulen's '*Christus Victor*', trans. A Hebert (New York: Macmillan, 1961). See also from this period R. Leivestad, *Christ the Conqueror: Ideas of Conflict and Victory in the New Testament* (London: SPCK, 1954); J.S. Stewart, "On a Neglected Emphasis in New Testament Theology," *SJT* 4 (1951): 292-301; E. Fascher, *Jesus und der Satan*, Hallische Monographien 11 (Halle: Max Niemeyer, 1949); Schlier, *Principalities and Powers*; Wingren, *Living Word*. This view has received increasing attention in recent scholarship. For strong contemporary representative statements or arguments on the centrality of Satan and of the warfare motif in general for the New Testament, see R. Hiers, "Satan, Demons and the Kingdom of God," *SJT* 27 (1974): 35-47; R. Yates, "Jesus and the Demonic in the Synoptic Gospels," *Irish Theological Quarterly* 44 (1977): 39-57; J.D.G. Dunn and G.H. Twelftree, "Demon-Possession and Exorcism in the New Testament," *Churchman* 94, no.3 (1980): 211-15; S.R. Garrett, *The Demise of the Devil: Magic and the Demonic in Luke's Writings* (Minneapolis: Fortress, 1989); H. Kruse, 'Das Reich Satans,' *Bib* 58 (1977): 29-61; Ling, *Significance of Satan*; P.W. Hollenbach, "Help for Interpreting Jesus' Exorcism," *SBLSP*, 1993, ed E.H. Lovering Jr. (Atlanta, Ga.: Scholars Press, 1993), pp. 124-26; M. Kelsey, *Encounter with God: A Theology of Christian Experience* (Minneapolis: Bethany Fellowship, 1972), pp. 242-45; J. Russel, *Devil*, pp. 222, 227, 234-39; Forsyth, *Old Enemy*, pp. 249, 286, 295-96; Langton, *Essentials*, p. 156; Yamauchi, "Magic or Miracle?" pp. 124-25; Kallas, *Jesus and the Power of Satan*; idem, *Synoptic Miracles*; idem, *The Satanward View* (Philadelphia: Westminster 1966); W. Kirchschräger, *Jesu exorzistisches Wirken aus der Sicht des Lukas: Ein Beitrag zur lukanischen Redaktion*, Österreichisches Katholisches Biblische Studien 3 (Klosterneuburg: Österreichisches Katholisches Bibelwerk, 1981); W.G. Kümmel, "Liberation from the Spiritual Powers," in his *Theology of the New Testament*, trans. J.E. Stealy (Nashville: Abingdon, 1973),

Sometimes it is a combination of factors, supernatural and natural portraying to freedom.

A person could have deep-seated wounds which have given entry to demonic powers. In that case, in addition to casting out evil spirits, the wounds need to be healed in Jesus' name. Or, in other cases, the basic problem is the **person's will**. Does he really **want** to be set free? Is he willing to repent, forgive others, set himself against sin, and commit to the truth?

Deliverance should always be linked to repentance and healing. Demons are like flies – they swarm to wounds and corruption. We can either keep swatting the flies away, or repent of the corruption and heal the wounds.

In order to remain free afterward the newly delivered person needs to be built up through the Word of God. This will give him strength to resist further advances and walk in victory.

Some think spiritual warfare is **only deliverance**. Others emphasize pulling **down strongholds** in the heavenly realm.

Still others say spiritual warfare is **doing the works of Jesus - preaching, teaching, and living the truth**. Yet another group claims all this is impractical. They claim we should focus on **feeding the hungry, resisting racism**, and speaking out against social injustice. I believe we have to do it all.

pp. 186ff.; J.J. Rousseau, "Jesus, an Exorcist of a Kind," in SBLSP, 1993, PP. 129-53; Böcher, *Christus Exorcista*. Österreichisches

Pulling down strongholds is only important if people are led to Christ as a result. However, some are deaf to the preaching of the Gospel until we deal with **hindering powers**. And some can't break through into victory until **bondage** is **broken** in their lives. We must do it all as appropriate, and as God leads.

God has **different strategies** for each battle in the Old Testament. Jesus never used the same method twice to heal people. **Stay out of a rut**, and do **anything** the **Holy Spirit leads you to do to meet the needs of people**.

Whenever Darkness is confronted with the bright Light of the Presence Love, Truth and Power of our Lord Jesus Christ through the Anointing of the Holy Spirit in a one to one confrontation as well as in a powerful preaching of the Word, "**demons**" are inclined to come to the fore and be exposed.

Jesus said the reason He came to earth was to do the following in obedience.

The Spirit of the Lord is upon me; because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the broken hearted, to preach deliverance to the captives and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised. To preach the acceptable year of the Lord.

Luke 4:18,19

As this thesis explains we believe that God is not the source of sin and evil – but him that is called the (D) evil and Satan is the originator and expositor of both. It is written:

For this purpose the Son of God was manifested; that He might destroy the works of the devil

1 John 3:8

Jesus also came to “**take away our sins; and in him is no sin.**” (1 John 3:5), although He warns us as Spiritual warfarers:

He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning

1 John 3:8

Jesus delegates His authority to the Church (Body of Christ) as called out ones, to sanctify and equip His saints. See again The Great Commission. Nowhere could we find prove that He recalled it.

21 PRAYERS

Example prayer of renunciation of Occult Practices:

21.1 Confessing And Renouncing

The prayer of renunciation should be prayed for each item listed. When one is unsure of one's participation in certain occult activities, confess to the Lord that one may have been involved in (name occult activity). Involvement in any cult together with everything one did and believed in during the participation; all vows, covenants and pledges made should be confessed and renounced.

Confess and renounce any involvement or participation with sexual spirits, every sexual use of one's body as an instrument of unrighteousness.

If the authenticity of any supernatural gift is doubted, one can pray and seek God for answers, renounce it and ask God to remove the ability.

21.2 Prayer Of Renunciation

“Lord, I confess that I have participated in (name the activity). I ask your forgiveness, and I renounce (state the activity again).”

21.3 Final Prayer Of Confession And Renunciation

“Dear heavenly Father,

I come before You confessing, renouncing and repenting of all these sinful occult practices and the idolatry of seeking information, knowledge, healing, comfort, identity or power from any occult, psychic or secret source. I have sinned against You and Your Word by my involvement with the things on my list. All these practices are the worship of Satan, and I choose now to repent and place Jesus Christ of Nazareth who came in the flesh on the throne of my life. Lord Jesus, I trust you now to fill all the needs of my life that were formerly filled by the occult. Cleanse me from these and any other occultic involvements which I may have knowingly or unknowingly entered into, and release me and my family from their effects. In Jesus’ name.

Amen.

Satan, I renounce you and all your works in my life. By an act of my will and in the strength given to me by Jesus Christ of Nazareth who came in the flesh, I close the doors of my life to all the entry points that you have previously had into my life through my sins. I speak out in the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth who came in the flesh, who defeated you at Calvary, and I say that you no longer have any right to trouble me regarding these occult sins, which have been confessed, repented of and forgiven, and from which I am now being cleansed by the shed blood of the Lord Jesus Christ.”

21.4 Prayers

Below are prayers to get one on the way to lead them into confession, sanctification, healing and deliverance. For more prayers see Annexure A.

21.4.1 Prayer Against Enemies²¹⁵

Pray

1. Against principalities, powers, rulers of darkness and spiritual wickedness in high places that come against the leaders, their families, ministries and the nations they are in. (See Ephesians 6:12)
2. Against occult activity—curses, witchcraft, divination, sorcery—in this manner:
 - a. Bind the strongman. (See Psalm 149; Mathew 12:29; 16:19)

²¹⁵ Alves, Elizabeth (2000) *Becoming A Prayer Warrior*. California, USA: Regal Books. p193-194

- b. Destroy the works of the enemy. (See prayer in “The Name of Jesus As A Method Of Spiritual Warfare” point 19:6.) For this purpose, Jesus was manifested. (See 1 John 3:8)
- c. Ask God to foil the signs of the false prophets and make fools of the diviners. (See Isaiah 44:25)
- d. Send back double the deeds of destruction as they were sent to the leaders, their families and their properties. (See Revelations 18:6)
- e. Ask that the enemies fall into their own traps while the leaders walk by safely. (See Psalm 141:9,10)
- f. Ask the Lord to avenge His people. (See Psalms. 35; 37)
- g. Ask for God’s most perfect will to be accomplished in the leaders.
- h. Ask God to restore that which the enemy tried to steal, kill and destroy.
- i. Ask that the Holy Spirit fill the leaders with the fruit of the Spirit and minister restoration. (See Isaiah 61; Matthew 12:43-45; Galatians. 5:22.)

21.4.2 Prayer From Enemies²¹⁶

O, Father, keep (*names*) as the apple of Your eye; hide them in the shadow of Your wings, from the wicked who despoil them, from their deadly enemies, who surround them. (See Psalm 17:8, 9)

Father, contend with those who contend with (*names*); fight against those who fight against them. For their eyes are toward You, O God, the Lord; in You they take refuge; do not leave them defenceless. Keep them from the jaws of the traps which have been set for them, and from the snares of those who do

²¹⁶ Alves, Elizabeth (2000) *Becoming A Prayer Warrior*. California, USA: Regal Books. p196-197

iniquity. Let the wicked fall into their own nets, while (names) pass by safely. (See Psalms. 35:1; 141:8-10)

21.4.3 Prayer From Temptation²¹⁷

Father, I ask that You not lead Your servants into temptation, but deliver them from evil. (See Matthew 6:13)

I thank You, Father, that no temptation has overtaken (*names*) but such as is common to man; for You are faithful, and will not allow them to be tempted beyond what they are able, but with the temptation, You will provide the way of escape also, that they may be able to endure it. (See 1 Corinthians 10:13)

Thank You, Father, that You give greater grace. Therefore, it says, “God is opposed to the proud, but gives grace to the humble.” I pray, Father, that (*names*) submit to You, that they may resist the devil and he will flee from them. I pray they will draw near to You, and You will draw near to them. I pray that (*names*) cleanse their hands, and purify their hearts, in order that they will not be double minded. (See James 4:6-8)

Father, since Jesus, Himself, was tempted in that which He suffered, He is able to come to the aid of those who are tempted. Since we do not have a High Priest who cannot sympathize with our weaknesses—but one who was tempted in all things as we are, yet without sin—I pray that (*names*) will therefore draw near with confidence to the throne of grace, that they may receive mercy and find grace to help in time of need. (See Hebrews 4:14-16)

²¹⁷ Alves, Elizabeth (2000) *Becoming A Prayer Warrior*. California, USA: Regal Books. p196

21.4.4 Prayer From Overcoming Powers Of Darkness²¹⁸

Thank You, Father, You have given to us the keys to the Kingdom of Heaven, and whatever we bind on earth, shall be bound in heaven, and whatever we loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven. (See Matthew 16:19.)

Father, in Jesus' name, I bind and break off of (*names*) and their families and ministries and all things that concern them: all principalities, powers, rulers of darkness of this world, and spiritual wickedness in high places, all occult activity—curses, witchcraft, divination and sorcery. I destroy the works of the enemy over them, and come against any soul power or emotional ties that do not glorify You.

Father, I ask that You forgive (*names*) for the sins of their youth, all vows, judgments, agreements with lies, and the sins and iniquities of their fathers, back through all generations, including all idle, negative words and curses over them in Jesus' name.

I loose (*names*) and their families and those with them in the ministry, and all things that concern them into the glorious liberty of the children of God, in the precious name of Jesus. If therefore the Son shall make them free, they shall be free indeed.

(Study references: Genesis 26:28; Exodus 20:5,6; 34:7,15; Numbers 30:2; Deuteronomy 5:9,10; 23:21; 24:16; Psalm 25:7; Proverbs 6:16-19; 12:13,14; 13:2,3; Ecclesiastes 5:4-7; Isaiah 28:15,18; Jeremiah. 31:19; 32:18; Daniel 9:4-

²¹⁸ Alves, Elizabeth (2000) *Becoming A Prayer Warrior*. California, USA: Regal Books. p198-199

20; Hosea 10:4; Luke 6:37,38; John 8:36; Romans 2:1-6; Ephesians 6:12,17; 2 Thessalonians. 2:10-12; Hebrews 3:19; 4:11; James 4:11, 12; 1 John 1:7, 9)

Thank You, Father, (*names*) have overcome the enemy because of the blood of the Lamb, and because of the word of their testimony, and they do not love their lives even to death. (See Revelations 12:11)

Thank You, Father, that (*names*) have redemption through Jesus' blood, the forgiveness of their trespasses, according to the riches of Your grace. (See Ephesians 1:7)

Thank You, Father, as the redeemed of the Lord, (*names*) say so, whom Jesus has redeemed from the hand of the adversary. (See Psalm 107:2)

Much more, then, having now been justified by Jesus' blood, (*names*) shall be saved from wrath through Him. For if while they were enemies they were reconciled to You through the death of Your Son, Jesus, much more, having been reconciled, they shall be saved by His life. (See Romans 5:9, 10)

Thank You, Father, that You made Jesus, who knew no sin to be sin on (*name*)'s behalf, that they might become the righteousness of God in Him. Therefore, Jesus also, that He might sanctify them through His own blood, suffered outside the gate. (See 2 Corinthians 5:21; Hebrews 13:12)

I pray. Father, that there be no strange god among (*names*), and that they not worship any foreign god. I pray they will not be bound together with unbelievers; for what partnership have righteousness and lawlessness, or what fellowship has light with darkness. (See Psalm 81:9; 2 Corinthians 6:14)

Thank You, Father, that (*names*) are a temple of God, and the Spirit of God dwells in them. (See 1 Corinthians 3:16)

22 CONCLUSION

We live in a fallen world with a lot of broken people and sadness. At work, at church, mingling with friends one hears a lot of stories and see a lot of brokenness. We need to become more partakers in the things of the Lord. Partakers in prayer and intercession, part takers in the local church where everyone is committed to being a builder rather than a receiver of knowledge only to advance one's personal interest. One need to stop being passive and leave everything for the pastor or the priest to do. We need to become the royal priesthood of all believers.

In this chapter a lot of ground is covered but for me the work of the Holy Spirit as helper and comforter are good news. The Holy Spirit and the Word of God should become our Power source. We need to learn the Word of God, and through confessing the Word of God our faith will be build up. We will experience greater confidence when we understand the Word and if we walk in revelation.

The believer also needs the infilling of the Holy Spirit. Believers must live holy lives that are submitted to the Holy Spirit and this will lead to the assurance of continual victory and breakthroughs for others. Jesus cast out demons through the power of the Holy Spirit – the Holy spirit was his source of power and wisdom.

But the wisdom that is from above is first pure, then peaceable, gentle, and easy to be intreated, full of mercy and good fruits, without partiality, and without hypocrisy.

James 3:17 (KJV)

In the book of Acts one learns that it was the Holy Spirit who gave direction to the early church. He made opportunities for ministry, provided wisdom for the use of resources, gave words to testify and explained what was to come. The early church grew powerfully through the wise decisions they made enabled by the Holy Spirit. The church grew not just through signs and wonders, but by godly wisdom released by the Spirit of the Lord.

Jesus declares even today: *"I will build my church, and the gates of Hades will not overcome it"* (Matthew 16:18)

The Spirit of the Lord GOD is upon me; because the LORD hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound;

Isaiah 61:1 (KJV)

--oOo--



CONCLUSION

It took me three years to get to the point where I could trust the Lord enough to do this thesis. Fear of the unknown has kept me from starting, or should I say, the fear of knowing God more intimately, kept me from not doing this thesis earlier.

The good news is that Jesus came to earth to die for our sins, and that all reconciliation to eternal life comes through Jesus Christ. He was a person of flesh and blood, born of a virgin. He grew up as a child, had a profession as a carpenter. He grew in His physical body and developed in His spiritual awareness. He was tempted but never sin. He was a representative of the divinity of the Triune God.

Through Him the Christian and the unsaved person who gave his life to the Lord will be saved from eternal death, and will be reconciled back to God the Father and have eternal life.

Our walk on earth will not be easy but it is so worth it. The moment that you give your life to the Lord, Satan and his entourage will do everything in their power to deceive you and get you from growing in your faith and intimacy with God.

My aim in this thesis was to highlight that there are two very clear kingdoms, the Kingdom of Light, which is Jesus and the kingdom of Darkness, with is Satan and his entourage. Satan and his entourage is the enemy with main purpose to kill, steal and destroy believers (see John 10:10). Scripture is very clear that there is an enemy and it is of utmost importance to realise that you have an enemy. *“Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour.”*¹ Peter 5:8 (KJV). Why? Because God the Father, Son and Holy Spirit have an enemy and the enemy hates Jesus. It is clear in the Word; a person does not have to look for sources. It is stated in the Word of God that after the Father said *“You are my beloved Son, in You I am well pleased”* (Luke 3:11) the enemy took Jesus and tried to persuade Him to substantiate his claim to be the Messiah through working wonders and spectacular signs. Satan’s temptation to be that of using Jesus’ supernatural power to turn some stones into bread and meet his immediate physical needs.

To be in Jesus’s image as a Christian, because this is what Christianity means, we are wide open for the same attacks as we represent Jesus as earthly creatures. We are the physical carriers of the temple of God, by preaching and living a life using God’s Word as a plumb line. The hope is that through this study, the believers will

realise the reality of sin and that their eyes will be opened for its existence. Sin is real, and it differs from the New Age Movement as they don't believe in sin. The New Age Movement says there is no sin because there is no Satan, for they believe you go into a karma and then to the next karma, reincarnation. Scripture is clear that there is no reincarnation. *"Now this I say, brethren, that flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God; neither doth corruption inherit incorruption. Behold, I shew you a mystery; We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed, In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed. For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality. So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory. O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory? The sting of death is sin; and the strength of sin is the law. But thanks be to God, which giveth us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ. Therefore, my beloved brethren, be ye stedfast, unmoveable, always abounding in the work of the Lord, forasmuch as ye know that your labour is not in vain in the Lord."* 1 Corinthians 15:50-58 (KJV). Thus, there is no incarnation but there is eternal life because of our Lord Jesus Christ and through Him your spirit will never die, your body will wither but the real you, soul and spirit, will combine and go to the place that Jesus prepared for you, eternally with Him.

No works, nor the works of any person, will make any difference to your salvation or anything of that nature, for it is by faith only that you will receive eternal life. Faith is an absolute substance of Christian believer's equipment. It is most important therefore that we should get this great statement into its true setting and perspective,

reminding us, of the great doctrines, the fundamental postulates of the Christian faith (previously considered in this thesis in the “Armour of God”).

So, after a person has repented, and this is also very important, sanctification can begin, your conversion, your rebirth with spiritual fulfilment of the Holy Spirit. Sanctification cannot come to fullness if you are not equipped, equipped by the Word of God, because it is the Word of God and the Holy Spirit in you which brings the truth of the Word, what cleanses you, to do what? To grow in the image, the image of Christ Jesus, as God determined and planned it would be.

Be sure you are in proper relationship to God – Confess all known sins. Seek healing for persistent sin patterns – allow others to read your spiritual barometer – the higher God calls you to leadership, the higher your standard of holiness should be. One of the major principles for Christian Warfare is to avoid the following pitfalls: Ignorance, fear, underestimating the enemy, spiritual arrogance, lack of personal intercession, unguided prayer, poor timing, empty rhetoric, no covering, moving out alone.

God created man with everything he needs in order to be spiritual. Passivity of the spirit is closely associated with passivity of mind. Because there is a vital relationship between mind and spirit, a wrong thought generally reveals a wrong spirit and a wrong spirit engenders a wrong thought. This form of passivity may come about through the following: Ignorance of the laws of the spirit, especially how to maintain the freedom of the spirit. Wrong mental conclusions. Mixing up feelings (the physical, soulish and spiritual) resulting in not knowing which for example, (a) putting the spiritual down to soulish or physical, or (b) attributing to the spiritual that which is natural and physical.

Depending upon the soulish life instead of the spiritual, through lack of knowledge of the difference between them. Also, by quenching one's spirit through ignoring the spiritual sense, for the mind should be able to read "the sense of the spirit" as clearly as it does the senses of seeing, hearing, smelling, and all other senses of the body. There is a knowledge by the mind, and a knowledge by the spirit, hence, a sense of the spirit, which we should learn to understand. It should be read, used, cultivated, and when there is a weight on the spirit of the believer, he should be able to recognise it and know how to get rid of it.

The body or mind take strain from drainage and exhaustion by constant activity or excessive use. It is important that the mind and body must be released from strain before the spirit can be fully operative. (note the experience of Elijah 1 Kings 19:4-5, 8-9a).

Nominal "Christians" who have mislabelled themselves, for they are not part of God's Kingdom, are often agents of the Adversary. God is well aware of these subversives, but He has indicated that He will permit them until the harvest. The harvest period is beginning. In order to have a complete harvest, the good news of the Kingdom will be preached to all the nations.

My main purpose in doing the research and in writing this book, is to spread a very important message, it is the joyous message which through faith, *through faith* create an anticipation by people, an expectation of a better life to come, than the one they have on earth. A life worth living, that will lift their eyes from the actual physical, earthly life, with the anticipation that they will one day be in complete fullness and perfection with God the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit, in God's Kingdom. For

now, God keep us on earth to expand the Kingdom of God, working and expanding the Kingdom of God while still here.

In order to start you on this journey, you need to confess your sins and repent from them. Repentance is very important, for after you have repented, sanctification can begin. Your conversion and your rebirth with spiritual fulfilment of the Holy Spirit. Sanctification cannot come in fullness if you are not equipped, equipped by the Word of God, because it is the Word of God and the Holy Spirit in you which brings the truth of the Word, that cleanse you. To do what? God brings you closer to Jesus through the Holy Spirit to grow in the image, in the image of Christ Jesus, as Father God determined and planned it would be before He formed you in the womb.

It is important that people should know that when they make the choice through the calling of the Lord Jesus that the Holy Spirit must first make you ready and prepare you. We can't from ourselves first say, "I want to be a Christian", Father God take your life, move you to Jesus through the Holy Spirit and when that has happened you get a degree, a gift of rebirth of faith in your spirit, and that faith in the Holy Spirit is how the Christian continues and will build his life. It is a hopeful future expectancy which is based in a core, the core of love.

The love of God, from God, for us as His children, the love of Jesus Christ, who paid the full price on the cross for us to be saved and cleansed of our sins, transgressions and iniquities. Like many believers believe He is no longer on that cross, He rose from it, and how did He rise? *And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto the death. Revelation 12:11 KJV.* He rose through the resurrection power of the Blood of the

Lamb and the powerful testimony on our lips. These are two strong points for us as Christians to hold onto.

We are mirror images of Jesus Christ, the Lord, here on earth. After reading this book, believers, who call themselves Christians, part of the Church of Christ or part of the Body of Christ, should realise that they are being read like a book, that their behaviour and who they are, is read like a book.

Believers have the full authority of Christ Jesus, and I am saying they are being read like a book, by the forces of darkness and by the angels of God, and by mankind, saved and unsaved, because in the spiritual dimension you can't hide who you are.

In the spiritual dimension the Lord Jesus Christ, the Holy Spirit, God the Father and the angels, they all know your spiritual standing. You can say what you want and pretend like you want, they know spiritually what your situation is and what is going on in your heart. Jesus says in *Jeremiah 17:10* "*how wicked is the human heart, who will understand his own heart but Me?*" He says he examines the hearts and kidneys.

A very important clue for Christians in the Body of Christ aspiring to be the Bride of Christ is to take from this conclusion that we need to ask daily, "Lord Jesus, please examine my heart every day." To have such a close and intimate relationship with the Lord, that he can tell you directly in your spirit or through visions and dreams or through Scripture or through another Christian which the Lord will send to you, you will know by the facts that it is the real truth.

If the Lord have a message for you or want to let you know something, you will have the confirmation that it is a message from the Lord.

The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised, To preach the acceptable year of the Lord.

Luke 4:18-19 (KJV)

--oOo--



BIBLIOGRAPHY

BOOKS

Adams, Jay E (1970) *Competent To Counsel, Introduction to Nouthetic Counselling*. Grand Rapids Michigan; Zondervan.

Adams, Marilyn M and Robert M (1990) *The Problem of Evil*. Oxford; Oxford University Press.

Adapted from "The Work of the Spirit and Biblical Counseling" in Introduction to Biblical Counseling, © 1994 by John MacArthur and Wayne Mack, editors.

Alexander, W M (1902) Demonic Possession in the New Testament. Edinburgh; T. and T. Clark.

Alves, Elizabeth (1998) Becoming A Prayer Warrior. Ventura, California, USA: Regal Books.

Anatolion, K and Brown, Stephen F (2009) World Religions. Catholicism & Orthodox Christianity. New York: Chelsea House

Anderson Niel T. (1990) Victory over the Darkness Vereeniging RSA, Christian Art Publishers.

Anderson, Neil T (2003) Discipleship Counseling. California; Regal Books.

Arterburn, Stephen, (April 12, 1987 - 1st Edition) Growing Up Addicted, USA: Ballantine Books

Balleck, Cammi Ph.D. CMT (2011) Making Happy Happen . Mustang, Oklahoma: Tate Publishing, LLC.

Barnhouse, Donald Grey (1965) The Invisible War. Grand Rapids, Michigan; Zondervan.

Basham, Don W (1991) Can a Christian Have a Demon? Kirkwood; Impact Christian Books.

Batchelor, Mary (1993) *Opening up the Bible*. Hatfield Pretoria: JL van Schaik Publishers.

Beeson, Ray & Mills, Kathi (1993) *Spiritual Warfare and Your Children*. Nashville, Tennessee; Nelson.

Bennett, William J. (1996) *The Book of Virtues*. New York, NY: Simon & Schuster

Berkhof, H (1962) *Christ and the Powers*, trans J.H. Yoder. Scottdale, Penn.; Herald.

Berkhof, Lious (1951) *The Kingdom of God*. Grand Rapids; Eerdmans.

Betz, H.D (1968) *Jesus as Divine Man*, F.T Trotter (ed.). Jesus and the Historian. Philadelphia; Westminster Press.

Bevere, John (1995) *The Devil' Door*. Lake Mary, Fla.; Charisma House.

Billheimer, Paul E (1981) *Destined to Overcome*. Minneapolis, MN; Bethany House.

Black, Dr L (2014) *Teaching Manual Volume 5* Self Published SA used with permission

Black, Dr L. (2014) *Section A: Jesus The Epitome of Freedom and Restoration*. Pretoria, RSA.

Bloomer, George G (2003) *The Battle Plan, Strategies for Engaging in Spiritual Warfare*. Denver CO; Legacy Publishers International.

Blumenthal, David (1993) Facing the Abusing God: A Theology of Protest. Philadelphia; WJKP.

Bobgan, Martin & Deidre (1981) The Psychological Way: The Spiritual Way.

Borg, M.J (1998) Conflict, Holiness and Politics. Trinity Press International

Bounds E M. Satan – his personality-power-overthrow. Baker Book House.

Bounds, E M. Guide to Spiritual Warfare. Whitaker House.

Boyd, Gregory A. (1997) God at War, The Bible & Spiritual Conflict. Downers Grove, Illinois: InterVarsity Press.

Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. The Warfare Theme of Jesus' Ministry As seen in The Old and New Testament

Brand, Prof Connie (2004) Spiritual Warfare Conference, University of Pretoria.

Brand, Prof Dr CMJ (18 February 2012) Mini Conference. South Africa: Self Published.

Brand, Prof Dr Connie MJ (2005) Spiritual Warfare Four An Analysis of the Methodology of Spiritual Warfare Self Published SA.

Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2013) - With permission

Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. – Lecturer Class notes

Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. – With permission

Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2000) Spiritual Warfare Three, The Sin War. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.

Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2007) *Spiritual Warfare Six, Satan in Context*. RSA, Pretoria: Self-publication.

Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2007) *The Sin War*

Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2008) *The Outline on the Warfare Theme of Jesus' Ministry*

Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2010) *Methodology of Spiritual Warfare SA Self Published*.

Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2012) *The Kingdom Principles of the Bible as Root to Spiritual Warfare*

Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2014) *Spiritual Warfare Volume I - Identifying Satan as the Enemy of the God in the Bible*

Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2015) *Spiritual Warfare Volume II - An Exposition on the Doctrine of Satan*

Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2016) *Spiritual Warfare Volume III - Satan in Context: Expounding the Hierarchy and Strategems of the Demonological Kingdom of Darkness*

Bright, John (1953) *The Kingdom of God*. Nashville; Abingdon.

Brooks, Thomas (1984) *Precious Remedies Against Satan's Devices*. The Banner of Truth Trust.

Brown Rebecca (1992) *Prepare for War*. New Kensington, PA; Whitaker House.

Brown, John Pairman (1987) *The Kingdom of God*, Encyclopedia of Religion, ed. Mircea Eliade. New York; Macmillan.

Brown, R (1967) *Gospel Miracles, New Testament Essays*. Garden City, N.Y.: Doubleday.

Brown, R (1972) *Sorcery, Demons and the Rise of Christianity: From Late Antiquity into the Middle Ages*, in *Religion and Society in the Age of Augustine*. New York; Harper & Row.

Brown, R MD (1897) *Prepare for War*. New Kensington: Whitaker House.

Brown, R MD (1986) *He came to set the Captives free*. New Kensington: Whitaker House,

Brown, R MD (1990) *Becoming a Vessel of Honour*. New Kensington: Whitaker House.

Bubeck, Mark I. (1984) *Overcoming the Adversary*. USA: The Moody Bible Institute of Chicago.

Bubeck, Mark I. (1998) *Raising Lambs Among Wolves*. Chicago, Illinois: Alpha an imprint of Paternoster Publishing.

Bubeck, Mark I. (2013) *The Adversary: The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. N Lasalle Boulevard, Chicago: Moody Publishers.

Bucbeck, Mark I. (1997) *Raising Lambs among Wolves* How to protect your children from the influence of evil. Cubria, UK: Alpha an imprint of Paternoster Publishing.

Bufford, Rodger K (1988) *Counseling and the Demonic*. Dallas, Texas; Word.

Caird, G B (1956) *Principalities and Powers: A Study in Pauline Theology*. Oxford; Clarendon.

Carr, W (1981) *Angels and Principalities*, Society for New Testament Studies Monograph Series, no. 42. Cambridge; Cambridge University Press.

Charlton T Lewis and Charles Short, *A Latin Dictionary* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1879, impression of 1984).

Christenson, Evelyn (1991) *Battling the princes of Darkness*. England; Scripture Press.

Clark J (2001) *Apostolic Equipping Dimension*. Hallandale, Florida USA: Spirit Life Publishing.

Comfort, Philip W. , Elwell, Walter A. (2001) *Tyndale Bible Dictionary*. USA, Illinois: Tyndale House Publishers, Inc.

Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing.

Cortés, J B & Gatti, F M (1975) *The Case Against Possessions and Exorcisms*. New York; Vantage.

Cross, David (2008) *God's Covering A Place of Healing*. Lancaster England: Sovereign World Ltd.

Dalton, W J (1965) *Christ's Proclamation to the Spirits*, *Analecta Biblica*, no. 23. Rome; Pontifical Biblical Institute Press.

Davies, W D & Allison, D C (1988) *A Critical and Exegetical Commentary on the Gospel According to Saint Matthew*, 3 vols., ICC. Edinburgh; T & T Clark.

Depending upon whether one is a creationist (God creates each new soul afresh at birth) or a traducianist (the soul is *transmitted from one's parents*) he may wish to include or exclude the human spirit from the inherited *phusis*. I do not wish to discuss this issue here, but it is fair to say that a more-or-less traducianist position has been presupposed. At least, *phusis* has been thought to include the genetic and an other element received at birth. When Christ says "out of the heart" proceeds evil of every description (Luke 6:45; 15-19), he refers to what emanates from man's inherited nature (*phusis*), not what is learned. Man does not learn his responses as a passive, neutral being. Rather, he is an active, committed organism with a nature disposed toward sin because he is at enmity toward God. Sinful response patterns are inevitable, but the particular patterns developed, the particular styles of sinful expression, are not; they are learned.

Derek Prince Ministries, Radio program, Impact Radio, South Africa (March 2012)

Devil is actually derived from the Greek word “diabolos, which means “slanderer”

Dickason Fred C (1990) Demon Possession & the Christian. Westchester, Illinois; Crossway Books.

Dickason, Fred C. (1975) Angels elect & Evil. United States of America, Chicago: Moody Press.

Enns, Paul P. (1997) Systematic Theology, The Moody Handbook of Theology. USA, Chicago: Moody Press.

Etymology KyioCj {hagios....}

Ferrel, Dr. Anna Mendez (2010) Seated in Heavenly Places. United States of America: Voice of the Light Ministries.

Ferrell, Dr. Ana Mendez (2012) Apocalypse. USA: Published By Ana Mendez Ferrell, Inc.

For discussions see Twelftree, Jesus the Exorcist, pp91-97; van der Loos, Miracles of Jesus.

Frangipane, Francis (1994) The Divine Antidote. USA: Arrow Publications.

Garret, Susan (1939) The Demise of the Devil: Magic and the Demonic in Luke's Writings. Minneapolis; Fortress.

Geinnett, R Douglass (1995) *Evil and the Evidence for God: The Challenge of John Hick's Theodicy*. Temple Univ. Press.

Gibson, Noel & Phyl (1992) *Deliver our children from the evil one*. Tonbridge Kent, England: Sovereign World.

Gibson, Phyl & Noel (1993) *Evicting Demonic Intruders*. West Sussex, United Kingdom: New Wine Press

Gibson, Winter (1958) *Love and Conflict*. Garden City; Doubleday and Company.

Gibson. Noel & Phyl (1993) *Evicting Demonic Intruders*. West Sussex, England; New Wine Press.

Godwin, Joscelyn (1981) *Mystery Religions in the Ancient World*. NY; Harper & Row.

Godwin, R (1997) *Exposing Witchcraft in the Church*. Orlando; Creation House.

Goll, James W. (2001) *Praying for Israel's Destiny: Effective Intercession for God's Purposes in the Middle East*. Grand Rapids, MI: Chosen Books.

Gordon, Clark H. (1961) *Religion, Reason, and Revelation*. Philadelphia; Presbyterian and Reformed.

Gray, John (1979) *The Biblical Doctrine of the Reign of God*. Edinburgh; T & T Clark.

Grein, Janny (2003) Called, Appointed and Anointed, Prepare Your Life to Be a Vessel for the Anointing and Glory of God. Tulsa Oklahoma; Harrison House.

Griffin, David (1991) God, Power and Evil; Evil Revisited: Responses and Reconsiderations. Albany; SUNY Press.

Gruss, Edmond (1994) The Ouija Board: A Doorway to the Occult. Phillipsburg, NJ; Presbyterian & Reformed.

Hammond, Frank D (1991) Demons and Deliverance in the ministry of Jesus. Impact Christian Books.

Heim, Karl (1961) Jesus the World's Perfecter. USA: Muhlenberg Press.

Hickey, M (2000) Breaking Generational Curses, Overcoming the Legacy of Sin in Your Family. Oklahoma, Harrison House.

Hickey, Marilyn (2000) Breaking Generational Curses. Tulsa, Oklahoma; Harrison House.

Hirschman, Jane R. and Munter, Carol H., Overcoming Overeating (2008) USA, Da Capo Press, Incorporated

Horrobin, Peter (2008) Healing through Deliverance, The foundation and practice of deliverance ministry. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Limited

Horrobin, Peter J (1991) Healing through deliverance Lancaster England Sovereign World Limited

Huggins, Larry (2003) The Blood Speaks. Tulsa, Oklahoma: Harrison House Inc.

Hyford, Jack and Eastman, Dick (1989) *Dick Love on Its Knees*. Old Tappan, NJ; Chosen Books..

Ing, Richard (1996) *Spiritual Warfare*. New Kensington, PA; Whitaker House.

Iran has fastest evangelical population in the world (
<http://blog.godreports.com/2016/03/iran-has-fastest-growing-evangelical-population-in-the-world/>)

Isleib, Mary Alice (1991) *Effective Fervent Prayer*. Minneapolis, MI: Mary Alice Ileib Ministries. Preface.

J. C. Ryle, *Practical Religion* (Darlington: Evangelical, 2001), 73.

Jackson, (1988) *Evangelical Theological Society*. Mississippi, USA.

Jacob, E (1958) *Theology of the Old Testament*. London.

Jacobs, Cindy (1994) *Possessing the Gates of the Enemy*. Grand Rapids, MI; Chosen Books.

Jim Williams, "Seoul Secrets, Junie 1989.

Joyner, Rick (2002) *Breaking the Power of Evil*. Shippenburg, PA; Destiny Image Publishers.

Jung, Carl Gustav (1977) *Psychology and the Occult*. Princeton University Press.

Kaiser, Christopher B. (1982) *The Doctrine of God*. United States of America: Crossway Books.

Kallas, James (1961) *The Significance of the Synoptic Miracles*. Greenwich Conn, Seabury

Kallas, James. *The Significance of the Synoptic Miracles*. Greenwich, Conn.; Seabury.

Kanaan Ministries Teaching Manuals

Kanaan Ministries. *Healing our wounded hearts Part 1: Man's Purpose and the Gifts of the Spirit*.

Kent, Homer A. Jr. (1981) *Studies in the Gospel of Mark*. Winona Lake, Indiana: BMH Books.

Kinnaman, Gary D. *How to Overcome the Darkness, Personal Strategies for Spiritual Warfare*. Grand Rapids, Michigan; Chosen Books.

Koch, K E (1972) *Christian Counseling and Occultism*. Labuschagne, C J (1966) *The Incomparability of Yahweh in the Old Testament*, POS 5. Leiden; E.J. Brill.

Kylstra, Chester & Betsy (2001) *Restoring the Foundation – An Integrated Approach to Healing Ministry*, 2nd Edition. Florida; Proclaiming His Word Publications.

La Fontane, J.S (1985) *Initiation: Ritual Drama and Secret Knowledge*. UK; Penguin Books.

LaDage, Alta J (1978) *Occult Psychology: A Comparison of Jungian Psychology and the Modern Quabalah*. St. Paul, MN; Llewellyn.

- Ladd, George E (1964) *Jesus and the Kingdom*. New York; Harper and Row.
- LaHaye, Tim (1997) *Jesus Who is He?* Fulham Palace Road, London: Marshall Pickering Publishers.
- Lambrecht, J (1978) *The Sayings of Jesus on Nonviolence*. Louvain.
- Langton, Edward (1949) *Essentials Of Demonology*. Ams PressInc.
- Larkin, Clarence (1918) *Dispensational Truth or God's Plan and Purpose in the Ages* Glenside Pa, USA: Rev Clarence Larkin Est.
- Larkin, Clarence (1920) *Dispensational Truth*. USA, Glenside, Pa: Rev Clarence Larkin Est.
- Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. USA, Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers
- Lawson, LeRoy (1973) *Victory in Jesus*. Cincinnati, Ohio: The Standard Publishing Company.
- Leivestad, R (1954) *Christ the Conqueror: Ideas of Conflict and Victory in the New Testament*. New York; Macmillan.
- Levenson, Jon (1988) *Creation and the Persistence of Evil: The Jewish Drama of Divine Omnipotence*. San Francisco; Harper & Row.
- Lewis C.S. from a letter to Mary Neylen, 20 January 1942
- Lewis, C.S (1979) *God in the Dock "Myth Becomes Fact"*. Grand Rapids; Eerdmans.

Life Application Study Bible. (2004) Wheaton, Illinois: Tyndale House Publishers Inc.

Like “the disease germs of modern medicine,” H.A. Kelly argues, demons in the New Testament are “definitely parasitic in nature” Kelly, H.A (1985) *The Devil at Baptism: Ritual, Theology and Drama*. Itchaca; Cornell University Press.

Lindsay, Gordon *Satan Fallen Angels and Demons*. Dallas Texas, USA: Christ for the Nations.

Ling, T (1961) *The Significance of Satan: New Testament Demonology and Its Contemporary Significance*. London; SPCK.

Lloyd-Jones, D Martyn (1987) *Exposition of Ephesians*. Grand Rapids, MI; Baker.

Lutzer, Erwin W (1996) *The Serpent of Paradise, The Incredible Story of How Satan’s Rebellion Serves God’s Purpose*. Chicago; Moody Press.

Lutzer, Erwin W. Christian Art Publishers (2002) *Seven Snares of the Enemy Breaking Free From The Devil’s Grip*

MacGregor, G H C (1955) *Principalities and Powers: The Cosmic Background of Paul’s Thought*, NTS 1.

Machen, J Gresham (1923) *Christianity and liberalism* New York: Macmillan

Mahaney, C.J. with Meath, Kevin (2002) *The Cross-Centered Life: Keeping the Gospel the Main Thing*. USA, Colorado Springs: Multnomad Books

Man After Redemption; Bucbeck, Mark I. (1997) Raising Lambs among Wolves
How to protect your children from the influence of evil. Cubria, UK: Alpha an
imprint of Paternoster Publishing.

Manning, Brannan (1992) The Signature of Jesus. Portland, Oregon UK:
Multnomah Press.

Martin Luther, this time not from a door, but from a lecture by Gordon Rupp
years ago.

Martin, Walter (1992) The Kingdom of the Cults. Minneapolis, Minnesota;
Bethany House Publishers.

Mc Clung, Floyd (1996) The Healing Power of Love. Kingsway Publishing

Mc Neal, Reggie (1998) Revolution in Leadership. Nashville, TN: Abingdon
Press.

McClain Alva J (1968) The Greatness of the Kingdom. Chicago; Moody.

McFarlane, Graham W. P. (1996) Christ and the Spirit. Carlisle, Cumbria UK:
Paternoster Press.

McLean, Adam (1989) The Triple Goddess. Grand Rapids, MI; PhanesPress.

Michaels, Ramsey J. (1976) Jesus and the Unclean Spirits, in Demon
Possession, ed. J.W. Montgomery. Minneapolis: Bethany.

Mitchell, Edwin & Jody (1991) The Two Headed Dragon of Africa. U.S.A; Josiah
Publishing.

Moltmann, Jürgen (1993) *The Crucified God: the cross of Christ and the foundation and criticism of Christian theology*. Minneapolis; Fortress.

Morris, Leon (1994) *The Cross of Jesus*. Grand Rapids, MI; Eerdmans Publishing.

Morrison, C D (1960) *The Powers That Be: Earthly Rulers and Demonic Powers in Romans 13:1-7*, SBT 2/29. Naperville, Ill.; Allenson.

Murphy, Ed (2003) "Demonized," *The Reality. The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, Revised and Updated. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc.

Murphy, Ed (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc.

Myers, C (1988) *Binding the Strong Man: A Political Reading of Mark's Story of Jesus*. Maryknoll, N.Y.; Orbis.

North, Gary (1986) *Unholy Spirits: Occultism and New Age Humanism*. Fort Worth; Dominion Press.

Olukoya, Dr D K (1999) *Overpowering Witchcraft*. Lagos, Nigeria: MFM Press.

Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2004) *Woman! Thou Art Loosed*. Yaba, Lagos: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries.

One who serves as a high-level minister with special rights, privileges and access to the deity employing him. A mediator between God and His people. The role the New Testament church fills as the New Creation priesthood of the

Lord Jesus Christ. Price, Paula A(PhD) (2006) New Kensington, PA: The Prophets Dictionary

Page, Sydney H T (1995) Powers of Evil. Grand Rapids, Michigan; Baker Book House.

Page, T (1995) Powers of Evil: A Biblical Study of Satan and Demons. Grand Rapids, MI; Baker.

Pendley, H (1976) Views of the Demonic in Recent Religions Thought. Ph.D. diss. Southern Baptist Theological Seminary.

Penn-Lewis, Jessie (1996) Secrets of Spiritual Warfare. Whitaker House Publication.

Pentecost, J Dwight (1996) Your Adversary The Devil. Grand Rapids, MI; Kregel Publications.

Peretti, Frank (1989) Piercing the Darkness. Westchester, Ill.; Crossway.

Peterson, M (1982) Evil and the Christian God. Grand Rapids, MI; Baker Book House.

Phelps, Janice and Nourse, Alan, The Hidden Addiction and How to Get Free (1986) Boston, Little, Brown

Powlison, David (1995) Power Encounters, Reclaiming Spiritual Warfare. Baker Books.

- Price, Paula A(PhD) (2006) *The Prophets Dictionary*, Whitaker House 1030 Hunt Valley Circle New Kensington PA - A male ruler, established on a throne. Kings were initially believed to rule by divine authority and supernatural grace.
- Price, Paula A. (PhD) (2006) A divine functionary who serves as the spokesperson for a deity. New Kensington, PA: *The Prophets Dictionary*
- Prince, D. (2003) *War in Heaven*. New Zealand: Derek Prince Ministries
- Prince, Derek (1987) *Spiritual Warfare*. DPM, UK: Derek Prince Ministries International.
- Prince, Derek (1995) *Baptism in the Holy Spirit*. Christchurch, New Zealand: Derek Prince Ministries.
- Prince, Derek (1998) *They shall expel demons*. UK: Derek Prince Ministries.
- Prince, Derek (1999) *Derek Prince on Experiencing God's Power*. Charlotte, North Carolina, USA: Whitaker House.
- Prince, Derek (2013) *Pulling Down Strongholds*. Charlotte, North Carolina: Whitaker House.
- Robinson, William (1945) *The Devil and God*. New York; Abingdon-Cokesbury.
- Rogers, Carl R (1980) *A Way of Being*. Boston; Houghton Mifflin.
- Rohr, Richard (1989) "Prayer as a Political Activity," *Radical Grace* 2/2 March-April:
- Rollo, May (1967) *The Art of Counseling*. NY; Abingdon.

Roth, John K (1981) A Theodicy of Protest in Encountering Evil: live options in Theodicy. Atlanta, John Knox, p.10

Rowe, William L (2001) God and the Problem of Evil. Oxford.

Ryle, J.C. forward by Lloyd-Jones, Martyn D. (1952) Holiness, Its nature, Hindrances, Difficulties and Roots. Great Britain; Burleigh Press.

Ryrie, Charles C. (1999) Basic Theology. USA, Chicago: Moody Press.

Schnobelen, William (1990) Wicca, Satan's Little White Lie. Chino, CA; Chick Publications.

Schottroff, Luise & Stegemann, Wolfgang (1986) Jesus and the Hope of the Poor. Maryknoll, N.Y.; Orbis Books.

Sherman Dean, (1995) Spiritual Warfare for every Christian, How to live in victory and retake the land. Seattle WA; Ywam Publishing.

Sherrer, Quin & Garlock, Ruthanne (1991) A Woman's guide to Spiritual Warfare. Ann Arbor, MI; Servant Publications.

So argues Kallas, J (1961) The Significance of the Synoptic Miracles. Greenwich; Seabury.

Spence, Lewis (1993) Encyclopedia of Occultism & Parashycology. U S: Carol Publishing Group

Spickard, MD Anderson Jr. (2005) Dying for a Drink: What You and Your Family Should Know About Alcoholism. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc.

Stewart, Dr. Mark Allan (2003) *Releasing the Power of Your Spiritual Gifts*. Lincoln, NE: iUniverse, Inc.

Subritzky Bill (1991) *How to Cast out Demons and Break Curses* NZ Blockhouse Bay, Auckland: Dove Ministries.

Symington, Ken (2011) *Loved Like Never Before: Discovering the Father Heart of God*. UK, Lancaster: Sovereign World Ltd.

Tan, Peter (2008) *The Anointing of the Holy Spirit*. Canberra Australia: Peter Tan Evangelism.

Taylor, David E (2011) *My Trip to Heaven Face to Face with Jesus*. USA: Destiny Image Publishers.

Thiering, Barbara (1992) *Jesus the Man*. Great Britain: Corgi Books.

This again raises the issue of "territorial spirits" Boyd, Gregory A. (1997) *God at War: The Bible & Spiritual Conflict*. Downers Grove, Illinois: InterVarsity Press.

Unger, Merrill F *Demons in the World Today*.

Unpublished paper by Iver Larsen, 1997

Uzorma, Lyke Nathan. *Occult Grand Master, Now in Christ*.

Van der Loos, Hendrik (1965) *Miracles of Jesus*. Leiden: E. J. Brill.

Wagner C Peter (1992) *Warfare Prayer*. Ventura, California; Regal Books.

Walter Wink (1992) *Engaging the Powers, Discernment and Resistance in a World of Domination*. Minneapolis; Fortress Press.

Warner, Timothy M (1991) *Spiritual Warfare, Victory over the Powers of This Dark World*. Wheaton, Illinois; Crossway Books.

White, Thomas B (1990) *The Believer's Guide to Spiritual Warfare*. Servant Publications.

William Temple, quoted in John Stott, *The Cross of Christ* (Downers Grove, Ill.: InterVarsity Press, 1986), 197.

Wink, Walter (1992) *Engaging The Powers, Discernment and Resistance in a World of Domination*. Minneapolis; Fortress Press.

Witherington, Ben (1997) *The Acts of the Apostles, A Socio-Rhetorical Commentary*. Cambridge, UK; The Paternoster Press.

INTERNET RESOURCES

"The Shepherd of Hermas" was a religious literary work of the second and third centuries and was considered a valuable book by many early Christians. What is the Shepherd of Hermas and should it be in the Bible?
(<https://gotquestions.org/Shepherd-of-Hermas.html>)

A Biblical understanding of Fivefold Ministry
(<http://healing2thenations.net/papers/fivefold.htm>) Date: 27/06/2016

A Peep Into The Darkened World Of Satan's Kingdom By Moshood Fayemiwo
(<http://nigeriaworld.com/feature/publication/fayemiwo/030413.html>)

A Series of Answers to Common Questions by Sam Shamoun
(http://www.answering-islam.org/Shamoun/q_eat_sleep_weep.htm)

Adapted from Derek Prince teachings “The Fear of the Lord” Derek Prince Ministries
(www.derekprince.org/publisher/file.aspx?id=1000021515)

American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language, Fifth Edition.
Definition of Santeria
(<http://www.thefreedictionary.com/Santeria>)

An Encyclopaedia for Christianity: Repentance
(www.theopedia.com/Repentance)

At War Against The Big 4 By ACMTC Staff
(<http://www.aggressivechristianity.net/articles/big4.htm>)

Baptism definition
(<https://www.google.co.za/webhp?sourceid=chromeinstant&ion=1&espv=2&ie=UTF-8#q=baptism>)

Baptism in the Holy Spirit

(<http://www.allaboutgod.com/baptism-in-the-holy-spirit.htm>)

Beelzebub

(<http://www.gotquestions.org/who-Beelzebub.html>)

Bible verses for the sick: 20 comforting scripture quotes

(<http://www.whatchristianswanttoknow.com/bible-verses-for-the-sick-20-comforting-scripture-quotes/>)

Black Magic

(http://www.occultopedia.com/b/black_magic.htm)

Bloodlines. Spiritual Roots of Physical Illness and Disease By Morne Fouche

(<http://www.bloodlines.co.za/articles/spiritual-roots-of-physical-illnesses-and-diseases.html>)

Book of Job

(<https://www.gotquestions.org/Book-of-Job.html>)

Book of Matthew Explained

(<http://www.bible-studys.org/Bible%20Books/Matthew/Book%20of%20Matthew.html>)

Caffeine Addiction – Is it a Sin?

(<https://compellingtruth.org/caffeine-addiction.html>)

Chief Activities of Satan and Demons

(<http://www.christian-faith.com/spiritualwarfare/demonactivities.html>)

China Population Clock

(<http://countrysmeters.info/en/China>) 14 October 2016

Cults

(<http://www.apologeticsindex.org/c09.html>)

Cults! An Outline Analysis By Matt Slick

(<https://carm.org/cults-outline-analysis>)

Dangers of the Occults

(<http://www.bible-knowledge.com/dangers-of-the-occult/>)

Dealing with Anger...God's Way By Joyce Meyer

(http://www.joycemeyer.org/articles/ea.aspx?article=dealing_with_anger_gods_way)

Definition - quasi-religious.

(<http://www.thefreedictionary.com/quasi-religious>). .

Definition of communion

(<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/communion>)

Definition of eucharist Christian Science spiritual communion with God

(<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/Eucharist>)

Demons in the Bible – Different Types and How They Attack By Dr. Elmar Towns

(<http://www.bible-sprout.com/articles/hell/demons>)

Derek Prince Ministries International (1977) How to become a new creation.

(www.google.co.za/url?sa=t&rct=j&q=derek%20prince%20god%20saves&source=web&cd=3&ved=0CEsQFjAC&url=http%3A%2F%2Fwww.derekprince.org%2FPublisher%2FFile.aspx%3FID%3D1000021892&ei=5Nf1T--XGZSHhQe-l4THBg&usg=AFQjCNEExEI-AudNCmxnGWoiM7fkUuGyJVA)

Destruction of Christians

(www.bloodlines.co.za/Articles-DestructionOfChristians.htm)

Dictionary of Bible Themes – 2327 Jesus Christ, As Servant

(<https://www.biblegateway.com/resources/dictionary-of-bible-themes/2327-Jesus-Christ-as-servant>)

Dictionary.com Unabridged. Random House, Inc. Definition of Macumba.

(<http://www.dictionary.com/browse/macumba>)

Does God have emotions?

(<http://www.gotquestions.org/does-God-have-emotions.html>)

Drug Abuse and the Bible by David E Pratte

(http://www.gospelway.com/morality/drug_abuse.php) 25 September 2016

Facing Fear and Finding Freedom By Joyce Meyer

(http://www.joycemeyer.org/articles/ea.aspx?article=overcoming_fear)

Fallen Angels

(<http://www.allaboutgod.com/fallen-angels-faq.htm>)

Fear of God

(<http://www.allaboutgod.com/fear-of-god.htm>)

Four Reasons Jesus' Ascension Matters Excerpt from The Gospel Project By
Keith Whitfield

(<http://www.christianitytoday.com/edstetzer/2013/august/why-ascension-matters.html>)

Garments Of Salvation By Henry M. Morris, Ph.D.

(<https://www.icr.org/article/20988/>)

God's promise to Abraham

(www.lifehopeandtruth.com/prophecy/12-tribes-of-israel/god-s-promise-to-abraham/)

He Hath Clothed Me With The Garments of Salvation

(<https://simplemeditations.wordpress.com/2013/02/11/he-hath-clothed-me-with-the-garments-of-salvation/>)

Healing of the soul spirit and body

(<http://www.abundantharvest.info/study-center/everyday-issues/healing-of-the-spirit-soul-body/>)

Healing: The Imitation of Christ

(<http://www.presentationministries.com/publications/Healing.asp?printMode=true>)

Higher Self (https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Higher_self)

How can I overcome feelings of rejection?

(<http://www.gotquestions.org/overcome-rejection.html>)

How Cults Work

(<http://people.howstuffworks.com/cult4.htm>)

How Cults Work

(<http://www.cultwatch.com/howcultswork.html>) 1 October 2016

How did the Fall affect humanity?

(<http://www.gotquestions.org/fall-affect-humanity.html>)

How is the fear of the Lord the beginning of wisdom

(<https://www.gotquestions.org/fear-Lord-beginning-wisdom.html>)

How to be filled with the Holy Spirit?

(<https://gotquestions.org/Spirit-filled.html>)

How to Maintain the Flow of the Anointing By Claudio Freidzon

(<http://www.charisma mag.com/spirit/supernatural/9382-maintaining-the-flow>)

How was Jesus an Apostles? By Ray Pritchard

(<http://www.jesus.org/is-jesus-god/names-of-jesus/how-was-jesus-an-apostle.html>)

Intercession

(<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/intercession>)

Introduction to the Parables

(<https://bible.org/seriespage/introduction-parables>)

Jackson, Wayne. The Ascension of Christ – A Most significant event

(<https://www.christiancourier.com/articles/877-ascension-of-christ-a-most-significant-event-the>)

Jesus as Prophet, Evangelist, Pastor & Preacher by Scott Lencke

(<https://prodigalthought.net/2009/12/06/jesus-as-prophet-evangelist-pastor->

teacher/)

Jesus as Prophet, Evangelist, Pastor & Preacher by Scott Lencke
(<https://prodigalthought.net/2009/12/06/jesus-as-prophet-evangelist-pastor-teacher/>)

Jesus Tempted in the Wilderness
(<http://www.biblestudytools.com/commentaries/the-fourfold-gospel/by-sections/jesus-tempted-in-the-wilderness.html>)

Jesus' Three Offices: Prophet, Priest, and King by Matt Slick
(<https://carm.org/prophet-priest-king>)

Jesus, the Voice, and the Dove By Jason Dulle
(<http://www.onenesspentecostal.com/voicedove.htm>)

Jesus' Death and Resurrection
(<http://christianity.org.uk/index.php/a/jesus-death-and-resurrection.php>)

Jesus' Threefold Office as Prophet, Priest, and King
(<http://www.ligonier.org/blog/jesus-threefold-office-prophet-priest-and-king/>)

Job Bible Story Summary with Lesson By Jack Wellman
(<http://www.whatchristianswanttoknow.com/job-bible-story-summary-with-lesson/>)

Laying on hands – what does the bible say
(<https://gotquestions.org/laying-on-of-hands.html>)

Lesson 4: The Burden of Guilt By Vickie Kraft
(<https://bible.org/seriespage/lesson-4the-burden-guilt>)

Made in the image of God By Russell M. Grigg
(<http://creation.com/made-in-the-image-of-god>)

Matthew's Good News
(<http://www.easyenglish.info/bible-commentary/matthew-lbw.htm>)

Merriam-Webster's Learner's Dictionary: Simple definition of Divination
(<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/divination>) 12 September 2016

Merriam-Webster's Learner's Dictionary: Simple Definition of Intuition
(<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/intuition>)

Merriam-Webster's Learner's Dictionary: Simple Definition of Principality
(<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/principalities>)

Merriam-Webster's Learner's Dictionary: Simple Definition of Quantitative
(www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/quantitative)

Merriam-Webster's Learner's Dictionary: Simple Definition of Ruler
(<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/rulers>)

Merriam-Webster's Learner's Dictionary: Simple definition of Sorcery
(<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/sorcery>) 12/09/2016

Merriam-Webster's Learner's Dictionary: Simple Definition of Subconscious
(www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/subconscious)

Merriam-Webster's Learner's Dictionary: Simple Definition of Voodoo
(<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/voodoo>)

Michael the Archangel By Chris Moen
(<http://lifehopeandtruth.com/prophecy/understanding-the-book-of-daniel/angels/michael-the-archangel/>) 29/08/2016

Mind Control Techniques In Cult Recruiting
(<http://www.decision-making-confidence.com/mind-control-techniques.html>)

National Obesity Week: South Africa's Weighty Problem
(<http://www.heartfoundation.co.za/media-releases/national-obesity-week-south-africa%E2%80%99s-weighty-problem>)

Plugging into God's Unlimited Power By Joyce Meyer
(<http://www.charismamag.com/blogs/straight-talk/17077-plugging-in-to-god-s->

unlimited-power)

Pneumatology: The Holy Spirit (<https://bible.org/seriespage/4-pneumatology-holy-spirit>)

Praying Down Powers and Principalities By Mike Bickle
(<http://www.charismamag.com/spiritual-warfare/21551-praying-down-powersprincipalities?showall=&start=1>)

Prince, Derek - Video Spiritual warfare on earth
(<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ZNp6DNQOOL0>)

Principalities (Satan Class of Angels) And Spiritual Warfare
(<https://www.scribd.com/document/91263723/Principalities-and-Spiritual-Warfare>)

Principalities, Powers and Demons. Their Differences, Their Origins and Our Authority Over Them By Dale M Sides
(<http://www.lmci.org/articles.cfm?Article=76>)

Principalities-Powers-Rulers of Darkness-Wickedness By Magdalene
(http://www.battleinchrist.com/principalities_powers_world_rulers_of_darkness_spiritual_wickedness_in_spiritual_warfare.htm)

Purchase “agorazo” is rendered “to purchase”

(<http://gospelhall.org/bible/bible.php?search=agorazo&dict=vine&lang=greek>)

Religions of the World: Vodun (a.k.a. Voodoo) and related religions By B.A. Robinson

(<http://www.religioustolerance.org/voodoo.htm>)

Religious Cults By Bobby Conway

(<http://www.allaboutcults.org/religious-cults.htm>)

Rema at Christmas

(<http://holyspiritempowers.com/2013/12/rhema-words/>)

Salvation

(www.saved.com/)

Salvation

(www.theopedia.com/Salvation)

Satan and his Kingdom By Prof. Johan Malan, Mossel Bay, South Africa (May 2012)

(<http://www.bibleguidance.co.za/Engarticles/Satanskingdom.htm>)

Satan's Doom By Todd Strandberg

(<http://www.raptureready.com/rr-doom.html>)

Satan's kingdom

(<http://www.biblelineministries.org/articles/basearch.php3?action=full&mainkey= SATAN%26%2339%3BS+KINGDOM>)

Seraphim, Cherubim & The Four Living Creatures

(http://www.whyangels.com/seraphim_cherubim_creatures.html) 19/08/2016

Shame - We feel badly about ourselves By Leland R. Beaumont

(<http://www.emotionalcompetency.com/shame.htm>)

Simeon used rhema to mean 'revelation'. When elderly Simeon took Jesus in his arms in the temple, he blessed God and declared, "Lord, now you are letting your servant depart in peace, according to your word (rhema); for my eyes have seen your salvation ...," Luke 2:29-30, ESV. Rema at Christmas (<http://holyspiritempowers.com/2013/12/rhema-words/>)

Since Satan is referred to as a star which fell or was cast down to earth, and Revelation 12:4 says a third of the stars were cast out with him, then the conclusion is that the stars in Revelation 12 refer to fallen angels, fully one third of the heavenly host.

(<https://answers.yahoo.com/question/index?qid=20120611201924AAyT4aS>)

Son of man is an expression in the sayings of Jesus in Christian writings, including the Gospels, the Acts of the Apostles and the Book of Revelation. The meaning of the expression is controversial. Interpretation of the use of "the Son of man" in the New Testament has remained challenging and after 150 years of debate no consensus on the issue has emerged among scholars ([https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Son_of_man_\(Christianity\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Son_of_man_(Christianity)))

Spirit of Leviathan

(<http://www.thelordmybanner.com/spirit-of-leviathan/>)

Spiritual Mapping. From Discerning the Mixture. David Tidy

(<http://prayerwarriorsintl.blogspot.com/p/spiritual-mapping.html>)

Spiritual Strategies A Manual for Spiritual Warfare Harvestime International Institute (<http://harvestime.org/translations/english/SpiritualStrategies-Warfare.pdf>)

Strong's Concordance - 1140. daimonion

(<http://biblehub.com/greek/1140.htm>)

Strong's Concordance - 1849. Exousia

(<http://biblehub.com/greek/1849.htm>)

Strong's Concordance - 2888. Kosmokratór

(<http://biblehub.com/greek/2888.htm>)

Strong's Concordance - 6845. tsaphan - To hide, treasure up (The Hebrew word means to store something up in the secret place)
(<http://biblehub.com/hebrew/6845.htm>)

Strong's Concordance - 746. arché
(<http://biblehub.com/greek/746.htm>)

Strong's Concordance - #7287: radah
(<http://www.bibletools.org/index.cfm/fuseaction/Lexicon.show/ID/H7287/radah.htm>)

Strong's Exhaustive Concordance 3547. "nomodidaskalos"
(<http://biblehub.com/str/greek/3547.htm>)

Strong's Concordance - 1210. deó
(<http://biblehub.com/greek/1210.htm>)

Strong's Concordance - 2669. kataponeó
(<http://biblehub.com/greek/2669.htm>)

Strong's Concordance - 1139. Daimonizomai
(<http://biblehub.com/greek/1139.htm>)

Strong's Concordance 5959. "almah"
(<http://biblehub.com/hebrew/5959.htm>)

Substitutionary Atonement of Jesus Christ By Matt Slick
(<https://carm.org/substitutionary-atonement-jesus-christ>)

Techniques of mind control:
(<http://cults.co.nz/cultfaq/mindcontrol.php>)

The Arrest and Trials of Jesus
(<http://www.ecclesia.org/truth/trial-jesus.html>)

The Birth of Jesus
(http://www.christianbiblereference.org/story_BirthOfJesus.htm)

The Death, Burial and Resurrection of Jesus the Messiah
(<https://bible.org/seriespage/6-death-burial-and-resurrection-jesus-messiah>)

The Difference Between Guilt and Shame By Joseph Burgo Ph.D.
(<https://www.psychologytoday.com/blog/shame/201305/the-difference-between-guilt-and-shame>)

The Doctrine of Jesus Christ.
(http://biblehub.com/library/evans/the_great_doctrines_of_the_bible/the_doctrine_of_jesus_christ.htm)

The Emotions of Jesus By G. Walter Hansen
(<http://www.christianitytoday.com/ct/1997/february3/7t2042.html>)

The fall of man in God's perfect plan

(<https://bible.org/seriespage/5-fall-man-gods-perfect-plan>)

The Goddess Kali

(<https://witchesofthecraft.com/2012/01/23/today-we-honor-the-goddess-kali/>)

The Heavenly or Spiritual Realm

(<http://www.wordlibrary.co.uk/article.php?id=177>)

The heavenly or spiritual realm By Dele Oke

(<http://www.wordlibrary.co.uk/article.php?id=177>)

The Incarnation of Jesus Christ

(<http://www.equip.org/perspectives/the-incarnation-of-jesus-christ/>)

The Jezebel Spirit and How it Operates

(<http://www.bible-knowledge.com/the-jezebel-spirit-and-how-it-operates/>)

The Personality and Deity of the Holy Spirit

(https://www.blueletterbible.org/comm/torrey_ra/fundamentals/34.cfm)

The priesthood of all believers By Art Lindsay Ph.D

(<https://tifwe.org/resource/the-priesthood-of-all-believers/>)

The Second Temptation By: Dr. Gregory S. Neal

(<http://www.revneal.org/writtensermons/SecondT.htm>)

The Seven Principalities Of Satan's Rebellious Kingdom

(<http://www.cuttingedge.org/news/n1050.html>)

The Spirit in counselling (

<http://www.gty.org/resources/articles/A307/the-spirit-in-counseling>)

The Truth About Eating Disorders

(<http://www.focusonthefamily.com/parenting/teens/truth-about-eating-disorders>)

The Truth Behind Nicotine and Christianity

(<http://propheciesoftheendtimes.com/?p=3176>)

The Fight To The Death (Crucify The Flesh or Die) By Dan Corner

(<http://www.evangelicaloutreach.org/crucify-the-flesh.htm>)

Theophany - A theophany is a manifestation of God in the Bible that is tangible to the human senses;

(<http://www.gotquestions.org/theophany-Christophany.html>)

Third Temptation of Jesus by Fr. Jefferson Bennit

(<https://vaticanos.wordpress.com/2012/06/19/third-temptation-of-jesus/>)

Twelve Apostles of Jesus

(<http://www.marypages.com/Disciples.htm>)

Understanding Satan's Kingdom By Frank Hilton

([http://word-spirit.org/UnderstandingSatans Kingdom.htm](http://word-spirit.org/UnderstandingSatans%20Kingdom.htm))

Understanding the Covering of God By David Cannistraci

(<http://www.charismamag.com/spirit/spiritual-growth/1617-gods-got-you-covered>)

Voodoo

(<http://www.religionfacts.com/voodoo>)

Was Jesus a Prophet?

(<http://www.gotquestions.org/was-Jesus-a-prophet.html>)

We Are Made Righteous

(<https://bible.org/illustration/we-are-made-righteous>)

What Are Principalities And Powers That Are Talked About In The Bible? By Jack Wellman

(<http://www.patheos.com/blogs/christiancrier/2015/08/26/what-are-principalities-and-powers-that-are-talked-about-in-the-bible/>)

What are seraphim? Are seraphs angels?

(<http://www.gotquestions.org/seraphim.html>) 18/08/2016

What are the keys to resisting temptation
(<https://gotquestions.org/resisting-temptation.html>)

What does it mean that humanity is made in the image of God?
(<http://www.gotquestions.org/image-of-God.html>)

What does it mean that Jesus is the Son of God?
(<http://www.gotquestions.org/Jesus-Son-of-God.html>)

What does it mean to be sanctified
(<https://www.google.co.za/search?q=sanctificaiton&oq=sanctificaiton&aqs=chrome..69i57j0l5.3829j0j4&sourceid=chrome&ie=UTF-8>)

What does the Bible
(<http://www.gotquestions.org/Bible-divination.html>) 12 September 2016

What does the Bible mean by binding and loosing?
(<https://gotquestions.org/binding-loosing.html>)

What Does The Bible Say About Black Magic?
(<http://www.gotquestions.org/black-magic.html>)

What does the Bible say about deliverance
(<https://gotquestions.org/deliverance.html>)

What does the Bible say about fear?

(<http://www.gotquestions.org/Bible-fear.html>)

What does the Bible say about Water Baptism?

(www.bible.com/bibleanswers_result.php?id=131)

What does the Bible say about when God will judge us?

(<http://www.gotquestions.org/judgment.html>)

What Happened when our Lord Jesus Christ ascended to Heaven

(http://www.teachmethebible.info/questions/christ/ascended_to_heaven.html)

What is baptism in the Holy Spirit by Jack Wellman

([http://www.whatchristianswantto know.com/what-is-baptism-of-the-holy-spirit/](http://www.whatchristianswanttoknow.com/what-is-baptism-of-the-holy-spirit/))

What is baptism in the Holy Spirit by Matt Slick

(<https://carm.org/what-baptism-holy-spirit>)

What is communion

(<http://christianity.about.com/od/faqhelpdesk/f/whatiscommunion.htm>)

What is false guilt, and how can I avoid it?

(<http://www.gotquestions.org/false-guilt.html>)

What is Folk Religion?

(<https://gotquestions.org/folk-religion.html>)

What is meant when it says man is made in the image of God? By Matt Slick

(<https://carm.org/questions/about-people/what-meant-when-it-says-man-made-image-god>)

What is Protoevangelium

(<http://www.gotquestions.org/protoevangelium.html>)

What is Redemption? How is Salvation Different? by Tom Smith

(<http://holdingtotruth.com/2016/04/17/what-is-redemption-how-is-salvation-different-2/>)

What is salvation? What is the Christian doctrine of salvation?

(<https://gotquestions.org/Christian-doctrine-salvation.html>)

What is sanctification? What is the definition of Christian sanctification

(<https://gotquestions.org/sanctification.html>)

What is the importance of Christian baptism?

(<https://gotquestions.org/Christian-baptism.html>)

What is the Occult?

(<http://www.gotquestions.org/occult.html>)

What is the story of the Garden of Gethsemane the night Jesus was arrested?
(<http://www.compellingtruth.org/Garden-of-Gethsemane.html>)

What is the Tabernacle of Moses?
(http://the-tabernacle-place.com/articles/what_is_the_tabernacle)

What 'Made in the Image of God' Really Means By Dick Staub
(<http://www.relevantmagazine.com/god/deeper-walk/features/23549-qmade-in-the-image-of-godq>)

What should we learn from the life of Rahab?
(<http://www.gotquestions.org/life-Rahab.html>)

What to do with our feelings
(<http://www.greatbiblestudy.com/feelings.php>)

What was the meaning and purpose of Jesus' temptations?
(<http://www.gotquestions.org/Jesus-temptations.html>)

What Was the Purpose of Jesus' Temptation By Don Stewart
(https://www.blueletterbible.org/faq/don_stewart/don_stewart_1326.cfm)

Where do the Hebrew Scriptures prophesy the death and resurrection of the Messiah

(<http://www.gotquestions.org/death-resurrection-Messiah.html>)

Who is Jesus' Biological Father

(<http://www.biblicalarchaeology.org/daily/biblical-topics/bible-interpretation/who-was-jesus-biological-father/>) Accessed on: 23 July 2016

Who is the angel of the Lord

(<http://www.gotquestions.org/angel-of-the-Lord.html>) 29/08/2016

Why Are So Many Christians Practicing Witchcraft? By Jennifer Leclaire

(<http://www.charismamag.com/blogs/the-plumb-line/17355-why-are-so-many-christians-practicing-witchcraft>)

Why did God create a Devil? By Ragnar

(<http://considerthegospel.org/blog/2012/09/23/why-did-god-create-a-devil/>)

Why did God require animal sacrifice in the Old Testament?.

(www.gotquestions.org/animal-sacrifices.html)

Why Is Jesus Called "Son of Man"? Interview with John Piper

(<http://www.desiringgod.org/interviews/why-is-jesus-called-son-of-man>)

Why is the resurrection of Jesus Christ important?

(<http://www.gotquestions.org/resurrection-Christ-important.html>)

Your metron By Frank Damazio (<http://www.frankdamazio.com/2012/10/your->

metron/)

BIBLES

Amplified Bible

Berean Study Bible

King James Version

Life Application Study Bible

The Living Bible

The New International Version

New King James Version

The New Living Translation

--oOo--



ADDENDUM TO THE BIBLIOGRAPHY

Recommended additional reading list pertaining the Christian life

Arendt M (2013) An Exegetical Illustrated Modern Approach on the Nature, Divinity and Implications Pertaining to the Spirit Entity: Queen of heaven

Barnard Manda (2010) The Traumatic Effect of Divorce on the Young Adolescent with the Consequent Necessity for Inner Healing

Brand Anke (2010) Sexual Sins Deriving from Alternative Lifestyles Destructing Marriage without Gods Securing Intervention

Brand Connie MJ (2005) An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy Considered from Philosophic Theological Perspective.

Brand Prof Dr Connie MJ (2007) Teaching Manual Volume 1 Theology (Advanced)

Brand Prof Dr Connie MJ (2007) Teaching Manual Volume 2 Old Testament Survey (Modules 11-20)

Brand Prof Dr Connie MJ (2007) Teaching Manual Volume 3 Management, business, vision (Modules 21-30)

Brand Prof Dr Connie MJ (2007) Teaching Manual Volume 4 Spiritual warfare (Advanced) An exposition of world views

De Lange Susanna FM (2012) Expounding Deliverance from a Biblical Perspective Deriving from Supreme Spiritual Warfare

Fouche Dr Alleta CM (2015) An Exegetical Exposition on Spiritual and Demonic Warfare Pertaining to Insanity and Psychosis

Malan Dr Peter Willem (2013) Expounding the Exegetical Reality and Hidden Meaning of Biblical Scripture as Seen in Both the Old and New Testament

Metelerkamp Anesta (2010) An Expose of the Secret Designs Behind the Compulsions and Obsessions of Eating Disorders

Nagel Dr Hendrik Petrus (2013) Expounding the Ultimate Defilement and the Abuse of the Mouthpiece Pertaining of the Spoken Word of God and the Way to Effective Witnessing out of Bondage and Sexual Perversion via Spiritual Warfare Inner Healing and Deliverance

Nel Dr Anita D (2008) Die Belewing van Verwerping deur Adolescente met Leergestremdheid: n Geestlike en Opvoedkundige-Sielkundige Perspektief

Nel Dr E (2013) An Exegetical Exposition on a Rootless Society and the Birth of a New Generation and Upliftment of Families Through and Upliftment of Families Through the Enhancement of the Role Women Play in South Africa

Nel Dr P (2013) An Eschatological Consideration of the Possible Limits of God's Grace, Related to God's Righteousness, Love and Wrath, Pertaining to Beings Created in his Own Image and Also Others, Such as Hybrid Beings Aliens and Nephilim

Nel Elizabeth Dr (2012) An Eschatological Study of the Influence of the Antichrist at the End of this Age and the End of the World

Van der Walt Dr R (2014) Bitterness, the Master Destructor of Humanity Volume 2

Van der Walt Dr R (2014) Fasting to Break Down the Resistance and Human Pride Holding Back the Gift of Forgiveness Volume 4

Van der Walt Dr R (2014) Healing and Deliverance Through the Word and the Holy Spirit in the Name of Jesus Christ Volume 5

Van der Walt Dr R (2014) Strongholds and Bondages Pertaining to Unforgiveness, Selfishness and Bondage Volume 3

Van der Walt Dr R (2014) The Process of Forgiveness as a Key to Everlasting Eternal Life Volume 1

Van der Walt R (2013) – Exegete: A Biblical View of Forgiveness as an Essential Principle to Sanctification Pertaining to Body and Bride of Christ

--oOo--



TERMS, DEFINITIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS

TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

Agorazo:	The Greek word for "bought" / "Purchased" Purchase "agorazo" is rendered "to purchase"
Almah	Virgin, "Never refers to a maiden who has lost her virginity".
Angelology:	A doctrine or theory concerning angels

Angels:	Spirit beings created to serve and minister to God (see Heb. 1:7).
Anointing:	Presence, power and ministry of the Holy Spirit.
Apostle:	Any one of the 12 men chosen by Jesus Christ to spread the Christian religion and someone who believes in or supports an idea, cause.
Assignment:	A specified task or amount of work assigned or undertaken as if assigned by authority; trust and responsibility for completion of a task.
Body of Christ:	All born-again believers in Jesus Christ; embodies all denominations who believe Jesus Christ is God.
Christian:	A Christian (pronunciation: i/'krɪʃtʃən/ or /'krɪstjən/) is a person who adheres to Christianity, an Abrahamic, monotheistic religion based on the life and teachings of Jesus Christ. Christians believe that Jesus is the Son of God and the savior of humanity whose coming as the Messiah (the Christ) was prophesied in the Old Testament
Confession:	To speak forth acknowledgment of a belief; to disclose one's faults.

Covenant: A covenant is a contract or agreement between two or more parties. Covenant is how God has chosen to communicate to us, to redeem us, and to guarantee us eternal life in Jesus. These truths, revealed in the Bible, are the basis of Christianity. The Bible is a covenant document. The Old and New Testaments are really Old and New Covenants. The word "testament" is Latin for Covenant.

Crucifixion: The crucifixion was not invented by the Romans but they refined it to the cruellest form of execution. In Palestine it was reserved for runaway slaves or the worst kind of criminals against the state.

Curse: To utter a wish of evil against one; to invoke evil upon; to call for mischief or injury to fall upon; to execrate; to injure; to subject to evil; to vex, harass or torment with great calamities.

Curse: To utter evil against one-, to invoke evil upon; to call for mischief or injury to fall upon; to execrate; to injure; to subject to evil; to vex, harass or torment with great calamities.

Deliverance: Setting a person or area free from demonic bondage.

Demons:	Demons are evil spirits that are opposed to God and God's people. They appear to be fallen angels: 2 Peter 2:4 & Jude 6 are primarily referenced in the New Testament.
Demons:	Created spirit beings who were thrown out of heaven by God for rebelling against Him and declaring allegiance to Satan; evil spirits.
Divination:	The act of divining; foretelling future events, or discovering things secret or obscure by the aid of superior beings, or by other than human means.
Divination:	The practice that seeks to foresee or foretell future events or discover hidden knowledge by the aid of supernatural powers.
Dunamis:	The Greek dunamis is used 120 times in the New Testament. Loosely, the word refers to "strength, power, or ability." It is the root word of our English words] dynamite, dynamo and dynamic
Evangelist:	The word evangelist (Greek euaggelistes) simply means 'a bearer of good news'. And, it is the word gospel (Greek euaggelion) that means 'good news'.

Exorcism:	Exorcism in Christianity is the practice of casting out demons from a person they are believed to have possessed. The person performing the exorcism, known as an exorcist, is often a member of the Christian Church, or an individual thought to be graced with special powers or skills
Healer:	The Bible speaks often of miraculous healing, performed by a Healer, through the work of Jesus Christ and through faith in God.
Holy of Holies:	The innermost section of the Tabernacle and the Temple of God. The high priest went into the Holy of Holies only once a year, where he met with God and offered a blood sacrifice for the atonement of the people's sins.
Iniquity:	Gross injustice; wickedness.
Intercession:	Prayer petition or entreaty in favor of another. Through prayer this is an extension of Jesus' act of intercession when He died on the cross in man's behalf.
Judge:	The judges were deliverers and saviours of God's people, Israel. Each of them in their office were types and shadows of Christ as The Judge, Deliverer and Saviour. Their chief function was to deliver Israel from

the bondage of servitude and oppression of their enemies and bring them back into relationship with the Lord God

King: A male ruler, established on a throne. Kings were initially believed to rule by divine authority and supernatural grace

Legion: A Vast number of people or things, great in number

Messiah: The Hebrew word Messiah, means anointed one the name given to the promised Deliverer who would someday come to the people of Israel as their great Saviour and Redeemer, “anointed” as prophet, and King by God Himself. ‘Christ’ comes from Christos, the Greek form of the word. The prophet usually poured oil on the person’s head to mark them out as chosen by God

Occult: Literally “hidden.” Hidden from the eyes or understanding; invisible; secret; unknown; undiscovered undetected.

Occult: Literally “hidden.” Hidden from the eyes of our understanding; invisible; secret; unknown; undiscovered; undetected.

Pagan:	A follower of a polytheistic religion (as in ancient Rome), or one who has little or no religion and who delights in sensual pleasures and material goods : an irreligious or hedonistic person
Parables:	A short story that teaches a moral or spiritual lesson; especially one of the stories told by Jesus Christ and recorded in the Bible.
Pastor:	The word "pastor" derives from the Latin noun pastor which means "shepherd" and relates to the Latin verb pascere - "to lead to pasture, set to grazing, cause to eat". The term "pastor" also relates to the role of elder within the New Testament, but is not synonymous with the biblical understanding of minister.
Perdition:	A State of eternal punishment and damnation into which a sinful and unrepentant person passes after death.
Petition:	An earnest request of God.
Plead the Blood of Jesus:	To remind oneself and Satan that he has no authority over the person for whom you are praying, because of the blood sacrifice made by Jesus Christ.
Powers:	The Greek word in the Strong's Concordance for

“Powers” is exousia meaning power to act or authority .
“Powers” or “strongholds” are kinds of evil and demons assigned to sins.

Praise (Godward): To express a favorable judgment of God; to commend, speak and attribute approval of God’s character or actions (to Him).

Praying in the Spirit: Praying in a language unknown to one’s own mind.

Pricipalities: Principality(ties) is the preferred word when translating the Greek word “arché” to English. This refer to the territory or jurisdiction of a prince : the country that gives title to a prince according to the Merriam Webster Dictionary

Priest: One who serves as a high-level minister with special rights, privileges and access to the deity employing him. A mediator between God and His people. The role the New Testament church fills as the New Creation priesthood of the Lord Jesus Christ.

Prophet: A prophet of God is someone who reveals God, speaks for God, and communicates to people the truths that God wants them to know and a divine functionary who serves as the spokes-person for a deity.

Propitiation: That the righteous demands of a Holy God were fully satisfied

Protoevangelium: The first gospel

Redemption: Redemption is an essential concept in many religions, including Judaism and Christianity. The English word "redemption" means 'repurchase' or 'buy back'. The act of saving people from sin and evil : the fact of being saved from sin or evil.

Repentance: To turn away from sin and sinning and amend one's lifestyle to please God.

Resurrection: The resurrection of Jesus is the Christian religious belief that, after being put to death, Jesus rose again from the dead. It is the central tenet of Christian theology and part of the Nicene Creed: "On the third day he rose again in accordance with the Scriptures".

Rulers: According to the Merriam Webster Dictionary a "ruler" is "a person who rules a country, area, group, etc". The word in Greek is kosmokratór "a ruler of this world" and according to Strong's Concordance definition "ruler of

this world, that is, of the world as asserting its independence of God; used of the angelic or demonic powers controlling the sublunary world.”

Salvation: The act of saving someone from sin or evil, the state of being saved from sin or evil

Satan: The word 'satan' is the Hebrew transliteration of the word 'adversary.' Therefore, Satan is the one who opposes God. Satan is the most powerful of the fallen angels. Satan, also known as Lucifer and the Devil

Satan: The created cherub (angelic being) called Lucifer who was thrown out of heaven by God for rebelling against God and trying to steal His glory. The father of lies.

Satanology: Satanology or the doctrine of Satan is properly a part of Angelology since Satan is a fallen angel. It is that part that deals specifically with the ruler of the fallen angels or demons.

Shepherd: In its essence, a shepherd is called to care for, feed and lead the sheep. And, as the good shepherd, that is exactly what Jesus did and still does today.

Sin: An offense against religious or moral law, transgression

of the law of God, a vitiated state of human nature in which the self is estranged from God

Sin: Anything in the creature which does not express, or is contrary to, the holy character of the Creator.

Son Of God: Although Israel was known as God's son in the Old Testament (see, for example, Exodus 4:22), this title is linked with the idea of Messiahship. It occurs in Old Testament verses relating to kings of Israel but was also recognized by Jewish teachers as foretelling the Messiah

Son Of Man: Son of man is an expression in the sayings of Jesus in Christian writings, including the Gospels, the Acts of the Apostles and the Book of Revelation. The meaning of the expression is controversial. Interpretation of the use of "the Son of man" in the New Testament has remained challenging and after 150 years of debate no consensus on the issue has emerged among scholars

Sorcery: Magic; enchantment; witchcraft; divination by assistance or supposed assistance of evil spirits; the power of commanding evil spirits.

Spiritual The gift of the Holy Spirit given to Christians to

discernment:	distinguish between what is of God and what is evil.
Stronghold:	A fortified place. A place of security or survival; specifically dominated by a particular group or characteristic. A person's thought life can have many strongholds.
Strongholds:	A stronghold is an incorrect thinking pattern that has molded itself into our way of thinking. These strongholds have the capability to affect our feelings, how we respond to various situations in life, and they play a large role in our spiritual freedom.
Temptations:	A strong urge or desire to have or do something or something that causes a strong urge or desire to have or do something and especially something that is bad, wrong, or unwise
The Ascension:	As Christians, we believe that our Lord Jesus Christ, in his same flesh, ascended above all visible heavens into the highest heaven, that is, the dwelling-place of God
The Last Supper:	The Last Supper is the final meal that, in the Gospel accounts, Jesus shared with his Apostles in Jerusalem before his crucifixion

The Passover: The major Jewish spring festival which commemorates the liberation of the Israelites from Egyptian slavery, lasting seven or eight days from the 15th day of Nisan.

The Servant: Jesus Christ laid aside His majesty in order to serve humanity. His death is the supreme example of his servanthood: the fulfilling of the will of God His Father

The Transfiguration: Jesus took James, Peter and John with Him on the Mount of Transfiguration to pray. It is recorded in the Gospels that while they were there, away from the crowds, Jesus was changed. His whole body, and His clothes too, shone with an unearthly splendour. Homer A Kent describes it as “a transformation from within in which Jesus’ essential glory was revealed to the eyes of His Apostles.”

Tithe: A tenth part of something paid as a voluntary contribution to God as an acknowledgment that all you have comes from and belongs to Him (see Mai. 3:10).

Witchcraft: The practice of, and belief in, magical skills and abilities that are able to be exercised by individuals and certain social groups (also called witchery or spellcraft).

Witchcraft: The practice of witches; sorcery; enchantment; unnatural

power; intercourse with the devil.

Witchcraft: The use of sorcery or magic; communication with the devil or with a familiar spirit; enchantment; unnatural power.

ABBREVIATIONS

A.D. The terms anno Domini (AD) and before Christ (BC) are used to label or number years in the Julian and Gregorian calendars.

AMP: Amplified Bible

BSB: Berean Study Bible

Dr.: Doctor

KJV: King James Version

LASB: Life Application Study Bible

LIV: TheLiving Bible

NIV: The New International Version

NKJV: New King James Version

NLT: TheNew Living Translation

Prof.: Professor

UK: United Kingdom

USA: United States of America

RSA: Republic of South Africa



LIST OF TABLES AND FIGURES

TABLES

Chapter 1

Table 1:	A Possible Order Of Events From The Four Gospels.....	65
Table 2:	The Temptations.....	95
Table 3:	Parables Of Jesus.....	117
Table 4:	The Miracles Of Jesus.....	139

Chapter 2

Table 1:	Redeemed Persons.....	192
Tabel 2:	Consequences On The External Part (The Body).....	214
Tabel 3:	Consequences On The Internal Parts.....	215
Table 4:	The Believer's Union With Jesus Christ.....	224
Table 5:	The Person And Work Of The Holy Spirit.....	224
Table 6:	The Whole Armour Of God.....	225
Table 7:	The All-ness Of Prayer.....	225
Table 8:	The Work Of The Holy Spirit Versus The Work Of Satan..	254
Table 9:	The Fear Of The Lord.....	279
Table 10:	Gifts Of God Versus The Whole Armour Of God.....	306
Table 11:	Standing Firm.....	310
Table 12:	The Girdle Or Belt Of Truth.....	311
Table 13:	The Breastplate Of Righteousness.....	312
Table 14:	The Shoes Of The Gospel Of Peace.....	313
Table 15:	The Shield Of Faith.....	314
Table 16:	The Helmet Of Salvation.....	315
Table 17:	The Sword Of The Spirit.....	316

Chapter 3

Table 1:	The Contrast Between Two Opposing Kingdoms.....	345
Tabel 2:	Five Significant Contrasts Between Satan and God List of Satan's Names With Its Interpretations And	348
Tabel 3:	Scriptural References..... Principalities/Princes As Seen In Occultism & Egyptian	363
Table 4:	Mythology.....	379
Table 5:	Biblical References To Evil Spirits And Their Nature.....	418
Table 6:	Four Levels of Ancestors.....	427
Table 7:	Some Affects of Hereditary Sin.....	428
Table 8:	Occult Activities.....	444
Table 9:	List of Modern Day Occult Practices.....	448
Table 10:	Emotions Attributed to God by Scripture.....	552

FIGURES

Chapter 2

Figure 1:	Man As God Create Him.....	194
Figure 2:	Man After the Fall.....	207
Figure 3:	Man After Redemption.....	213
Figure 4:	The Armour Of God.....	317

Chapter 3

Figure 1:	Hierarchy of the Kingdom of Light.....	346
Figure 2:	Hierarchy of the Kingdom of Darkness.....	347
Figure 3:	The Four Principalities.....	378
Figure 4:	Paths of Guilt and Shame.....	542

--oOo--



ADDENDUM

1 WHAT IS DELIVERANCE?¹

You may ask: What is deliverance? In practical terms:

- Deliverance is the process by which God sets free those who are attacked by the enemy.

¹ Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2004) Woman! Thou Art Loosed. Yaba, Lagos: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries. P21-25

- Deliverance means closing every door that has been opened to the enemy.
- Deliverance is to deliver one from the evil pattern laid down for one by one's ancestors.

For example, if you have discovered that every marriage in your family line ends up with a tragedy, you need deliverance. If you have surveyed all the homes in your ancestral land and you discover that none is peaceful. You need to run yourself through serious deliverance. What you are suffering can only be referred to as an evil pattern or a demonic vicious circle. All evil patterns must be dismantled.

- It is destruction of the works of satan in your life. Whatever has the semblance of satanic works must be dismantled and destroyed.
- It also means to undo heavy burdens.

There are people whose lives are filled with burdens that are too heavy to be borne by them. These burdens must be removed.

- Deliverance centres on the breaking of evil yokes.

Many women today are under serious satanic yokes. Such yokes can only be broken through deliverance.

- Deliverance also entails the recovery of what has been stolen by the enemy.

In the lives of many women, virtues have been stolen, blessings have been hijacked and valuable goods have been carted away.

- Deliverance means the destruction of every form of infirmity.
- Deliverance centres on the release of God's judgement upon every stubborn pursuer.
- Deliverance also grants you victory in your dream life.
- Deliverance bothers on the killing or the annihilation of any satanic embargo.

There are women who cannot move forward, no matter how hard they try. Such women need deliverance. There are certain forces behind lack of progress in the lives of many women.

This reminds me of a serious case which we handled several years ago. A woman looked forward to being happily married and did not bargain for the type of violence attacks she experienced. The wedding was conducted successfully. But unknown to her, the greatest shock of her life was waiting for her at home on her wedding day.

As the new couple prepared to go to bed on that momentous day, the husband came up with a surprise; "Do you know who I am?" he asked the innocent wife.

"Of course, I do. You are my darling," she replied.

“Wait a minutes,” the husband said. Before the wife could figure out what was happening the husband slapped his head thrice and within a split second, he had transformed into a fearful serpent. The woman was frightened stiff. While she was about to scream, the husband cautioned her: “Don’t ever tell anyone what you have just witnessed. It must remain a secret between you and I. Should you ever tell anyone, I’m going to transform myself into a serpent and swallow you alive.”

That was what led the woman to run to the church for help. Of course, she knew that going back to her parents was out of the question, as they had sufficiently warned her against getting married to the man. It was during a deliverance session that she was set free.

- Deliverance bothers on the breaking of every evil covenant and revocation of every curse.
- Deliverance is to deliver your destiny from the power of your father’s house.
- Deliverance means getting to a point where you become too hot for the enemy to handle.
- It is the destruction of every evil marriage.
- Deliverance is to identify and destroy every evil habit.
- Whatever reduces God’s blessings in your life is a form of bondage.

For example, if you had been very rich in the past and are now very poor, you need deliverance.

Are you troubled by sexual immorality? You need deliverance.

Have you ever carried out an abortion? You need deliverance. You need to pray so that the blood of the aborted babies will stop crying against you.

Do you know you are supposed to be a winner and not a loser? If you discover that you are constantly losing out, you need deliverance.

One must face the devil squarely and fight until one experiences deliverance. The devil does not have any good agenda for any woman. He is always looking for how to hurt and destroy them. Until you rise to fight the battle, the devil will continue to have his way.

Several years ago, a woman was happily married to her husband. Her home was peaceful and her business was booming. She thought things would continue in that matter.

One day, the husband came home with a weird announcement.

“You must move your things from this apartment to the boys quarters.”

“Is anybody coming to take my place?,” she tried to query her husband.

“Who is this person, by the way?”

The husband looked up and said, “It is the housemaid, of course.”

The woman almost collapsed. The housemaid, who had been living in the boys quarters, was brought into the main flat. Things moved from bad to worse. The woman's business collapsed. All her companies began to fold up one after another. All the building projects she had embarked upon became abandoned. All her personal cars were grounded.

At that point she knew that she was in the midst of a serious battle. She began to pray.

When her personal efforts were not enough, she ran to the church for help. We gave her some prayer points. The title of the prayer programme handed to her was: 'Sending Confusion to the Enemy's Camp.' She prayed after midnight for a number of days.

After one prayer session, she had a dream in which she saw a fearful looking serpent coming toward her direction, poised to attack. The serpent wrapped itself around her. She screamed: "Jesus, help me!" An angel from heaven gave her a big stick with which she battered the head of the serpent until it died.

By 6 o'clock the following morning, she was woken up with the news of her father's death. She decided to go home as a result of the news. By the time she got home and examined her father's corpse, she discovered that the corpse's head was battered. She tried to find out if anybody had attacked her father. All she was told was that the father screamed from his sleep and was found on the floor with injuries on the head.

Then it dawned on the woman that her father was behind all that she had been going through. For the first time in her life she became conscious of the fact that her travail in life came from the camp of household wickedness.

The greatest tragedy in a woman's life occurs when her battles and problems are engineered by enemies from the home front.

Are you suffering because of the activities of household witchcraft? Are you under any form of attack? Do you eat in your dream? Do you have sex in the dream?

Do you swim in the dream? Do you come across dead people in the dream? Do you generally have ungodly dreams? You need deliverance now. It is time for you to arise and possess your possessions.

1.1 Way Out²

How then can you overcome all forms of satanic attacks? What steps must you take in order to experience total deliverance as a woman?

The first step you must take is to surrender your life to Christ.

The second step is to know your enemy. You need a thorough knowledge of your adversary. The devil is your enemy. He is wicked to the core and bad

² Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2004) Woman! Thou Art Loosed. Yaba, Lagos: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries. p25

beyond description. If you do not confront him eyeball-to-eyeball, he will continue to cheat you.

The third thing you must do today is to wage war against the enemy. You shall soon do this as you utilize the prayer points below,

The last step you must take is to barricade your life against the enemy to prevent the hand of the oppressor from being laid upon you.

1.2 Prayer Points³

1. Every plantation of spirit husband in my body, die, in Jesus' name.
2. Every power of spirit husband over my life and my marriage, die by fire, in the name of Jesus.
3. Every pillar of witchcraft and familiar spirit, die, in Jesus' name.
4. Household witchcraft, loose me and let me go, in Jesus' name.
5. Every power pursuing my blood, what are you waiting for? Die, in the name of Jesus.
6. Thou power of strange women and your spiritual consultants die, in the name of Jesus.
7. Satanic embarrassment, backfire, in the name of Jesus.
8. Every mark of satan in my body, go, in the name of Jesus.
9. Every virtue of my life stolen by the enemy, arise, locate me in the name of Jesus.
10. Evil marital pattern, I say bye-bye to you, in the name of Jesus.
11. Any power, any spirit, standing between me and my divine children, somersault and die, in the name of Jesus.
12. Any power that wants me to die a barren woman shall die, in the name of Jesus.
13. Oh God, turn my body into a baby factory, in Jesus' name.
14. From the north, from the south, from the east and from the west, you my marital breakthrough, locate me by fire, in Jesus' name.

³ Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2004) *Woman! Thou Art Loosed*. Yaba, Lagos: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries. p26

15. Every seed of poverty in my foundation, what are you waiting for? Die, in the name of Jesus.
16. Every devil inside me, by fire and by force, come out and die, in the name of Jesus.
17. Inherited bondage, die, in the name of Jesus.
18. Every power of cancer, I command you to die, in Jesus' name.
19. Every wicked power of my father's house, die in Jesus' name.
20. O God, arise and deliver me from the wickedness of unfriendly in-laws, in the name of Jesus.
21. Every stubborn spirit using my children to punish me, what are you waiting for? Die, in the name of Jesus.
22. Satan, hear the word of the Lord. You will not break my marriage anymore, in the name of Jesus.
23. Anti-marriage arrows, go back to your senders, in Jesus' name.
24. I dissolve, by the blood of Jesus and the Holy Ghost fire, every divorce in my family life, in the mighty name of Jesus.
25. You arrow of death and hell fired to kill my husband, my life is not in your bondage, in the name of Jesus.

2 STEPS TO PERSONAL DELIVERANCE⁴

When you understand self-deliverance, you will keep yourself from being demonized. You will keep yourself healthy, physically and spiritually and free from demonic pollution. Every day, you will enjoy divine health and will not be spending your money on drugs and hospital bills.

Sometimes, there may be no minister who is anointed and knowledgeable about deliverance to help you. Sometimes, you can be heavily attacked in your dream and the next service is about four days away. What do you do? You should never allow evil spirits to reside in your life. If you lack adequate time to do self-deliverance in the morning, after your quiet time, then, when you're having your bath, you can do it.

Our environment is such that there are many evil spirits moving around and if you are not regularly cleaning your house, they may come in and lodge there, your level of education notwithstanding. If a whole university professor could carry a ritual sacrifice because he needed promotion, then education is irrelevant in spiritual matters.

Let's learn a few lessons now before we go into actual practice.

A demon is a spirit, which means it's like a wind or breath. Most evil spirits move through the breathing passage or by any opening in the body. This is

⁴ Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2004) *Woman! Thou Art Loosed*. Yaba, Lagos: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries. p215-220

why sometimes when prayers are hot some people begin to pass out gas or emit bad odour. Now when an ambulance wants to go through a busy area and blares its siren, the purpose is to clear the traffic to ease the passage of the ambulance.

Therefore, when praying for self-deliverance, you should keep quiet after the prayer before ejecting those evil spirits. This is why at times we ask people to breathe in and out. If you are praying or speaking at this time, the spirits will not go out because you have not opened the way for them.

The next lesson you must learn is this; demons can come out by simple breathing, coughing, choking, yawning, vomiting, etc. The manifestations vary according to the person and the spirit involved. All the spirits that are not deeply rooted, depart easily, but those deeply entrenched, will require more time and effort to be thrown out. The more stubborn ones will require the help of other believers. Even when they are that strong, and you continue to wound them daily, they will eventually be mortally wounded.

Also, know that if multiple spirits are responsible for one problem, all of them must be removed before total victory is assured. One thing is certain; with every inch of ground grabbed from the devil, you will notice a definite improvement in your life. This is certain. Once the spirit leaves you, there will be a change in you.

Also remember that an evil spirit must have a legal ground for staying in a person's life.

The purpose of all these information is to enable you to do self-deliverance at home for yourself.

The process of self-deliverance is carried out in stages. Let's go through them one by one.

- **Step ONE** – Start with praise and worship. You can sing songs to praise God and to worship Him.
- **Step TWO** – Confess out loud promising deliverance Scripture. Let us run through a few of them:

Behold, I give unto you power to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy: and nothing shall by any means hurt you.

Luke 10:19

In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace;

Ephesians 1:7

And the God of peace shall bruise Satan under your feet shortly. The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you. Amen.

Romans 16:20

And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto the death.

Revelations 12:11

Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross;

Colossians 2:14

And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it.

Colossians 2:15

Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree:

Galatians 3:13

That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.

Galatians 3:14

Surely he shall deliver thee from the snare of the fowler, and from the noisome pestilence.

Psalms 91:3

2 Timothy 4:18 has this to say:

“And the Lord shall deliver me from every evil work, and will preserve me unto his heavenly kingdom: to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen.”

You must memorize at least this one – 2 Timothy 4:18.

- **Step THREE** – Break covenants and curses to destroy their legal hold.

You pray simple prayers like this:

“I break any curse working against me or I break any covenant working against me, in the name of Jesus.”

This is a simple prayer point with much results.

- **Step FOUR** – Bind all the spirits associated with those covenants and curses, like this:

“I bind all the spirits attached or connected to the curses and covenants I have just broken, in the name of Jesus.”

- **Step FIVE** – Lay one hand on your head and the other on your stomach or navel and begin to pray like this:

Holy Ghost fire, burn from the top of my head to the sole of my feet, in the name of Jesus.

Begin to mention every organ of your body: kidney, liver, intestine, blood, etc. You must not rush at this level. Lay your hands on areas that the Spirit of God leads you to. Do not be afraid if you notice that you are swaying or staggering, etc.

- **Step SIX** – Then begin to saturate yourself yourself with the blood of Jesus. You do this by saying:

-

“Blood of Jesus, enter into my spirit, soul and body.”

Next you say:

“I drink the blood of Jesus.”

This must continue until you have release in your spirit to stop.

- **Step SEVEN** – It is now, that you are able to demand firmly, in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ, that any spirit that is not of God should leave you. You demand it forcefully like this:

-

“In the name of the Lord Jesus Christ, I come against all you hidden spirit and bind your activities in my life. You can no longer hide below the surface because I now recognize what you have been doing; release me.”

If sickness is the problem, address it like this:

“You spirit of infirmity, I speak to you directly, get out of my life now. I am redeemed by the blood of Jesus Christ, come out and go now. Go out with every breath by the power of the Holy Spirit. I prevail over you, in the name of Jesus.”

At this point, you stop talking; open your mouth and nose and begin to breath in and out. Take about three to seven deep breaths, and expel them forcefully through your mouth and nose. You may be surprised that strange things will begin to happen. Repeat this stage again and again. This will help you to flush out any deposit or impurity within your body. You may notice that you are coughing, yawning, sneezing, sweating or shedding tears, but continue and do not lose your concentration.

- **Step EIGHT** – When you have finished the expulsion stage, you then ask for a fresh in-filling of the Holy Spirit and close the session with praises.

When you are attacked in your dream, rise up and go through the stages I have already mentioned. (Our book “Victory Over Satanic Dreams” can help you further.)

Self-deliverance keeps you from getting sick; it removes every evil seed of the enemy; it charges your body with fire. It uproots evil plantations and builds up your confidence.

Every night before you go to bed, you must remember these three important prayer points.

1. Pray that the walls of fire should surround you. The Bible says:

For I, saith the Lord, will be unto her a wall of fire round about, and will be the glory in the midst of her.

Zechariah 2:5

2. Pray for cover with the blood of Jesus.

And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto the death.

Revelations 12:11

3. Also pray that the angels of God should surround you.

The angel of the Lord encampeth round about them that fear him, and delivereth them.

Psalms 34:7

No Matter how sleepy you are, make sure you pray these three prayer points every night.

There is no reason why self-deliverance should not be effective. However, if the person seeking deliverance is under stubborn demonic control or hereditary strongman, and lacks sufficient faith or authority to defeat the oppressors, or is living in any known sin, the evil spirits will defend what they think is their right.

One final word of caution. For a person to be delivered, he must desire deliverance. Self-deliverance must not be done because of pride, shyness, the fear of possible public embarrassment, etc. Your motive for engaging in self-deliverance has to be pure.

Remember, deliverance is a process and the length of time it takes depends on several things viz:

- The length of time the spirit has stayed inside a person,
- The strength and reinforcement of the spirit,
- The experience and degree of anointing upon those who are ministering the deliverance,
- The willingness of the person being delivered to be free,
- The knowledge of the word of God and your level of hatred for sin.

For self-deliverance to be very effective, a great of self-discipline is necessary.

Also, remember that bondage can be weak or strong. A weak hold can be broken quickly, whereas a stronghold may take a longer time. You will not realize the strength of a bondage until you faithfully and persistently work on it.

You must remember that a foothold can graduate to a stronghold if left unaddressed.

After this exercise, you can set aside some days (with fasting) to pray the prayer points.

3 PRAYING USING THE BLOOD OF JESUS⁵

The blood of Jesus is the greatest weapon of victory for the believer.

The Bible says "And they overcame him by the blood of the lamb and by the word of their testimonies and they loved not their lives unto death" (Revelation 12:11). The blood of Jesus gives us the seal of victory over satan and all his hosts. It is crystal clear that satan can't withstand the power in the blood of Jesus. When we use the blood of Jesus as our weapon in prayer, victory is sure.

These prayer points are useful when Christians want to go into strategic spiritual warfare. All demons, satanic agents and stubborn pursuers will flee when they come face to face with the weapon of the blood of Jesus.

Blood-Bought Benefits

The blood of Jesus:⁶

- Gives SALVATION. Births us into His kingdom and keeps us from eternal damnation (see Mark 16:16; John 3:3,17).
- Makes ATONEMENT for us, blotting out sins (see Lev. 17:11; Rom. 5:11).

⁵ Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2000) Prayers to Destroy Diseases & Infirmities. Yaba, Lagos: Mountain of Fire and Miracles Ministries. p84-90

⁶ Alves, Elizabeth (2000) Becoming A Prayer Warrior. California, USA: Regal Books. p137

- REDEEMS us. Our life is paid for in full, bought back from the power of sin and death (see Ps. 107:2; Eph. 1:7; Heb. 9:12; Rev. 5:9).
- JUSTIFIES us. Acquits us of sin and guilt (see Acts 13:38,39; Rom. 5:9).
- Makes us RIGHTEOUS. Puts us back into right standing with God (see Isa. 59:2; Rom. 3:22,23,25; 1 John 1:9).
- Gives SANCTIFICATION. Sets us apart unto God at the time of salvation as well as each day thereafter through the blood of Jesus (see 1 Cor. 1:30; Heb. 10:10,14).
- Allows REMISSION of sins. Sin was canceled (see Rom. 3:24,25; Heb. 9:22).
- RECONCILES us. Accepting God's provision, we can now fellowship with Him in love (see Rom. 5:10; Col. 1:20).
- Gives OVERCOMING POWER as we receive and use what has been delegated to us (see Luke 10:19; Rev. 12:11).
- Provides DELIVERANCE. Releases us from powers of darkness and sets us free (see 2 Cor. 2:14; Col. 1:13).
- Releases FORGIVENESS. Pardons sins (see Col. 1:14; 1 John 1:9).
- Establishes a NEW COVENANT Replaces old covenant of sacrifices; perfect sacrifice now has been made through Jesus Christ (see Heb. 7:22; 8:13; 9:15; 10:9; 12:24).
- CLEANSSES us from all sin (see 1 John 1:7).

The blood of Jesus gives us victory in battles, healing in sickness, success in life endeavour, power over stubborn pursuers and victory in the human court. If you have tried other prayer points without achieving your desired goal, you can pray the blood of Jesus and you record outstanding success.

3.1 Confessions

Rev. 12:11: And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto the death.

In the name of Jesus Christ, I am a beloved child of God. I believe in God, I believe in Jesus Christ and I believe in the blessed Holy Spirit

Who is dwelling in the inside of me. I believe in the unshakeable and eternal power in the word of God. I believe that life and death are in my tongue. I believe that as I make this confession unto life with the power in my tongue, according to the words which the Lord has this day put in my mouth, I shall prosper.

It is written that Jesus Christ offered His blood as a drink, and His flesh as bread that whosoever drinks and eats it shall not die forever. Now, with strong faith in my heart, I hold in my hand a cup containing the blood of the Lamb of God and I drink it, that I may have life eternal.

I receive unto myself the virtues, strength, power, might and anointing in the blood. And I say, let the blood quicken all that is dead within me. Let all sucked, sapped and paralysed spiritual milk and strength of my life be resurrected by the blood. Let the blood re-energise, revitalise, reactivate and revive all dead potentials and spiritual gifts within me.

Let the blood flush out of me all inherited or self-acquired evil deposits in my system. Let it purify my blood system. Let it make old things pass away in my life and transform everything to become new. Let the power in the blood clean

my spiritual vision and wash my spiritual pipe that I may be receiving of the Lord unhindered.

I eat with the heart of faith, the flesh of Jesus. For it is written, His flesh is bread indeed. I eat it now so that I can also eat with Him in His glory. I eat the flesh of Jesus to receive new spiritual strength and vigour, strength and vigor to put under subjection all works of the flesh, to paralyse the desires of my flesh, strength and vigour to paralyse the power of my flesh and make it obedient to the laws of the Lord.

As I eat and drink the flesh and blood of my Lord Jesus Christ, I renew my covenant with Him and I receive the life therein; for it is written, life is in the blood. Thus I possess the life and the Spirit of Christ in me. Amen.

Jeremiah found the word of God and did eat it, and it became the joy of his heart. I have found the word of God and now like vitamin pills I throw it into my mouth and chew and digest it. Let it produce within me the power to rejoice in the Holy Ghost, the power to be steadfast in following God, the power to walk circumspectly, the power of holy living and the power of unashamed faithfulness in all circumstances.

The word of God is spirit and it is life. It entered Ezekiel and he was I put back on his feet. Let the word of God raise up in me every downtrodden area of my life. Let the word like fire purify me and restore any parts stolen or destroyed by the enemy. Let the word build me up and give me inheritance amongst all sanctified brethren.

Let the joy of the Lord strengthen me. Let His right hand of righteousness uphold me. Let His countenance brighten up my life. Let the horn of His salvation lift me up out of the valley of life and let His living anointing oil fan on me like the dew of Hermon and fill my life.

Lord, make me drunken with the blood of Jesus and I shall be full of life eternity.

Father Lord, as it is written, that I should be strong in the Lord and in the power of His might, I ask that You be my might and strength all the days of my life. Gird me with Your strength and let me not fail into the pit of my enemies and I will praise You all the days of my life.

With my heart I believe the word of God. With my mouth I have confessed unto salvation and justification. Oh Lord, let it be performed unto me as I have prayed, in Jesus Christ's only mighty name. Amen.

3.2 Praise And Worship

1. Thank You Father for the benefits and provision of the blood of Jesus.
2. I stand on the ground of the blood of Jesus to proclaim victory over sin, satan and his agents and the world.
3. I apply the blood of Jesus to every stubborn problem in my life.
4. I sprinkle the blood of Jesus upon my body - from the top of my head to the soles of my feet.
5. I soak my life in the blood of Jesus.
6. I paralyse all satanic oppressors delegated against me with the blood of

Jesus.

7. I hold the blood of Jesus as a shield against any power that is already poised to resist me, in the name of Jesus.
8. By the blood of Jesus, I stand against every device of distraction.
9. I stand upon the word of God and I declare myself unmoveable, in the name of Jesus.
10. Let every door that I have opened to the enemy be closed forever with the blood of Jesus.
11. Make each of the following powerful confessions 70 times.
 - Through the blood of Jesus, I have been redeemed out of the hands of the devil.
 - I walk in the light and the blood of Jesus cleanses me from all sins.
 - Through the blood of Jesus I am justified, sanctified and made holy with God's holiness.
 - Through the blood of Jesus, I have the life of God in me.
 - Through the blood of Jesus, I have access to the presence of the Lord.
12. I paralyse and cut off the head of my Goliath with the blood of Jesus.
13. If there is anything in me that is not of God, I don't want it. Depart, in the mighty name of Jesus.
14. Let the blood of the Cross stand between me and any dark power delegated against me.
15. I curse every work of darkness in my life to dry to the roots by the blood of Jesus.
16. I defeat, paralyse and erase _____ (pick from the under listed) by the blood of Jesus.
 - spirit of demotion
 - financial downgrading
 - failure at the edge of miracle
 - inherited problems

- vision killers
 - dream attackers
 - marital problems
17. Let the power of the blood of Jesus be released on my behalf and let it speak against every dead bone in my life.
 18. Let the power of the blood of Jesus be released on my behalf and let it speak against every stubborn mountain in my life.
 19. In the name of Jesus, I plead the blood of Jesus.
 20. In the name of Jesus, I apply the blood of Jesus over my house.
 21. In the name of Jesus, I soak myself in the blood of Jesus.
 22. In the name of Jesus, I apply the blood of Jesus. Demons, you cannot enter my house
 23. I draw a circle of the blood of Jesus around me.
 24. I draw the blood line of protection around my property.
 25. I overcome you satan by the blood of the Lamb.
 26. You cannot put any sickness on me because I am redeemed by the blood of the Lamb.
 27. Let the blood of Jesus speak confusion into the camp of the enemy.
 28. Let the blood of Jesus speak destruction unto every evil growth in my life.
 29. Let the blood of Jesus speak disappearance unto every infirmity in my life.
 30. Let the blood of Jesus speak peace unto every broken marriage.
 31. Mr. Devil, see the blood of Jesus. The One who shed His blood crushed your head and He is my Lord.
 32. Let the blood of Jesus speak victory and prosperity unto my life.
 33. I sprinkle the blood of Jesus on all my property.
 34. Let the blood of Jesus dry up every evil tree used against me.
 35. You evil power, I bring to bear the power of the blood of Jesus to bind

you.

36. I render every evil power militating against me impotent by the blood of Jesus.

37. I hold the blood against you and declare that you have been defeated.

38. Let the blood of Jesus minister defeat to every evil work in my life.

39. Let the blood of Jesus bring down to nothing any evil work in my life.

40. I minister death unto the enemy of progress in my life by the blood of Jesus.

41. I bind the staying power of any problem by the blood of Jesus.

42. I create a boundary against you devil by the blood of Jesus.

43. I hold the blood of Jesus against any evil spirit working against me.

44. I hold the blood of Jesus against you, you spirit of _____ (mention what is troubling you). You have to flee.

45. I enter the holy of holies by the blood of Jesus.

46. I hold the blood of Jesus against the spirit of stagnation in any area of my life.

47. I hold the blood of Jesus against demonic delay of my miracles.

48. I hold the blood of Jesus against failure at the edge of success.

49. I hold the blood of Jesus against lack of good helpers.

50. I hold the blood of Jesus against fruitless efforts in my life.

51. I hold the blood of Jesus against occupying wrong positions.

52. I hold the blood of Jesus against every delayed and denied promotion.

53. I hold the blood of Jesus against dead accounts.

54. I hold the blood of Jesus against evil diversion.

55. I hold the blood of Jesus against lost foreign benefits.

56. I hold the blood of Jesus against satanic prophecies.

57. I hold the blood of Jesus against vagabond anointing.

58. I hold the blood of Jesus against profit starvation.

59. I hold the blood of Jesus against tortoise and snail anointing.

4 PRAYERS FOR DIVINE HEALING⁷

4.1 Confessions

And the LORD will take away from thee all sickness, and will put none of the evil diseases of Egypt, which thou knowest, upon thee; but will lay them upon all them that hate thee.

Deuteronomy 7:15

But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed. All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

Isaiah 53:5-6

And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it.

Colossians. 2:15

I am an overcomer. I overcome satan because of the blood of the Lamb and because of the words of my testimonies. I am a body of Christ and satan has no power over me. My body is the temple of the Holy Spirit of God. I am redeemed, cleansed and sanctified by the blood of Jesus. The devil has no place in me. The devil has no power over me. No weapon fashioned against me shall prosper. The weapons of my warfare are mighty through God to pull down strongholds. I can do all things through Christ which strengthens me.

⁷ Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2000) Prayers to Destroy Diseases & Infirmities. Yaba, Lagos: Mountain of Fire and Miracles Ministries. p113-117

1. Praises.
2. Confession of sins.
3. I command every arrow of witchcraft in my life, come out with all your roots in the name of Jesus! (*Lay your hands on your stomach and keep repeating the emphasized area.*)
4. Every load of infirmity planted by the enemy, come out of me and enter no more, in the name of Jesus.
5. Let all negative materials circulating in my blood stream, be evacuated in the name of Jesus.
6. I drink the blood of Jesus. (*Physically swallow and drink it in faith. Keep doing this for some time.*)
7. *Lay one hand on your head and the other on your stomach or navel and begin to pray like this: Holy Ghost Fire, bum from the top of my head to the sole of my feet. (Begin to mention every organ of your body; your kidney, liver, intestines, blood, etc. You must not rush at this level, because the fire will actually come and you may start feeling the heat.)*
8. Let the blood of Jesus be transfused into my blood vessels, in the name of Jesus.
9. I command every agent of disease in my blood and body organs to die, in the name of Jesus.
10. Let my blood reject every evil foreign entity, in the name of Jesus.
11. Blood of Jesus, speak deliverance and healing into my life, in the name of Jesus.
12. I receive creative healing in my body, in the name of Jesus.
13. I hold the blood of Jesus against you spirit of _____ (mention what is troubling you) you have to flee.

14. O Lord, let Your hand of fire be stretched out upon my life now.
15. O Lord, let Your miracle hand be stretched out upon my life now.
16. O Lord, let Your deliverance hand be stretched out upon my life now.
17. I fire back every arrow of death and hell, in the name of Jesus.
18. Let the organs of my body be released from every altar of bewitchment, in the name of Jesus.
19. I destroy every garment of infirmity, in the name of Jesus.
20. Every handwriting of infirmity in my life, be wiped off by the blood of Jesus.
21. O God, arise and let every enemy of wholeness scatter, in the name of Jesus.
22. I cancel every medical or clinical prophecy, in the name of Jesus.
23. Every Pharaoh of infirmity, die in the Red Sea, in the name of Jesus.
24. Holy Spirit, release Your healing virtue upon my life, in the name of Jesus.
25. Every spirit hindering my perfect healing, fall down and die now, in the name of Jesus.
26. Father Lord, let all death contractors begin to kill themselves, in the name of Jesus.
27. Father Lord, let every germ of infirmity in my body die, in the name of Jesus.
28. Father Lord, let every agent of sickness working against my health disappear, in the name of Jesus.
29. Fountain of discomfort in my life, dry up now, in the name of Jesus.
30. Every dead organ in my body, receive life now, in the name of Jesus.
31. Father Lord, let my blood be transfused with the blood of Jesus to effect my perfect health, in the name of Jesus.

32. Every internal disorder, receive order, in the name of Jesus.
33. Every infirmity, come out with all your roots, in the name of Jesus.
34. I withdraw every conscious and unconscious cooperation with sickness,
in the name of Jesus.
35. O Lord, let the whirlwind of God blow every wind of infirmity away.
36. I release my body from every curse of infirmity, in the name of Jesus.
37. O Lord, let the blood of Jesus flush every evil deposit out from my blood.
38. I recover every organ of my body from every evil altar, in Jesus' name.
39. I withdraw my body from the manipulation of every caldron of darkness,
in the name of Jesus.
40. Holy Ghost fire, destroy every stubborn agent of disease in my body, in
the name of Jesus.
41. I arrest every demon of terminal disease, in the name of Jesus.
42. Holy Ghost fire, boil every infirmity out of my system, in the name of
Jesus.
43. I cancel every witchcraft verdict against my life, in the name of Jesus.
44. O earth, vomit anything that has been buried inside of you against my
health, in the name of Jesus.
45. Every tree that infirmity has planted in my blood, be uprooted by fire, in
the name of Jesus.
46. I command every witchcraft arrow to depart from my
 - spinal cord
 - navel
 - throat
 - top of the head.
 - spleen
 - heart
 - between the eyes
47. bind every evil presence in my bodily system
 - reproductive
 - digestive

- respiratory
- skeletal
- circulatory
- excretory
- nervous
- muscular
- endocrine

48. Let the power in the stripes of Jesus heal me now.

49. O Lord, heal me and I shall be healed.

50. Every organ of my body that is not functioning well, be replaced by the power of God, in the name of Jesus.

51. Let my body defences resist and destroy every sickness, in the name of Jesus.

52. Let my immunity be empowered by the blood of Jesus.

53. Begin to thank God for your healing.

5 PRAYERS AGAINST SEXUAL PERVERSION⁸

- For those who would like to be delivered from the spiritual contamination resulting from past sexual sins.
- For those who would like to be delivered from their present sexual lusts, enticement, and other sexual sins.
- For those who would like to expel sexual satanic deposits acquired by sleeping with demonised people.
- For those who had been a commercial sex worker in the past.
- For those who frequently dream of having sex.

And they that are Christ's have crucified the flesh with the affections and lusts.

Galatians 5:24

5.1 PRAISE AND WORSHIP

1. Thank God for His power to deliver from every bondage.
2. I break myself from every spirit of sexual perversion, in the name of Jesus.
3. I release myself from every spiritual pollution emanating from my past sins of fornication and sexual immorality, in Jesus' name.
4. I release myself from every ancestral pollution, in Jesus' name.
5. I release myself from every dream pollution, in Jesus' name.

⁸ Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2000) Prayers to Destroy Diseases & Infirmities. Yaba, Lagos: Mountain of Fire and Miracles Ministries. p133-135

6. I command every evil plantation of sexual perversion in my life to come out with all its roots, in the name of Jesus.
7. Every spirit of sexual perversion working against my life, be paralysed and get out of my life, in the name of Jesus.
8. Every demon of sexual perversion assigned to my life, be bound, in the name of Jesus.
9. Father Lord, let the power of sexual perversion oppressing my life receive the fire of God and be roasted, in the name of Jesus.
10. Every inherited demon of sexual perversion in my life, receive the arrows of fire and remain permanently bound, in the name of Jesus.
11. I command every force or power of sexual perversion to come against itself, in the name of Jesus.
12. Father Lord, let every demonic stronghold built in my life by the spirit of sexual perversion be pulled down, in the name of Jesus.
13. Let every power of sexual perversion that has consumed my life be shattered to pieces, in the name of Jesus.
14. Let my soul be delivered from the forces of sexual perversion, in the name of Jesus.
15. Let the Lord God of Elijah, arise with a strong hand against every spirit wife/husband and all the powers of sexual perversion, in the name of Jesus.
16. I break the hold of any evil power over my life, in Jesus' name.
17. I nullify every effect of the bite of sexual perversion upon my life, in the name of Jesus.
18. Every evil stranger and all satanic deposits in my life, I command you to be paralysed and to get out of my life, in Jesus' name.
19. Holy Ghost fire, purge my life completely, in the name of Jesus.

20. I claim my complete deliverance from the spirit of fornication and sexual immorality, in the name of Jesus.
21. Let my eyes be delivered from lustfulness, in the name of Jesus.
22. As from today, let my eyes be controlled by the Holy Spirit, in the name of Jesus.
23. Holy Ghost fire, fall upon my eyes and bum to ashes every evil force and all satanic power controlling my eyes, in Jesus' name.
24. I move from bondage to liberty in every area of my life, in the name of Jesus.
25. Thank God for answers your prayers.

6 ADDICTION AND RECOVERY PRAYERS⁹

6.1 Confessions

Exodus 15:6, Psalm 91:3, Psalm 107:6, Psalm 107:20, John 8:32, John 8:36; Psalm 107:20, II Cor. 2:14, I John 3:8; Psalm 31:1-5, Psalm 31:7, Psalm 46:1, Psalm 55:18, Psalm 46:5, Psalm 107:6, Prov. 3:26, Prov. 26:11, Isa. 41:13, Rom. 8:32, 1 Cor. 3:16-17, Phil. 4:7, 1 John 3:8b

6.2 Praise And Worship

1. Father, I confess that, in the past, I had held unforgiveness, sometime bitterness and resentment in my heart against certain people who had hurt or disappointed me.
2. I now recognise this as a sin and confess it as sin, for You have said in Your Word that if we confess our sin, You are faithful and just to forgive us our sin and to cleanse us of all unrighteousness (1 John 1:9).
3. I do now forgive the following people, whom I can remember, who have hurt or disappointed me. (*Mention names of those who come to your mind.*) I now freely forgive all these people and ask You to bless them if they are living.
4. I also forgive myself for all my many faults and failures, for You have

⁹ Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2000) Prayers to Destroy Diseases & Infirmities. Yaba, Lagos: Mountain of Fire and Miracles Ministries. p226-231

freely forgiven me.

5. Thank You Father for freedom from the load of unforgiveness, bitterness and resentment, in Jesus' name.
6. Father, I confess to You, that in the past, through ignorance, through curiosity or through wilfulness, I have come into contact with certain sinful acts. I now recognise this as sin and confess it as sin, claiming forgiveness, in the name of Jesus.
7. Specifically, I do confess as sin and renounce all contacts which I have had with the following occult things: *(here mention every thing in the occult category into which you have dabbled or become involved)*.
8. I also renounce and confess as sin any oath which I have made to any false god and any idolatry in which I have been involved.
9. Satan, I rebuke you, in the name of Jesus, and I am closing any door which I or my ancestors may have opened to you and your demons, in the name of Jesus.
10. I renounce satan and all his demons, I declare them to be my enemies and I command them out of my life completely, in the name of Jesus.
11. In the name of Jesus Christ, I now claim deliverance from all evil spirits which may be in me (Joel 2:28). Once and for all, I close the door in my life to all occult practices and command all related spirits to leave me now, in the name of Jesus.
12. In the name of Jesus, I break any curse of rejection from the womb or illegitimacy which may be in my family, even back to ten generations on both sides of the family (Deut. 26:2).
13. In the name of Jesus, I now renounce, break and loose myself from all demonic subjection and from any ungodly soul ties to my mother, father, grandparents or any other person, living or dead, who have ever

- dominated or controlled me in any way which is contrary to the will of God and God's word.
14. I also repent and ask You to forgive me, if I have ever dominated or controlled some other person in the wrong way.
15. In the name of Jesus Christ, I now renounce, break and loose myself and all descendants from all psychic heredity, demonic holds, psychic powers, bondage, bonds of physical or mental illness, or curses which may be upon my family line as a result of sins, transgressions, iniquities, occult or psychic involvements of myself, my parents, or any of my ancestors, (my spouse, all ex spouses, or their parents, or any of their ancestors).
16. In the name of Jesus Christ, I now renounce, break and loose myself and all my descendants from all evil curses, charms, vexes, spells, jinxes, psychic powers, bewitchments, witchcraft or sorcery which may have been put upon me or my family line; from any person or persons; or from any occult or psychic source. I renounce all connected and related spirits and command them to leave me now.
17. I thank You Lord Jesus for setting me free.
18. In the name of Jesus Christ, I command satan and all of his demons to loose my mind completely.
19. I ask You Father to send Your angels to break, cut and sever all fetters, bands, chains, and ties and bonds of whatever sort the enemy has managed to place on my mind, by word or deed, in the name of Jesus.
20. I ask You to loose upon me and my family the following: wisdom, counsel, might, knowledge, fear of the Lord, power, love, sound mind, grace, peace and the spirit of the Lord.
21. Father, I break and renounce, cut and break all evil soul ties which I may

- have with lodges, religious systems, adulterers, drunkards, drug addicts, close friends, cult, etc.
22. Father, I ask You in the name of Jesus Christ to send Your angels to gather up the fragments of my soul and to restore them to their rightful place in me. Have them unearthed and break all earthen storage vessels; also all bonds; bands or binding which have been put upon my soul by any means.
23. I claim the restoration of my soul, in the name of Jesus.
24. Let all the pieces of my fragmented mind, will, and emotions be brought back into proper and original positions where they belong, in the name of Jesus.
25. In the name of Jesus Christ, I break all curses placed against me by witchcraft and command that those curses and spirits from them return to the senders (Psalm 109:17,18).
26. In accord with Leviticus 26, I do now confess the sins of my ancestors: idolatry, witchcraft, occultism, lust, adultery, divorce, perversion, pride, unbelief, rebellion and stubbornness, in the name of Jesus.
27. I claim forgiveness because of the provisions in 1John 1:9 and I declare the curses broken and lift the curses, whoredoms and iniquities from me and my descendants, in the name of Jesus.
28. I command all connected and related spirits to leave me and my family and go wherever Jesus wants them to go, in the name of Jesus.
29. I confess that my body is the temple of the Holy Spirit: redeemed, cleansed, and sanctified by the blood of Jesus Christ. Therefore, satan has no more place in me, no more power over me, because of the blood of Jesus.
30. Satan, in the name of Jesus Christ the Son of God, I put you and all your
-

legions on notice that I am attacking you from my position in Christ at the right hand of the Father in the third heaven. This places me high above you, your principalities, power, thrones, dominions, world rulers, rulers of darkness, kings, princes and every angelic rank under your command.

31. Romans 8:15: ***For I did not receive a spirit that makes one a slave again to fear (bondage); but I received the Spirit of sonship (adoption). And by Him I cry, "Abba, Father,"***

32. *Call the spirit you do not desire in your life by name. Then issue the command firmly and repeatedly that the spirits must come out, in the name of the Lord Jesus.*

33. ***Pray as follows:*** You spirit of _____

Addiction to, or crave for:

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| - Acid | - Caffeine |
| - LSD | - Peyote |
| - Alcohol | - Diet pills |
| - Marijuana | - Speed |
| - Amphetamines | - Downers |
| - Methadone | - STP |
| - Any drug | - Hashish |
| - Methedrine™ | - Sugar |
| - Aspirin | - Heroine |
| - Mood elevators | - Tranquilizers |
| - Barbiturates | - Junk food |
| - Nicotine... | |

in my belly, in my blood, in my lungs, in my mind, in my sinuses, in my throat, in the name of Jesus.

(Gluttony)

- | | |
|------------------|---------------|
| - Binge | - Greediness |
| - Nervousness | - Bulimia |
| - Moodiness | - Resentment |
| - Compulsiveness | - Self-reward |
| - Restlessness | - Frustration |
| - Sweet tooth | - Self-pitty |

Come out of my brain and mind, in the name of Jesus.

34. I loose myself from you, in the name of Jesus, and I command you to leave me right now, in the mighty name of our Lord Jesus Christ

7 WAR AGAINST MARRIAGE BREAKERS¹⁰

Wherefore they are no more twain, but one flesh. What therefore God hath joined together, let not man put asunder.

Matthew 19:6

7.1 Prayer Points

- 1 Praise worship and thanksgiving
- 2 I paralyse every architect of conflict and hostility in my home, in the name of Jesus.
- 3 I withdraw my marriage from the hands of evil designers, in the name of Jesus.
- 4 Let every power trying to re-draw my marriage map be put to shame, in the name of Jesus.
- 5 Let all household wickedness release my home, in Jesus' name.
- 6 I receive deliverance from every evil plantation designed to bring me and my children under the bondage of the devil, in the name of Jesus.
- 7 I paralyse every spirit of hatred and hostility militating against my home, in the name of Jesus.
- 8 I spoil and destabilize every satanic plan against my home, in the name of Jesus.

¹⁰ Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2004) *Woman! Thou Art Loosed*. Yaba, Lagos: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries. p122-124

- 9 I deliver my marriage from the hands of home-wreckers, in the name of Jesus.
 - 10 I pursue, overtake and recover my marriage from the hands of marriage breakers, in the name of Jesus.
 - 11 Every evil effect of external interferences in my marriage, be completely neutralized, in the name of Jesus.
 - 12 Lord, dissolve and render to nought every evil counsel fashioned against my home.
 - 13 Every power preventing me as a wife from accepting the headship of my husband, be paralysed, in Jesus' name.
 - 14 Let every imagination, thought, plan, decision, desire and expectation of divorce and separation against my home, be nullified, in the name of Jesus.
 - 15 Satan, hear the word of the Lord: You will not break my home, in the name of Jesus.
 - 16 I bind all powers eating away the determination of my husband to stay married to me, in the name of Jesus.
 - 17 Let the satanic birds eating away my love from the heart of my husband, vomit it, in the name of Jesus.
 - 18 Pray in the spirit for at least ten (10) minutes.
 - 19 Let all extra-marital relationship with other "partners" collapse and die, in the name of Jesus.
 - 20 I break every soul-tie between my husband and (*mention the name of the strange woman if you know it*) in Jesus' name.
 - 21 I deliver my husband from the hand of evil seducers, in the name of Jesus.
 - 22 I break the hold of the spirit wife upon my husband, in the name of Jesus.
-

- 23 I command failure, frustration and disappointment upon the strange relationship, in the name of Jesus.
- 24 I break the hold of the spirit of polygamy upon my husband, in the name of Jesus.
- 25 Let the angels of the living God, pursue the strange woman out of the life of my husband, in the name of Jesus.
- 26 I refuse to be a second-hand wife, or a married-single lady, in the name of Jesus.
- 27 I break the power of every evil manipulation fashioned against my home, in the name of Jesus.
- 28 I paralyse every vagabond spirit working in the life of my husband, in the name of Jesus.
- 29 I pull down (*pick from the underlisted*) stronghold fashioned against my marriage, in the name of Jesus.
- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| - evil association | - weak family altar |
| - unsaved partner or children | - unprofitable imitation |
| - communication gap | - planlessness |
| - carelessness | - pride |
| - foolishness | - deterioration of relationship |
| - suspicion | - evil counsellors |
| - misplaced priority | - selfishness |
| - incomplete "leaving" and incomplete "cleaving" of couple | |
| - evil attachment to parents | - unprofitable comparison |
| - lack of knowledge of the word of God | |

8 FREEDOM FROM INORDINATE AFFECTIONS AND SOUL¹¹

1. Thank the Lord for his redemptive power.
2. Prayers of confession of sins and forgiveness.
3. I release myself from all unprofitable friendship, in Jesus' name.
4. I come against the dark powers which manipulated my friendship with _____ (*mention the name of the person*) and break their power over my life, in the name of Jesus,
5. I bind all demonic authorities which motivated and controlled my relationship with _____ (*mention the name of the person*) and break their authority and power over my affections, in Jesus' name.
6. I command all evil remote controllers to loose their hold upon my affections, in the name of Jesus.
7. I release myself from the hold of every bewitched relationship, in the name of Jesus.
8. By the blood of Jesus, I remove myself from any strange authority, ever exercised over me.
9. I remove all evil soul ties and affections, in Jesus' name.
10. I come against every desire and expectation of the enemy to engage me in any unprofitable relationship, in Jesus' name.
11. I break every ungodly relationship, in the name of Jesus.
12. I break and renounce evil soul-ties I have had or may have had with
 - secret societies
 - cults
 - adulterers
 - family members

¹¹ Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2004) *Woman! Thou Art Loosed*. Yaba, Lagos: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries. p136-137

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| - close friends | - organisations |
| - husbands | - past or present friends |
| - wives | - acquaintances |
| - engagements | - doctors |
| - clubs | - religious leaders |
| - social organisations | - preachers, etc. |

in the name of Jesus.

13. I renounce all hidden evil soul-ties, in the name of Jesus.

14. I renounce, break and loose myself from all demonic subjection to any relationship, in the name of Jesus.

15. I break all evil soul-ties and wash them away with the blood of the Lord Jesus.

16. I remove myself from any strange authority exercised over me, in the name of Jesus.

17. I remove all mind control manipulations between me and any friend or family member, in the name of Jesus.

18. I claim deliverance from any negative affection towards anyone, in the name of Jesus.

19. Let evil affections towards me be wiped off the mind of _____
(*mention the name of the person*), in the name of Jesus.

20. Lord Jesus, I give You my affections, emotions and desires and request that they be in submission to the Holy Spirit.

21. Praise the Lord for answered prayers.

9 PRAYERS TO OVERCOME WITCHCRAFT¹²

Deliver me from mine enemies, O my God: defend me from them that rise up against me. Deliver me from the workers of iniquity, and save me from bloody men. For, lo, they lie in wait for my soul: the mighty are gathered against me; not for my transgression, nor for my sin, O Lord. They run and prepare themselves without my fault: awake to help me, and behold. Thou therefore, O Lord God of hosts, the God of Israel, awake to visit all the heathen: be not merciful to any wicked transgressors. Selah. They return at evening: they make a noise like a dog, and go round about the city. Behold, they belch out with their mouth: swords are in their lips: for who, say they, doth hear? But thou, O Lord, shalt laugh at them; thou shalt have all the heathen in derision. Because of his strength will I wait upon thee: for God is my defence. The God of my mercy shall prevent me: God shall let me see my desire upon mine enemies. Slay them not, lest my people forget: scatter them by thy power; and bring them down, O Lord our shield. For the sin of their mouth and the words of their lips let them even be taken in their pride: and for cursing and lying which they speak. Consume them in wrath, consume them, that they may not be: and let them know that God ruleth in Jacob unto the ends of the earth. Selah. And at evening let them return; and let them make a noise like a dog, and go round about the city. Let them wander up and down for meat, and grudge if they be not satisfied. But I will sing of thy power; yea, I will sing aloud of thy mercy in the morning: for thou hast been my defence and refuge in the day of my trouble. Unto thee, O my strength, will I sing: for God is my defence, and the God of my mercy. Psalm 59:1-17

Aggressive praise worship

¹² Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2004) Woman! Thou Art Loosed. Yaba, Lagos: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries. p253-261

1. Let every problem in my life that originated from witchcraft receive divine, instant solution, in Jesus' name.
2. I command all the damages done to my life by witchcraft to be repaired, in the name of Jesus.
3. Let every blessing confiscated by witchcraft spirits be released in Jesus' name.
4. Every witchcraft power assigned against my life and marriage, receive _____ (pick from the under listed), in the name of Jesus.
 - the thunder and lightning of God
 - hail and fire mingled with the blood of the Lamb
 - unbearable heat
 - concentrated acid
 - destroying flood
 - destruction
 - raging fire
 - continuous plagues
 - failures
 - confusion
5. I loose myself from any power of witchcraft, in Jesus' name.
6. Every camp of witchcraft gathered against my prosperity, fall down and die, in Jesus' name.
7. Every witchcraft pot working against me, I bring the judgment of God against you, in the name of Jesus.
8. I command every witchcraft pot using remote control against my health to be broken into pieces, in Jesus' name.
9. Witchcraft opposition, receive the rain of affliction, in the name of Jesus.
10. Let the spirit of witchcraft attack familiar spirits fashioned against me, in Jesus' name.
11. I retrieve my integrity from the hands of household witchcraft, in the name of Jesus.

12. I break the power of the occult, witchcraft and familiar spirits over my life in Jesus' name.
13. In the name of Jesus, I break and loose myself from all curses, chains, spells, jinxes, bewitchments, witchcraft or sorcery which may have been put upon me.
14. Let the thunder of God locate and dismantle the throne of witchcraft in my household, in the name of Jesus.
15. Let every seat of witchcraft in my household be roasted by the fire of God, in Jesus' name.
16. Let the altar of witchcraft in my household be roasted, in the name of Jesus.
17. Let the thunder of God scatter beyond redemption the foundation of witchcraft in my household, in Jesus' name.
18. Every stronghold or refuge of my household witches, be destroyed, in the name of Jesus.
19. Every hiding or secret place of witchcraft in my family, be exposed by fire, in the name of Jesus.
20. Let every local and international witchcraft network of household witches be shattered to pieces, in Jesus' name.
21. Let the communication system of household witches be frustrated, in the name of Jesus.
22. Let the terrible fire of God consume the transportation of my household witchcraft, in the name of Jesus.
23. Every agent ministering at the altar of witchcraft in my household, fall down and die, in the name of Jesus.

24. Let the thunder and fire of God, locate the storehouses and strongrooms of my household witchcraft harbouring my blessings, and pull them down, in the name of Jesus.
25. Let any witchcraft curse working against me be revoked by the blood of Jesus.
26. Every decision, vow and covenant of household witchcraft affecting me, be nullified by the blood of Jesus.
27. I destroy, with the fire of God, every weapon of witchcraft used against me, in Jesus name.
28. Any material taken from my body and now placed on a witchcraft altar, be roasted by the fire of God, in Jesus' name.
29. I reverse every witchcraft burial fashioned against me, in the name of Jesus.
30. Every trap set for me by witches, begin to catch your owners, in the name of Jesus.
31. Every witchcraft padlock fashioned against any area of my life, be roasted, in Jesus' name.
32. Let the wisdom of household witches be converted to foolishness, in the name of Jesus.
33. Let the wickedness of household enemies overtake them, in the name of Jesus.
34. I deliver my soul from every witchcraft bewitchment, in the name of Jesus.
35. Any witchcraft bird flying for my sake, fall down, die and be roasted to ashes, in the name of Jesus.
36. Any of my blessings traded with by household witches be returned to me, in Jesus' name.

37. Any of my blessings and testimonies swallowed by witches, be converted to hot coals of fire of God and be vomited, in the name of Jesus.
38. I break myself loose from every bondage of witchcraft covenants, in the name of Jesus.
39. Any witchcraft coven where any of my blessings are hidden, be roasted by the fire of God, in the name of Jesus.
40. (Lay your right hand on your head) Every witchcraft plantation, pollution, deposit or material in my body, be melted by the fire of God and be flushed out by the blood of Jesus.
41. Every evil ever done to me through witchcraft attack, be reversed, in the name of Jesus.
42. Every witchcraft hand planting evil seeds in my life through dream attacks, wither and burn to ashes, in Jesus' name.
43. Every witchcraft obstacle and hindrance put on the road to my desired miracle and success, be removed by the east wind of God, in the name of Jesus.
44. Every witchcraft chant, spell and projection fashioned against me, I bind you and turn you against your owner, in Jesus' name.
45. I frustrate every plot, device, scheme and project of witchcraft designed to affect any area of my life, in the name of Jesus.
46. Any witch projecting himself into the body of any animal in order to do me harm, be trapped in the body of such an animal forever, in the name of Jesus.
47. Any drop of my blood sucked by any witch, be vomited now, in the name of Jesus.
48. Any part of me shared out amongst household/village witches, I recover you, in the name of Jesus.

49. Any organ of my body that has been exchanged for another through witchcraft operation, be replaced now, in Jesus' name.
50. I recover any of my virtues/blessings shared out amongst village/household witches, in the name of Jesus.
51. I reverse the evil effect of any witchcraft summon of my spirit, in the name of Jesus.
52. I loose my hands and feet from any witchcraft bewitchment and bondage, in Jesus' name.
53. Let the blood of Jesus wash away every witchcraft identification mark on me or on any property of mine, in Jesus' name.
54. I forbid any re-union or re-gathering of household and village witches against my life, in the name of Jesus.
55. Let the entire body system of my household witched begin to run contrary until they have confessed all their wickedness, in Jesus' name.
56. Let the mercies of God be withdrawn from them, in Jesus' name.
57. Let them grope in the daytime as in dark night, in Jesus' name.
58. Let everything that has ever worked for them work against them, in Jesus' name.
59. Let them not have a cloth to cover their shame, in Jesus' name.
60. Let as many of them as are stubbornly unrepentant be smitten by the sun in the day and by the moon in the night, in Jesus' name.
61. Let each step they take lead them to greater destruction, in the name of Jesus.
62. But as for me, let me dwell in the hollow of God's hand in the name of Jesus.
63. Let the goodness and mercies of God overwhelm me now, in the name of Jesus.

64. Any witchcraft practice under any water against my life, receive immediate judgment of fire, in the name of Jesus.
65. Every witchcraft power that has introduced spirit husband/wife or child into my dreams, be roasted by fire, in Jesus' name.
66. Every agent of witchcraft power posing as my husband, wife or child in my dreams, be roasted by fire, in Jesus' name.
67. Every agent of witchcraft power physically attached to my marriage to frustrate it, fall down and perish now, in the name of Jesus.
68. Every agent of witchcraft power assigned to attack my finances through dream, fall down and perish, in the name of Jesus.
69. Let the thunderbolts of God locate and destroy every witchcraft power covens where deliberations and decisions have ever been fashioned against me, in the name of Jesus.
70. Any water spirit from my village, or my place of birth, practising witchcraft against me and my family, be amputated by the word of God, in the name of Jesus.
71. Any power of witchcraft holding any of my blessings in bondage, receive the fire of God and release them, in the name of Jesus.
72. I loose my mind and soul from the bondage of marine witches, in the name of Jesus.
73. Any witchcraft chain binding my hands and feet from prospering, be broken and shattered to pieces, in Jesus' name.
74. Every arrow shot into my life from under any water through witchcraft power, come out of me and go back *to your* sender, in the name of Jesus.
75. Any evil material transferred into my body through contact with any witchcraft agent, be roasted by fire, in the name of Jesus.

name of Jesus.

89. Spirit of the living God, come upon my life and place a shield of protection around me, in the name of Jesus.
90. Every chain of inherited witchcraft in my family, break, in the name of Jesus.
91. Every ladder used by witchcraft against me, be roasted, in the name of Jesus.
92. Any door that I have opened to witchcraft in any area of my life, be closed for ever by the blood of Jesus.
93. I revoke every witchcraft verdict on my marital life, in the name of Jesus.
94. I send confusion into the camp of household witchcraft, in the name of Jesus.
95. Stubborn witchcraft, release me, in the name of Jesus.
96. Every witchcraft power working against my destiny, fall down and die, in Jesus' name.
97. Every incantation, ritual and witchcraft power against my destiny, fall down and die, in the name of Jesus.
98. I break the power of the occult, witchcraft and familiar spirits over my life, in Jesus' name.
99. Witchcraft opposition, receive the rain of affliction, in the name of Jesus.
100. I cancel every witchcraft verdict against my life, in Jesus' name.
101. I command every arrow of witchcraft in my life, come out with all your roots in the name of Jesus! (Lay your hands on your stomach and pray aggressively.)
102. I command every witchcraft pot using remote control against my

- health to be broken into pieces, in Jesus' name.
103. I rebuke the spell of any witchcraft pot, in Jesus' name.
104. I break every witchcraft pot over my life, in Jesus' name.
105. Every council of witchcraft working against me will not prosper, in the name of Jesus.
106. I disentangle myself and my family from every witchcraft cage and pot, in the name of Jesus.
107. I retrieve my integrity out of the hands of household witchcraft, in the name of Jesus.
108. Every witchcraft hand planting evil seeds into my life through dream attacks, wither and burn to ashes, in the name of Jesus.
109. Let all friendly witchcraft powers be exposed and disgraced, in the name of Jesus.
110. O Lord, plant Your warring angels around me to dismantle and destroy evil stronghold of internal witchcraft.
111. I exercise my authority over stubborn witchcraft and I pull down their structures, in Jesus' name.
112. Every placental witchcraft targeted against my destiny, what are you waiting for? Die, in the name of Jesus.
113. Placental witchcraft manipulating my destiny, die, in the name of Jesus.
114. Every blessing that I have lost through placental witchcraft, I repossess you, in Jesus' name.
115. Every witchcraft coven and marine banks, release my placenta, in Jesus' name.
116. Every cage of family witchcraft, release my divine partner, in Jesus' name.

117. Oh Lord, let my dreams and visions reject every witchcraft projection, in the name of Jesus.
118. Thank God for answers to prayers.

10 PRAYERS FOR CLEANSING THE HOUSE¹³

How do you clean your home, your office, your car, land, farm or properties from contamination by evil spirits?

Firstly, prepare yourself by fasting and prayer and studying the word of God. Do at least, one day fast. This first stage is preparation.

Secondly, find a good prayer partner if possible. Jesus sent His disciples two by two. Try to get one partner.

Thirdly, you must have at least the following 10 Scriptures in your memory and book for the attack. You must know them;

And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto the death.

Revelation 12:11

And there shall be no more curse: but the throne of God and of the Lamb shall be in it; and his servants shall serve him:

Revelation 22:3

Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to His cross; And having spoiled principalities and powers, He made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it.

Colossians 2:14-15

¹³ Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2004) Woman! Thou Art Loosed. Yaba, Lagos: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries. p221-223

Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree: That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.

Galatians 3:13-14

His body shall not remain all night upon the tree, but thou shalt in any wise bury him that day; (for he that is hanged is accursed of God;) that thy land be not defiled, which the Lord thy God giveth thee for an inheritance.

Deuteronomy 21:23

They have corrupted themselves, their spot is not the spot of his children: they are a perverse and crooked generation.

Deuteronomy 32:5

How shall I curse, whom God hath not cursed? or how shall I defy, whom the LORD hath not defied?

Numbers 23:8

Surely there is no enchantment against Jacob, neither is there any divination against Israel: according to this time it shall be said of Jacob and of Israel, What hath God wrought!

Numbers 23:23

Therefore, now let it please thee to bless the house of thy servant, that it may continue for ever before thee: for thou, O Lord God, hast spoken it: and with thy blessing let the house of thy servant be blessed for ever.

2 Samuel 7:29

Behold, I give unto you power to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy: and nothing shall by any means hurt you.

Luke 10:19

With these Scripture you are ready to do the work.

Fourthly, when you and your partner move into the environment, you read these Scriptures out loud, in unison or separately.

Fifthly, you pray for discernment by asking the Holy Spirit to reveal to you where you will lay your hands. Have in your possession a bottle of olive oil and if possible some anointed handkerchiefs. The Scriptures for this is found in Mark 6:13:

“And they cast out many devils, and anointed with oil many that were sick, and healed them.”

And in James 5:14:

“Is any sick among you? let him call for the elders of the church; and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil in the name of the Lord:”

Also in Acts 19:11-12:

“And God wrought special miracles by the hands of Paul: So that from his body were brought unto the sick handkerchiefs or aprons, and the diseases departed from them, and the evil spirits went out of them.”

11 THE ANOINTING AND PRAYING¹⁴

(Pray this over every room in the house:) By the blood of the Lord Jesus Christ, I bind every evil spirit that is in this room and I command them to flee right now and go where the Lord Jesus Christ sends them. I claim by faith that this room is covered under the blood of Jesus Christ and no evil spirit can enter it.

After going through every room in the house, pray like this:

I dedicate and consecrate this home to the Lord Jesus Christ; and satan has no hold on it. I surrender everything in this house to the Lord Jesus Christ and claim it is under His protection.

I bind every evil spirit that is in this house and command them to flee to where the Lord Jesus Christ sends them.

I claim by faith that everything in this house is covered under the blood of Jesus Christ from the top of the roof to the bottom of the footing and everything in between.

I claim by faith that this house is surrounded by a hedge of thorns, a wall of fire, a wall of faith, and covered under the blood of Jesus Christ.

I pray that warring angels would come to protect the four corners of this house and everyone inside.

¹⁴ Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2004) *Woman! Thou Art Loosed*. Yaba, Lagos: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries. p223-224

Thank You, Lord, for the complete victory we already have in Jesus Christ.
Amen!

Whenever you pray on olive oil or lay your hands on handkerchiefs, asking God to anoint them, the power of God enters into the two items. Wherever they are used, evil spirits should depart.

Now you will begin to attack all the evil powers around. You verbally denounce satan and all his hosts and claim your authority over them as a believer. You walk around the place praying, commanding the spirits to depart, touching where the spirit of God directs you to touch after dipping your hand in the anointing oil.

If strange things have been happening in that house or to that machine or instrument, then call out the specific spirits. It is sufficient to call them by the name of the evil activities they sponsor, it may be the spirit of poverty, witchcraft, familiar spirits, etc. Call them out and bind them.

When you finish praying as described above then pray a wall of fire around those things and plead the blood of Jesus on them and ask for the angels of God to be stationed in the place.

If it is a home, anoint its doors, lintels and windows. You can anoint things like toys, cars, wardrobes, cupboards and equipment in the house. Then begin to praise the Lord for the victory.

Finally, if you have books and objects associated with witchcraft, astrology, good-luck charms, the occult, Christian science and strange uses of psalms or demonic prayer uniforms, prayer candles and incense, etc. ensure that they are destroyed. Set them on fire.

12 PRAYERS OF BREAKING OF COVENANTS, YOKES AND CURSES¹⁵

Confessions: Colossians 2:14, Galatians 3:13 & 14, 2 Corinthians 6:14-18, Galatians 6:17, 2 Corinthians 5:17

12.1 Renouncing Membership Of Evil Associations

1. I reject, revoke and renounce my membership of the following evil associations (mention them), in Jesus' name.
2. I release myself from the hold of Jezebel spirit, marine spirits, water spirit, queen of the coast, mermaid spirits, familiar spirits, witches and wizards and spirits of the dead, in the name of Jesus.
3. I withdraw and cancel my name from their registers with the blood of Jesus.
4. I reject and renounce all such names given to me in any of the evil associations, in the name of Jesus.
5. I resign my position in any of these associations and withdraw my services and responsibilities permanently, in Jesus' name.
6. I reject all the evil works I have done to innocent people through my membership of these evil associations and beg the Almighty God to forgive me and wash me clean with the blood of Jesus.
7. I purge myself with the blood of Jesus, of all evil food I ate in the evil associations.

¹⁵ Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2004) *Woman! Thou Art Loosed*. Yaba, Lagos: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries. p265-267

8. I bind you water spirits, marine spirits, queen of the coast, Jezebel spirit and familiar spirits operating in my life with hot chains and fetters of God. I cast you into the deep and seal you with unquenchable fire of God, in Jesus' name.
9. I withdraw any part of my body and blood deposited on evil altars, in the name of Jesus.
10. I withdraw my pictures, image and inner-man from the altars and covens of the evil associations, in Jesus' name.
11. I return the things, the instruments and other property of evil associations I was connected with at my disposal for the execution of duties, in the name of Jesus.
12. I hereby confess total separation from the evil associations, in the name of Jesus.
13. Holy Spirit, build a wall of fire round me that will completely make it impossible for these evil spirits to come to me again.
14. I break any covenant binding me with any of these evil associations, in the name of Jesus.
15. I break all inherited covenants and all covenants I consciously and unconsciously entered into, in Jesus' name.
16. I bind the demons attached to these covenants and cast them into the deep, in the name of Jesus.
17. I resist with the blood of Jesus, fire, brimstone and thunder of God, every attempt to return me to the evil associations.
18. I renounce and revoke all the oaths I took while entering the evil associations, in the name of Jesus.
19. I break and cancel with the blood of Jesus, every evil mark, incision and writing placed in my spirit and body as a result of my membership of the

- evil associations. I purify my body, soul and spirit with Holy Ghost fire, in Jesus' name.
20. I break all covenants inherited from my ancestors on my father's side and my mother's side, in the name of Jesus.
21. Lord, break down every evil foundation of my life and build a new one on Christ the Rock.
22. I command the fire of God to roast and burn to ashes every evil bird, snake or any other animal attached to my life by the evil association, in the name of Jesus.
23. I dismantle every hindrance, or blockage put on my way of progress by my involvement in these evil associations, in the name of Jesus.
24. All the doors of blessings and break-through shut against me due to my involvement in these evil associations, I command you to open, in the name of Jesus.

13 CURSES¹⁶

1. I break and cancel every inherited curse, in Jesus' name.
2. Lord, remove from me all the curses placed upon my ancestral families as a result of their evil associations' involvement, in the name of Jesus.
3. I break and cancel every curse placed upon me by my parents, in the name of Jesus.
4. I break and cancel every curse, spell, hex, enchantment, bewitchment and incantation placed upon me by my involvement with evil association, in the name of Jesus.
5. I break and revoke every blood and soul-tie covenant and yokes attached to them, in the name of Jesus.
6. With the blood of Jesus, I purge myself of all the evil food I ate in the evil world. I purify myself with the fire of the Holy Ghost, in the name of Jesus.
7. All demonic spirits attached to all these covenants and curses, be roasted with the fire of God, in the name of Jesus.
8. I declare my body, soul and spirit a no-go-area for all evil spirits, in the name of Jesus.

¹⁶ Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2004) *Woman! Thou Art Loosed*. Yaba, Lagos: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries. p267-268

14 BREAKING OF COVENANTS AND YOKES¹⁷

1. I break every evil covenant with water spirits and the yokes attached to it, in the name of Jesus.
2. I break and cancel every covenant with any idol and the yokes attached to it, in the name of Jesus.
3. I break and cancel any evil covenant entered into by my parents on my behalf and all the yokes attached to it, in Jesus' name.
4. I command the fire of God to roast the forces of hindrance and paralyse the power, in Jesus' name.
5. Lord, let the Holy Ghost effect immediate breakthrough in every area of my life, in the name of Jesus.
6. I confess that my deliverance shall never to be reversed, in the name of Jesus.

¹⁷ Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2004) *Woman! Thou Art Loosed*. Yaba, Lagos: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries. p269-270

15 POWER OVER ANGER¹⁸

Anger is a great spiritual sin and robber. It has incapacitated many useful lives. Read these Scriptures and pray aggressively. Job 5:2, Psalm 18:48, Proverbs 16:32; 25:28; 29:22, Ecclesiastes 7:9, Ephesians 4:27; 4:31.

1. Thank God for Calvary.
2. Ask the Lord to forgive you for every fit of anger you have ever allowed.
3. Holy Spirit, help me to crucify my flesh, in Jesus' name.
4. Let all the works of the flesh in my life be dismantled, in Jesus' name.
5. Lord, give me grace to overcome every iota of fear, pride and selfishness in my life, in the name of Jesus.
6. I bind, plunder and render to nought every spirit of anger, in the name of Jesus.
7. O Lord, help me to repair all the good altars that anger has broken down in my life.
8. Lord, emancipate me from the works of the flesh.
9. All evil desires and lust should be crucified in Jesus' name
10. Lord, help me to develop and manifest the fruit of the Spirit.
11. Lord, help me to put off anger or loss of temper and put on tender-heartedness.
12. Lord, help me to be quick to listen, slow to speak and dead to anger, in the name of Jesus.

¹⁸ Olukoya, Dr. D.K. (2004) *Woman! Thou Art Loosed*. Yaba, Lagos: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries. p271-272

13. Father, give me the power to violently resist the devil so that he will flee from me.
14. Lord, help me to hear the voice of the Holy Spirit whenever I am being provoked, and make me unprovokeable.
15. Lord, create in me a new heart by Your power.
16. Lord, renew a right spirit within me.
17. I renounce my rights to anger.
18. Lord, remove from me the root of irritation that keeps anger alive in me.
19. I reject the thought that I will never change, in Jesus' name.
20. Spirit of God, cleanse me and control anger in my life.
21. Lord, increase in me the power of self-control and gentleness.
22. I reject all that robs me of the joy of my inheritance in Your kingdom.
23. I speak to evil mountains and break their power over my life, in the name of Jesus.
24. Lord, enable me to hear Your voice.
25. Lord, by the power in the blood of Jesus, remove from my life any hindrance to my breakthroughs.
26. Lord, drive away all darkness in my life.
27. Lord, shield me from deception.
28. Lord, illuminate Your truth to my understanding.
29. Lord, let me see You more clearly with the eyes of my heart.

--oOo--

